



DA
220
H35

Southern Branch
of the
University of California
Los Angeles

Form L1

DA
220
H35
v.1

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below

JUN 24 1929

*Inter-lib.
loan*

MAY 30 1933

C 11 1933

MAY 20 1939

C 10 1941

4 vols.
das
~~5.00~~
3.95

Contains the best Anglo-Saxon Glossaries ever published

The original edition, has sold at Auction sales in London for £12

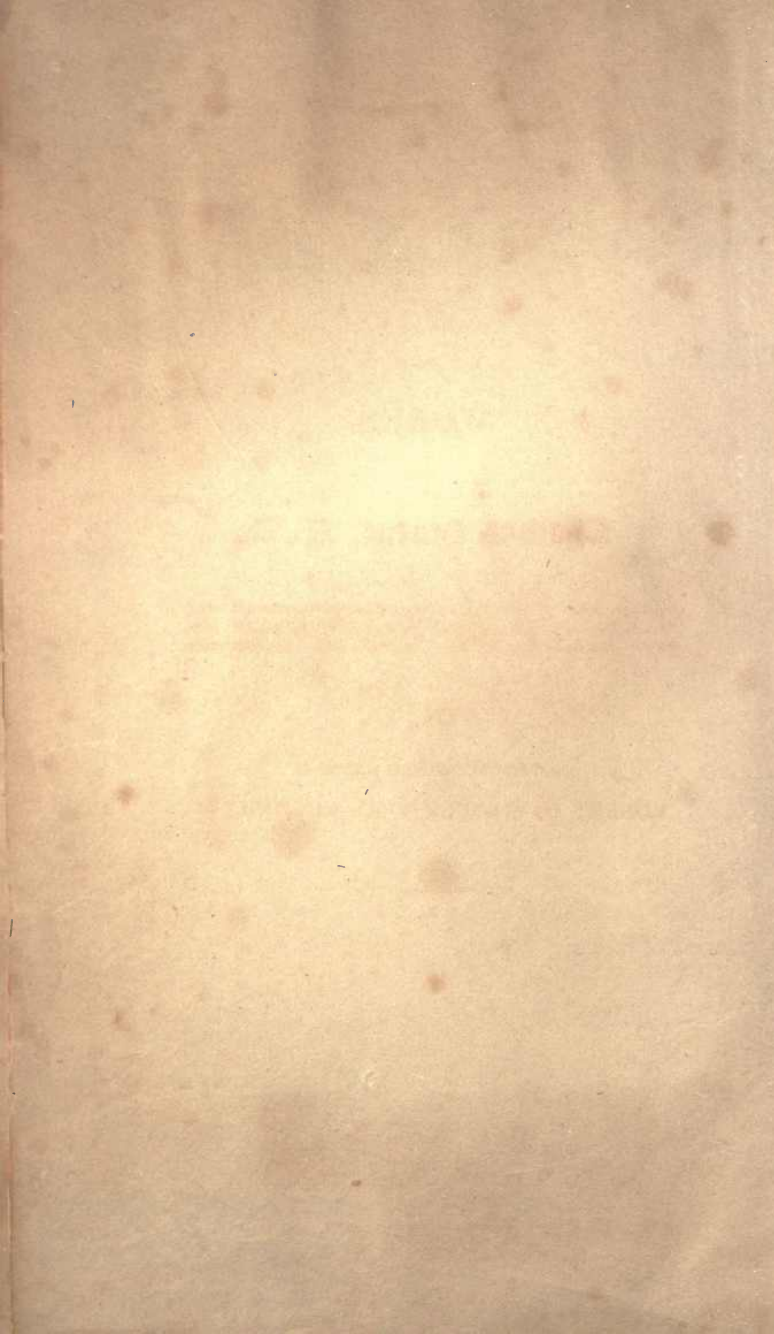
This edition in the 1810 ed.

Sutherland in 1866 asked \$20.00 for 1729 ed
" " " 10.00 " 1810 "

236 Hearne's (T.) Metrical Chronicles of Peter Langtoft and Robert of Gloucester, with copious Glossaries and Continuation, Large Paper Copy, 4 vols, royal 8vo, original boards, uncut, 15s

Bagster, 1810

Contains the best Anglo-Saxon Glossaries that have ever been published.



THE
WORKS
OF
Thomas Hearne, M. A.

PRINTED FOR SAMUEL BAGSTER, IN THE STRAND. 1810.

VOL. I.
CONTAINING THE FIRST VOLUME OF
ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER'S CHRONICLE.

45661

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
SOUTHERN REGION

LIBRARY OF CALIFORNIA
SOUTHERN BRANCH

Mercier and Chervet, Printers,
Bartholomew Close, London.

ROBERT
OF
GLOUCESTER'S
CHRONICLE.

Transcrib'd, and now first publish'd,
from a MS. in the
HARLEYAN LIBRARY
By **THOMAS HEARNE, M. A.**

To which is added,
Besides a Glossary and other Improve-
ments, a Continuation (by the Author
himself) of this Chronicle from a MS.
in the **COTTONIAN** Library.

In two Volumes.

OXFORD,
Printed at the **THEATER,**
M. DCC. XXIV.

ROBERT
OF
GLOBCESTERS
CHRISTIANITY

Marcus Zuerius Boxhornius *ad*
initium Orationis Dominicæ,
antiquissima Alemanorum lingua
à se (una cum aliis id genus) edi-
tæ, Lugduni Batavorum A. D.
CICICL. 12°.

Ex dialecto vide rerum humana-
rum inconstantiam, & collige
antiquitatem, eamque vene-
rare.

297
4v6 25

DA
220
H 35
U. 1



THE CONTENTS.

- I. **THE** Publisher's Preface. pag. v.
- II. Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, from a MS. in the HARLEYAN Library; with a Continuation of the same (by the Author himself) transcrib'd from a MS. in the COTTONIAN Library, by the Care and at the Expenses of the learned Dr. RICHARD MEAD. 1,465
- III. *De mirabilibus Britanniae*, out of an old folio MS. in Vellam, given me by Richard Graves, of Mickleton in Gloucestershire, Esq. 572
- IV. The Foundation of the Abbey of Gloucester, and the change of the same before the Suppression thereof in the Reign of King Henry the Eighth. By William Malverne, Abbat of that Monastery. 584
- V. A Petegreu, fro William Conquerour, of the Crowne of Engelonde, lynnally descendyng, bn to King Henry the vi. Out of the MS. of Robert of Gloucester, that belongs to the Heralds Office. 585

THE CONTENTS:

VI. A Letter to Mr. Bagford, containing some Remarks upon Geffry Chaucer and his Writings. 596

VII. The Preface of Mr. John Stowe to one Edition of his Summary (that comes to the Year 1573.) by which my Conjecture about Mr. Murray's Fragments (that I have printed at the End of Heming's Chartulary) is confirm'd. 607

VIII. Some Remarks, in a late, but unknown, hand, at the Beginning of the Cottonian MS. of Robert of Gloucester, relating to the age of the Author, and containing two Passages from a MS. Copy of this Historian, that was formerly in the hands of the learned Mr. Thomas Allen. 609

IX. Glossary. 612

X. Index. 744




THE PUBLISHER'S
P R E F A C E.

THE Disservice to any branch of Learning, when Persons of skill depretiate the most proper Books for obtaining a Knowledge in it. The Bodleian MS. does not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester. §. 1. The Curiosity of Mr. Keck. The great use of Robert of Gloucester in the Study of the old Saxon Tongue. His value upon other accounts. **Worstall** the same with the Saxon **Burgh** **Worstall**. **Worstall** an ancient Burgh, and is nothing else but **Burgh Hill** or **Burgh on the Hill**. §. 11. Robert of Gloucester's following **Geffry of Monmouth** in the first Part of his Work, no good Objection against his History. The nature of the ancient *βαστανία* to be gathered from an old Roll in the Hands of Mr. Graves. The old use of Horns instead of Cups. Several remarkable Particulars relating to some of our old English Bibles. The Curiosity of the Nuremberg Chronicle. §. 111. **Ferdinando Pulton**, the great Law-

*yer, a Cambridge, and not an Oxford, Writer. § IV. Something peculiar in the Copy of the Nuremberg Chronicle in Trinity College Library at Cambridge, that I have not yet met with in any other. The first, and not the second, Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle, the true genuine Work of the Author. §. v. Many things in Robert of Gloucester, that properly belong to the Business of an Antiquary. In the Saxon Times the Princes, and other great Personages, did not use to be buried at their Palaces, but at Religious Houses. Cosham in Wiltshire very famous formerly. The Coffin lately found there belong'd to some fine Gentleman since the Conquest. The Knife with which Edward the Martyr was kill'd, preserv'd at Caversham in the time of Robert of Gloucester, Three kinds of Churches formerly. §. VI. Robert of Gloucester's Account of the Conflict between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford, in the time of Henry III. very remarkable in all it's Circumstances. §. VII. Which tho' it be published by Mr. Wood, yet he seems to have had it from second hand. The Harewell, mentioned in that Account, is, probably, the same with **Walton Well**. **Walton Well** the oldest Well of note about Oxford. St. Edward's Well by St. Clement's, older than the old Well from which St. Crosse's Parish, in the Suburbs of Oxford, was called Holywell. The respect formerly paid to Wells, which occasioned Injunctions against the Worship of them. §. VIII. Our Author's Poëtry agreeable to the Genius of his Age, and his regard to truth in his
Rhythms*

Rhythms, answers the Custom of the Pythagoræans and old Britains. §. IX. He hath continued too long hid from the World. The value of the Harleyan MS. which is followed in the Edition, that we now set forth. The Language, as well as the Work, altered in the MS. of the Heralds Office, and that by one who lived in the time of Hen. VI. §. X: Who, however, is pleased to conceal his Name, as he does also that of Robert of Gloucester. A Rhythmical Account of the Kings of England at the end of his MS. which is here likewise printed. §. XI. But these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester, as are likewise those in this MS. that relate to K. Richard I. §. XII. The Author of which Rhythms about Richard I. seems to have been Robert of Brunne. §. XIII. This Robert of Brunne the same with Stowe's Robert Brune. Stowe was certainly the Author of the Fragments, that I have printed in Heming. Stowe's Honesty, and the value of his Chronicle. A very remarkable Passage out of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, together with the same as it occurs in Stowe. §. XIV. Instead of the anonymous fabulous Rhythms upon Richard I. I have inserted the genuine ones of Robert of Gloucester, in a Continuation of the Harleyan MS. from the Cottonian Library. §. XV. The Harleyan MS. perfect, tho' it comes nothing near so low as that of the Cottonian Library. One Leaf, at least, is wanting in the Cottonian MS. §. XVI. Our Author seems to have dyed in the Beginning of Edw. the First's Reign.

Himself gives an express Testimony of the Time in which he flourished. §. xvii. Which, however, is pass'd over by one, who endeavour'd to settle his Age from Proofs extracted from his Chronicle. §. xviii. Our Author rightly observes the vast disproportion that there was between the pious Acts of K. Edward the Confessor, and the first K. Edward after the Conquest. Interpolations are to be look'd upon as Redundancies, not as Perfections, in old MSS. §. xix. Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Small-Coal Man, seems to have had a MS. of Robert of Gloucester. The learned Mr. Thomas Allen had two MSS. of him, one of which came to the Bodleian Library, the other to some unknown Hands. §. xx. Mr. Selden and Mr. Wood had a right notion of the Age of our Author, who ought to be reckon'd among the Oxford Writers. §. xxi. Our Author seems to have resided in Oxford in an old House on the West side of Stockwell Street. §. xxii. The strange mistake of Mr. Weever, with regard to the Age of Robert of Gloucester. §. xxiii. Robert of Brunne's true Sirname was Manning. But the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester does not occur. §. xxiv. The Name of Robert Moille inserted at random, as it seems, in the MS. of the Heralds Office. That MS. concludes with some Verses that are not in Caxton. §. xxv. This Work is a great Curiosity. The Reproach in neglecting the black Letter. §. xxvi.

§. I.  T cannot but be of great Disservice to any branch of Learning, when such Persons, as are fam'd for their skill in it, take all opportunities of depretiating those Books, that are the most proper Helps for obtaining a Knowledge in it. Among such I may, therefore, deservedly reckon those, that decry, and speak against, Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, as if the Fragments, that have been occasionally published of him by some of our greatest Antiquaries, were sufficient satisfaction to any one, that is curious. *We may probably* (saith ¹ the Compiler of the English Historical Library) *bring in also Robert of Gloucester, for another of his [Mat. Paris's] Contemporaries, since Archbishop* ² *Usher and* ³ *Mr. Camden are both positive, that he liv'd some Time in the Reign of King Henry the Third. His Rhyming Chronicle is in* ⁴ *English; and the Reader may have a Taste of it, (as much, it may be, as ever he'll desire) either from* ⁵ *Mr. Selden, or* ⁶ *Mr. Wood. But I know several curious Persons, that are so far from be-*

The Disservice to any branch of Learning, when Persons of skill depretiate the most proper Books for obtaining a Knowledge in it. The Bodleian MS. does not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester.

¹ Ed. fol. p. 62. ² Hist. Eccles. Brit. p. 29. ³ *Re-* | Cott. Caligula A. 11. ⁵ *Ti-*
mains, p. m. 8, ⁴ *Bibl.* | *ttles of Hon.* p. 535. ⁶ *Hist.*
& *Antiq. Oxon. Par. I.* p. 112.

THE PUBLISHER'S

ing satiated with the published Fragments, that the more they have read them, the more earnestly they have desired and wish'd to see the whole Work. And tho' I ought not to be reckon'd among such curious Persons, yet I can testify thus much for my self, that, when I first saw a MS. of this Author (which was when I was even a young Undergraduate) in the Bodleian Library, being one of the first MSS. I ever perus'd there, I was wonderfully delighted with it, and could not but often signify, that I was not at all pleas'd with those, that insinuated, that there was enough of him already published to gratify any curious Reader. Nor can I at all think, that my late ingenious and learned Friend Robert Keck, Esq, (who was formerly Gentleman-Commoner of University College, and died' in the Year 1719.) repented the Charges he had been at, in having the said Bodleian MS. transcrib'd, for any other reason, than because he found, that it was a very imperfect MS. and did not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester, which he might have met with in the Cottonian Library, as he was, without doubt, afterwards fully appriz'd of by his Friends.

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 84. p. 7, 8.

§.II. Indeed Mr. Keck was a young Gentleman extremely inquisitive after Books in old English, and the nearer they were to the Conquest, so much the better pleased he was with them. For which reason 'tis no wonder, that he should several times express a great Dissatisfaction, when he understood, that, after all his Charges, he had not got either an intire, or an authentick Robert of Gloucester. He had a design either of publishing this old Historian himself, or, at least, of assisting some body else in the publication of him; which could not but, therefore, make him the more concern'd, that his Copy was not of better Authority. He knew perfectly well, that such old English Books are of wonderful use in acquiring a knowledge in the Saxon Tongue, which continued to be spoke (tho' with great Alterations) in Robert of Gloucester's time¹, and many Years after, and it began to be most of all disus'd, when Geffry Chaucer undertook to refine (as they termed it) the Language. But now of all Books of this kind, I know none hardly so valuable as this Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, and upon that account, were there no other reason, it is very proper to be read over and considered by all such as are willing to be acquaint-

The Curiosity of Mr. Keck. The great use of Robert of Gloucester in the Study of the old Saxon Tongue. His value upon other accounts. Worstaff the same with the Saxon Burg-jrall. Brill an ancient Burgh, and is nothing else but Burgh hill or Burgh on the Hill.

¹ See page 364. of this Chron,

ed with the old Saxon Tongue, a Language which even the vulgar are very fond of talking of, though they are perfectly ignorant of it; in so much that I have known some of the Country Common People shew an unusual Pleasure, when they have seen so much as the old Saxon Letters. And 'tis with great Attention that they will listen to the Derivation of Places from the Saxon Tongue. The People of **Borfall** in Buckinghamshire are mightily pleas'd, when any one tells them, that **Borfall** is the same with the Saxon **Burȝ-ƿtal**, which signifies *a Seat on the side of an Hill*, which exactly answersto this Place. "**Burȝ-ƿtal**." (saith Mr. Somner¹) "*clivus. a little hill whereon any thing is builded: a seat on the side or pitch of an hill, as that at Whitstable in Kent called Borstall.*" and this account of **Burȝ-ƿtal**, pleaseth them the better, when they hear, that these Words in the 33^d. verse of the VIIIth. Chapter of St. Luke, *Then went the devils out of the man, and entred into the swine: and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the lake, and were choak'd*, are thus read in that which is called Wickliff's Translation², & so þe deuells wenten out fro þe man, & entride in to þe swyn, & wif a birre þe flok wente heedlyng in to þe pool, & was drenchid. The Expression *wif a birre* here is the

¹ Saxon Dict. voc. **Burȝ-ƿtal**. | penes me. Vide infra in Glos-
² MS. opt. membran. | sario, p. 728.

same with the Vulgar Latin *impetu*, and the Saxon *pære*, (whence our common Word *Race*) and answers very well to any Place situated at the side of an Hill. Upon hearing this Derivation of Borstall, the Inhabitants look upon the story of it's being called so from a wild Boar kill'd by Nigellus in the Forest of Bernwood (on the Edge of which Borstall is placed) to be as weak, as the ascribing the Song of the Boar's Head by some to a wild Boar, that was kill'd, I know not when, by a Tabarder in Shottover Wood, whereas, on the contrary, the Song was so far formerly from being sung only in one Place, that it was a Christmass Carol all over England, the Boar's Head being an ancient Dish, and much in vogue at that Season, being much admired by even the greatest Princes, in so much that it was brought up by K. Henry I. with Trumpets before his Son, when his said Son was crown'd. But tho' the Inhabitants of Borstall are much pleased to hear, that Borstall is the same with the Saxon *Burȝ-stall*, yet their Neighbours, the Inhabitants of *Brsll*, are as much displeas'd with those, that detract from the Antiquity of *Brsll*, and will not allow it to be an ancient Burgh, and to be the same as *Burgh hill* or *Burgh on the Hill*, which nevertheless is plain enough to any one that considers either the Situation of the Place, or the

¹ Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubrigensis, p. 744.

Coyns that have been found there and thereabouts, some of which I have seen my self. Mr. Camden had well weigh'd this matter, and therefore he very clearly established this Notion of it's being an old Burgh. *Hæc tota [vallis] (saith he') fere campestris est, solo item argillaceo, tenaci, & fæcundo, pabulosis pratis innumeros ovium greges pascit, quarum mollia, & tenuissima vellera ab Asiaticis usque gentibus expetuntur. Sed sylvis nuda nisi ad Occiduum latus, ubi præter alias Bernewood, circa quam anno à Christo nato DCCCCXIII. Danorum furor impotentiùs sævit, tumque forte concidit Burgus ille antiquus, ut Romani nummi inventi testantur, qui postea regia erat villa Edwardi Confessoris. Nunc autem pagus est rusticus, & pro Buri-hill, Brill contractiùs appellant.* Thus this great Man, whose words are of better Authority with the Inhabitants and others, than those of any more illiterate and injudicious Writers, especially such as derive the Name from Bryers and Thorns, (from which they also derive Bruern Abbey, when, on the contrary, it was so denominated from the *Bruern, Bourn, Bupn* or *Bypna*, there) an Etymology that is more weak, than that of the very learned Dr. Skinner, who thinks ² it was so called from Burrs growing at the Place. *Brill, in Com. Bucks* (so he writes) *contr. à Burr-hill, sc. à Lappis, quæ ibi frequentes crescunt.* It's having been a Royal

¹ Brit. p. 279. Ed. fol. ² Etymol. Dict.

Vill of Edward the Confessor had been sufficient to have stil'd it a Burgh, were there nothing else to rely on. Such Vills in those times were commonly call'd **Burghs**. Whence 'tis, that *κώμης* in St. Luke ¹ is translated *buphga* in the Saxon, *castella* in the vulgar Latin, and *castels* in that which is termed Wickliff's Version. As there was, doubtless, a Castle or Fortification at Brill, so the Place had a greater right than otherwise to the Title of a *Burgh*. And as here was also a Market, so, withall, it might have been call'd *ῥτρατε*, such as are mentioned in St. Luke, where ² for *greetings in the Markets* the Saxon hath *gretunga* or *ῥτραtum*, and Wickliff *salutaciouns in chepyng*. Mr. Somner, in his Saxon Dictionary, hath noted, that *ῥτρατε* signifieth sometimes a market-place, having an eye, I suppose, partly upon what occurs in the Saxon Version of the New Testament, and partly upon what he had met with in other old Saxon Monuments. I do not know but *Streathley* in Berks was so call'd, not only because the Ikenild ³ street or way pass'd by or through that Place, but as it was formerly a Market Town. Now since the Chronicle, I have here published, is so very usefull for understanding Saxon, what but Prejudice, or some other bad Quality, could induce any one of skill in this Tongue to speak against, and endeavour to

¹ IX. 6. ² IX. 43. ³ Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubr. p. 737.

suppress Robert of Gloucester, an Author of great Worth, even upon other Accounts, that is, for his own Probity and Honesty, and for the History he hath given us, extracted from the best Memoirs he could come at?

Robert of Gloucester's following Geffry of Monmouth in the first Part of his Work, no good Objection against his History. The nature of the ancient *βαρτηρίας* to be gathered from an old Roll in the Hands of Mr. Graves. The old use of Horns instead of Cups. Several remarkable Particulars relating to some of our old English Bibles. The Curiosity of the Nuremberg Chronicle.

§. III. I am aware, that it will be objected, that the beginning of this Book is, for the most part, taken from Geffry of Monmouth. But this Objection makes rather for the Reputation, than the Disgrace, of this Historian, and it may be as well alledg'd against our other Historians, that have written since Geffry's time. Geffry was an author so much in vogue, for the most early Affairs of our British Princes, that he was constantly transcrib'd, and put into most Libraries, which is the reason why there are so many MSS. of him extant. By comparing Robert of Gloucester with him, the Reader will soon perceive, what a faithfull Historian Robert was, when he took care to be very exact in what he extracted from him. I have subjoyn'd some Passages here and there at the Bottom of the Page from Geffry, by way of Illustration, but I took them not from a printed Latin Copy (having none by me) but from a good, tho' (at the End) imperfect MS. that was given me by my Friend, that curious Antiquary, Richard Graves, of Mickleton in Glou-

Gloucestershire, Esq. from whom, much about the same time, I had borrowed the old French Roll, from which I have printed two Passages in the following Work; which Roll is so much the greater Curiosity, as it represents the Figures of our Kings and Princes from the time of Athelstan, where it begins, to the time of Edward the I. with whom it ends. For tho' the Pictures are but rude, yet there are many things in them, that will be of use to curious Men, as even our Saxon Coyns are, notwithstanding the Barbarousness of them. The very first Picture exhibits to us the form of the ancient βακτηρίαι, or βασιλικαὶ ῥαβδοὶ, which, however, we do not find, that I know of, even in Athelstan's Coyns. We ought not, therefore, to reject old Pictures of this Kind upon account of their Rudeness. I never look'd upon the Bodleian Picture as the less, but rather the greater, Curiosity, that makes Cain slay his brother Abel with a Sithe, tho' in the strange odd MS. Almanack or Conjuring Book, given me by the late Bishop of Ely, Dr. William Fleetwood, (written, as it seems, in the time of Edward III.) he is delineated as killing him with the Jaw Bone of an Ass. 'Tis with pleasure likewise that I have often look'd over the English Bible, that was printed *anno* 1541. (in the 33^d. Year of K. Hen. VIII.) being about five Years after the death of William Tyndale,

in which there are several odd wooden Cutts, that represent the Habits in use in Hen. the Eighth's time. The Picture of the Pit, into which they cast Joseph, is made to be a sort of Stone Fountain. In the Picture of Ahasuerus's Feast is a Horn for a Cup, agreeable to the old way of drinking at great Feasts. Bacchus ¹ used to quaff and carowse in an Horn. Hence Nonnus, *Καὶ κέρας ἄγκυλον ἔιχε βόθου, δέπας.* *He had an Horn crooked, for a Cup; which was, saith the Scholiast of Nicander, an ancient Custom. Οἱ ἀρχαῖοι κέρασιν ἐχρῶντο ἐν τῇ ποσει, ἀντὶ ποτηρίων· ὅθεν καὶ τὸ κέρασαι ἔιρηται.* *The ancients in their Carowings used Horns, instead of Cups: and thence, to pour out, or to mingle Wine, is called cerasai, of ceras an horn.*

Ὡς ἄρα φωνήσασα θεὰ παρέθηκε τράπεζαν,

Ἄμβροσις πλήσασα· κέρασσε δὲ νέκταρ' ἔρυθρον,

saith Homer ². Upon which the Scholiast observes thus: *Κέρασσε δὲ νέκταρ.] Νῦν ἐνέχεεν ἀπὸ τῶν ἀρχαίας συνθειῶν· εἰς κέρας γὰρ ἐγχέοντες ἔπινον.* 'Tis no wonder, therefore, that upon the Jollities on the first of May formerly the Custom of blowing with, and drinking in, Horns so much prevail'd, which tho' it be now generally disus'd, yet the Custom of blowing them prevails, at that season, even to this day, at Oxford, to remind people of the pleasantness of that part

¹ See Mountague's Diatribe | Tythes, p. 559. ² Odys. E. against Selden's History of | 92, 93.

of the Year, which ought to create Mirth and Gayety, such as is sketch'd out in some old Books of Offices, such as the *Primer of Salisbury*, printed at Rouen 1551. 8^{vo}. of which I have a Copy by me (and 'tis a most rare thing) given me by Mr. Graves, fairer and more perfect than that of another (*viz.* a later) Edition in Balliol College Library. But tho' I have taken so much pleasure in perusing the English Bible of the Year 1541. yet 'tis nothing equal to what I should take in turning over that of the Year 1539. (an Edition that Selden made great use of, as he did also of other old Editions of the Bible in English, in compiling his Work intit'led, *De Synedriis veterum Ebræorum*) which they have in St. John's College Library in Cambridge, in reference to which my learned Friend, the Reverend Mr. Thomas Baker of that College writes to me thus': " We have such a Bible as you
 " describe (a very noble Book) printed on Vel-
 " lum, and imbellished with Cuts that are Il-
 " luminated, the Leaves gilt, and the Cover im-
 " bost with Brass: but it is printed in the Year
 " 1539. as appears from the Conclusion, thus,

*The ende of the New Testament and of the whole
 Byble, fynished in Apryll, Anno. MCCCC.XXXIX.*

A Dnō factū est istud.

" The Frontispiece is the same with that of

' In his Letter of Febr. 9. 172 $\frac{3}{4}$.

THE PUBLISHER'S

“ An. 1540. described by Mr. Strype [Memorials
 “ of Archbp. Cranmer Lib. 3. cap. 33.] only
 “ Cromwell's Arms are left there a Blank, which
 “ in our Copy has his bearing (as the rest) in
 “ colors, left out, I presume, upon his fall. It
 “ might probably (as you observe) be the same
 “ Book, that was presented to Cromwell, there
 “ being only one other (that we can hear of)
 “ that is the King's. But how it came to us,
 “ does not appear, unless from the late Earl
 “ of Southampton, who gave us most of those
 “ MSS. we now enjoy, and it has always had a
 “ place amongst the MSS. as it well deserves.”
 Mr. Baker writ this Passage upon account of a
 Letter I writ to him, in which I had menti-
 oned the Bible printed in English with Cutts
 on Vellum, as I had found it spoke of in the
 following remarkable Particulars that I meet
 with ¹ in a Quarto MS. of Collections relating
 to Bibles and Testaments from 1526. to 1700.
 made (and written with his own hand) by the
 late ingenious Mr. John Bagford, who was
 pleased to give it me himself:

“ 1540.—In the Year 1540. the 32. of
 “ King Hen. the 8. a Convocation was called,
 “ and in the third Session (being Friday) several
 “ Bishops were assigned to peruse the several
 “ Translations of the New Testament, in order
 “ as followeth:

¹ Fol. 4. a.

“ I. Cran-

PREFACE.

xxi

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| “ 1. Cranmer Archbp. of Canterbury | 1. Matthew. | |
| “ 2. Longland of Lincolne | 2. Mark. | |
| “ 3. Stephen Gardiner of Winch. | 3. Luke. | |
| “ 4. Tho. Goodrick of Ely | 4. John. | |
| “ 5. Nicholas Heath of Rochester | } 5. The Actsof
the Apostles. | |
| “ 6. Richard Sampson of Chichester | | 6. Romans |
| “ 7. John Capon of Sarum | 7. $\frac{1}{2}$ Corinthians | |
| “ 8. Will. Barlow of St. David's | } 8. Galatians.
Ephesians.
Philippians
Colossians. | |
| “ 9. John Bell of Worcester | | 9. $\frac{1}{2}$ Thessalonians |
| “ 10. Robert Parfew of St. Asaph | | } 10. Timothy.
Titus.
Philemon. |
| “ 11. Robert Holgate of Landaff | | |
| “ 12. John Skip of Hereford | 12. Hebrews. | |
| “ 13. Thomas Thyrlby of Westminster | } 13. James.
$\frac{1}{2}$ John.
$\frac{1}{3}$ Jude. | |
| “ 14. John Wakeman of Gloster | | } 14. The Reve-
lation. |
| “ 15. John Chambers of Peterborow | | |

“ Gardiner desired, that certain Latin words
 “ in the Text might be preserved intire (as much
 “ as might be) in the Translation of the New
 “ Testament, and in Fuller's Church History
 “ you have a Catalogue of the words:

“ And, if I mistake not, I have seen a Testa-
 “ ment in English in 4°. put forth by the above-

THE PUBLISHER'S

“ said Bishops with the King's Privilege. 1540

“ A Bible in folio Recognized by Rich. Taverner. 1540

“ *Id.* a Testament in 4°. by the same hand. 1540

“ A Bible of the larger Volume, the Frontispiece described by Mr. Strype, and supposed to be printed at Paris. 1540

“ There is one of them in the Queen's Library at St. James's, printed on Vellum, and the Cutts curiously illuminated. This is supposed to be the presentation Book to King Henry the 8. 1540

“ I have seen one in the Library of St. John's College in Cambridge, found of late years among some old Books in a private place nigh the Library, printed on Vellum, and the Cutts illuminated as the former, and this, perhaps, might be the presentation Book to Tho. Cromwell.

“ Another very fair of the same Impression in the Collection of Sir Andrew Fountaine on paper. 1540

“ *Id.* another printed in folio by Will. Pettet for Thomas Berthlet. The Title in red and black Letters, with the Picture of King H. the 8. with the Bishops with their Mitres on. 1540

“ The New Testament translated from the Greek by Delayne (who was Librarian at St. James's, and is dedicated by him to K. Henry the 8.) and printed in 4°. in the white Letter by Jo. Mayler. 1540.” And

And here, upon this occasion of mentioning wooden Cutts, I must observe, that the vast Variety of wooden Cutts in the Nuremberg Chronicle, compiled by Hartman Schedel, are not to be at all despis'd for their Odness, but to be the more admir'd. For my part, the oftener I consult it, the more I wonder at the Things in it, and I cannot but esteem the Book as extremely pleasant, usefull and curious, by reason of these very odd Cutts, tho' those Copies are always to be look'd upon as the most valuable, which have the Figure of Pope Joan untouch'd, a Thing I here mention, because in many Copies this Figure is either eras'd, or, at least, defac'd, and the History of her oblitterated. And now I mention this Nuremberg Chronicle, I cannot but take notice of a Copy of it, that was given to Christ's College in Cambridge by the great common Lawyer Ferdinando Pulton. Before which Copy is an Inscription, that is very remarkable, and had it fallen into the Hands of the industrious Author of *Athenæ Oxonienses*, he would not, surely, have rang'd this eminent Lawyer among the Oxford Writers. I shall give the Inscription, with some other Particulars, just as they were all sent me by my foresaid Friend, the Reverend Mr. Thomas Baker, the great Antiquary of Cambridge.

Ferdinando Pul-
ton, the great Law-
yer, a Cambridge,
and not an Oxford,
Writer.

§. IV. "In turning my Papers" (saith
Mr. Baker) "I likewise find, we have
"another Copy of Hartman Schedel &c.

"at Christ's Coll. given the Coll. by
"Ferd. Pulton, with this Inscription before the
"Book. Ferdinando Pulton, Esquier, admitted
"Scholar in his Youth into Christ's Colledge in
"Cambridge, the last yeere of the Raigne of King
"Edward the sixt, continued there untill the last
"yeere of the Raigne of Queene Marie, and made
"Fellowe of the same Colledge one yeere before he
"departed thence. Became afterwards a paynfull
"Student and Professor of the Common and Sta-
"tute Lawes of this Realme (as maye appeare by
"severall Bookes or Workes by him composed and
"published in print, tending to the knowledge and di-
"bulging of the same Lawes) even untill his age
"of fourscore yeeres and upward: For the love and
"affection which he did beare to the said Colledge
"his Nurle and Schoolmistris, and in token of
"good will to the same House, did, upon the sixt daie
"of September, Anno Domini 1617. & anno Regni
"Regis Jacobi 15. bestowe this Booke upon the
"Master and Fellowes of the foresaid Colledge &
"their Successors, too meane a guffte for so wor-
"thie and well deservng a place, intended never-
"theles to have been much greater, had it not been
"extenuated by the charges & expenses of his travell
"and labors in the workes aforesaid, willinglike
"bestowed upon the Professors of the same Studie,
"for the benefitt of his Countrie and Common-
"welth thereof.

"By me

"Ferdinando Pulton, of Borton in the Countie
"and Parishe of Buckingham.

"The

“ The Subscription is in a different hand,
 “ and, I presume, his own.

“ *Nov. 23. 1552. Ferdi. Pulton coll. Chr. admis-*
 “ *sus in Album sive Matriculam Acad. Cant.*

“ *An. 1555,6. conceditur Ferdinando Pulton, ut*
 “ *12. Terminis, in quibus Lectiones ordinarias audi-*
 “ *vit, licet non omnino secundum formam Statuti,*
 “ *eum Oppositionibus & Responsis: requisitis sufficient*
 “ *ei pro completis gradu & forma Bac. in Artibus:*
 “ *sic quod examinetur & approbetur, convivetur, &*
 “ *cætera peragat juxta formam Statuti, quoniam*
 “ *Determinationem finalem sine maximo suo dispen-*
 “ *dio expectare non potest. Reg. Acad.*

“ *Pulton actu Bac. ante determinationem Regr.*
 “ *Acad.* This great dispatch was, I presume, in
 “ order to his being elected Fellow, for in a Ca-
 “ talogue of their Fellows, I find, *Ferd. Pulton*
 “ *electus Socius an. 1555.* that is, I suppose, in
 “ Jan. Febr. or March 1555,6.” The words in
 “ *Athenæ Oxon. are*¹; “ *Ferdinando Pulton alias*
 “ *Poulton* (Son of *Giles Pulton, Esq.* who died
 “ 1560.) was born at *Deusborough* in *Northam-*
 “ *ptonshire*, became² commoner of *Brasnose Coll.*
 “ in the beginning of *Q. Mary's* Reign, laid
 “ there a foundation of Academical literature,
 “ which he found useful to him afterwards when
 “ he grew eminent in the common Law. But
 “ leaving that House before he took a degree,
 “ he went to *Lincoln's* Inn, studied the said Law,

¹ Vol. 1. col. 362.

² Reg. 1. coll. *Ænean.* fol. 92. a.

“ took

“ took the usual degrees, and became eminent
 “ for the knowledge in, and practice of, it, not
 “ only in *London*, but the usual place of his re-
 “ sidence in the Country, viz. at *Borton* in the
 “ Parish and County of *Buckingham*.——He
 “ departed this Life, on the 20. *January* in six-
 “ teen hundred and seventeen, aged 82. and
 “ was buried in the Chancel of the Church of
 “ *Deusborough*, before-mentioned, &c.” Mr. Wood
 here quotes a Register in Brazen-nose Coll.
 and his Quotation is faithfull enough, as I find
 by this *Memorandum*, that, upon this occasion,
 a worthy Friend writ out of it for me: “ *Nomina*
 “ *Admissorum in Coll. 1556. Junii 28°. Ferdinan-*
 “ *us Pulton Northampt.*

“ Reg. A Coll. Æn. Nas. fol. 92.”

But then Mr. Wood builds too much upon it,
 it being very clear, from the Inscription and
 Notes above, that Pulton was one of the Cam-
 bridge Writers, and not an Oxford one, where
 he only resided a little while, and entered him-
 self of Brazen-nose Coll. tho', at the same time,
 he was actually a Member of the University of
 Cambridge,

Something peculiar in the Copy of the Nuremberg Chronicle in Trinity College Library at Cambridge, that I have not, yet met with in any other. The first, and not §. V. Mr. Baker had before given me an account of three other Copies (which they have at Cambridge) of the Nuremberg Chronicle, one of which is at Trinity College Library, and hath in it something peculiar, that is not in either

of

of the others, or indeed either in my own Copy (which, by the by, wants the Note about the time when the Book was printed) or in any that I have

the second, Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle, the true genuine Work of the Author.

yet seen. What this is, will be better gathered from Mr. Baker's own words, than from any thing I can say, which are these¹: — “ Your last Letter put me upon turning Hartman Schedel, which is a very entertaining, and (as you say) a very strange Book. We have three Copies, one amongst the Bp. of Ely's, which I had from Dr. Middleton, who presents you with his service. The second in our College Library. The last (the most beautifull) at Trinity College (from Mr. Hadderton) having all the Faces, Maps, and other Figures fairly depicted in Colors.

“ At Fol. CCLXI. the Picture of Antichrist with seven Heads, (different from the ordinary Prints) and almost as many Colors, makes a frightfull appearance, and upon the Pedestal in a fair hand, which I should have taken for Print, had it not been wanting in the two other Copies, this Inscription,

“ *Hec depinxit Jacobus Jaqueri*

“ *de Civitate Taurini in pede Montium*

“ *An^o. Domini millesimo quater centesimo*

“ *primo.*

“ And on the opposite Page thus, *This Picture*

¹ Out of his Letter to me, dated Dec. 2. 1722.

“ was

“ was set in the Temple of the Jacobines in Jeneu^a
 “ in an°. 1401, a show of Antechriste, and from
 “ thens abrode into the worlde, that the abhominat-
 “ tion of the wicked maye be percevid. B. S. M.
 “ with 5. or 6. ryming Monkish latin verses.

“ At Fol. clxxxiiii. clxxxiiii. The Pictures
 “ of the Emperor, 7: Electors, Princes, and Counts
 “ of the Empire, with their Arms fairly de-
 “ picted, with this note, *Hæc Scuta recte pin-*
 “ *guntur in suis coloribus juxta juditium Herald.*

“ I doubt, you can hardly safely show the
 “ former Inscription to your worthy Friend the
 “ Author of the Antiquities of Glast. He will
 “ be apt to observe, that Antichrist was so early
 “ in the Church of Geneva, for, I think, Ge-
 “ noua cannot be meant.

“ In all the Copies Pope Joan stands with
 “ the face of a Female, a triple Crown, a Child
 “ in her arme instead of a Cross, which is born
 “ by the rest of the Popes. Neither face nor
 “ story are obliterated in any of our Copies,
 “ only in that of Trin. Coll. *septimus*, is dasht,
 “ and the Figure, 8. plac't in its roome. For
 “ she is styl'd *Joannes Septimus* in all our Copies,
 “ tho' another *Jo. Septimus* had been mention'd
 “ before. The story is short, I can send it you,
 “ if you have not the Book by you. Martinus is
 “ quoted, which shows, she stood in the Copies
 “ of Martinus Polonus¹ of that age.

¹ Against the story in a Copy of Suffridus Petrus's Edit. at
 Ant.

“ Fol. cclviii. *Cartas aliquas sine scriptura pro
 “ sexta etate deinceps relinquere convenit, judicio po-
 “ steriorum qui emendare, addere &c. possunt &c.*
 “ Then follow some blank leaves in all the Co-
 “ pies, only the Title and Numbers printed at
 “ the top of the pages.

“ Fol. cclxvi. *Completo in famosissima Nurem-
 “ bergensi urbe Operi de Hystoriis etatum Mundi, ac
 “ descriptione Urbium, felix imponitur finis. Col-
 “ lectum brevi tempore auxilio Doctoris Hartmanni
 “ Schedel, qua fieri potuit diligentia. Anno Christi
 “ millesimo quadringentesimo nonagesimo tercio. die
 “ quarto mensis Junii.*

“ Fol. cclxvii. follows a further account of
 “ the European Nations, most or all from Æneas
 “ Sylvius: In the Title, over his Picture,

Sum pius Æneas fama super Ethera notus.

“ Fol. ccc. *Adest nunc studiose lector finis libri
 “ Cronicarum per viam Epithomatis & Breviarii
 “ compilati. Opus quidem preclarum & à doctissimo
 “ quoque comparandum. Continet enim gesta que-
 “ cunque digniora sunt notatu ab initio Mundi ad
 “ hanc usque temporis nostri calamitatem. Castiga-
 “ tumque a viris doctissimis ut magis elaboratum in
 “ lucem prodiret. Ad intuitum autem & preces pro-*

Antwerp (ex Off. Christophori Plantini 1574.8vo.) that I purchased out of the Study of the late Dr. Arthur Charlett, some learned hand hath written this Note: *Antiquissimus auctor hujus fabulæ est iste Martinus*

Polonus, qui tamen scripsit 479. annos post illud tempus, quo ait asseri, id est, fingi, istam Joannam vixisse.

<i>Polonus vixit anno</i>	
<i>Christi</i>	1334
<i>Joanna fingi:ur vixisse</i>	855
	<u>479</u>

“ vido-

THE PUBLISHER'S

“ *vidorum civium Sebaldi Schreyer & Sebastiani*
 “ *Kamermaister hunc librum Dominus Anthonius*
 “ *Koberger Nuremberge impressit. Adhibitis tamen*
 “ *viris Mathematicis pingendique arte peritissimis,*
 “ *Michaele Wolgemut & Wilhelmo Pleydenwurff. quo-*
 “ *rum solerti acuratissimaque animadversione tum*
 “ *Civitatum tum illustrium Virorum figure inserte*
 “ *sunt. Consummatum autem duodecima Mensis Ju-*
 “ *lii. Anno Salutis nostre 1493.*

“ There is no Name or Title at the begin-
 “ ning of any of the Copies. Towards the end,
 “ there are five leaves, *De Regno Polonie &c.* not
 “ numbred, which seem to have been inserted.

“ Fol. cclii. *Matheolus perusinus medicus &c.*
 “ — *Preceptor meus eruditissimus. Quem ego Hart-*
 “ *mannus Schedel Nurembergensis Doctor Patavinus*
 “ *tribus annis ordinarie legentem auscultavi. à quo*
 “ *demum prehabita per eum oratione elegantissima*
 “ *insignia Doctoratus Padue accepi.*— Follows a
 “ large Character of his Master, no more of
 “ himself.

“ Fol. cclii. *Ars imprimendi libros hiis tempo-*
 “ *ribus primum in germania enata est. Quantum*
 “ *igitur literarum studiosi germanis debeant nullo sa-*
 “ *tis dicendi genere exprimi potest. Hanc apud ma-*
 “ *guntiam rheni urbem solerti ingenio librarum im-*
 “ *primendorum ratio: 1440. inventam fuisse aiunt.*
 “ *Hoc tempore in omnes fere orbis partes propaga-*
 “ *tur.*— *Ideo in ejus laudem quidam hos cecinit*
 “ *versus.*

“ (1) *O felix nostris memoranda impressio seclis.*

“ (3) *Desierat quasi totum quod fundis in Orbem.*

“ (5) *Omnes te summis igitur nunc laudibus ornent.*

“ (2) *Inventore nitent utraque lingua tuo.*

“ (4) *Nunc parvo doctus quilibet esse potest.*

“ (6) *Te duce quando ars hec mira reperta fuit.*

“ These verses stand like Prose (without distinction) in the print, I presume the Printer had jumbled them out of Order.

“ This seems to be a good and antient authority for printing at Mentz, being within memory of Man.”

There is no doubt, but there was a great Number of Copies printed of this Book, that so the Charges of the Impression might be the better countervail'd by the sale. They were greedily bought up, and in a little time the Book grew scarce, which caus'd a new ' Edition,

Concerning which my Friend Mr. Graves writes thus to me in a Letter, dated from Mickleton in Gloucestershire, Saturday, 14th. of Dec. 1723. Schedel's Chronicle, that is now in the Hands of Mr. Fancourt Bookseller in Stratford upon Avon, is but a small siz'd Folio, tho' pretty thick; containing 338. Leaves, besides a large Alphabetical Index at the End thereof, not at the Beginning, as the other; printed in a black Letter, but much less Character, than that; and the Cuts are but

very small, and few, in comparison with the other, &c.

“ In fol. 294. a. is this Note, viz. *Completo in famosissima Nurembergensi Urbe operi de hystoriis etatum mundi, &c. Collectum, &c. auxilio Doctoris Hartmanni Schedel, &c. Anno Christi, 1493. die 4to. Mensis Junii, &c.* as in the other.

“ And in fol. 338. a. at the very End of the Book is this Note, viz. *Finis libri Cronicorum,*

but in a less Folio, with worse Types, (notwithstanding both Editions are of the black kind) and without most of the Cuts, which omission of the Cuts made this Edition, therefore, much less valued by curious and critical Men than the first. The same Defect likewise makes the second Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle of less esteem with many curious Men, than the first, which came out in Fol. at London 1577. and is full of wooden Cuts, (as the authentick Edition of Robert Fabyan's Chronicle¹, and the Chronicle of John Ra-

“*nicorum, &c. Impressum*
 “*ac finitum, &c. in imperiali*
 “*Urbe Augusta à Johanne*
 “*Schensperger, Anno ab In-*
 “*carnatione Domini, 1497.*

“After I had seen your's at
 “Oxford, and view'd my own
 “and that at Stratford again;
 “I thought there was as much
 “Difference between mine,
 “and your's, as between
 “your's, and that: For th'
 “our's are both the same Edi-
 “tion; yet mine is extraordi-
 “nary large Paper, with a very
 “broad Margin, and extreme
 “fair; and the chief initial Let-
 “ters are painted with blew,
 “and red; and some of them
 “are handsomely illuminated,
 “&c.

¹ Of which Chronicle I find
 the following Particulars, in a
 Paper MS. in Folio) containing

a Catalogue of Books relating
 to the English and Irish Histories
 and Antiquities written by
 Mr. William Cooper, who dealt
 in old Books, and made this
 Catalogue for his own use [Sit
 in Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 92. p.
 244.] This MS. belong'd, after
 the Collector's Death, [Coll.
 nostr. MSS. Vol. 63. p. 14.] to
 the ingenious Mr. John Bag-
 ford, who lent it to the Compiler
 of the English Historical Librar-
 y, and at length (after a great
 while) recovering it, he parted
 with it to the learned Sir Hans
 Sloane, Baronet, in whose
 hands it is now, and he was
 so kind as to lend it me
 in the Month of January
 1721.

“Fabyan's Chronicle of the
 “Kings of England and France,
 “from Bruce's entering into this
 “Island

stell', of which last there is a well preserved
 * Copy in the Harleyan Library, are also im-

“Island, untill the last Year of
 “King Richard the third, anno
 “1485. continued to the be-
 “gining of Hen. the 8th. Anno
 “1509. in seaven parts, and
 “two Volumes, with the Effi-
 “gies of the Kings, their Coats
 “of Armes, and other figures,
 “being the first Edition in-
 “castrate. Instead of a Title
 “it hath a figure the Armes of
 “England and France united;
 “the supporters a Dragon &
 “Grayhound, and two Port-
 “cullices, 2. Angels bearing
 “the Motto about the Rose
 “over the Crown, the same fi-
 “gure at the end of the book,
 “fol. *circa annum* 1509*.

“—*Idem* newly printed,
 “with some what a larger
 “Chronicle of the Acts and
 “Deeds don in the time of the
 “Reign of King Henry the sea-
 “venth, father to our dread
 “soveraign K. Hen. 8. London
 “printed by Wm. Rastall 1533.
 “in fol. *cum Privilegio* differ-
 “eth from the first, and not
 “gelt soe much as Record’s
 “edition.

“—*Idem iterum* named
 “the Concordance of History,
 “with Notes upon the Kings
 “Reigns, and a Continuation
 “from the beginning of K. Hen.
 “7. to the Coronation of Queen

Vol. I.

“Elizabeth Anno 1558. ac-
 “cording to Fabian’s method,
 “with Alterations, Correc-
 “tions or Castrations, and Mar-
 “ginal Notes, by Robert Re-
 “cord. Lond. 1559. fol.” Coll.
 “nostr. MSS. Vol. 93. p. 65.

“About which I have insert-
 “ed the following Note, out of
 “the foresaid MS. of Sir Hans
 “Sloane, in my Manuscript Col-
 “lections, Vol. 93. p. 83. “The
 “Pastyme of People, the Cro-
 “nicles of divers Realmys, and
 “most specially of the Realme
 “of England, brevely compil-
 “ed and imprinted in Chepe-
 “syde at the sygne of the
 “Meare-Mayd, next to Pollys
 “gate, *cum Privilegio*. The
 “Prologus hath at the top Jo-
 “hannis Rastell. It begins in the
 “Margin, *Eneas*, then follows
 “*Ascanius, Silvius, &c.* Wil-
 “liam the Conquerour, a woden
 “Picture of him, in full propor-
 “tion, and soe of all the Kings,
 “the Picture of Richard the
 “third being the last, the word
 “*Tyrannus* Ends. The picture
 “of the Creation. *Johannes*
 “*Rastall cum Privilegio Re-*
 “*gali.* in large folio.

“*Sic me docuit amicus eru-*
 “*ditus Timotheus Thomas, A.M.*
 “*collegii Ædis Christi Oxoniæ*
 “*Alumnus.*

c

bel-

* [Lond. 1516.]

bellished with wooden Cuts) many of which (considering the time in which they were done) are very good. The Author was then living. The second Edition came out in 1587. in two Tomes also in Folio, with abundance of Additions by other hands, but without the wooden Cuts. This Omission was contrary to the Design and Intent of the Author, who was a curious, tho' illiterate, Man (having never received liberal Education¹) and died before the Year 1582. Mr. Wood says² that it was towards the latter end of 1580. I have printed his Will, which was proved April 24. 1582. in the first Volume³ of my Edition of *Camden's Elizabetha*, as it was communicated to me by the learned Thomas Palmer, of Fairfeild in Somersetshire, Esq. Hence it may appear, that the first (which is very scarce) and not the second Edition, contains the true genuine Work of Hollingshede.

Many things in Robert of Gloucester, that properly belong to the business of an Antiquary. In the Saxon times the Princes, & other great Personages, did not use to be buried at their Palaces, but at Religious Houses. Cosham in Wilt-

§. VI. Now to return to Robert of Gloucester, as he was an Antiquary, as well as an Historian, so here are interspers'd divers Remarks, that properly belong to the business of an Antiquary. After he hath given an account of some of the Wonders of Britain, such as our Antiquaries usually take notice of, he

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 62. p. 87. ² Athen. Oxon. Vol. I. col. 270. ³ Præf. p. cxxlix.

refers to a Book written particularly about the Marvels of Britain, which I take to have been much more copious, than [either the Chapter upon that Subject in *Polychronicon*, or even the little anonymous Tract upon the same Subject, that I found inserted in an old Vellum MS. in Folio, that was lately given me by my learned Friend Richard Graves, Esq. In this Tract (which I have publish'd in the Appendix ¹) the four Great Roman Ways are deservedly reckon'd among the Wonders of Britain, and the account of them, however short, agrees with the Scheme of them, that is given us (from a MS. in the Cottonian Library) in the Discourse about the four Great Roman Ways published in the Sixth Volume ² of Leland's Itinerary. Robert of Gloucester's writing ³ Silchester in Hampshire *Cilycestre* confirms my opinion ⁴, that it was so called from the Flints, being no more than *silicium castra*. His Remarks upon many of our Religious Houses are pretty and usefull, and now and then he shews a particular Modesty on the occasion, in so much, that tho' it be certain, that Sir William de Mohun founded Bruton Abbey in Somersetshire, yet he expresses himself after such a manner, as if he only

shire very famous formerly. The Coffin lately found there belong'd to some fine Gentleman since the Conquest. The Knife, with which Edward the Martyr was kill'd, preserv'd at Caversham in the time of Robert of Gloucester. Three kinds of Churches formerly.

¹ Num. I. ² Pag. 96. ³ Pag. 100, 166. ⁴ In Notis ad Aluredum Beverlacensem, p. 154.

thought, and was not certain, that he was Founder. What he says¹ about Alfred, or Æthelfleda, the famous Queen, or Lady, of the Mercians being buried in St. Peter's Porch at Gloucester is exactly agreeable to the Saxon Annals, under the Year DCCCCXX.—*heo zepor xii. nihtum ær middan sumena binnan Tamanpeorðe. by eahtoðan geara þær þe heo Wyrca anpald mid niht halporð-dome heal-dende þær. 7 hi se lic lið binnan Glearceartre. on þam eart-portice sce. Petres cirecean.* What can be a plainer Argument of so great a Lady's Humility, than her chosing to be buried in the Porch, and to lye in a place, that had been famous for the fine Nunnery, that was there, before it was destroyed by the Danes, as is noted not only by others, but particularly by William Malverne (the last² Lord Abbat of Gloucester) in a Piece never yet printed, which I shall therefore publish at the End of this Work³? Her affection to Religion induced her to fix upon Gloucester for the Place of her Funeral, rather than Tamworth, which was otherwise so very famous for a Palace, in which the Mercian Princes us'd to reside, and which she her self had restored to it's pristine Splendour and Magnificence, after it had been destroy'd by the Danes. But, it may be, it will be said, that she pitch'd upon

¹ Pag. 271. ² Leland's Coll. Vol. VI. p. 214. ³ Appendix Num. II.

Gloucester, because the Abbey Church there had been founded by her Husband and her self, rather than for any other reason. Without question that was a considerable Motive; but yet I am perswaded, that the celebrated Nunnery, that had been there in former times, was another very great one, as indeed it was customary, in those Times, even for other great Personages to be buried at Religious Houses, where they had inhabited and resided. In so much, that tho' Cosham, near Chippenham in Wiltshire, was so much resorted to by some of our Saxon Kings and other great Men, where was a Palace for their Reception and Entertainment, as there was after the Conquest a retiring House for the Earls of Cornwall, to whom the Mannour belong'd (one of which, *viz.* Edmund, obtain'd a Charter¹ for a Weekly Market to be held here every Friday, as his Father Richard, a younger Son of King John, had granted the Inhabitants several Privileges, which they still enjoy²) yet 'twas not a burying Place for these Great Men, not so much as for K. Ethelred, who was more than ordinarily delighted with it, and lay sick here in *mxv.* but recovering, he went to London, and dying the Year after on St. George's day³,

¹ Cart. 13. E. 1. n. 39. Dugdale's Baronage, Tome I. p. 795. ² Notes at the Bottom of the Page of Gibson's Engl. Ed. of Camden's Brit. p. 87. ³ Chron. Sax. Gibs. p. 146. 148.

was buried in St. Paul's Church in the North Isle beside the Quire. 'Tis true, indeed, there was a Stone Coffin ², with humane Bones in it of a larger Size than usual, in the Skull whereof was a compleat Set of fine Teeth, found lately by Cosham, which may perswade some, perhaps, to think this was a Place of Burial for several of our Princes and Nobility; but, as I take it, this was a Coffin of some private fine Gentleman since the Conquest, different from the illustrious Persons I have been speaking of, and yet of a great Character for his Virtues, and the delicate Form of his Body. And here I must caution the Reader, not to take this Cosham to be the **Kaversham**, in the Church of which Place Robert of Gloucester tells ³ us the long Knife, that St. Edward the Martyr was kill'd with, was preserved in his time. For this was Caversham, commonly call'd Causham, & sometimes writ ⁴ Cowsham, a Village situated in Ox-

¹ Milles's Cat. of Honour, p. 28. Dugdale's Hist. of St. Paul's Cathedral, p. 95. Ed. 2d. ² See the Glossary to this Work. voc. *hget*. ³ Pag. 289. ⁴ See p. 128. of a Book, called, *The Connexion: being choice Col-* | *lections of some principal Matters in King James his Reign.* Lond. 1681. 8vo. where the following Order occurs, as I have entered it in one of my MSS. [Coll. Vol. 79. p. 75.]

“ Anno Dom. 1612. An. Reg. Jac. 19.

“ *An Order of the Privy Council.*

“ Whitehall January 18. 1621.

“ Present,

“ Lord Keeper.

“ Lord Treasurer.

“ L. President.

| Lord Digby.

| Lord Brook.

| Mr. Treasurer.

“ L. M.

fordshire, but is not far from Reading in Berkshire. Not only the Church of this Causham (which is an Abbreviation, as Leland saith ¹, for Causeiham) was eminent (for great Men resorted hither) but the fair old Chappel also of Stone, that ² stood toward the North End of Causham Bridge, on the right Hand as we come from Reading. To the foresaid Remarks I must take the opportunity of adding, that in the Saxon times abundance of great and illustrious Lay Persons made it their dying Request, that they might be buried in Religious Houses. A Request, certainly, very reasonable, and by no means to be wondred at, since a great ³ Number of those Houses were Lay Foundations, and it was, therefore, very proper both

<p>“ L. M. Hamilton.</p> <p>“ Earle Marshall.</p> <p>“ “ L. Visc. Falkland.</p> <p>“ WhereashisMajesty is Gra-</p> <p>“ ciously pleased, to enlarge &</p> <p>“ set at liberty the Earl of So-</p> <p>“ merset” [Sir Robert Carr]</p> <p>“ and his Lady,” [the Lady</p> <p>“ Frances Howard,] “ now</p> <p>“ Prisoners in the Tower of</p> <p>“ London; and that, never-</p> <p>“ theless, it is thought fit, that</p> <p>“ both the said Earl and his</p> <p>“ Lady be confined to some</p> <p>“ convenient Place: It is</p> <p>“ therefore, according to his</p> <p>“ Majestie’s Gracious Plea-</p> <p>“ sure and Command, Order-</p>	<p>Mr. Secret. Calvert.</p> <p>Mr. Chanc. Excheq.</p> <p>Master of the Rolls.</p> <p>“ ed, That the Earl of So-</p> <p>“ merset and his Lady, do</p> <p>“ repair either to Grays or</p> <p>“ Cowsham, the Lord Wal-</p> <p>“ lingford’s Houses in the</p> <p>“ County of Oxon, and re-</p> <p>“ main confin’d to one or</p> <p>“ either of the said Houses,</p> <p>“ and within three Miles</p> <p>“ compass of either of the</p> <p>“ same, untill further Order</p> <p>“ be given by his Majesty.</p> <p>¹ Itin. Vol. II. p. 5. ² Le-</p> <p>land ibid. ³ Coll. nostr. MSS.</p> <p>Vol. 102. p. 150.</p>
--	---

for the Founders themselves, as well as for such as were, both at the time of the Foundation and afterwards, particular or special Benefactors, should be buried, if they desired it, in Places that themselves had rais'd, a thing agreeable to the most early Antiquity, as may appear from even the famous Egyptian Pyramids. 'Tis incredible to think, what advantage the burying of such great and devout Persons was to the respective Religious Houses, where they were so laid. These Houses (term'd *Mynsters* in Antiquity) were then esteem'd (and that justly too) to be the principal Mother Churches, and of them we are chiefly to understand these Words in King Edgar's Laws, *7 man a gýpe ylce ælc teoþunge to þæm ealdan mýnrcne ðe seo hyrnerre to hýrþ*; i. e. *and let every one give his Tithes to the old Church, (Monasterie or Mynster) to which the district belongs.* Mr. Selden² translates these Words, *ealdan mýnrcne ðe seo hyrnerre to hýrþ*, *to the ancientest Church or Monasterie where he hears God's Service*, and yet Brompton, in his old Translation, hath³, & *reddatur omnis decimatio ad matrem ecclesiam cui parochia adjacet*, as even Selden himself had before⁴ observ'd. But then tho' these Words are *primarily* to be understood of Religious Houses (among which are to be reckoned what were afterwards

¹ S^t Elmanni Concil. Vol. I. p. 414. ² Hist. of Tithes, p. 262. ³ Apud X. Script. col. 871. ⁴ Hist. of Tithes, p. 219.

called *Cathedral Churches*) yet they are *secundarily* to be understood also of other Churches, that were afterwards look'd upon likewise as Mother Churches, as having the right of Sepulture annex'd to them. Such inferior Mother Churches were founded generally by eminent Lay Persons, and the Parishes of such Churches were as extensive as the Founders Possessions, (at least as such Possessions as were styl'd *Bocland* or lands possess'd *optimo jure*) and 'twas in these Churches (when they became frequent) that the Founders then often desired to be buried, in allusion to, and in imitation of, the Practise of such Founders of, and Benefactors to, Religious Houses as desired to be buried in Monasteries. These inferior Mother Churches are mentioned in Edgar's Laws by the Name of Churches that had *Legeþrope*, or *place of Burial*, where is mention also of a third (which is the lowest) kind of Churches, those that had no *Legeþrope*. The second kind of Churches I have spoke of had likewise (as well as the *principal* Mother Churches) right of Baptism; but wherever there was a Church that had neither *sepulturam* nor *baptisterium*, that was properly to be understood of the third kind, and such Churches of this third Class they styled often *þelocýpican*, or *Field Churches*, what we call now Chappels of Ease, among

¹Spelmanni Conc. loc. cit.

which

which are to be reckon'd ¹ Binsey, Sandford, and Wolvercote near to, and Holywell in the Suburbs of, Oxford, as well as multitudes besides, which had not anciently *sepulturam & baptisterium*, tho' they have that Privilege since.

Robert of Gloucester's account of the Conflict between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford, in the time of Henry III. very remarkable in all it's Circumstances.

§. VII. But I shall leave all farther Descants upon the several Particulars in this Author immediately relating to Antiquities to the intelligent Reader's own Observation, unless it be that ² concerning the great Conflict in the Year 1263. between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford. This Passage is very remarkable in all it's Circumstances, and for that reason Mr. Wood hath very justly, tho' not without divers Mistakes, inserted it ³ at large in his *History and Antiquities of the University of Oxford*. It seems Prince Edward, in his Journey towards the Marches of Wales, came by Oxford, but was hindered by the Townsmen (who shut the Gates against him) from coming into the Place, by reason of the Barons War, whereupon he went to King's Hall (being the fine Royal Palace, called *The Beaumonts*) situated in the West Suburbs, where he lay all Night. The next day he went away, and, after he was gone, the Gates were all open'd but *Smithgate*. This was the Gate, through which the Scho-

¹ Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubr. p. 756. ² See p. 540. ³ Lib. I. pag. 112.

lars us'd to go into the pleasant Fields (particularly the fair open Green, now arable ground, the North Boundary whereof is to this Day call'd **Green-Ditch**) in which they were wont to exercise themselves at several kinds of Sports after Meals, and upon extraordinary occasions, but finding the Gate shut upon them, they were exceedingly enraged, and the more, because they had been before obstructed from seeing the Prince, a sight they were very desirous of, on purpose that they might the better express their Loyalty. They often intreated the Bayliffs to open the Gate, but finding it was in vain, they got it broke down, and afterwards carried it in triumph through the Beaumonts Fields to **Hare well** or **Harewell**, which was such a Grievance to the Townsmen, that they took an occasion to imprison many Scholars, and would have proceeded to the utmost Violence, had they not been overpowered by the Scholars, as they were in all Encounters, unless the Scholars were far outnumbered by the Townsmen's calling to their Assistance (a thing common with them) a parcel of Ruffians and illiterate Fellows out of the Country. John Stowe mentions this difference in the Folio Edition¹ of his Chronicle, under the Year 1264. and tho' he doth not refer us to Robert of Gloucester, yet I do not doubt but he took the Story from him, or, at least, from
some

¹ P. 193.

some body that had made use of him. Edward the kings sonne, (saith he) after his retorne from Paris, about Lent, tooke his journey toward the March, and passing by Oxford, the Burgesles shut up their gates against him, whereby he was forced to lie at the Kings hall without the Towne till the next morrow, and then departed. The Schollers of Oxford being shut within the Towne, brake up the gate that leadeth toward Beaumont, for which deed the Mayor sent some of them to prison: and not long after, while the Schollers were at dinner, the Mayor and Commons, with banners displayed, thought to have spoyled the Clarkes ere they had beene aware, but being espyed, the schollers ranne together, and with bowes and other weapons, slew and wounded the Burgesles and Commons, brake up many houses, spoyling the goods, and set the houses of the Portriues (William Spicer and Geffrey Henckley) on fire, on the South side of the towne. Moreouer, because the Mayor (Nicholas Kingstone) was a Mintener, they brake by the Mintrie, dranke the wines, and spoyled them, for the which fact the King caused the Clarkes and Schollers to be banished the Uniuerstie. This Victory of the Scolars stuck

The Schollers
and Burgessea of
Oxford the one
spoyled the other.

Clarkes
of Ox-
ford ba-
nished.

¹ *Lege Henckey*, so call'd, (Ivy Hincksey) or else South from one of the *Hencseys* or *Hinckseys*, viz. either Laurence Hincksey, or North Hincksey, [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 121.] both situated in Berkshire (being Chappels of Ease to Cumnor, the Church of which is dedicated to St. Michael [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 119.]) but are near Oxford.

so much in the Townsmen's Stomacks, that it was one main reason of the Barbarity they shew'd the Scholars in the very great Conflict that afterwards fell out in the Reign of Edward the third, which indeed is much the biggest that ever happened between the two Bodies.

§.VIII. But tho' Mr. Wood hath published the beforementioned Passage, and refers to a MS. for it; yet since he hath not told us where this MS. is lodg'd (which, notwithstanding, I have at last found to be that in the Cottonian Library) I am of opinion, that he had it from second hand, either from Brian Twyne's, or Dr. Gerard Langbaine's Papers, which he had glean'd, and out of which, in a very great measure, he collected his Book. I have seen, among other things, two MSS. Catalogues of the Magistrates of the University of Oxford, drawn excellently well, (with references to the several Registers and Books made use of) one by Brian Twyne, and the other by Dr. Langbaine, and 'twas from these Catalogues that Mr. Wood compiled his Catalogue, in which much Reading is shew'd. 'Tis observable, that Mr. Wood does not tell us, what the foresaid *Hare well* or *Harewell* (mentioned in this Fragment)

Which tho' it be published by Mr. Wood, yet theseems to have had it from second hand. The *Hartwell*, mentioned in that Account, is, probably, the same with *Walton Well*. *Walton Well* the oldest Well of note about Oxford. *St. Edward's Well* by *St. Clement's*, older than the old Well from which *Saint Crosse's Parish*, in the Suburbs of Oxford, was called *Holywell*. The respect formerly paid to Wells, which occasioned Injunctions against the Worship of them.

ment) was. For my part, I take it to have been what we now call **Walton Well**, (so named from the old Village of **Walton**, now destroy'd ¹) which is on this Side of another old Well call'd **Aristotle's Well**, and sometimes **Bruman's Well**, which name of **Bruman** it had from one **Brumman** or **Bruman le rich** or **the rich**, who lived in the time of K. Hen. III. (when Robert of Gloucester flourished) or, as others say, about the time of K. Henry I ². As **Brumman**, or **Bruman**, was a very wealthy Man, so he had a great Estate hèreabouts, was commonly called **Brumman the rich of Walton** ³, and was always very civil and obliging to the Scholars. In those times, what we now call **Walton Well** was styl'd **Harewell** or **Horewell** from it's Antiquity, (as **Harwell**, or **Harewell**, near Abbington in Berks was likewise so call'd upon the same account) **hare** or **hore**, as I have lately insinuated ⁴, signifying *old*, which Name it retained, among many, divers Years after. I take it to be the oldest Well of note about Oxford, where, however, there were formerly a great many famous Wells. **Holywell** cannot come at all in competition with it for it's Antiquity. For the Church or

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 67. p. 14. Item Præf. nostr. ad Joan. Rossi Hist. regum Angliæ, p. VIII. ² Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 57. p. 124. ³ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. p. 20. ⁴ Vide-
 sis Præf. nostr. ad Hemingi-
 Chartular. Eccl. Wig. §. XI.

Chappell of **Holywell** is properly call'd **St. Crosse's** (being dedicated to the Holy Cross, and built too in form of a Cross, tho' the North part be now down) and 'twas first call'd **Holywell** from the Well many Years after the Building of it, when the Water was known and fam'd to have a peculiar virtue for the Eyes, and was thence term'd *holy*. But tho' **Holywell** was so much celebrated, yet the Fame of **St. Edward's**, or, as others ¹, **St. Edmund's**, **Well**, without **Bridgset**, or rather **Bridghithe** or **Bridghythe** ², commonly, and indeed more anciently, call'd **St. Clement's**, by Oxford was far greater, in so much that there was a Resort of all sorts of People from all Parts to it, and the Water ³ of it was believed to be so effectual in curing divers Distempers, and thereupon held to be of so great Sanctity, that here they made Vows, and brought their Alms and Offerings. This was the Case also of abundance of other Wells throughout the Kingdom, which gave occasion to several Injunctions prohibiting such respect, as a Thing indecent and superstitious, and, among others, the Worship of this Well of **St. Edward** was particularly forbid by **Oliver Sutton**, Bishop of **Lincoln**, in the time of **Edward the first**. This Well-worship was call'd by our Saxon Ancestors **Wilpeopþunze** or

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. | Plot's Natural Hist. of Oxford-
p. 26. Ibid. p. 10. ³ Dr. | shire, chap. II. §. 70.

Wilpeopþunga, and is strictly forbidden in King Edgar's Canons and K. Cnute's Laws, as 'twas in a Council at London under Archbishop Anselm in the Year 1102. as is well noted by Mr. Somner¹, and some of our best Criticks observe, that what is translated *Will-worship* in Colossians² should be *Well-worship*. This Well of St. Edward is now quite stopt up, and hath been so for many Years, but it was in the Field about a Furlong S. S. West of St. Clement's Church, and I have heard some of the Ancients of Oxford talk of it, as many old People will likewise speak with great satisfaction of the old Well [call'd by them commonly **Crow-well**, i. e. *Cross-well*] of **Holy-well**, that was also stopt up, as a vast Number of others were, after the Injunctions came to be of force, and were put in Execution; tho' it must be acknowledg'd, that **Crow-well** (which was almost opposite to the Cross that is in the Wall of Magdalen College Grove, notwithstanding Dr. Plot insinuates³, that it was the Well behind Holywell Church, in the Court before the Mannour House) was opened again some Years after it had been stop'd, and continued in great fame 'till the Siege of Oxford, particularly for it's good service to bad Eyes,

¹ Saxon Dict. voc. Wilpeopþunze. ² Ch. II. v. 23. ³ Nat. Hist. of Oxfordsh. ch. X. §. 142.

which occasion'd these Verses to be put upon the Cover of it:

Let no man this Well despise.

It does no harm, but helps the Eyes.

Soon after the Siege, the Stones of it were carried by Mr. Cowdrey the Shoe-maker to the Well, now call'd, from the Person that lives at it, **Newton's Well**, that is on the East side of Holy-well Church. But notwithstanding all this, **Walton Well** (which, I think, was most of all frequented ' in the time that the King's Palace, called **The Beaumonts**, and the Carmelite Friery at the said Palace flourished) was not concerned in these Prohibitions, because the Water was not esteem'd and look'd upon as holy. Neither was **Aristotle's Well** (which I take to be near as ancient a Well as that of **Walton**) included in the Prohibitions, being fam'd only for it's being frequented by Scholars, not for it's Sanctity, but for a House of Entertainment here built, to which they us'd to resort, especially on Ashwednesdays, when the Batchelours of Arts, that defend Aristotle in the Publick Disputations, are styl'd Aristotles, and formerly, after the hot Disputations in the Schools, they, as well as other Scholars, us'd to go into the Fields by this Well, which was their Place of Refreshment, and exercise themselves in another manner, not so proper

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 67. p. 16.

for them, which some Years agoe was put down.

Our Author's Poëtry agreeable to the Genius of his Age, and his regard to Truth in his Rhythms answers the Custom of the Pythagoræans and old Britains.

§. IX. I am here very sensible, that an Objection against Robert of Gloucester will be started by several upon the score of his Poëtry, as if that were a very cogent Argument to make him neglected and despised. But he (and not Chaucer, as Dr. Thomas Fuller¹, and some others would have it,) is the Ennius of the English Nation, and he is, on that account, to be as much respected, as even Ennius himself was among the Romans, and I have good reason to think, that he will be so by Friends to our Antiquities, and our old History. 'Tis the Genius of the age that is to be regarded in such Pieces of Poëtry. The Poëtry of those times consisted of Rhythms both here and in other Countries, and the Poëts thought they had done their Parts well, if their Rhythms, however mean otherwise, related matter of Fact, and were agreeable to Truth. And truly this exactly corresponded with the Rules of the ancient Pythagoræans. For even Tully tells us, at the Beginning of the IVth. Book of his Tusculan Questions, that the Pythagoræans us'd to put their Precepts and other Things of mo-

¹ Church-History of Britain, l. VI. p. 268. tho' he had before told us, l. III. p. 4. that

he [Rob. of Glouc.] was counted the Virgil of his age, and the Ennius in ours.

ment (among which, to be sure, are to be reckon'd the famous Acts of their Ancestors) into Verse, and that it was usual with the old Romans, according to the Custom of the Pythagoræans, when they sat at Banquets, to recite the Virtues and Praises of Great Men in Verse, and to sing and play upon the Pipe upon such occasions, and thence, as I take it, even the old Britains, who followed the Pythagoræan Doctrines, addicted themselves so much to Verse, tho' as well the Pythagoræans, as Romans and Britains, took care, that no Verse should tend to the Injury of another, one of the Laws of the XII. Tables expressly forbidding any such Indecency, and some of our old Rhythms laying down Rules against any unbecoming Expressions in Poëtry, such as may conduce to Immorality; and in this, as well as his unaffected way of relating matter of Fact in Rhythm, our Author is to be commended, as a true Picture of Antiquity.

§. X. Since, therefore, Robert of Gloucester appears, on all accounts, to be so valuable an Author, what reason can be assign'd, that he hath been so much neglected, and that he was not long since published to the World? 'Tis probable the Obsoleteness of the Language might be the main reason, or, at least, 'tis likely, that some Persons of

He hath continued too long hid from the World. The value of the Harleian MS. which is followed in the Edition, that we now set forth. The Language, as well as the Work, altered in the MS. of the Herald's Office, and that by one who lived in the time of Hen. VI.

Distinction, not pleased with several of his honest Relations of Things, might characterize him as an insignificant Writer, and prejudice the Readers so much against him, that they were not at all solicitous about an Edition. Be this as it will, as I look upon him to be one of the first Rank in our old Historians, so I, many Years agoe, had thoughts of publishing him according to the Bodleian MS. to which I had then daily access. But finding afterwards, that there are much better Copies in the World, I laid aside my Design of publishing this Author, and did not resume it 'till above a Year agoe, when the Loan of a MS. that formerly belong'd to Sir Simonds D'Ewes, (whose MSS. the Earl of Oxford purchas'd) was procur'd for me out of the Harleian Library by that most eminent Physician the learned Dr. Richard Mead, who is my very great Friend. It came to me, accompanied with another MS. of Robert of Gloucester, the Loan of which was obtain'd for me out of the Heralds Office by another great Friend, the learned John Bridges, Esq. who was at the trouble of transmitting both these MSS. to me. As soon as I saw the Harleian MS. I presently concluded, that it was a very good one and authentick, and therefore I immediately transcrib'd it, and resolved to make it my Text. But then as to that of the Heralds Office, I found not only the Language of
Ro-

Robert of Gloucester to be altered throughout in it, but the Work quite changed in several respects, by having some Passages transposed, others omitted, and divers inserted that were never written by Robert of Gloucester, who was of different Principles from this Author. A great deal of Prose History in English (partly taken from Geffry of Monmouth, partly from William of Malmsbury, partly from Brute of England, *Polychronicon*, &c.) is intermix'd in this MS. with what is in Rhythm, but as the Substance of most of this is already published in Stowe (who had seen this MS.) and other Books, I have left out much the greatest part of it, and confin'd my self to the genuine Work of Robert of Gloucester, which, however, I have carefully compar'd with this MS. of the Heralds Office, and taken notice of what I thought proper, and have inserted my Observations from it (among which are to be reckon'd also those of the Prose part) at the bottom of the page, always subjoyning *Ar.* [i. e. *the MS. of the College of Arms*] to them. Who the Author was, that took such a liberty with Robert of Gloucester (a thing that hath happened to many other ancient Remains) I will not pretend, at present, to determine; but this is certain, that he both lived and wrote in the time of Hen. VI. as appears from this *Memorandum*, (written all [excepting **M** cccc. xlviij.])

in red Letters, but in the same Hand with the Book) at the Beginning of the Work: *A peregreu, fro William Conquerour, of the Crowne of Engelonde, lynnally descendyng, vn to kyng Henry the vi. in the end of thys boke lynnede in Fyguers. Thys boke, with hys Antecedens and consequens, was ful ended the vi. day offe August, the zere of oure lorde a Mⁱ. cccc. xlviij. and the yere of oure souerayn lorde kyng Harry the vi. after the conquest the xxvi.*

Who, however, is pleased to conceal his Name, as he does also that of Robert of Gloucester, A Rhythmical Account of the Kings of England at the End of his MS. which is here likewise printed.

§. XI. Tho' this MS. of the Heralds Office (for the use of which I am in a particular manner obliged to my learned Friend John Anstis, Esq. Garter, principal King of Arms) be in several Places imperfect, and hath some of the Leaves transpos'd (as a few Leaves are also transpos'd in the Harleyan MS.)

yet 'tis, as I judge, the very original Book. The Author, undoubtedly, took a great deal of pains in new modelling Robert of Gloucester, and in adapting every Thing to his own Scheme. He divers times introduceth the Rhythms by the name of *old Rhythms*, but never so much as once mentions the Name of Robert of Gloucester, or pretends to discover what his own Name was. Mr. Weever had diligently perus'd this MS. and quotes it sometimes as if the whole were Robert of Gloucester's, a mistake that some great Men besides have

have been guilty of with respect to other Writers, as may plainly appear, as well from other Instances, as from what I observ'd lately with regard to Fordun's *Scotichronicon*. The *Petegreu* mentioned in the Note abovesaid is still to be seen at the end of the MS. together with the Limnings or Pictures (all but that of William Rufus and Henry I. which are cut out) of the Kings of England from William the Conquerour to Hen. VI. inclusively, and this additional Part is also cited by Weever, but in that he happens to distinguish rightly, making it, as it is, quite different from any Piece of Robert of Gloucester's Writings. The Pictures I have omitted, but the rest I have printed in my Appendix ¹, and, I hope, I have thereby obliged those that have any respect for our Antiquities.

§. XII. The Reader will perceive at first sight, that these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester. And indeed in this very MS. in the Body of the Book, is also a great Number of other Rhythms, that are also shorter than Robert's, I mean such as relate to Richard the First; (which nevertheless are erroneously ascrib'd by Dr. Fuller ² to Robert of Gloucester:) but then I have quite

But these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester, as are likewise those in this MS. that relate to King Richard I.

¹ Num. III. ² Ch. Hist. 1. the Margin calls them Robert
 III. p. 43. where he gives us of Gloucester's:
 the following Rhythms, and in d 4 King

omitted all these, partly because they are (in many respects) strangely Romantick, and partly because they are of the same kind with those that were printed by Wynkyn de Worde in the Year 1528. under the Title of **The Story of the noble Kyng Richard Cure de Lyon**, of which I never yet saw but one Copy, which is that in the Bodleian Library, that I formerly mentioned in a Letter about Geffry Chaucer that I writ in the Year 1709, to the before mentioned ingenious Mr. Bagford, which Letter I shall insert at large in my Appendix ², partly because (provided I may be allow'd to say this) it was much approved of by my late very honest and learned Friend Mr. John Urry, to whom some body had communicated it, and partly because it happened to be, upon several accounts, commended by some other Persons of distinction,

* *Jafes*,
saith
Fuller)
that is
Joppa in
Palestine.

King Richard wyth gud entent
To yat cite of * Jafes went
On morn he sent axtur Sir Robert Sakevile
Sir William Wateruile
Sir Hubart and Sir Robart of Turnham
Sir Bertram Brandes and John de St. John.

Which very Rhythms I find also | MS. of the Heralds Office, where
in those about Richard I. in the | they are thus express'd :

Kyng Richard with good entent
To that cite of Jafes went.
On morwe he sent axtur Robert Sakeuile,
& Sire Willeam the Wateruile,
Sire Hubert & Robert of Turnham,
Sire Bertram Braundis & John de Seynt Johan.

¹ §. III. ² Num. IV.

to

to whom it was occasionally shew'd. Nor have I heard of but one more printed Copy of this Book about K. Richard (tho', without doubt, they were formerly common enough) and that is that in the Harleyan Library, which is much more clean and perfect than the Bodleian Copy, as I am assured by my ingenious Friend the Reverend Mr. Timothy Thomas, M. A. and Student of Christ Church, who takes notice¹, that the Title Page of this Book has a wooden Cut of a *Knight on horseback*, attended by a *Squire*, and these words on the top of the Page,

Kyng Rycharde cure dulyon :

that there then follows on the other side of the Leaf,

The prologue

Orde kynge of glorye

Suche grace and suche vycory

Thou sendest to kynge Rycharde

That neuer was found cowarde

It is good to here Jestes

Of his prowesse and his conquestes

Many romayns men make newe

Of good knyghtes and of trewe

&c.

and ² that at the End of the Book are these words:

¹ In his Letter to me Oct. 22. 1723. ² So in his Letter to me June 20. 1723.

¶ Thus endeth the story of the noble kyge Ry-
charde cure de lyon. Imprinted at London by
wynkyn de worde. The yere of our lorde.

M. CCCCC and. XXVIII.

The Author of
which Rhythms a-
bout Richard I.
seems to have been
Robert of Brunne.

§. XIII. Now altho' I will not pre-
tend to discover the Author of the ad-
ditional Rhythms about our Kings to
Robert of Gloucester, yet (at present)

I am of opinion, that those about Richard the
first in the Body of the Book, as well as the
printed ones, were written by Robert of Brunne,
the same, I mean, that translated Robert
Grosthead's *Manuele pecche* (or *Manuel de
Peche*) out of French, of which there is a small
Fol. MS. in the Harleian Library on Parch-
ment, wrote very near the Author's time,
having two Columns on each page, as those
Rhythms about Richard the first, in the MS.
of the Heralds Office, are likewise in two Co-
lumns, contrary to what Robert of Gloucester's
are. This MS. of Robert of Brunne's Transla-
tion begins with this Title in *Red letters*:

*Here bygyneþ the boke þat men clepyñ in frenshe
manuele pecche þe whych boke made yn frenshe
Robert Gros test Bishop of lyncolne.*

Adyr and lone and holy goſte }
þat art o god of mygtes molte }
At þy wurſchyp þul we bygyn }
To þame þe fend & þew oure lynne }

Synne

Synne to shew vs to frame }
 God to wurschyp he send to shame }

Shameful synne ys god to lete }
 Al þat men do hope smale & grete }

þe grete withoutyn pryjyte }
 þat ben comune to me & the }

.

This Author became famous very soon, even in the Year 1303. 31. Edw. I. (above thirty Years before he finished his Chronicle, a most rare Work, and known to very few of our Historians and Antiquaries, which was in the Year 1338.) as appears from the following Lines, which conclude the second Column of the first Page of the said MS. Translation of *Manuele pecche*, and were sent me ¹, with what I have already said about this MS. by my before mentioned ingenious Friend Mr. Timothy Thomas, and he did it the more readily, not only because they have the *Author's* (or rather *Translator's*) Name, but because there are in them some other Circumstances, which may contribute to know him more perfectly.

.

 To alle crystynmen undir sunne }
 And to gode men of brunne }

¹ In a Letter dated Sept. 19. 1723.

And

And speciali alle be name }
 he selauthepe of Sympryngname }
 Robert of brunne greted zow }
 In al godenelle hat may to prowe }
 Of Brymwake yn kesteuene }
 Syxe myle belyde sympryngha euene }
 y dwelled yn the pryorye }
 Fyftene zere yn cumpanye }
 In he tyme of gode dane Jone }
 Of camelton hat now ys gone }
 In hys tyme was y here ten zeres }
 And knew and herde of hys maneres }
 Sybyn with dane Jone of clyntone }
 Fyue wyntyre wyþ he gan y wone }
 Dane felyp was mayster hat tyme }
 hat y began hys englysh tyme }
 he zeres of grace fyl þan to be }
 A þousynd & þre hundred & þre }

This Robert of Brunne the same with Stowe's Robert Brune. Stowe was certainly the Author of the Fragments, that I have printed in Heming. Stowe's Honesty, and the value of his Chronicle. A very remarkable Passage out of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, together with the same as it occurs in Stowe.

§. XIV. This Robert of Brunne is the same with Robert Brune, that is quoted in the Margin of the Folio Ed. of Stowe's Annals under the Year 1266. in the Reign of King Henry III. But what Book 'twas that Stowe made use of there, he hath not been pleased to acquaint us. Neither, indeed, is either Brune or Brunne mentioned in the valuable Fragments of Stowe, that I reprinted lately at the End of Heming from a Copy communicated to me by my ingenious and curious Friend Mr. John Murray. I call these Fragment's Stowe's, because I find the

the Conjecture I made in my Dissertation about them, *viz.* not only that John Stowe was the Author of them, but that they belong'd to some short Chronicle, to which was prefix'd some Calendar, to be very just and true. For indeed they belong'd to Stowe's Summary or Abridgment of the Chronicles of England. For tho' I have not yet met with a Copy of this Summary with these Fragments, in which we have an Account of his Authors, yet in a Preface that he put to one Edition of his Summary, which ends in the Year 1573. he expressly tells us, that he was the Author of those Fragments. I never saw (that I remember) but one Copy of that Edition, and it was given me by my very learned Friend Mr. Baker of Cambridge. This Copy, tho' a little imperfect both at the Beginning and End, is a very great Curiosity (as indeed all Editions of the Summary are now Curiosities) and I esteem it the more, because I cannot learn, that this Preface is in any other edition. There is a Calendar at the Beginning, which confirms my Notion also as to that Point. For better satisfaction I shall reprint this Preface in my Appendix ¹, as I should have done in Heming had it then been in my possession. The Reader will perceive by it the disingenuous dealing of Richard Grafton towards John Stowe, a Man tho' of no great Learning, yet of incredible Industry in collect-

¹ Num. V.

ing old MSS. and in preserving other Antiquities; and so faithfull an Historian, that he hath been much esteem'd by Camden and our greatest men, in so much that the famous Sir Roger Lestrange, talking some Years before his Death with a very ingenious and learned Gentleman about our Historians, was pleas'd to say, *that it was always a wonder to him, that the very best that had penn'd our History in English should be a poor Taylour, honest John Stowe.* Sir Roger said a *Taylour*, because Stowe, as is reported¹, was bred a Capmaker (and so perhaps his Father Thomas Stowe was before him) and was of Merchant Taylours Company. The Trade of Capmaking was then much in fashion, Hats being not at that time much in request. But notwithstanding Stowe hath not declared what Book of Brune's it was to which he owed his Information, yet I find, that it was Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, before mentioned. For the very remarkable Verses, that Stowe hath printed (under the seventh Year of Edward I.) from Brune in pag. 201. of the said Fol. Ed. of his Annals, are thus express'd in the old MS. of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, that I have now before me, and belongs to the Inner Temple Library, being given with other MSS. to that Society by the last Will of William Petit, Esq. late Keeper of the

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. 62. p. 3.

Records in the Tower of London, one of whose Trustees being my learned Friend, before mentioned¹, John Anstis, Esq. 'tis by his means that I have had the Loan of it from that learned and honourable Society.

Edward did smyte rounde peny, halfpenny, ferthing,
 he croice passed² & passed³ he bounde of alle þorghout he ryng.
 he kynges side falle be he hede & his name writen.
 he croyce side what cite it was in coyned & smyten.
 he pouere man ne he prestie he peny prayles no þing.
 Men gyf God he lete, he sette him with a ferþing.
 A þouland & tuo hundred & fourscore zeres mo,
 On his mone men wondred⁴ first whan it gan go.

The Words are somewhat different in Stowe, and for that reason I shall here annex them, by which means they may the more easily be compared together. **Whereas** (saith he) **before this time** [A. D. 1279.] the penny was wont to haue a double crosse, with a crest, in such sort, that the same might easily be broken in the middell, or into foure quarters, and so to be made into halfe pence or farthings: which order was taken in the yeare of Christ 1106. the 7. of H. the I. it was now ordained, that pence, halfe pence, and farthings should be made round, whereupon was made these verses following.

Edward did smlte round peny, halfe⁴ peny farthing. Robert
Brune.
 The crosse passes the bond of all throughout the ring:

¹ §. XI. ² Dele. ³ Sic, pro first. ⁴ There is a comma after *peny* in the 4to. Ed. 1592.

The Kings side was his head, and his name written,
 The crosse side, what Citie it was in, coyned ¹ or smitter.
 To poore man, ne to Priest, the peny fraises nothing,
 Men giue God aye the least, they feast him with a farthing :

A thousand two hundred, fourescore yeares ² add mo.

On this money men wondred, when it first began to goe.

The old money (adds Stowe) was not forbidden to goe
 with the new : and besides these monies there was
 coyned groates, containing four pence the peece.

Regist. of
 Bury.

The pound of esterling money at this time contain-
 ing 12. ounces, to wit, fine siluer (such as men take
 into foyle or leaues, & is commonly called siluer of Gu-
 therom lane) 11. ounces, 2. esterlings, and one seyling,
 and the otheꝝ 17. d. ob. q. to be alay. Also the pound
 ought to wey of money, 20 s. 3. d. by accompt, so that
 no pound ought to be aboue 20. s. 4. d. nor lesse then
 20. s. 2. d. by account. The ounce to wey 20. d.
 The peny to wey 24. graines, &c.

The late learned Bishop Fleetwood hath re-
 printed the whole Passage from Stowe, to which
 he hath added many curious Particulars of his
 own, in pag. 44. of his excellent Book called
Chronicon Preciosum, to which I shall refer the
 Reader.

Instead of the ano-
 nymous fabulous
 Rhythms upon Ri-
 chard I. I have in-
 serted the genuine
 ones of Robert of
 Gloucester, in a
 Continuation of
 the Harleian MS.
 from the Cottonian
 Library.

§. XV. To what hath been said about
 my omitting the foresaid Rhythms
 (the Author of which, I believe, was
 Robert of Brunne) another reason may
 be added, and that is this, that in their
 stead I have published the true ge-

¹ And pro or in dicta Ed. ² In qua Ed. and pro
 add habemus.

nuine ones upon that Prince of Robert of Gloucester himself, who left out whatever he thought Romantick, as we may gather from his own Words, and would therefore, without doubt, have pass'd by these, had they been in being in his time, which are so very fabulous as to be look'd upon only for their Antiquity, and as a Curiosity. I must confess, that these genuine Rhythms of Robert of Gloucester relating to Richard I. are wanting in the Harleyan MS. which ends in that Year of K. Stephen's Reign, in which the Empress Maud made her Escape from the Castle of Oxford, wherein she had been so long besieged by K. Stephen. But then they are extant in the MS. of the Cottonian Library, in which MS. the History is brought down to the latter End of K. Henry the Third's Reign, and 'tis from thence I have supply'd the Harleyan MS. the intire Continuation out of it being procur'd for me by my most generous Friend, before mentioned, the learned Dr. Mead, who, after he had got it transcrib'd wholly at his own Expenses, put it into the hands of another of my very good Friends the learned John Bridges, Esq. who is likewise mentioned above, and so it came safely to my hands.

The Harleian MS. perfect, tho' it comes nothing near so low as that of the Cottonian Library. One Leaf, at least, is wanting in the Cottonian MS.

§. XVI. Notwithstanding the Harleian MS. breaks off so early, yet since it ends about the middle of a Page, and with a full Line, 'tis justly look'd upon by Criticks as a perfect Book. So that, in all likelihood, the Author carried on the Work at first no farther, but after some time resumed it again, and brought it down to his own time. The Harleian MS. seems to have been written in the Reign of K. Edward the Third, but the Cottonian one is judg'd to be about 50. Years older than the Harleian. The Harleian MS. agrees, (abating some Variations in the Language) so far as it goes, with the Cottonian one, and yet, without doubt, they were transcrib'd from different Copies, one from the Work as it was first finish'd by the Author, the other from a MS. that was compleat after the Author set about it again after some Intermission. The Cottonian MS. ends in the Year 1270. and so there wants but two Years to compleat Hen. the Third's Reign, who died Nov. 16. 1272. The Author undoubtedly finished that Reign, and 'tis agreed upon by such as have seen and considered it, that the Cottonian MS. which ends at the bottom of a Page, wants one Leaf, if not more, to fill up that Reign. And this, I think, is likewise confirm'd from some MSS. of Robert of Gloucester (whereof one is that in the Bodleian Library) which

which tho' they want all K. Henry the Third's Reign, ending the History with that of King John, yet they have the following Verses, in which a reason (tho' a very poor one) is given for omitting the Author's Account of the Battle of Lewis and Evesham in those MSS.

Henry his sone come aſtir, & his londe þan nome,
 And fifti zeer & ſixe helde his kyndome;
 And alſo twenty daies, and ded was I wis,
 And buried at Weſtmenſtre, þer his hodi zit is.
 Ther were in his tyme two Batailes in londe,
 At Lewes and at Eueſham, as I underſtonde,
 That were harde longe, & zit ne ben forzete nougt.
 Ther fore in this boke ne ben thei nougt wrougt.
 Dif grace twelve hundred, & two and ſeuenty zeer,
 Dede was the kyng Henry, as I ſeide zow eer.

Edward his sone than was, man of gret pris,
 At Weſtmenſtre crownyd, ſtronge kyng & wis,
 That of Waſche londe clenliche al owt
 He wan the Signorie, were thei never ſo protte^r.

§. XVII. Our Author, therefore, having brought his History to the End of the Reign of Henry the III. and being about to write that of Edw. I. was (as it seems to me) prevented from going farther by Death, but in what Year it was of

Our Author seems to have dyed in the Beginning of Edw. the First's Reign. Himself gives an express Testimony of the Time in which he flourished.

^r E Coll. nost. MSS. Vol. 58. p. 75. & Vol. 61. p. 232, 234. uti etiam è schedula quadam, mihi donata ab amicissimo ornatissimoque Juvene Jacobo West, A. B. è Collegio Balliolensi, qui meam in gratiam eandem perquam benevole è Codice MS. exscripsit. Hanc autem schedulam ad calcem Vol. 97. Col-lectaneorum nostrorum inserui.

that King's Reign it doth not appear, tho', I think, it must have been after the sixth, because in pag. 224. he mentions K. Arthur's fair Tombe, in the middle of the Quire, before the high Altar at Glastonbury, which Tombe was so rais'd in the Year 1278. or the sixth Year of Edw. I. by order of that King. The chief Characteristick, that himself hath given of the time in which he flourish'd, is that about the Battle of Evesham in the Year 1265. when he tells us, that the day, on which it happened, was very dismal and dark, and that himself, to his great Fear and Astonishment, was an Eye-witness of this dreadfull dark time.

Such was (saith he¹) þe morþre of Einesham (uor bataile non it nas)

& þer wiþ Jesu Crist wel vuele [I. unele] ipaled was,
 As he ſetwede bitokninge griflice & gode,
 As it vel of him ſulue, þo he deide on þe rode,
 þat þoru al þe middelerd derk hede þeþ was inou.
 Also þe wule þe gode men at Euesham me ſlou,
 As in þe Norþ West a derk wede þer aros,
 Sodeinliche ſuart inou, þat mani man agros,
 & ouer caſte it þozte al þut lond, þat me miȝte vnneþe iſe.
 Criſtoker wede þan it was ne miȝte an erþe be.
 An betwe dropes of reine þer velle grete inou.
 þis tokninge vel in þis lond, þo me þis men ſlou,
 For þretti miȝe þanne. þis iſei Roberd,
 þat verſt þis boc made, & was wel sore aſerd.

¹ Pag. 560.

§. XVIII. This being so very clear and manifest a Testimony of the time, when our Historian lived, what reason can be thought of, that it should be overlook'd by the unknown Writer of some Remarks (sent me by the learned John Bridges, Esq.) at the bottom of the first Page of the Cottonian MS. touching the Age of Robert of Gloucester, especially since he pretended to draw his Proofs from the Author himself? One that undertakes such a Task should read every Passage over deliberately, and examine and sift them with the utmost care and nicety. But it seems this Writer rely'd more upon an interpolated MS. in the hands of the famous Mr. Thomas Allen of Gloucester Hall, than he did upon the genuine Work of the Author, and by virtue of that he brings Robert of Gloucester down to the latter End of Edward the Second, whereas he had no such Grounds to go upon in the genuine Book. "I have got copied" (saith Mr. Bridges ') " half a sheet * out of the Cottonian MS. viz. The remarks, at the bottom of the first page, in an unknown hand, touching the age of the Author, and his proofs collected from Rob. of Gloucester himself, and also giving an account of two Fragments, which are inserted

¹ In his Letter to me Mar. 12. 1723. * See it printed in the Appendix, Num. VI.

“ in bits of Paper in the 71st. fol. b. and 75. out
 “ of a Copy in the hands of one Tho. Allen of
 “ Oxford, which, as he says, extended no far-
 “ ther than to the Reign of K. Stephen, for
 “ which reason we at first imagin’d it to be the
 “ same with my L^d. Harley’s, but upon looking
 “ for the said inserted passages we find them
 “ both wanting. The said remarks are in a hand
 “ of about 100. Years standing. His first proof of
 “ the age of Robert is from a passage in K. Ar-
 “ thur, where he speaks of the finding that
 “ King’s bones at Glastonbury, from whence,
 “ he says, ’tis plain, that the Author liv’d after
 “ the time of Edw. I. whereas the Coffin with
 “ the Inscription, and that King’s bones were
 “ discover’d, according to Leland, in the time of
 “ Hen. II. of which you will be a much better
 “ Judge. His second proof is from one of the
 “ inserted passages, where ’tis said, that Seg-
 “ brit, or Sebert, King of the East Saxons, the
 “ Founder of Westminster Abbey, was buried
 “ there 706. Years ago; and he dying in the
 “ Year 617. brings the age of the Author to
 “ 1323. or the latter end of Edw. II. The third
 “ proof from fol. 98. b. is plainly a mistake, by
 “ taking Edw. the Confessor, there mention’d,
 “ for Edw. II. The Title in the Cotton MS.
 “ is in a hand very like Camden’s thus, *Historia*
 “ *Regum Angliæ ad Henricum tertium à Rob. Glo-*

cestrensi, qui eodem tempore floruit, but the Latin is not elegant enough for him, in my opinion."

§. XIX. Thus my excellently learned Friend, (who dyed just as I was putting the finishing stroke to this Work,) from whom I must humbly beg leave to dissent with respect to the last Proof, the Words being, as I conceive, to be understood not of Edward the Confessor, but of the first King Edward after the Conquest, in whose Reign Robert of Gloucester dyed. He justly acknowledg'd this King Edward to be a good Prince, but then as justly observes, that there was a vast Disproportion between K. Edward the Confessor and him, there being no Comparison to be made of the one with the other, if their Acts of Piety, Charity, Munificence and Hospitality be duly considered. But then whereas the Remarker observes¹, that several Leaves, relating to the History of Mellitus, to the Eucharist, and to Cedwall are wanting after *fol. 71.* in the Cottonian MS. this is certainly a mistake in him, and there is no doubt but the MS. is perfect there, and of much better Authority, than if they had been inserted. Interpolations (such as these are) are always to be look'd upon as Redundancies in any old Authors, and the MSS.

Our Author rightly observes the vast Disproportion that there was between the pious Acts of K. Edw. the Confessor, and the first K. Edward after the Conquest. Interpolations are to be look'd upon as Redundancies, not as Perfections, in old MSS.

¹ See in the Appendix, pag. 610.

therefore, that are without them, are by no means deficient. Had I thought otherwise, I might have multiplied them from the MS. of the Heralds Office, where so much of this nature occurs, as I could also have strangely enlarg'd Fordun's genuine Chronicle, when I set him out lately, had I judg'd it proper for me to blend and confound the Interpolations and the authentick Work together, as they are done in some MSS.

Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Small-Coal Man, seems to have had a MS. of Robert of Gloucester. The learned Mr. Thomas Allen had two MSS. of him, one of which came to the Bodleian Library, the other to some unknown Hands.

§. XX. When I first saw by the anonymous Remarks, that the Harleyan and Mr. Allen's MSS. notwithstanding their coming down to the same Period of time, were different, I began to be of opinion, that Mr. Allen's might have been the same, that was sometime in the Hands of the late Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Musical Small-Coal Man, which is thus mentioned in the first Part of the Auction Catalogue ¹ of his Books: *A Poem of the Kings of Britain from Gurguyn Son of K. Belinus down to Henry II.* Tho' there be no Name to that Poëm in the Catalogue, yet I take it to be Robert of Gloucester's; but then that which makes me now think it to be different from Mr. Allen's is, it's not beginning so early as his did. So that perhaps this Copy of Mr. Allen came into some private Hands in

¹ Pag. 34, num. 14. of the MSS. in Folio.

France, and I fear, that it is now quite lost. That which gives ground to this Suspicion is, the Fate of much the greatest Part of Sir Kenelm Digby's admirable Library, which, after Sir Kenelm's Death, fell into some such private Hands in France, and 'tis certain, that his Library consisted, in a very great measure, of Books, that had belong'd to Mr. Allen. 'Tis true, Sir Kenelm gave a good number of the MSS. Mr. Allen had left him, to the Bodleian Library, not long after Mr. Allen's Death, and there is now among them a MS. of Robert of Gloucester, being the same that I have spoke of at the Beginning ' of this Preface, and was us'd by Mr. Selden when he was writing his History of Tithes*: but then this MS. (which comes to the End of K. John) is different from that refer'd to by the Remarker, and therefore will not at all invalidate what I have said about it's being lost in France. Yet if, after all, it will not be allow'd, that it was among those Books of his that were dispos'd of in France, it is probable it came to some other Person in England than Sir Kenelm. For Mr. Wood observes, that many of Mr. Allen's MSS. did not come to Sir Kenelm, but some to Mr. Richard James, and others to Sir Tho. Aylesbury.

* §. I. † Videsis Historiam nem ejusd. in quo opere citat dictam Decimarum, p. 206. & etiam Codicem Roberti nostri Auctorum Catalogum sub fi- in Bibliotheca Cott.

“ Soon

“ Soon after” [Mr. Allen's Death, which happen'd on Sept. 30. 1632.] “ the chief part of “ his” [Mr. Allen's] “ Library of incomparable “ MSS.” (saith Mr. Wood¹) “ coming into the “ hands of Sir *Kenelm Digby*, as the owner before had appointed, they were the next year “ given by him to the *Bodleian* or publick Library, where they yet remain. Some of them “ had before, and about the time of *Allen's* “ death, been got from him by *Rich. James* of “ C. C. Coll. for the *Cottonian* Library, and others “ came into the hands of Sir *Tho. Aylesbury*, “ Master of the *Requests*, but where those are “ now, in truth I cannot tell.”

Mr. Selden and Mr. Wood had a right Notion of the Age of our Author, who ought to be reckon'd among the Oxford Writers.

§. XXI. But tho' the Remarker was not so lucky as to adjust the Age of Robert of Gloucester, yet Mr. Selden, by distinguishing the spurious Chronicle from that which is genuine, very readily found it out, and accordingly in his Notes on Eadmer², and in his great work *de Synedriis veterum Ebræorum*³, places him under Edw. I. about which time he hath placed him also in his *Titles of Honour*⁴, and in his Preface to Eadmer; (in which Preface he hath given us the Passage [something differing from the same as it is printed in his *Jani Anglorum facies altera*] about William the Conqueror's Sur-

¹ Athen. Oxon. Vol. I. col. 4to. ⁴ Ed. fol. 1631. p. 60Q. 493. ² Pag. 169. ³ Lib. I. cap. P. IIII.
10 p. 167. Amst. 1679

vey) well knowing, that, notwithstanding a Leaf or two is wanting, in all likelihood, in the Cottonian MS. he finished the Reign of Hen. III. in which Reign, from the Passage above transcrib'd, he plainly understood that he flourished, and that, carrying the Work no farther, he could not survive long after, at least not long enough to write the Glories of the Reign of Edw. I. Mr. Selden began very early to be acquainted with him, and no body hath done him more honour. He look'd upon him as a very valuable Historian, and, therefore, hath occasionally quoted him in several Places of his other Works, (particularly many times in his *Notes and Illustrations on the first Part of Drayton's Poly-olbion*) as well as in his *Jani Anglorum facies altera*. Mr. Wood also had a right notion of his Age, but then he hath one observation, that I have not met with elsewhere, and that is, that he was personally present at Oxford, when the Fray, I have spoke of¹, hap-pened between the Scholars and the Townsmen in MCLXIII. *Hæc mihi Inquisitio quædam* (saith that Author²) *super eâ re facta succincte exhibit, cui nec repugnant Poëtæ³, ibi tum præsentis, carmina; quæ quamvis & succo careant & colore, cum ex novitate tamen delectationem nonnullam afferre possint, subjungi forte mereantur.* What authority

¹ §. VII. ² Hist. & Antiq. | ³ *Rob. Glocestrensis* in Hist. Univ. Oxon. l. I. p. 111. | *merica MS. fol. 152. b. 153. a.*

Mr. Wood had for this does not appear, tho', I suppose, he found it either in Brian Twyne or Dr. Gerard Langbaine. But whatever that authority was, I do not doubt but he went upon very good and sure grounds, and I shall, for that reason, reckon Robert of Gloucester not only as an Oxford Writer, but as actually present in that University at the very time of that famous Scuffle.

Our Author seems to have resided in Oxford in an old House on the West Side of Stockwell Street.

§. XXII. It is said by several (and among others by Dr. Thomas Fuller *) that he was a Monk of Gloucester. Nor do I know (at present) of any good reason to think otherwise. It is very likely, therefore, that as a Monk he was sent hither by some of the Directors of the great Abbey of Gloucester, to take care of the Youth here, that they had under their care. In so

' " ROBERT of GLOUCE-
 " STER, so called, because a
 " Monk thereof. He is
 " omitted (whereat I wonder)
 " both by Bale and Pits, ex-
 " cept disguised under ano-
 " ther Name, and what I can-
 " not conjecture; they speak
 " truly, who term him a
 " Rhimer, whilst such speak
 " courteously, who call him a
 " Poet. Indeed such his
 " Language, that he is dumb
 " in effect to the Readers of
 " our age without an Inter-
 " preter, and such a one will
 " hardly be procured. An-
 " tiquaries (amongst whom
 " Mr. Selden) more value him
 " for his History than Poe-
 " try, his lines being neither
 " strong nor smooth, but
 " sometimes sharp, as may
 " appear by this Tetrastick,
 " closing with a pinch at the
 " panch of the Monks, which
 " coming from the Pen of a
 " Monk is the more remark-
 " able.

* Cells or Portions.
 + Ruler or Governor,
 sed quere.

" In the Citie of Bangor a great Hous tho was,
 " And ther vndyr vii * Cellens and ther of ther † Nas
 " That c.c.c. Moncks hadde othur mo
 " And alle by hure travaylely vede; loke now if they do so.
 " Ilc

much, that I am apt to think, that, upon that score, he resided in an old House, where Monks² used to study, on the West Part of **Stockwell-street**, in the same Place where Gloucester College (afterwards styl'd Gloucester Hall, and at length Worcester College, on the West Side of which the Monks of Gloucester had a Mill³) was since founded in the Year 1283³. or, as others⁴ say, in 1281. by John Giffard Baron of Brimsfield, the same that was so famous for his Military Skill in the time of Hen. III. and

“ He flourished some Four hundred years since under King Henry the second, and may be presumed to have continued till the beginning of King John, 1200”. Fuller’s Worthies of England, p. 358. in Gloucestershire. Dr. Fuller did well to put in the Margin, *sed quære*, his Interpretation of *nas* being as wrong, as that of the Author of an Essay about the old English Poëts and Poëtry, printed in the *Muses Mercury*, which I have mentioned in my Glossary, under the word *non*. These Rhythms are extant also in p. 61. of the Introduction to Weever’s *Ancient Funeral Monuments*, where Weever likewise, by his marginal explication (*seuen cels, or seuen portions, which had every one a severall head or ruler over them*) seems to have been equally ignorant of

the true signification of the word *nas*. By comparing these Rhythms with the genuine Robert of Gloucester, they will immediately appear to be corrupted. *Nas* signifies *was not*. The meaning of the Passage therefore is, *and there was not one of those Cells, but what had three hundred or more monks.*

¹ *Domus monachorum studentium in Stockwell-strete Oxon. Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. p. 8.* ² Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 62. pag. 116, 117. ³ Hist. & Antiq. Univ. Oxon. l. II. p. 338, 380. Reyn. Apostol. Bened. in Angl. Tr. 3. p. 53. Monast. Ang. Tom. I. p. 540. b. Dugdale’s Baron. Tome I. p. 500. Tanner’s *Notitia Monastica*, p. 184. ⁴ See Dr. Leonard Hutten’s *Antiquities of Oxford*, p. 324. published by me at the End of *Textus Roffensis.*

is mentioned, for that reason, towards the End of this History. Nor will it seem strange, that any Monks of Gloucester should be here before the Foundation of any such College, if it be considered, that they were extremely desirous of having their Youth educated in Academical Learning, and that this gave occasion, in good measure, to the said John Giffard to build that College in this Place, which he had observed his Neighbours, the Monks of Gloucester, to take so much delight in, and he was very willing to free them from hiring any Tenements, and from being at other Charges for the Education of their young Men, for the future.

The strange Mistake of Mr. Weever, with regard to the Age of Robert of Gloucester.

§. XXIII. Among others, that were conversant with the Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, was John Weever, a person right famous for his very useful Book of ancient Funeral Monuments, where he hath published many Passages of this Chronicle, but with so little skill, that he not only confounds the spurious with the genuine Robert of Gloucester, but even ascribes the Prose part also to him. In pag. 60. of his Introduction, or Prefatory Discourse, he calls him Robert the Monk of Gloucester, and speaks of him as a Writer about the Year 1231, or the 15th. of Hen. III. And in the Book pag. 458, 459. brings him as low as Edw. I. in which he is right enough, provided he had not attributed

ted that to Robert of Gloucester which is none of his. But then he is quite out, when, in pag. 589. he brings him as low as Edw. II. and there transcribes a Passage in Prose, and calls it his, when it was really written by one, that lived in the time of Hen. VI. as the rest of the Prose was. 'Tis very strange, that so diligent a Man as Mr. Wcever, should not see his Mistake, especially when he had the use of the very MS. that now belongs to the Heralds Office.

§. XXIV. As I find, that the true Sirname of Robert of Brunne was Manning (for he calls himself in one Place of his Chronicle **Robert Manning of Brunne**, now *Bourne* a Town in Lincolnshire where was a Monastery) so I wish also, that I could discover the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester. I have endeavour'd to do this, but as yet in vain. His Name does not at all occur, either in an ancient or modern Hand, in the Harleyan MS. Nor does it so much as once appear (that I know of) in the Text of the Cottonian MS. except in the Passage I have transcribed, where, however, we have no Sirname of any kind. Indeed I have before observed ¹, that, at the beginning of that MS. the History is ascribed to Robert of Gloucester in a modern Hand, and 'tis by this Name that he is called by Antiquaries and Hi-

Robert of Brunne's true Sirname was Manning. But the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester does not occur.

¹ See in the Glossary to this Work, p. 706. ² See §. XVIII. storians,

storians, who, without all dispute, had good Authority for it, tho' it does not appear, that any of them had met with his true Sirname, which, I suppose, came to be disus'd after his Fame was spread for his skill in History, just as that of Robert Manning's dwindled also, when he was once celebrated. Nor did Manning seem so desirous of being called by his true Sirname as by that of Brunne, that so Robert of Brunne might look as great as Robert of Gloucester. And that this was very great may appear from hence, that tho' many ' Robert of Gloucesters are met with in old Registers, yet

<p>“ ‘ One <i>Magister Rob. de Glocestria</i> was one of the Clerks or Chaplains to <i>John de Oxon.</i> and <i>John Grey</i>, Bishops of <i>Norwich</i>, and is frequently met with as Witness to their Charters from 1176. to 1204.—Bp. <i>Kennet</i> from some Register <i>Bury</i> saith, that he was an Archdeacon in the Church of <i>Norwich</i>, about <i>A. D.</i> 1219. but this I have not yet found my self. Perhaps he was the same with the <i>Mr. Rob. de Gloucestr.</i> nominated to the Archdeaconry of <i>Stafford</i>, during the vacancy of the See of <i>Lichfield</i> (Pat.14.Joannis m. 3. n. 2.) or with him who was Chancellor and Prebendary of <i>Chichester</i>, and died 7. <i>Hen.</i> III. (Rot. Claus. ejusd. anni.)—By the Institution</p>	<p>“ <i>Rolls of Hugh Willis</i>, Bp. of <i>Lincoln</i>, it appears, that one <i>Mr. Rob. de Glovernia</i> was Instituted <i>A. D.</i> 1229. to the Church of <i>Teinton</i> (Archid. Oxon.)</p> <p>“ Another <i>Rob. de Glocestria</i> was Official to <i>Godfrey</i> Bp. of <i>Worcester</i> <i>A. D.</i> 1300. (Angl. Sacr. I. Annales Wigorn.) perhaps the same who was Chancellor to <i>Rob. Winchelse</i> 1304. (Reg. Winch.) and to <i>Walter Reynolds</i> 1318. Archbishops of <i>Canterbury</i> (Reg. Henr.prioris Cantuar.)—</p> <p>“ There was one of the name Prebendary of <i>St. Decuman</i> and Canon of <i>Wells</i>, who died <i>A. D.</i> 1321. (Registr. <i>Johannis Drokensford.</i>)</p> <p>“ Another Rector of <i>S. Ann's Aldersgate</i> 1358, (Newcourt.)</p> <p>“ And</p>
---	--

(as far as I can learn) they were all eclips'd by the Historian, the Acts of all of them put together being not equal to what he hath done by compiling this Work. I have already noted, that neither the Name of Robert of Gloucester, nor that of the new Modeller of the History, is any where to be seen in the MS. of the Heralds Office. But the Work being discovered to be originally this Author's, on the Back side of the Book (which is of a late Binding in rough Leather) is put in golden Capital Letters,

ROBERT *

·OF·

GLOCESTER.

§. XXV. It must be confess'd, that in one part of this MS. at the very bottom, just on the Brink of a Page, are written these Words, in an old Hand (as ancient as, tho' a little different from, that of the Book :) *Hic incipit Robertus Moille.* When I first saw these Words, I thought *Moille* had been the true Sirname of

The name of Robert Moille inserted at random, as it seems, in the MS. of the Heralds Office. That MS. concludes with some Verses that are not in Caxton.

“ And in *Lib. Epist. Acad.* “ was our Historian.”

“ *Oxon. F. Ep. 23.* Letter testimonial for *Robert Gloucester*, A. M. but this was after the year 1400. “ Many other Secular Clerks of both Names have occur'd to me since 1320. “ none of whom probably

Hæc, meam in gratiam è Collectaneis suis à seipso descripta, cum amicissimo Cantabrigiensi (qui perquam lubenter transmisit) communicavit vir eruditissimus Thomas Tannerns, Cancellarius Norwicensis.

Robert of Gloucester, but the Words being written on a Page, where no new matter begins, and it being in a Prose part of the Book, and that too in the Story of the Saxon Times, and there being not the least reference to any Thing in the Volume, I take them as put down at random, and not to belong, in the least, to the Author. And this is all I have to say with respect to this MS. unless it be, that, after the Reign of Henry the Third, the History goes on in Prose (being the same, abating some Alterations, as usually happens in MSS. of this kind, with Caxton's Chronicle, which John Stowe¹ is pleased to style a fabulous book, compiled by a nameless Author, but printed by William Caxton, and therefore called Caxton's Chronicle) to the famous Battle of Halidowne Hill, in the Year 1332. which was the sixth Year of K. Edw. the Third's Reign, in which the English got such an intire Victory of the Scots, and slew such a vast number of them, that, the Father of the Scottish Historians, John Fordun thought it too lamentable² a Subject, to enter into the particulars of it. In relation to this Battle there are some Verses in this MS. that are not in Caxton, for which reason I shall here publish them, advertizing at the same time, that, tho', perhaps, formerly there were other Leaves (for there are the Remains of

¹ Annals, p. 307. Ed. fol.

² Scotichronicon, p. 1022.

one, that had been cut out, now plainly to be seen in it) in which, probably, the History had been carried somewhat farther, yet, at present, these Verses are the very last part of the History, and are brought in thus:—and þan þe Englyſſhe mynſtrelle betyn hure tabrys, & blowyng hure trompys, and pypers ppendyn loude, and made gret ſhoute vpon þe Scottes, & þan hadde þe Englyſſhe bachelerys eche of hem two whynges of archers, þe whyche at þe aſſemble orpydly dratoyne hure bowes, and ſo þey ſmot þe Scottes, þat þey felle to grounde by many houſandys, and anone þe Scottes by gonne to fle fro þe Englyſſhemien, for to haue hure lyues. But whan þe knabys, þat were byhynde þe Scottes, to kepe hure horſis, ſawe þe diſcomfitour, þey prikyd awey hure maiſtreyſ horſ, to kepe hem ſelf fro perile. And þan þe Englyſſhemien toke many of þe Scottyſſhe horſ, and þey priked after þe Scottes, and ſlow hem doune ryghte, and ſo men myghte ſe þe worþy and noble kyng Edward of Engelond, and his folk, how manfully þey chaſtyde þe Scottes.

¶ There þan men myghte ſe,
 Many a Scott ſwiftly fle,
 And þe Englyſſhemien after prikyng,
 With ſharp ſwerdys þe Scottes ſtykynge,
 & þer hure banerys weryn ſounde
 Al diſplayd lyeng on grounde.
 And þay lay ſprad on blood,
 As þey fougheten on þe flood,
 That þe Englyſſhemien drent ſhold be,
 For þat þey hoppde to ſe.

For so hey hoppyde to spede,
 Seyng he flood hat was on Tweede.
 For he Englisshemen myghte not fle,
 But yf adrent hey thold be.
 & han herto loth hey were,
 For hey boughte noughte in luche fere,
 But hey kept hem on londe,
 So hat he Scottes myghte noughte stonde.
 For hey were fillyd to grounde,
 Many a housand in hat stounde.
 & he Eng'lishemen purlywid hem so,
 Fort the flood was al a go ;
 And hus he Scottes discomfityd were
 In lytil tyme wih gret fere.

.

This Work is a
 great Curiosity.
 The Reproach in
 neglecting the
 black Letter.

§. XXVI. I have now finished what I
 had to say (and, I fear, I have writ
 too much) by way of Preface about
 Robert of Gloucestre. He is certainly a
 great Curiosity, and I do not doubt, but he will
 be esteem'd as such. As the Acts of the Apo-
 stles, that I published from Archbishop Laud's
 MS. is the first intire Book, that ever was
 printed in England in Capital Letters, so this
 Chronicle of Robert of Gloucestre is the very
 first intire Book, that was ever printed in this
 Kingdom (it may be, in the whole World) in the
 manner I have done it, that is, in the black Let-
 ter,

ter, with a mixture of some Saxon Characters, which is the very Garb that was in vogue in the Author's time. The Saxon Characters, that are intermix'd, are ȝ or g , (which some represent by z ,) þ or th (the top of which in many MSS. among which are to be reckon'd those of this Author, is made a little too short, viz, p , just like the Saxon double u) p or w (which, however, is but here and there) and y or ȝ . I am very sensible, that the Obsoleteness of the Language will deterr many from Reading this very usefull Historian; but to such, as shall be pleased to make themselves acquainted with him (in order to which the Glossary, I have drawn up and subjoyn'd, may be of some service) he will appear very pleasant, entertaining and diverting, and they will value him the more, as he comes out in his primitive Dress. As it is a Reproach to us, that the Saxon Language should be so forgot, as to have but few (comparatively speaking) that are able to read it; so 'tis a greater Reproach, that the black Letter, which was the Character so much in use in our Grandfathers days, should be now (as it were) disus'd and rejected, especially when we know, the best Editions of our English Bible and Common Prayer (to say nothing of other Books) are printed in it.

Oxford April 14.

1724.

[In the present Edition, for the convenience of the Reader, the Roman Character has been adopted.]

Advertisement.

THE first Payment for this Work to Subscribers was one Guinea the large, and half a Guinea the small, Paper. The second Payment is to be the same with the first.

The Publisher is now printing (from a MS. in the Inner-Temple Library) **Peter Langtoft's Chronicle of England** (*as illustrated and improv'd by Robert of Brunne*) from the Death of Cadwalader to the end of K. Edward the first's Reign. To which will be added, besides a Glossary and other curious Papers, (1) *A Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by King Hen. the Eighth's order and for his use.* (2) *An Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen (near Bautre) in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke, Master of that Hospital.* The Price of this Work (which will make two Volumes in 8^{vo}. and was never before printed) will be two Guineas the large, and one Guinea the small, Paper; whereof half is to be paid at the time of Subscribing, and the rest when the Copies are delivered. Subscriptions are taken in either by the Publisher at Edmund-Hall, or by John Rance at the THEATER Printing House, in Oxford.



1

¹ ROBERT of
GLOUCESTER'S CHRONICLE."

ENGELOND² ys a wel god lond, ich wene of eche lond best,
Y set in þe ende of þe world, as al in þe West.
þe see goþ hym al a boutte, he stont as an yle.
Here fon heo durre þe lasse doute, but hit be þorw gyle
Of ³ fol of þe selue lond, as me haþ y seye wyle.
From Souþ to Norþ he ys long eigte hondred myle:
And ⁴ foure hondred myle brod from Est to West to wende,
A mydde þo lond as yt be, and nogt as by þe on ende.
Plente me may in Engeland of alle gode y se,
Bute folc yt for gulte oþer zeres þe worse be.
For Engeland ys ful ynow of fruyt and of tren,
Of wodes and of parkes, þat ioye yt ys to sen.
Of foules and of bestes of wyld and tame al so.
Of salt fysch and eche fresch, and fayre ryueres þer to.
Of welles swete and colde ynow, of lesen and of mede.
Of seluer or and of gold, of tyn and of lede.

¹ *Adjecti.* ² *Vide Camdeni* | pag. 7. *Ed. Lond. 1629.* ³ *I. e.*
Remaines concerning Brittain, | folc. ⁴ *Two Ar.*

Of stel, of yrn and of bras, of god corn gret won.
 Of whyte and of wolle god, betere ne may be non.
 Wateres he haþ eke gode y now, ac 'at" be fore alle oþer þre
 Out of the lond in to þe see, armes as þei be.
 Ware by þe schippes mowe come fro þe se and wende,
 And brynge on lond god y now, a boute in eche ende.
 Seuerne and Temese, ² Homber yt is þe þridde.
 And þenne is as wo seiþ þe pure lond a midde.
 Homber bryngeþ by Norþ muche god and wyde,
 Seuerne by West ³ Souþ," Temese by þe Est syde,
 So þat of god y now, þat in oþer londes ys,
 þer by comeþ to Engeland, þat no defaute nys.
 Yles þer beþ mony on a boute Engelande.
 Ac þer beþ to fore alle oþere þre ich vnderstonde :
 The yle of Man þat me clepuþ, by twene vs and Yrlonde :
 þe grete yle of ⁴ Orkeneye bi zonde Scotlonde.
 þe þridde ys, toward Normaudye, þe yle of Wygt by Souþe.
 þre þe beste yles þese beþ and ⁵ mest couþe.
 þe firste lordes and maystres, þat in Engeland were,
 þese chef townes heo lette in Engolonde rere.
 London and Euerwik, Lyncolne and Leycestre ;
 Colchestre and Canterbury, Bristow and Wircestre.
 Chichestre and Grauntebrigge, and þanne Cirencestre ;
 Dorchestre and Wyncestre, and seþþe Gloucestre.
 And oþer grete townes, þat þo were in Walis.
 þis was þo in Engolond ⁶ Britones were y wys.

¹ *Deest in Ar.* ² And Hum-
 ber is the þrydde *Ar.* ³ *Deest*
Ar. ⁴ *Orcades Ar.* ⁵ *Most*

of name couþe *Ar.* ⁶ þat Bru-
 tones *Ar.*

Engelond haþ i be y nome and ¹ i worred y lome .
 First þoru grete lordes þe emperoures of Rome,
 þat fogte and wonne Engelond, and þat lond nome.
 Seþþe þoru ² Picardes and Scottes, þat to Engelond come,
 þat worrede and destruiode, ac al clene ne wonne it nozt.
 Seþþe þoru Engliſche and Saxones, þat hider were y brougt
 þoru Brutones forto helpe hem, and seþþe hem ouercome
 þe Brytones, þat hem hyder brougte, & þat lond hem bi nome.
 Seþþe haþ Engelond y be ³ y werred y lome
 Of þe folc of Denemark, ⁴ þat beþ nozt zet wel y some,
 þat ofte wonne Engelond, and hulde yt by māyſtrie.
 þe fyfte tyme won Engelond þo folc of Normandie,
 þat a mong vs woneþ zet, and schulleþ ener mo :
 We ſchul here aftur in þis boke telle of al this wo.
 Brytones were þe fiſte folc þat to Engelond come.
 Foure kynges heo madeu þo in þis kyndome.
 þe kyng of Weſt ſex, & of Kent, & of Norþomber þe þridde,
 And þe kyng of þe March, þat was here amidde.
 þe Saxones and þe Engliſche þo heo hadden al an honde,
 Fyue and þritti ſchiren heo maden in Engelonde.
 Souþſex and Soþerei, Kent and Eſtſex,
 Barkschire and Hamptſchire, and þenne Myddelſex,
 Dorſete and Wiltſchire, and Somerſete al ſo.
 Deneschire and Cornewayle, and Glouceſtre þer to.
 Schropſchire, and of Wirceſtre, and of Herford.
 Cheſtre ſchire and ⁵ Warwil, Derby and Stafford.

¹ Y wonne *pro* i worred *in* | red and y nome *Ar.* ⁴ þat were
Ar. ² Pictes *Ar.* ³ Y wer- | nought welcome *Ar.* ⁵ *Sic.*

Lyncolne ant Hontyndone, and of Bedeford.
 Bockyngham and Norþpamtoun, and of ¹ Oxenfoþ.
 Norþfolc and Sopfolc, and Grauntebrigge al so.
 Hertfort & Leycestre, and Nothyngam þer to.
 Euerwik and Cardoel, and Norþomburlonde.
 þese schires wiþ oute Walis beþ alle in Engolonde.
 Seuentene bischopriches in Engelond beþ also.
 Cardoil, and Duram, and Euerwik þer to.
 Of Ely and of Cauntarbury, of Norþwiche, of Rouchestre,
 Of London, of Salusbury, of Chichestre, of Wynchestre,
 Of Lyncolne, and of Chestre, and of Wircestre,
 Of Herford, and of Baþe, and al so of Excestre.
 þenne þer beþ in Walis þre wiþ oute more,
 Seynt Daud, and Landap, and seþþe Bangore.
 Of Euerwik and Canterbury beþ erchbischopes two.
 Duram beþ and Cardoil vnder Euerwik y do.
 And alle þe oþer of Engolond, and al so of Walis,
 Under þe erchbischop beþ of Canterbury y wis.
 þe Saxones in heore power þo heo were so riue,
 Sene kynges heo maden in Engolonde, and seþen bute fyue.
 þe kyng of Norþomberlond, and of Est Angle al so ;
 Of Kent, and of West Sex, and of þe March þer to.
 þe kyng of þe March þilke tyme hadde wel þe beste,
 Muche del of Engolond, þe on half al bi Weste.
 Wircestre schire, and Warwik, and also of Gloucestre,
 þat ys nez al þe bischop riche of Wircestre.
 He hadde eke þer to Chesturschire, and Derbyschire also,
 And Stafford schire, þat beth alle in on bischopriche y do,

¹ L. Oxenford.

In þe bischop riche of Chestre; and zet he hadde þer to
 Schropschire som, and half Warwik schire al so.
 þis kyng hadde eke Herfortschire, þat on bischopriche is;
 Ac Schropschire naþ haluendel to þilke bischopriche i wis.
 And som of Gloucestre schire, and of Warwik schire al so.
 zet hadde þe kyng of þe March wel more lond þer to,
 Northamptschire, & Bokyngham, and þe schire of Oxenfort;
 Leycetre, and Lyncolne, and þe schire of Hertfort;
 þat is al on bischopriche, þat of Lyncolne ys,
 þat wule was at Dorchestre bi syde Oxenfort iwis.
 zet hadde þe kyng of þe March Notyngham schire þer to,
 In þe bischop riche of Euerwik, ac þo nas hit nozt so.
 And al Walis zet þer to, þat a gret lond ys:
 Al þis was þenne y cleped the March of Walis.
 For þat lond þat bi twene Homber & the water of Temese y wis
 Ich wene in þe bischop riche of Lyncolne ys.
 And þe bischop riche of Lyncolne, and bi West al þat lond,
 þe kyng som tyme of þe March hadde al in hys hond.
 þe kyng of West sex hadde þo al Wilt schire y wys,
 And Dorsete and Barkschire, þat o bischopriche is.
 þe bischopriche of Salesbury, & al Souþsex, he hadde also,
 þe welde & al þe bischopriche of Chichestre þer to.
 And Souþampschire & Soþerey, þat on bischop riche ys.
 þe bischopriche of Wynchestre, þat zet ys þere y wys.
 And Somersete, þat to Welles þike tyme drow,
 And now ys þe bischop riche of Baþe, ze wyteþ wel y now.
 Seþþe hadde þe kyng of West sex al Denene schire y wys,
 And Cornewayle, þat in þe bischopriche of Exetre ys.

þe kyng of Kent was þo kyng of al þo lond of Kent,
 þer were two bischopes, & zet nys it noȝt y went.
 þe bischoprliche of Canterbury, þat of Engeland ys hext,
 And þe bischoprliche of Roucestre, þat in the West syde is next,
 þe kyng of Est Angle kyng was of Northfolc,
 þe bischoprliche of Northwych, and al so of Soþfolc.
 And of þe bischoprliche of Ely, þat þe yle of Ely ys,
 And of al Cambrugge schire, þat þerto falleþ y wys.
 þe kyng of Northumburlonde kyng was ich vnderstonde
 Of al þo lond bi gonde Homber anon in to Scotlonde.
 þese fyue kynges were þo, ac bute on now þer nys.
 For þe kyng of West sex al þe oþer wan y wys,
 And was seþþe al one kyng, as oure kyng now ys.
 Here afturward in þis bok me schal here al þis.
 In ¹ þe contre of Canterbury mest plente of fysch ys.
 And mest ² chase a boutte Salesburi of wylde bestes y wys.
 At London schippes mest, & wyu at Wyncestre.
 At Herford schep & orf, & fruyt at Wircestre.
 Sope a boutte Couyntre, yrn at Gloucestre.
 Metel, ³ as led & tyn, in þe contre of Excestre.
 Euerwik of fairest wode, Lyncolne of fayrest men,
 Grantebrugge and Hontyndone mest plente of dup fen.
 Ely of fairest ⁴ place, of fairest sigte Roucestre.
 Euene ageyn Fraunce stonde þe contre of Chichestre,
 Norwiche ageyn Denemarc, Chestre ageyn Yrlond,
 Duram ageyn Norwei, as ich vnderstonde.

¹ *Vide* Camden's Remaines, p. 8. | ry, and wild bestes y wys *Ar.*
² Chalke at Saresbu- | ³ And *pro* as in *Ar.* ⁴ Plate *Ar.*

þre wondres þer beþ in Engolond, none more y not.
 þat water of Baþe ys þat on, þat euer ys yliche hot.
¹ And fersch & euere springe, ne be chele no so gret.
 Suche baþes þer beþ fele in þe clos & in þe stret."
 Upon þe pleyn of Salesbury þat oþer wonder ys,
 þat ² Stonhyngel ys y clepud, no more wonder nys.
 þe stones stondeþ þer so grete, no more ne mowe be,
 Euene vp ryzt & swyþe hye, þat wonder it is to se :
 And oþer liggeþ hye aboue, þat a mon may be of a ferd,
 þat vche mon wondre may how heo were first a rered.
 For noþer gyn, ny monne's strengþe, yt þynkeþ, ne myzte yt do.
 Telle me schal here afturward of þis wondres boþe two,
 And how heo were first y mad. þe þridde wonder ys
 Up þe hul of þe pek. Norþ wynd þere y wys
 Out of þe erþe ofte comeþ, of holes as yt were,
 And bloweþ vp of þilke holes, so þat yt wolde a rere
 And bere vp grete cloþes, gef heo were þer ney,
 And blowe hem here and þere vpon þe lofte on heý.
 Fayre ³ weyes monyon þer beþ in Engolonde,
 Ac foure mest of alle þer beþ ich vnderstonde,
 þat þe olde kynges mad, wer þoru me may wende
 From þe on ende of Engelond uorþ to þe oþer ende.
 From þe Souþ tilleþ in to þe Norþ ⁴ Eningestret;
 And from þe Est in to þe West Ikenildestrete.

¹ *Desunt in Ar.* ² Stonhenge
Ar. ³ *Vide Dugdalii Antiqui-*
ties of Warwickshire, p. 6. &
Ductorem nostrum Historicum,
Vol. II. p. 77. ⁴ Erming-
 street *vulgo.* *At in Ar.* lyne

pro Eningestret habemus. Sic
enim illic :

Lyne me clepeth eke thulke
 wey, he goth thorgh Glou-
 ceter,

And thorgh Circetre euene
 also,

From Douere in to Chestre tilleþ Watlingestrete,
 From Souþ Est in to Norþ West, and þat ys somdel grete.
 þe ferþe is mest of alle, þat tilleþ from Tottenais,
 From þe on ende Cornewayle anon to Catenays,
 Fro þe Norþ Est in to Souþ West in to Engelonde's ende:
 Fosse me clepuþ þike wey, þat by mony god toun doþ wende,
 So clene¹ lond ys Engolond, and so pur with outen ore,
 þat þe fairest men of þe world þer inne beþ y bore.
² So clene, and fair, & purwyt, among oþer men heo beþ,
 þat me knoweþ hem in eche lond bi sygte, where me hem seþ,
 So clene al so is þat lond, & monne's blod so pur,
 þat þe gret vnel comeþ not þer, þat me clepuþ þo³ holy fur,
 þat⁴ for" freteþ monnes lymes, rygt as heo were⁵ brende.
 Ac men of France in þilke vnel⁶ me syþ sone a mende,
 gef heo ben brougt in to Engelond: war þorw me may wyte,
 þat Engelond ys lond best, as yt is y write.

also, and thorgh Wynchestre. *Verum his de viis videsis tractatum egregium, (ab Amico doctissimo Rogero Galeo scriptum, & à nobis in VI. Volume Itinerarii Lelandi editum,) cui titulus, "An Essay towards the Recovery of the Courses of the four great Roman*

ways," ubi (p. 106.) fragmentum Roberti nostri de iisdem, ad fidem Codicis Digbeiani, exstat.

¹ A lond *Ar.* ² So clene, so whyte, so fayr of hew, among *Ar.* ³ Wilde fuyr *Ar.* ⁴ *Deest Ar.* ⁵ For brende *Ar.* ⁶ Ofte me sykþ amende *Ar.*

FRO þe by gynnyng of þe world, to þe tyme þat now is,
 Sene ages þer habbeþ y be, as sene tyme y wys.
 þe firste age & tyme was from oure firste fader Adam
 To Noe, & seþþe þo oþer from Noe to Abraham.
 þe þridde was from Habraham forte Moyses com,
 þe ferthe fro Moyses to Daudid kyndom.
 þe fyfþe was from Daudid to þe transmigracion
 Of Babilonye, & þe sixþe to þe incarnacion,
 þat is, forte God was y bore. þe sene was & ys
 From oure Lorde's burþe time to þe worlde's ende y wys.
 ' þo Adam was first y mad, & hys of spryng wex wyde,
 Heo by gonne at þe on ende of þe world, al in þe Est syde.
 Seþþe it wex wyde a boutte, fro lond to londe,
 So þat in þe þridde age it was er it come to Engelonde.
 For in þe tyme bi twene Abraham & Moyses it was,
 þat men come to Engolond, ich wol telle zou þat cas.

A Batayle þer was while in the contre of Rome,
 þe meste þat euer was, as me haþ herd y lome :
 þe bataile of Troie, þat laste fele ger.
 Mony was þe gode body, þat y slawe was þer :
 For þer nas knygt in monylonde, ny stalewarde man,
 þat in þe o syde þer was; & al for a ² wommon,

¹ After þat Adam maked
 was his ofspryng wax wyde,
 At on eynde of þe worlde hit

gan in the Est syde *Ar.*

² Womman *Ar.*

þat Elyne was y clepud, þis bataile first bi gan.
 An hey mon þer was by fore, þat me clepude Dardan.
 Of hym com þe gode Bruyt, þat was þe firste man
 þat lord was in Engelond, as y zou telle can.
 Dardan bi get Troye, þat god mon was & wys.
 Troie bi get Priamus, & al so Anchis.
 þese were in þis batail of mest myzt and mayn.
 Anchis bi get Eneas, and Eneas Ascayn.
 Ascayn bi get Silui, of whom þe Brut com.
 For Eneas aftur þe bataile Ascayn ys sone nom,
 And Silui Ascaine's sone, & oþer þat þer were,
 In to þe lond of Lumbardy wende, & wonede forþ þere.
 þo Silui hadde bi gete a child, fayn he wolde y wyte,
 What mon þat child schulde be, þat he hadde y gete.
 A clerk þoru enchantement hym bi gan to telle,
¹ þat þe schulde first fader and moder quelle :
 And seþþe he schulde mony lond ouer passe and wende,
 And mony bataile ouer come, and seþþe, at þe ende,
 To a noble lond he scholde come, & þere al lord be,
 And kynges come of hys blod, & þat me schulde se.
² þat Eneas bi gan hys of spryng to Lumbardie first brynge
 þre þousant & sixe & tuenti zer fro þo worlde's bi gynnyng.
 þo þe clerk hadde y seid hys enchaunterye,
 þer fore Silui hym let sle. ac þat was lytel maistrie.

¹ þat þat childe sholde furst <i>Ar.</i> ² þre þousend yer and foure skor fram the worlde's gynnyng Was, byfore þat Eneas hys tem to Itaille	þus gan brynge. þo þis clerk hadde y sed al hys enchaun- terye, Siluius let hym sle, litel was þat maistrye. <i>Ar.</i>
--	--

For hit com ner þe later, as he hadde y seyð.
 For ¹ in trauayl of hys beryng hys moder was first ded.
 þo þis child was y bore, me lette hym clepe ² Bruyt.
 First lord he was in Engolond, of wham me spekeþ get.
 þe child wex & wel þrof, as þe clerk seyde er.
 Seþþe þo yt hadde þe elde of fyftene ger,
 As he wolde schete an hert, al a geyn hys wille
 To deþe he schet ys owne fader, þat he lay þer stille.
 Hit hym for þougte sore y now, ac noþeles get he was
 Out of þat lond ydriue for þat deolful cas.
 In to þe lond of Grece he wende, ⁴ & þo wonede he þere
 Of þe kynde of Priamus mony men, þat þor were,
 þat wer þer of hys nexte blode, þat were þer in seruage.
 Here elderne þer by fore were y nome in ostage
 Fram þe bataile of Troie, in wreche as it were,
 For þe grete slaugt and wo, þat here kynde dude þere.
³ þe Bruyt among hem com, to such prowes he drow,
 þat ⁶ al þe kyn, þat hym say, hadde of him joye ynow.
 So þat at þe laste, þo he ⁷ in stat was,
 And þem þougte, þat ys pere in þe world nas,
 þe folc of þat ilke blode aboutein hym drowe faste,
 þat he scholde ys owne kynde of þat seruage caste.
⁸ Heo comen alle a bouten hym, so þat þe Brut y sey,
 þat heo were of gret power, & noble folc & hey,

¹ In trauail as he was bore, his moder was þo deed *Ar. è regione vero (in margine) manu recentiori*, his mother dyed in childe bede. ² Brut *Ar.* ³ Yut *Ar.* ⁴ And þenne

fond he þere *Ar.* ⁵ þo þat Brut *Ar.* ⁶ Al his kyn, þat wisten hit, þer of had ioye y now *Ar.* ⁷ Manne's stat *Ar.* ⁸ Hy come al a bouten hym, & whanne hem alle he sey,

Heo Ʒarkedē hem to gedere, þat a fair ost yt was.
 To þe kyng of Grece he sende, þat hatte Pandras,
 þat heo scholde so noble folc, þat of so gret blod come,
 Out of seruage lete, and out of þraldome,

¹ Or hym ne schulde not wondry, þaj heo dude here mygt
 With here bodies, þat agte be so free, for to wynne here rygt.
 þo kyngē hadde in hys þogt gret² bysmar of þis þyng.

Bellum.

He³ Ʒarkedē is ost anon, to grounde hem to bryng.
 þis Brut a Ʒeyn hym with ys ost wel wyssyche drowe.

⁴ Heo smyton þer a batayle hard and strong ynow.
 þe prowes þat þe Brute dude no tonge no telle ne maȳ,
 Mony was þe gode body þat hym self slou þat daȳ.

Capcio
regis.

What halt yt longe to telle? Hys fon he ouercom,
 And Pandras, þe stronge kyng, as⁵ pryson he nom.

þis kyng þo he was y nome, here wille dude anon,
⁶ And brogte hem out of þraldom, þo he say non oþer won.
 He by gan to loue Brut so mucche, for ys faire cheiance,
 þat he wyllede, mest of alle þyngē, to hym enlyance.

“ Brut,” he seyde, “ þo art now þe beste body þat ys.

“ For þe noble kyn, of wom þou art, & for þi prowes y wis,

“ Ych obligi me to þe, and my kyndom al so.

“ A doȳter ich haue of gret prys, & noble & god al so,

“ Y Ʒeue here þe to þi wyf, &, Ʒef þou wolt by leue here,

“ þe þridde del⁷ my kyndom y Ʒeue þe to be my fere.

Hȳm þoughte he hadde power
 ynow of noble folk & hey. He
 gaderede hem alle to gedere
 faste, a fayr oste þer was *Ar.*

¹ Oþer hym ne sholde nought
 wondry, þough hy, for hure
 ryht, Wiþ hure bodies make

hem fre dude þer to hure
 myght *Ar.* ² Skorne *Ar.* ³ Or-
 deyned *Ar.* ⁴ Hy *Ar.* ⁵ Pri-
 soner *Ar.* ⁶ þo he non oþer
 bote y sey, he yaff hem hure
 fredom *Ar.* ⁷ Of my *Ar.*

“ And

“ And gef þou nylt not here be, ac wolt get fonde more,
 “ Gold & seluer ich wol þe geue, & y now of eche store :
 “ And take ¹ þe my dogter: for mon þou art y wys,
 “ To wynne get a kyndom, wel beter þan myn ys.
 þis kyng & þe Brut were at on, þat to wyf he tok
 Hys dogter Innogen, ac hys lond he for sok.
² þe kyng tok Brut ys owne body, in ostage as yt were,
 For te hit were to gedere y brogt al þat ³ he wolde a rere.
 He lette sende hys messageres in to al Grece wel wyde,
 And ⁴ lette fulle corn, and oyl, & wyn, by ⁵ iche syde.
⁶ Me chargede þre hondret schippes, & foure & twenti þer to,
 þer wyþ, & mid al oþer god þat mygt þer inne do.
 þo þis schippes gare were, and ful of ⁷ ruche gode,
 And þis mayde y spoused was of so ⁸ riche blode ;
 þe kyng de lyuerede þat folk out of seruage,
 And Brut de liuerede þe kyng out of hys ostage,
 And nom hys leue fayre of hym, and þonkede hym all gode,
 And nom with hym al þat folk, þat he fond þer of hys blod,
 And hys wyf Innogen, and to schip wende,
⁹ Heo nuste toward wuche lond, but as God hem sende.
 þe deol þat made Innogen, no tonge ne telle ne may.
 Heo cryede and wep with sorwe y now, & ofte y swone lay.
¹⁰ þo ho wende from al hire kyn, & from al þing þat heo knew,
 And nuste on erþe whiderward, bute as the wynd hem blew,
 And wiste þat heo ne schulde neuer a geyn com ny go,
 Ne se fader, ny oþer kyn, lord ! þat hire was wo ?

Sponsacio
Innogen.Recessus
Bruti.

¹ To þe my daughter, for noble þou ert and wys, *Ar.*

Ar. ⁵ Euery *Ar.* ⁶ He *Ar.*

² þe kyng to Brut his body

⁷ Eche *Ar.* ⁸ Heygh *Ar.*

toke, *Ar.* ³ Hy *Ar.* ⁴ Het

⁹ þey *Ar.* ¹⁰ When sheo

⁴ Het

wende *Ar.*

Brut hire cluppede and cussede, & comfortede hire y now,
² þat he ne myȝte hire herte change, þat heo to sore ne drow.
 Twey dayes ² heo wende in þe se fro the lond of Grece,
³ So þat he comen to an yle, þat me clepuþ Leogece.
 Þider ⁴ heo gonne ryue, and Brut sende vp þere
 þre hondred men y armed wel, to loke wat lond yt were.
 Þis men wende a boutte wyde, & mon fonde ⁵ heo non,
 Bute faire contre & wylde bestes mony on.
 A temple ⁶ heo fonde faire y now, & a mawmed a midde,
⁷ þat ofte tolde wonder gret, & wat þing mon bi tidde.
 Þis men of þis wylde bestes caȝte & schete y nowe,
 And to a store hem of mete faste to schip drowe.
⁸ Of the mamet heo tolden Brut, þat heo fonden þere.
 And he nom with him tuelue men þe beste þat with him were,
 And a clerk þat kouþe enchantement, & to þis temple drowe,
 And offrede to þis mamet, and ⁹ honourede hym ynowe,
¹⁰ And ¹¹ forte wyte in what stude hys wonyng were.
 þo he hadde hys bone y do, he fel on slepe ryȝt þere.
 Hym þouȝte þe ymage in hys slep tolde hym hys chance.
 " Brut," he saide, " passe uorþe al þe lond of France
 " West, toward þike stude as þe sonne draweþ aȝen eue.
 " þer þou schalt fynden a place ¹² god in to byleue.

¹ He ne myȝhte hure sorwe
 slake nought, to sorwe so heo
 drow *Ar. omisso* þat. ² He
 saileyde *Ar.* ³ Fort he come
 to *Ar.* ⁴ þey *Ar.* ⁵ Hy *Ar.*
⁶ Hy *Ar.* ⁷ þat Dyane god-
 esce cleped was, and tolde ofte

what bi tydde *Ar.* ⁸ Of þat
 godesce hy tolde Brut, þat hy
Ar. ⁹ Worsheped *Ar.* ¹⁰ *O.*
mittit Ar. ¹¹ Forto *Ar.* ¹²
 Good and fair inne to byleue
Ar.

“ An yle god & riche y nowe, þe se goth al a boutē :
 “ Wule þat lond was y fulled with ¹ geandes strong & proude.
 “ And now yt ys as a wildernessē, for no mon þer inne nys.
 “ To þe it wole be god and riche, & to alle þyne y wys.
 “ And yt worþ an oþer Troie to þe, and so god,
 “ þat þer schul kynges come & springe of þi blod.
 þo Brut a wok of hys slep, & al þis vnder stod,
 Hys men he tolde al þis cas with wel ² bliþe mod.
 Heo ȝarkedē hem & wendē uorþ, þe wynd was god y noȝ,
 So þat toward þe West here schippes euene drowȝ.
 So þat ³ with þritty dayes to Affric heo come,
⁴ And arst heo wende vp on þe lond, & fette hem prey y lome,
 And foȝte & slowe muche folk, for no mon hem at stod.
 From Affric þei wente uorþ with the wynd þat was god.
 So þat heo fōden in a stude here kynrede bi cas
⁵ Of noble mon Hercules, þat wyle of Troie was.
 Corineus hatte here souereyn, þat so strong was of honde,
 þat hym ne myȝte no mon ne geant at stonde.
 þo þis folc to gadere com, and Brut Corineus fond
 þo strengest mon & þe meste þat hym þoȝte in eny lond,
⁶ Heo a coyntede hym a non, and bi comen frendes gode,
 Boþe for here prowes, and for heo were of on blode.
 þo þis company was strong, & more þan hit was er,
 Al in on company heo wendē uorþ þer
 In þe see with god wynd, so þat at þe laste
 In to þe on ende of Gasycone þe wynd here schippes caste.

¹ Geauntz ferce & proute | a londe, and hure preye nome
Ar. ² Joyful *Ar.* ³ Byþynne | *Ar.* ⁵ Of þe noble *Ar.* ⁶ Hy
Ar. ⁴ And þer hy wende eft | a queyntede *Ar.*

Corineus þis stronge mon to hondred men with hym nom,
 And wende ¹ on lond to honty þo he to lond com,
² Forte purchase hem mete, and þe kyng Goffare
 (þat was kyng of þe lond) þo he was ware,
 þat such folk was y armed (as me seyde) & ryuen vp hys lond,
 And nuste wat folk it was, to hem he sende hys sonde,
 To wyte, weþer ³ he wold pes, oþer ³ heo nolde non.
 þe messageres ⁴ þei wenden uorþ metten hem ech on.
 Corineus with hys company as heo dude honte þere,
 Heo aschede at Corineus, how heo so hardi were,
 To honte vp þe kynges' lond, bute he leue hem geue.
 Corineus saide, þat he nolde nomon asche leue,
 To ⁵ honto and to wynne hys mete, & habbe solas & game.
 þe maister of þe messageres (⁶ Imberd was ys name)
⁷ Bende ys bowe & schette a non to Corineus to gronde.
 Corineus tok hys bowe of hym, & smot hym a wonde
 A bouen on þe scolle with ys owne bowe a non,
 þat þe scolle to breke in peses mony on.
 Hys felawes þo heo say þis bi gonne to fle echon,
 And tolde þe kyng fore how the game was al igon.
 þe kyng ⁸ made hym wroȝ y now, & no wonder yt was,
 þat strange men in hys owne londe dude hym such trespas,
 þat a sailede ys loud, and to robbery drowe,
 And robbede ys bestes and ys game, and hys men slowe.

¹ Up to hunty *Ar.* ² Forto
Ar. ³ Hy *Ar.* ⁴ As hy
 wende forþ mette hem *Ar.*
⁵ *L.* honte. ⁶ Hymbert *Ar.*
⁷ I ende þis bowe to shete

hym, & Corneus in þat stounde.
 Bynam Hymbert his bowe
 anon, & ryght hym one wounde
 Right euene vpon þe skulle *Ar.*
⁸ Hym made wroþ ynow, *Ar.*

Bellum.

He wende with al ys power, and sailede hem a non.
 And Brut & Corineus ¹ prest were, and here men echon ;
 And smyten a batail so strong, þat no tonge telle may
 þat folk, þat þer was y slawe on eyþer side þat day.
 Corineus ys ² swert some brac, so strong he smot & faste.
 For no swerd myzte with ys dunt none lengur laste.
 Mid hym he hadde a stronge axe, þat mony mon brogte to deþe,
 So strong & so gret, þat an oþer hit scholde hebbe vn neþe.
 Corineus þer with harde smot & sturede ³ hym a boutte,
 And made his wey bi eiþer syde, and percede þe route.
 Mid þre hondred knyghtes a duk, þat liet Siward,
 A sailede Corineus hymself ⁴ a forward.
 He smot Corineus harde y noȝ, þat he hit sore felde,
 And ȝet he hente þe stroc muche del vp on þe schelde.
 Corineus was þo somdel wroþ, ys axe on hey he drow,
 And smot hym vpon þe hed mid god ernest y now,
⁵ And for clef al þat hed, & the bodi a non to gronde.
 þo myzte Siward segge, þat he hadde ys ⁶ is" pere y fonde,
 þo Corineus ⁷ was alles wroþ, so grete strokes he ȝaf,
 þat þe body of eche þat he smot or þe hed he to clef,"
 Oþer he smot of þe ⁸ arm, or þe hond, or þe heued :
 No lym þat he smot ⁹ mid þe bodi bi leued.
 Amty place he made a boutte, ¹⁰ & folc fleu hym faste.
 A wonder maister ¹¹ he was on, þat hem so kowþe a gaste.

¹ A redy were, to meten hem
 echon *Ar.* ² Swerd *Ar.* ³ Hym
 swyþe aboute *Ar.* ⁴ Al a
 voreward *Ar.* ⁵ He for cleu-
 ede al þat heued, his body fel
 to gronde *Ar.* ⁶ *Redundat.*
⁷ Was forsoþ so wroþ, þat

such dundes he yaf, þat euery
 þat he hitte aright, his deþ
 forsoþ he haþ *Ar.* ⁸ Eren
Ar. ⁹ Was wiþ *Ar.* ¹⁰ þe
 folk fleygh fulfaste *Ar.* ¹¹ þere
 he was, þat hem *Ar.*

So faste he slow of þis men, and to gronde caste,
 þat þe kyng with a fewe men hymself flew at þe laste.
 þo þe batail was y do, Brut and þis Corineus
 A storede hem a bout of richesse and chateus,
 Of corn, of wyn, of alle god, & to schippe faste drowe,
 And brende þe contre, and þe folc faste slowe.
 þo heo hadde al bare imad þe contre al aboute,
 And ¹ heo wel y stored, of noþing þei were in doute ;
 Heo wende to schip anon, & euene gonne dryue
 To þe contrei of Toures, & þere þei gonne a riue.
 A fair place heo cheson hem, & þere heo gonne a rere
 Walles wyde and strong ynow, casteles as hit were,
 And a storede hit wel y now, & here god þer inne bere,
 For to a bide þe kyng, ȝef he wolde a sayle hom þere.
 þe kyng Goffar þiderward gret power and ost nom
 Of France and of oþer londes, and toward Toures come.
 þo ² heo seye þe grete walles, casteles as it were,
 Ou ! he seide, þe grete despit, þat y se to me here,
 þat ³ þis file and komelynges casteles leteþ rere
 Op on my lond baldeliche, as me for to a fere.
 Ne doþ heo me schame ynoȝ. how myȝte heo do more ?
 Bute y be þer of a wreke, y schal dye for sore.
 For Gode's loue, staleworþe men, armeþ ȝou faste,
 To sle þese komlynges, and here casteles a doun caste.
 þis folc hem armede anon, and baneres gonne rere,
 And departede here ost in twolf partyes þere.

¹ Hem self *pro* heo *in* *Ar.* ² He *Ar.* ³ þese foule kemelynges
Ar.

Brut ordeynede ys ost, and sette hem wyslyche,
 And with god herte a zeyn þe folc wende baldeliche.
 þere heo smyton a batail, harde and strong ynow,
 And þis folc of Troie of þe Frensche faste slow,
 ze two þousand and mo in a lytul stonde,
 So þat þe Frenche were nez y brougt to gronde.
 And napeles here ¹ferd wax faste a boutte wyde,
 For heo hadde suche þritti men, as were on þe ²oþer.
 For here power and here ost wax euere so faste,
 þat þis gode folk of Troie ouer come were at þe laste,
 And flow into here casteles, þo heo nadde oþer won.
 þe ost withoute of France bi segede hem a non,
 And bi lai hem so faste, þat nez to gronde hem brogte.
 So þat Brut and Corineus an quoyntyse hem by þogte,
³ þat þis Corineus bi nyzt wende out with gret route
 At a posterne stilleliche, þat heo nuste it not with oute.
 A morwe Brut with inne with ys ost out drowe,
 And smot with þis Frensche men batayle strong y now,
 þere were mony þousand ⁴slawe in a stonde.
 Brut hadde a ⁵neueu, þat mony brogte to gronde.
 For he slow mid his power, and ⁶brogte to schame,
 Six hondred, as me seiþ, ⁷Tourus was ys name.
 At þo last he was hym self y slawe, þer was deol y nowz.
 þo þe batail was ney y do, Corineus uorþ hym drowz.
 With six þousant noble men, out of an wode þere,
 And com vp þis Frenssche men, þo heo al weri were,

Bellum.

¹ Ost *Ar.* ² *Adde*, syde. | ⁴ A slawe in a litel stounde
³ þat þis Corneus sholde out | *Ar.* ⁵ Cosyn *Ar.* ⁶ Broughte
 wende by nyghte wiþ *Ar.* | eke to *Ar.* ⁷ Tours *Ar.*

And

And slow hem to gronde al for noȝt, so þat at þe laste,
 Heo, þat myȝte of scape, bi gone to fle faste :
 And heo of Troye siwede with oute eny feyntyse,
 For wen þe strengþe faileþ, me mot take quoyntyse.
¹ þe Brut and Corineus hadde here wýlle of þis þing,
 Heo lette here men, þat were y slawe, faire on erþe bryng.
 And Tours þe gode knyȝt, þat so muche folc er slowȝ,
 Brut lette brynge on erþe with honoure y nowȝ,
 And lette a fair tabernacle in honour of hym rere,
 And fair hous al abouten hym, & bi gan þe cite þere,
 þat noble cite was and ys, and for Tours þat þer lay
 þe cite me clepede Tours, as me doþ zet to þis day.

BRUT & Corineus þo he hade here wille in al þe londe,
 He ² wende & saide al a boutē, for noþing myȝte hem at stonde.
 Heo chargede here schippes faste and wel with alle gode,
 And wende uorþ with god wynd & wel dryuyng flode ;
 And driue euer West ward, so þat in god pais
 Heo come here to Engolond to ³ hauene of Tottenais,
 To þe on ende of Engolond, as in þe West Souþe,
⁴ A lute bi fore Cornewail, as in an hauene's mouþe.
 þis was þre þousant, and foure score, and þre ȝer
 From þat þo world was first mad, þat ⁵ þat" heo ariuede þer.

¹ þo *Ar.* ² Wende a boutē
 & preyede faste, ne myȝt hem
 nought astonde *Ar.* ³ þe ha-
 uene *Ar.* ⁴ A lyte by Norþe

Cornewaille, in Deueneshire
 lit is couþ. Hit was þre þou-
 sand *Ar.* ⁵ *Redundat.*

And er God were y bore euene yt was al so
 1 Ellene hondred ȝer and þritti ȝer and two.
 þus com to Engelond þe firste men y wis,
 þat euere wonede in Engelond, þat were Brut & hys,
 þo Brut and his men þus come first a londe,
 Heo wende a boutte wyde þe 2 contreis forto fonde.
 Gret plente heo fonde of fisch, as heo wente, by þe weye,
 Of wodes and of riuers, as is in þe contrey.
 Lond heo fonde god y now to tilie, and alle god,
 So þat 3 to bi leue þer here herte fel and stod.
 4 Heo fonden a vewe geandes, for broide men as yt were.
 In to Cornewaile heo driue hem, in to olde diches þere.
 Heo howsede and bulde faste, and erede and sewc,
 So þat in lutel while gode cornes hem grew.
 Corn & fruyt hem wex ynow, & fisch ynow þei fonde,
 And of flesch, so þat heo were riche y now in astonde.
 Bruyt bad Corineus forto chese of eche contre ywis,
 Wuch hym were leuest to habbe to hym and to hys.
 Cornewaile hym likede best, þefore he ches þere
 To hym and to hys ospryng, 5 & for þer geandes were."
 For he willed to fyȝte with geandes, & do hem schame.
 þat londe he clepude Cornewaile, aftur hys owne name,
 Cornewaile aftur Corineus, and in þis maner y wys
 Corineus bi wan Cornewaile, to hym and to hys.

Gigantes.

Corineus
elegit Cor-
nubiam.

1 Eneleuene hundred hit was, & þrytty yer þer to (omisso two) in *Ar.* 2 Contrey *Ar.* 3 þer to byleue hure | hertes wel stood *Ar.* 4 Ge-
 aunes a fewe hy fonde her, vnmete men as hit were *Ar.* 5 þe Geaunes to a fere *Ar.*

Brut huld to hym Engeland, he ne durste ¹ hym not playne,
 And aftur Brut ys owne ² nome he clepede hit Breteyne.
 Brytones me clepude alle men þat were of Engeland,
 As me clepede hem longe seþþe ³ for to now late ich vnder-
 stonde."

Gogmagog. **G**OGGOMAGOG was a geand swiþe grete and strong.

A boute four & twenti fet me seiþ he was long.

A gret ok he wolde ⁴ breide a doun, as it a smal ȝerde were,
 And bere forth in his hond, ⁵ þat folc forte a fere.

He com with twenti geandes, and a sailede Brut faste.

Brut with ys power slow þis geandes at þe laste,

Alle bute Gogmagog, for hym ne slow he noȝt;

For he schulde with Corineus wrastele he hadde y þouȝt.

⁶ So þat Corineus and he to gedere were y broȝt,

Luctacio. þe wrastolyng bi twene hem was som del toȝt.

þer was mony a strong breid, so þat ribbes þer

þe geant brek of Corineus, as me myȝte þer y se.

In þe rigt syd two, and in þe list syde on.

þo was Corineus somdel worþ, he sterede hym a non,

And gripte þis geant, and to an hey roche hym drow,

þat stod a boue þe see an hey, & þer a doun hym ⁷ slow.

So þat he was al to raced pecemel in a stonde,

Eche lym from oþer, among þe roches, er he com to gronde.

¹ Hym no þyng playne *Ar.* | ⁴ Braye a doun *Ar.* ⁵ þe folk
² Name *Ar.* ³ Fort Saxo- | alto a fere *Ar.* ⁶ þo *Ar.*
 nes gonne hit fonde *Ar.* | ⁷ Flough *Ar.*

þat Corineus was al one lord of Cornewaile þo.
 Wan þe geandes were alle y slawe, þat þer bi leuede no mo,
 Brut wende forþ into Engolond, and aspiede vp and doun
 For to seche an ese place, to make an heued toun.
 He com and fond al vp Temese a place fair y now,
 In god contre & plenteus, þat is herte muche to drog,
 þat 'þe" schippes miȝte from eche lond bryng ² to' god ywis.
 þer he rerede hys heued toun, þat London i clepud is :
 Ac so ne clepude he yt noȝt, bute þe Newe Troie.
 þer habbeþ kynges and moni oþer ofte y be in ioie.
 Brut þis noble prince sones hadde þre
 By hys wyf Innogen, noble men and fre :
 Locryn, and Kamber, and Albanak al so.
 At þe laste dyede Brut, þo al þis was y do,
 Aftur þat he com to Engelond in þo four & twentife ger.
 Y buryed he was at London, þat he lette first rere.
 þis lond was deled a þre among þre sones y wys,
 Bi West Seuerne Kamber hadde, and so al Walis.
 Albanak bi ȝonde Homber : ac Locryn hadde best
 Al out that lond bi twene hem, fro þe Est to þe West.
 For þat he was eldeste, me lokede hym best by rigt.
 þese were as þre kynges, and men of muche myȝte.
 þe kyng of Hungri ³ seþþe com, Homber was ys name,
 In to Scotlond to werre, and do Albanak schame,
 And werrede vp hym faste, and at the laste hym slog.
 þo Locryn herde þis, sore he wes y noȝ.
 After hys broþer Camber hasteliche he sende,
 And boþe with gret ost to ward the kyng wende.

Incepicio
Londini.Obitus
Bruti.

Bellum.

¹ Deest Ar. ² Deest Ar. ³ Sup Ar.

He smýte a batail strong ynow (ne strengor mygte be)
 So þat Homber kyng of Hungri ¹ seþþe bi gan to fle
 In to a gret water þer, & a dreynt hym self with schame ;
 þar fore me clepude þat Water þo Homber, aftur hys name,
 As me deþ zet, and euer more wole, for þe cas
 þat Homber, kyng of Hungri, þer ynne a dreynt was.
 þo Locryn hadde al his wille, he a storede wel ys lond
 Mid Homber kynges's god, þat ² me of hys fond.
 þo fond ³ he þre damyseles, gent and fair ynowz,
 þat Homber with hym brogte, to þe on ys herte drow,
 þat was of hem cheuenteyn, and þe kynges's dogter was
 Of Germanie, as hym þougte, in þe World hire pere nas,
 So whit, ne of such colour, ny in eche maner so gent.
 Kyng Locryne's herte was al clene vp hire y went,
 And tok hire forþ with hym mid gret honour y nowz,
 And þogte hire to spouse, so ys herte to hire droz.
 Ac Corineus, duk of Cornewaile, ⁴ wroz y now was
 Toward kyng Locryn, þo he herde þis cas.
 For he hadde hym a forward hys dogter hadde to wyue,
 Hys gret axe he nom in hys hond, & to hym ⁵ hyede bi lyue.
 His axe þo he to hym com, so grisliche he schok & faste,
 þat þe kyng quakede & ys men, so sore heo were a gaste.
 " Sei (he seide) Locryn, wat þenkestow for to do ?
 " þenkestow me Corineus to bi traye so ?
 " Hast þou for zete þe gret wo, and þe mony harde wonde,
 " þat ich hadde y þoled for þi fader, & ⁶ þe" mony ⁷ luþer stonde,

¹ Sone *Ar.* ² He *Ar.* | *Ar.* ⁵ yede as blyue *Ar.*
³ Men *pro he in Ar.* ⁴ Wroth | ⁶ Deest *Ar.* ⁷ Wicked *Ar.*

“ For to wynne hym lond & zou, and þou hast now forsake

“ My dogter, þat schulde be þi wif, & to a kemelyng take?

“ þou ne schalt (bi hym þat made ¹ me) of scapie so lygte,

“ þe while þer ys in my rygt hond eny strengþe & mygte;

“ And while y may þer wyt myn hond axe vp drawe,

“ Wher with ich habbe geandes mony on y slawe.

He bi gan to schake ys axe, for to smyte anon,

Ac knyghtes criede, & zede bi twene hem mony on.

So þat þo kyng Locryn vnder fong wel fayn

And sponse²de hys dogter, that hette Guendoleyn,

And ³ dude al his wille, (for he lokede so ⁴ rowe,) Sponsacio
filie Cori-
nei.

More for eye þan for loue, (mony mon serueþ howe)

And nozt for þan þat oþer maide he louede more y now,

Astrild hire name was, and more to hire he drow.

He made hire vnder erþe a wonyng coynteliche,

And huld hire þer to his wylle longe priuiliche,

And drow to hire wan he wolde, þat no mon yt nuste,

Bute it were eny priue mon, þat hys priuite al wyste.

Whan he wolde to hire go, to hys mayne he seyde,

þat he wolde to his Godes his ofryng lede,

⁵ And þat he hadde, to honoure hem, a priue stude þere,

To sacrificise to his Goddes, þat moni war nere.

Segge he wolde eke al so to þe Quene ys spouse,

“ And noþeles such sacrificise y ne kepte not at myn howse?”

¹ Me) a scapy *Ar.* ² Cor-
neus *pro hys in Ar.* ³ Dude
tho al Corneus wille, *Ar.*
⁴ Rough *Ar.* ⁵ And that he
hadde made a vow, to do a
sacrifice Priueliche to his God,

as he gan hym deuuse. Segge
he wolde right al thus to his
owene spouse, “ These wiues
“ suche sacrifice loueth at hure
“ owene house.” So longe
Ar.

So longe he dude ys sacrificise, and pleide such game,
 þat he hadde a dozter, ¹ Auerne was hire name.
 And þe Quene hadde al so in ² spushed bi gete
 A sone, þat hette Madan, as it is ³ y writon.
⁴ Sone so þe quene fader Corineus was ded,
 þe kyng hadde þer aftur wel sone y nome red.
 He for sok is wyf al out, and Astrild made quene.
 He ne dradde nogt þo ⁵ that handaxe, as it was y sene.
 þo wende þe quene forþ to Cornewail a non,
 And ⁶ zonge stalworþe men gederede mony on.
⁷ þat poer al þat was hire fader, & also of Engelonde,
 So þat heo hadde sone gret power on honde,
 And grot ost made and strong, and vp the kyng sette,
⁸ And þe kyng al so a zeyn hire, so þat heo hem mette,
 And a batail vp Stour smite strong y now,
 And þere þe quene folk þe kyng Locryn slow,
 And mucche of his folk eke bute hem þat flowe.
 So þat ⁹ a luther beuerage to here bi hosþe þei browe.
 þo kyng myzte segge er þe while he was aliuie,
 þat in a luther time he striuede with his wyue.
 zef alle ¹⁰ lufþer holers were y serued so,
 Me schulde fynde þe les such spouse bruche do.
 Ellene hundred zer þis kyng was þus bi fore
 And ¹¹ eygte zer y slawe er God were y bore.

¹ Sabrene *Ar.* & *in marg.* (*à manu recenti*) Sabine.

² Spushed *Ar.* ³ Y write *Ar.*

⁴ So sone so the quene's *Ar.*

⁵ The *pro þat in Ar.* ⁶ yonge *Ar.* ⁷ Al the power that was

hure fadere's, and mucche of

Engelonde, *Ar.* ⁸ The kyng also a yentst hure, so hy to gederes mette, *Ar.* ⁹ A foul beuerechē to hure byhoue they brough *Ar.* ¹⁰ Foule holers *Ar.* ¹¹ xviii. *Ar.*

þo was þis sturne wommon Guendolyn þe quene
 Kyng y mad in þis maner, for heo was som del keuc.
 Astrilde hire bedsuster (hire lorde's concubine)
 And hire dogter ¹ Auerne heo let nime atte fine,
 And drenche boþe two in þe water of Seuerne.
 And for yt was hire lorde's dogter þat mayde ² Auerne,
 And for honour of hire lord, and for heo was of hys kynde,
 Heo wolde þat hire name were euer more in mynde,
 And lette clepe þat water aftur ³ Auerne,
 And seþþe þorȝ diuerse tonge me clepede hit Seuerne,
 And deþ a letre þer to, and no more y wys.
 In þis maner þike water Seuerne y clepud is.
 Guendolyn was kyng fiftene ȝer þo.
 And hire lord was kyng bi fore hire ten ȝer, & no mo.
⁴ And Madan here sone fourti ȝer, þilke tyme þat Samuel Samuel.
 þe prophete wardede þat folk of Israel.
 Meynpris, Madane's sone, kyng was tuenti ȝer,
⁵ þe kyng Saul was of Ysrael kyng, and non er. Saul;
 þis was (as me may in bok rede and se)
 Ar God were bore a þousand ȝer, and fourscore & þre.
⁶ Ebran, Meynprise's sone, sixti ȝer was kyng.
 He made þe toun of Euerwik, þat strong ys in alle þyng,

¹ Sabrene *Ar.* ² Sabrene, *Ar.* ³ Sabrene, *Ar.* ⁴ Ma-
 dan hure sone kyng was tho
 fourty yer ech del, In pro-
 phete's tyme Samuel that
 wardede Israel *Ar.* ⁵ Whan
 that Saul of Israel was kyng,
Ar. ⁶ Ebrac, Mempris

is sone, sixty yer was kyng.
 He bygan Ebrac wik atte
 bigynnyng. And suth me
 clepeth Euerwike this ilke
 toun y wis, And York
 also, thorgh light speche, y
 hote also hit is. After þis
 kyngus name his name hit

David
rex.

And, aftur his namé Ebran, Euerwik clepede it wel,
þat tyme Daud was kyng in Yrael.

Brut ys sone þrottene kyng was, and no mo.

And ¹ Leir kyng ² fyue and twenti ȝer Brutesone was þo.

alomon.

And he rerde þo toun of Leycetre, & nempede yt owne name,

þo þat Salamon þe wyse (mon of gret fame)

Kyng was of ³ Irael, þat kyng Daud sone was,

þat made þe temple of Jerusalem, such temple ner nas.

⁴ Leile's sone þritti ȝer kyng was ⁵ and fyue' al so.

He rerde first Canterburi, and Wynchestre þer to.

⁶ Bapulf his sone aftur hym kyng was twenti ȝer.

He bi gan þe toun of Bape, and ⁷ þo hote bapes ⁸ þer

In þe veynes of þe water, as yt doþ vp walle.

He lette close ⁹ fuyr in metal quoynteliche withalle,

þat as ¹⁰ þo water comeþ þer bi þer it cacheþ hete.

þat metal ys now y turned into roches grete,

þat beþ euer y liche ¹¹ hoto, & þo water þer of al so.

And eke þoru enchaument yt was first y do.

For þe kyng Bapulf, þat yt made, gret enchanter was,

And þat hym myzte ¹² seþþe rewe, ich wol telle þat cas.

For þat me schulde ys chaument y se,

He lette hym make wyngon, an hey for to fle.

hym by fel. This was whan
Daud kyng regned in Israel.
Brut gronshild, his sone, aftur
hym tho Regned her in Euge-
lond xxx. yer and mo *Ar.*

¹ Leil *Ar.* ² xv. yer *Ar.*

³ Israel *Ar.* ⁴ Lo his sone
Ar. sed Rudhudibras dicitur

aliis. 5 Omittit Ar. 6 Bladuf
Ar. 7 þe Ar. 8 Potest etiam
itu distingui, ut periodus post
þer, comma vero post walle,
ponatur. 9 Fure and metal
Ar. 10 þe Ar. 11 Hote Ar.
¹² *Suth Ar.*

And

And þo he was y flowe an hey, & ne cowþe not a ligte,
 A doun mid so gret eir to þe erþe he fel and pigte,
 þat al to peses he to rof, þat beter hym hadde ybe
 Haue bi leued þer doune, þan y lerned for to fle.

¹ þis þilke tyme þat þe prophete Elye

Tempus
Ely.

In ² Israel prophete was, and ³ in oure Lord bi gan to crie,
 þat þer ne schulde þre ȝer ⁴ ny six moneþes þer to
⁵ No reyn no come on erþe, and yt bi fel al so.

AFTUR kyng ⁶ Baþulf, Leir ys sone was kyng,

And regned ⁷ sixti ȝer wel þoru alle þyng.

Up þe water of ⁸ Soure a cite of gret fame

He ⁹ endede, & clepede yt Leicestre, aftur ys owne name.

þre doȝtren þis kyng hadde, þe eldeste ¹⁰ Gornorille,

þe mydmost hatte Regan, þe ¹¹ ȝongost Cordeille.

þe fader hem louede alle ynog, ac þe ¹¹ ȝongost mest :

For heo was best and fairest, & to hautenesse drow lest.

þo þe kyng to elde com, alle þre he broȝte

Hys doȝtren to fore hym, to wyte of here þouȝte.

For he þoȝte hys kyndom ¹² dele among hem þre,

¹³ And lete hem þer with spousi wel whare he myȝte bi se.

To þe eldest he seide first, “ Doȝter ich bidde þe

“ Sey me al clene þin herte, how muche þou louest me.”

“ Myn heye Godes,” quof þis mayde, “ to wytnesse I take echon,

“ þat y loue more in myn herte þi leue bodi one,

¹ This was in thulke tyme

Ar. ² Israel *Ar.* ³ On *Ar.*

⁴ Ne *Ar.* ⁵ Reyn non in

erthe come, and aftur hit fel

so *Ar.* ⁶ Bladuth *Ar.* ⁷ xxx.

ȝer *Ar.* ⁸ Sore *Ar.* ⁹ Rerde,

and clepede *Ar.* ¹⁰ Gono-

rille, *Ar.* ¹¹ Yongeste *Ar.*

¹² To dele *Ar.* ¹³ And eke

forto wedde hem wel wher he

myȝte by se *Ar.*

“ þan myn soule and my lyf, þat in my bodi ys.

þo fader was þo glad y now whan he herde þis.

“ My leue dogter,” he seide þo, “ for ¹ þou hast in loue y do.

“ Myn olde lyf by fore þis, and bi fore þi soule al so.

“ Ych wol þe marie wel with þe þridde part of my londe

“ To þe noblest bacheler, þat þyn lierte wol to stonde.

þo oþer dogter he aschede þo þat same askyng.

“ Sire,” quod heo, “ ² bi hye Godes, Lordes of alle þyng,

“ Y loue more þi leue lyf þan al þat in þe world ys.

“ And þei al þe world were myn, & al þe richesse ywys,

“ Al and eke myn owne lyf leuer ich hadde lese,

“ þan þi lyf, þat me is so lef, gef y myzte chese.

þe fader was þo glad y now, and bad hire vnderstonde,

To whom heo wolde y maried be with þe þridde del ys londe.

þe ³ zongost he askedo þo as he hadde þo oþer y do.

Heo ⁴ no kouþe of no fikelyng, and ne onswerede not so.

“ Sire,” heo seyde, “ y leue not þat my sustren al soþ seide.

“ Ac for me my self, ich wol soþ segge o þis dede.

“ Ych the loue ⁵ as þe mon that my fader ys,

“ And euer habbe y ⁶ loued as my fader, and euer wole y wys.

“ And gef þou wolt zet þer vppe more asche & wyte of me,

“ Al þe ende of loue & þe grond ich wol segge þe.

“ As mucche as þou hast, ⁷ as mucche þou art worþ y wys,

“ And ⁸ as mucche ich loue þe: þo ende of loue ys þis.

¹ Though hast thi loue y do
In myn old lyf to fore thyn,
& to fore thi soule also
Ar. ² By the heyghe God,
Lord *Ar.* ³ Yongeste *Ar.*

⁴ Ne couthe of no flateryng,
& aunswered nought so *Ar.*
⁵ As a man *Ar.* ⁶ The *addit*
Ar. ⁷ So mucche *Ar.* ⁸ So
Ar.

þe kyng was þo wroþ y now, for heo seide al þat soþ,
 For he seide, “ þou ne louest me nozt as þi sostren doþ,
 “ Ac despisest me in myn olde liue, þou ne schalt neuer ywis
 “ Part habbe of my kyndom, ne of lond þat myn ys.
 “ Ac þyn sustren schulle habbe al, for here herte ys kynde,
 “ And þou for þyn vnkyndenesse be out of al my mynde.
 “ ¹ Ac y ne segge nozt for þan, zef y mai to mariage þe brynge,
 “ þat y ne wol with oute lond with som lytel þinge.”
 “ For þou art my doztter, & ich habbe more þan þi sostren boþe
 “ Y loued þe one, & þou zeldest now my loue wroþe.
 þer astur euene a two he delede hys kyndom,
 And zef hys twei doztren half, & half hym self nom.
 And þe eldest doztter mid hire del he zaf with oute faile
 þe kyng of Scotlond, and þe oþer þe ² kyng of Cornewale,
 To haue half ys lond myd hem at þe bi gynnyng,
 And seþþe al ys kyndom astur ys endyng.
 And þe gode Cordeille vn married was ³ so.
 For heo ⁴ nolde fikele, as hire sustren hadde y do.
 Ac ⁵ God þouzte on hire for hire trewnesse.
 For þe kyng of France herde telle of hire godnesse,
 And bad hire fader graunt hym þe gode Cordeille.
 þe kyng send word a zeyn, þat it was ys wille:

Particio
regni.Maritacio
filiarum.

¹ Ac nought for than, with
 oute lond, with some litele
 thyng Ich wole the to some
 god man to mariage brynge.
*Ar. Non dico tamen, cum
 filia mea sis, quin te alicui
 externo, si illum fortuna ob-
 tulerit, utcunque maritem. Il-
 lud autem affirmo, quod nun-*

*quam eo honore, quo sorores
 tuas, te maritabo. Quippe
 cum te plusquam ceteras huc
 usque dilexerim, tu vero me
 minus quam ceteræ diligas.*
 Galfredus Mon. ² Erl *Ar.*
³ þo *Ar.* ⁴ Couthe flately
 nought, as *Ar.* ⁵ Almyghty
 addit *Ar.*

Ac he nolde with hire zeue tresour, ný lond.
 For ys two oþer doȝtren hadde it al on hond.
 þo þe kyng of France herde þis, he answerede þer to,
 þat he hadde hym self lond y now, and tresour al so.
 Ne þat he ne kepte bute hire one, withoute oþer þing,
 þat heo myȝte som eyres bi twene hem forþ brynge.
 So þat at þe laste þis maide y spoused was
 To þis kyng of France, as God gaf þat cas.
 þo þis kyng Leir eldore was, heo bi gan to loþe,
 For he so longe linede, hys leue doȝtren boþe.
 Here lordes heo entisede, ¹ to gedere to holde faste,
 And wyne al þis lond to hem, & here fader out caste.
 þis twei kynges nome here ost, and endede þis dede,
 And bi nome þis olde mon ys lond, as here wyues bede:
 Ac þe kyng of Scotlond, for rewþe and ² kundede,
 Hym nom to hym in to his hows, a ȝeyn ys wyue's rede,
 Sixti knyȝtes with honour to fynde hym al ys lyf,
 As wo seyþ, for ys kyndom, & for honour of ys wyf.
 With inne two ȝer þer aftur it þouȝte þe luþer quene,
 þat ³ hire hadde to mucche, & wolde to mucche spene.
 Heo made, þat of ⁴ sixti knyȝtes hire lord with droȝ,
 And made hym holde to þritti, & þat was hire þoȝte ynog.
 þis Leir was a schamed þo, & in wrapþe at þe ende
 To hys oþer doȝter, þe quene of Cornewail, he gan wende,
 And playnede of þe vnkynde dede of his doȝter ⁵ Gornorille,
 And wende þere amendement to habbe aftur ys owne wille.

Spoliacio
reg.

¹ To holde to gedre faste <i>Ar.</i> ² Manhede, Tok hym hom in to his hous, <i>Ar.</i> ³ Hure fader hadde so moche,	and to moche wolde spene <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ xxx. knyhtus hure lord hym withdrough <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ Gonorille, <i>Ar.</i>
---	---

þilke doȝter hym to fonge with honour, as he wende,
 Ac heo was al ful of hym er ¹ þe zere's ende.
 For heo entisede hire lord þo, þat ys knyȝtes echone
 For cost by nýme hym alle, bute a ² fyue men one,
³ Wuche so it were to serue hym, & þat was y nowe.
 þo þis seli mon þis herde, to sorwe ys herte drowe.
 He nuste to weþer doȝter beter truste þo,
 And noþeles he wende aȝeyn to þe oþer with mucche wo,
 And hopede for to fynde of here beter ⁴ meuske & grace.
 And heo swor bi hire hye Godes anon in þe place,
 þat he ne schulde mid hire be, bute it ⁵ one were,
 And on knyȝt with oute mo, þe while he hym wel bere.
⁶ And askede, wad sorwe hym were, wan he nadde hym self
 no god,
 To wylne so gret cost, and be of so gret mod?"
 þis word dude much sorwe þis seli olde kyng,
 þat atwytede hym & ys stat, þat he nadde hym self noþing.
 þat word brak nez ys herte, & longe he yt vnderstod,
 þat ys child at wiste ys pouerte, þat hadde al is god.
⁷ Neuer kyng ny quene glad, when heo hym seye,
 Ac to þe joiful day hopede, that heo myȝte dye.
 He bi leuede, as he nede moste, forþ mid on knyȝt,
 And þe quene ys doȝter alle wo hym dude boþe day & nyȝt.

¹ þre *pro* þe in *Ar.* ² x. *Ar.*

³ That were bileft to seruy
 hým, and that hure thoughte
 y noughe *Ar.* ⁴ Mylce *Ar.*

⁵ Onliche were, With o
 knyȝt, with oute mo, *Ar.*

⁶ And seyde, what sholde an
 old man be so heghe of mod,

And an [*f. in*] ydel, and in
 wast, spende so mucche good?

Ar. ⁷ Ther nas ther nother
 kyng no quene glade, wan
 hy hym seȝ, But lokede euer
 after his deth, wan he sholde
 dey *Ar.*

So þat he moste ¹ for fyn myseise awci at þe ende.
 þe oþer dogter he hadde a sayed, þat he ne durste to hire wynde.
 þe quene of France þe þridde hym þog mid vn ryzt
 He misdude hire, þat he ne durste come in hire syzt.
 Ac at þe laste þo he sei, þat he moste nede at þe ende
 For pore miseise, (for fare leuer he hadde wende,
 And bidde ys mete, zef he schulde, in a strange lond,
 þan þer he hymself kyng was, & such þing hadde on honde)
 At þe laste in sorwe ynow in to þe see he wende,
 To do ys beste yn meseise were so God hym sende.
 In þo schip as oþer prynces in gret pruyde he ² bi hulde,
 And he naddemid hym bute twei men, ³ hym þogte ys herte feld;
 He þogte on þe noblei, þat he hadde in y be :

Placitus.

He wep, þe terus rounedoun, þat deol it was to se.
⁴ Mid zoxing & mid gret wop þus bi gan ys mone.
 " Alas! alas! þe lufur ⁵ wate, þat fylest me þus one,
 " þat þus clene me bryngust a doun, wyder schal y be brozt?
 " For more sorwe yt doþ me, when it comeþ in my þogt
 " ⁶ þe noblei þat ich hadde y had, þat ich was wond to wynde
 " Mid so mony hondred knyzttes a boutte in eche ⁷ ende,
 " And casteles nyne & tounes, & myn fon brynge to gronde,
 " þan do al þe miseise, þat ich in i bonde.
 " Leue dogter Cordeille, to soþe þou seidest me,
 " þat as muche as ych hadde y was worþ, þei y ne leuede þe.

¹ For mysaise (*omisso* fyn) in *Ar.* ² Bi held *Ar.* ³ Alas! his herte was cheld *Ar.* ⁴ With wepynge & wailynge thus he made his mone: "A-

las! though lethur desteny, whi leuest though me thus al one? *Ar.* ⁵ *i. e.* fate. ⁶ Of the *Ar.* ⁷ Eynde *Ar.*

" þo wyle ich ogt hadde ich was worþ, & now it ys al a gon.
 " Mi childeren, þat ich gef my god, beþ myne meste fon.
 " For my god heo louede me, & now he habbeþ euery del,
 " He nul not geue me of myn owne myd god herte a mel.
 " A wey ! doȝter Cordeille, wyder schal ich now fle ?
 " So muche ich habbe þe ¹ mys do, þat y ne dar þe y se.
 " Mid wuche bodi dar y come in þi sigt ene,
 " þat bi nom þe myn frenschipe for þi soþnesse al clene ?
² þis men mowe here ensample nime, to late here sones wyue,
 And geue hem vp here lond al bi here lyue.
 For wel may a symple ³ Francoleyn in mysesse hym so bringe
 Of lutel lond, wan þer fel such of a kyng.
 þo þis kyng hadde go a boute in such sorwful cas,
 At þe last he com to Caric, þere ys doȝter was.
 He bi leuede with oute þe toun, & in wel gret fere.
 He sende þe quene ys doȝter word, muche is ⁴ antres were,
 And þat pur miseise hym þider drof, & defaut of bi liue:
 And bed hire, for the loue of God, hire wraþþe hym for geue.
 þe quene þo heo herde þis, nei yswounyng was.
 " Alas ! " heo seyde, " ys my fader y broȝt in such deolful cas ? "
 " Mid how mony knyȝtes ys he come ? " þe oþer ageyn seyde,
 " Ma dame, bute mid o mon, & zet þilke in ⁵ feble wede. "
 " Alas ! " quop þe quene þenne, " ys it now mid hym so ? "
 " Nymeþ anon tresour y nowȝ, þat he haþ nede to,

Mandavit
filie.

¹ A gilt *pro* mys do *in Ar.* | wyue, *Ar.* ³ Man *pro* Fran-
² These sample men moughe | coleyn *in Ar.* ⁴ Auntres *Ar.*
 y se, to lete hure children | ⁵ Simple wede *Ar.*

“ And

“¹ And cloþeþ hym myd þe best cloþ, þat ze mowe y se,

“ And fourti knyghtes mid hym, þat of hys siwte be;

“ And doþ hem alle wel an horse, as a kyng bi comeþ to,

“ And whan² no defaute nys, þat al þis nys wel y do,

“ Sendeþ my lord word & me, þat my fader in londe ys.

Wat halt it to telle longe? Y do wes al þis.

þo kyng Leir arayed was, & men hem worde sende,

þe kyng & þe queene faire y now ageyn þe oþer kyng wende,

And with gret honour hym fongon, þo he to hem com,

³ And token hym to ys owne wille al clene the kyndom.

þis was, lo! þe gode dogter, þat nolde fikele nogt.

Ofte þing þat is fikeled to worse ende ys brogt.

þe kyng of France aftur folc wide aboute sende,

To a wreke hym of þe luþer men, þat ys frend so schende.

⁴ þo he hadde power y now, þe kyng Leir he nom

And þe queene ys dogter, & to þis lond com.

Moly kynde men of þis lond with kyng Leir huld also,

For þe vnkynde suikedom þat his dogtren hadde y do.

So þat of France & of þis lond poer he hadde y now.

Toward hys fon with hem alle with god herte he drow,

And ouer com þis false⁵ kynges & here wyues also,

⁶ And a zeyn in his kyndom mid gret honour y do.

Reditus
Angliæ.

¹ Bad hym clothe in the beste, that he myghte byse, And XL. knyghtes with hym of his suyt to be; *Ar.* ² No faute ther nys, and al is wel y do, *Ar.* ³ *Dederuntque ei potestatem totius Gallie, donec eum in pristinam digni-*

tatem restaurassent. Galfridus Mon. ⁴ *Quo facto, duxit secum Leyr filiam suam, & collecta multitudine iuit in Britanniam.* Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Lordes *Ar.* ⁶ Leir in his kynedom a ye with honour was y do *Ar.*

Cor.

Cordeille ys leue dogter eir of al ys lond
 Aftur ys day he made, ¹ þo þat he so kynde fond.
 By þis tale me may iyse, þat men trewest we seþ,
 And best me may to hem truste, þat of lest wordes ² boþ.
 With inne þre ȝer þe kyng of France dyede & þe kyng Leyr, Obitus regis.
³ And Cordeille þe kyndom fong as þe rygt eyr,
 And lette hire fadur burie with gret prude & honour
 At Leicetre, þat he made hym self be side þe water of Sour.
 þis gode quene Cordoille as kyng and quene þo
⁴ Bi leuede hire in þis lond fyue ȝer, and no mo,
 Er hire twei suster sones, stalworþe men þat were,
⁵ Hennin and Morgan, werre ⁶ hire" gonne a rere,
 And hadden despit, þat wommon kyng schulde ⁷ be,
⁸ And naþeles wyþ alle rygte hij were ner þan heo.
 Heo gederede vp here aunte here ost aboute wyde,
 And destruyde hire londes eyþer in his syde.
 So þat at þe laste to ⁹ baile heo come.
 þere þe quene here aunte in bataile heo nome,
 And dude in strong prison, and þe kyndom
 Delden bi twene hem, and eyþer ys part nom.

Capcio
 reginæ.

¹ So kynde he hure fonde
 Ar. ² L. beþ. ³ Cordille
 aftur hym auenge Brutayne
 as ryght heir Ar. ⁴ Cum er-
 go Cordeilla regnum per quin-
 quennium pacifice tractasset,
 cæperunt eam inquietare duo
 filii sororum suarum Marga-
 nus & Cunedagius, quæ Mag-
 lauro & Hennino ducibus con-
 jugatæ fuerant. Ambo iuve-
 nes præclaræ probitatis for-

mam habebant, quorum alte-
 rum, videlicet Marganum,
 Maglaurus generavit, Cune-
 dagium vero Henninus. Galfr.
 Mon. ⁵ Hemyn Ar. ⁶ Deest
 Ar. ⁷ Beo Ar. ⁸ And also by
 ryght hy were fortherer than
 heo. Hy gaderede to gedere
 hure ost aboute by eche side,
 And destrude her and ther
 bothe in eche side Ar. ⁹ Ba-
 taille Ar. Morgan

Morgan kyng of Scotland, as heo dele kouþe,
 Hadde al þat lond bi Norþ, and ¹ þe oþer bi Souþe.
 With inne two ȝer þer aftur somme to Morgan come,
 And, for he of þe elder soster was, bed hym nyme gome;
 And seide hym it was gret despit, þat þer wer in þis lond
 Twei kynges, wan ryȝt was, þat he it hadde al on hond.
 þis kyng was enticed so, þat he nom atte laste
 Ys ost, and vp hys cosyn bi gan to werri faste,
 And bi gan to brenne & quelle, & atte laste y wys
 þe other bi gan to turne a ȝeyn, and drof hym in to Walis.
 And þer heo smyte a batail in the Souþ half of þe londe,
 And þer was Morgan y slawe, þat longe ² was vnderstonde.
 þe stude, þat he was at y slawe, me clepuþ ȝet Morgan,
 And euere wole aftur hym, for he was so worþi man.
 Cunedag was þo al one kyng, & þe kyndom to hym nom,
 And nobliche ³ þre andⁿ þritti ȝer held þe kyndom.
 þe twey holy prophetes were Osee and Ysaie
 þilke time in ⁴ Israel, and dude here prophecie.
 Romulus and Remus þe twei breþeren y wys
 Bi gonne þo first Rome, þat noble citie ys.
 Four hundred ȝer it was, and ⁵ fourti euene al so,
 Aftur þe batail of Troie, þat al þis was ydo.
 And Rome was fyue hundred ȝer þus y mad bi fore.
 And þre and fyfty ȝer eke, er God were y bore.
 Aftur þis kyng Cunedag hys ⁶ sone, that hatte Riual,
 Kyng was mad aftur hym, a wys mon þorg out al.

Guerra.

Incepicio
Romæ.

¹ Hemen *pro* þe oþer in *Ar.* | *sunt Ar.* ³ Israel *Ar.* ⁵ Four-
² Is *pro* was in *Ar.* ³ De- | tyne also, *Ar.* ⁶ Brothur *Ar.*
 Aftur

Aftur hym Gurgust ys sone, and seþþe anoþer Sisille,
 And mony on ¹ seþþe afturwar, of wam mote be stille.
 So þat atte laste Gurguont was kyng,
 Stalworþe mon and hardy, and wys þorȝ alle þyng.
 Muche þing, þat ys eldore loren þorw feyntyse,
 þoru strengþe he wann seþþe a zeyn, & þoru ys koyntise.
 þe kyng of Denemark ² ber eche zer with lawe
 Truage to Engolond, and bi gan hym to wyþ drawe.
 þe kyng Gurguont hym porueyede of power y now,
 And þer wyþ in gode schippes to Denemark he drow,
 And þe kyng of Denemark in bataile he sloȝ,
 And wan a zeyn þe truage þat ³ he held with woȝ.

AS þe kyng Guorguont fro Denemark wende a ze
 Hider toward Engolond, he mette in þe see
 þritti schipful of men. and of wymmen also,
 Of children, and of oþer god þat heo hadden with hem y do.
 þe kyng askede, wad heo were? þei were a drad ful sore.
 þe maister fel a doun on kne, & criede mercy & ore.
 "Lord," he seyde, "we beþ men wyde y driue aboute
 "From contrey to contrei, þat we mown nower route
 "Of þe kynde of Egypt oure firste more com.
 " ⁴ For þo folc of Irael Moyses with hym nom,
 "And ladde hem out of Egypt bi þe ⁵ liuerede see,
 "And þe kyng a drente & alle hys, þat ⁶ he ne com neuer a ze:

¹ Suth afterward, of wham | with drawe *Ar.* ³ At heold
 we mote be stille *Ar.* ² That | with wrough *Ar.* ⁴ For tho
 bar ech yer with lawe Tru- | that folk of Israel *Ar.* ⁵ Rede
 age to Brutayne, gan hit tho | *Ar.* ⁶ They *Ar.*

" Among

" Among hem, þat bi leuede o liue, stryf me mygte se,
 " Wuche mest maistres were, & hoo schulde lord be :
 " So þat heo, þat maistres were, hadde wel gret onde
 " To þe kyn þat we come of, & dryue hem out of londe,
 " For drede þat heo ne schulde nozt here maistres be.
 " þus heo were y dryue a wei, & nuste wyder to ¹ tee.
 " Heo duden hem forþ in to þe se, & by mony a lond wende.
 " ² Se þat God in to Spayne atten ende ³ hom sende.
 " þer heo bi leuede, & wox, & al þat of hem come
 " Forto now þis oþer day, þat we mygte not be y some.
 " ⁴ For þe kunde folk of þe lond hadde to ows onde,
 " And, þat we to grete maistres nere, drive ons out of þe londe.
 " Oþer half zer we habbeþ nowe y went with oute reste
 " In the grete see of ocean, forto seche vr beste,
 " þat owre lyf ys vs loþ, & we nuste war bi leue ;
 " þer fore we wolde bidde þe, þat þou vs sum place zeue
 " þat amty were in þi lond, ware þou woldest by þenche,
 " ⁵ þat we mygte of swynke oure mete, & libbeby oure swynke.
 þe kyng hem nolde graunte noþing of þis lond,
 Ac he sende hem by god condyt in to Yrlond,
 þat al amty was of men, & no mon ne wonede þere,
 And þese were þe firste men þat in Yrlond were.
 A þousant zer yt was and two, þat y do was al þis,
 Aftur þat ⁶ folc of Irsrael of Egypt wende i wis.
 Fyf hundred zer and ⁷ tuenti it was eke bi fore,
 Er þan oure Lord Jhesu Cryst on erþe was y bofe.

Prima
gens in
Ybernia.

¹ Fle *Ar.* ² So *Ar.* ³ Hem
Ar. ⁴ Therefore the vnne-
 kynde folk *Ar.* ⁵ That we
 moughe oure lifode, as othur
 doth, byswynke *Ar.* ⁶ The
 folk of Israel *Ar.* ⁷ Nyne
pro tuenti in Ar.

¹ Hit bi fel þer afturward swythe longe ynow
 Out of þe lond of Scitie oþer folk þider drog.
 For into þe grete see of ocean a gret companye
 Of Pycars wende som tyme out of ² Scisie.
 From lond to lond wyde ³ he gonne wende,
 So þat atte laste heo come to Yrlonde's Norþ ende,
 A geyn þe lond of Scotlond, & ⁴ þo folk þat heo fonden þere
 Of ⁵ þis eldore kunde, Scottes y clepud were.
 þe ⁶ Picardes bede þe Scottes an ende of here lond
 To geue hem, forto libbe by with swynk of here hond.
 þe Scottes seide, þat þat lond nolde not y now be
 To hem boþe to lyue ⁷ bi, as heo mygte y se.
 Ac þat heo mygte ofte y se, in cler weder, þere
 Est ward, as þe sonne a ros, a lond as yt were.
 Mury & fair yt þogte y now, & þat heo þider wende,
 To wonye & to lyue þer, & þat heo hem word sende,
 gef any mon hem greuede, & þat heo wolde, heo seyde,
 Warde hem from alle men, þat hem bi tidde no drede.
⁸ þis Picardes þenne wende forþ Estward euer faste.
 To þe Norþ ende of Engeland heo comen at þe laste.
 þat ende heo fonden al bare. heo bi leuede þere,
 And swonke & tilede here lyflode, & al maistres were.
⁹ Heo fonden hem sustynance y now, and ¹⁰ lyueden þus forþ Missio post mulieres.
 þe Brytones in ¹¹ þo Souþhalf, and heo in þe Norþ.

¹ The comynge of Pit-
 tes, that some clepeth Piker-
 dýs, *Ar. in margine.* ² Si-
 thie *Ar. cum i. Nauerne (ab*
ead. manu) supra lin. ³ Hij
Ar. ⁴ The *Ar.* ⁵ The el.

dere *Ar.* ⁶ Pictes *Ar.* ⁷ By,
 by aught that hij couthe se
Ar. ⁸ Thes Pictes *Ar.* ⁹ Hij
 wonne hem *Ar.* ¹⁰ Lyuede
 so forth *Ar.* ¹¹ The *Ar.*

¹ Pycars fonden ese ynow, and defaut none,
 To libbe in plente y now, bute of wymmen one.
 For þer ner none among hem. þer fore to Yrlond
 Heo sende to Scottes þat þer were, þat heo schulde hem vn-
 derstonde

And lene hem wymmen, þat heo myȝte here ² of pryng eche so."
 For þyng þat ³ woneþ, & noþing wexþ, ⁴ sone it ys ydo."

Scottes hem sende wymmen in þis forme þere,

þat wan a child were y bore, and me in doute were,

⁵ Who were þo fader, þat me schulde name & eritage

Boþe habbe in þe moder half, for drede of out rage,

Laste yt ȝeode out of kynde þorȝ child mys bi gete.

For me may bet soþnesse of þe moder þen of þe fader wyte.

In þis maner ⁶ Picars with Scottes ⁷ myngen here blod,

So þat yt siwede þe wymmen, when me oȝt mysvnderstod.

And when mon withouten eyr of hym to deþe were ybroȝt,

Hys moder kun was ys eir, & ys fader kun ryȝt noȝt.

And for þe moderes Scottes were, ⁸ so forþ yt ys bi come,

þat ⁹ Scottes name ys al a boue, & ¹⁰ Picars al bi nome.

¹¹ þus Scottes among Pycars come out of Yrlond,

And ¹² þat lond me clepuþ aftur hem seþþe Scotlonde.

¹ Thes Pictes *Ar.* ² Os-
 pring forth bryng *Ar.* ³
 Waneth *Ar.* ⁴ Hath sone an
 endyng *Ar.* ⁵ Who the
 childe's fader were, the name
 and heritage Of his moder
 hit sholde bere, for drede of
 outrage, Lest the name yede
 oute of kynde thurgh mysby
 ytyng. Of the moder half

rather than in the fadre's me
 may haue knowyng *Ar.*
⁶ Thes Pictes *Ar.* ⁷ Med-
 lede blod *Ar.* ⁸ So fer forth
 hit is y come *Ar.* [⁹The
 Scottes *Ar.* ¹⁰ Pictes *Ar.*
¹¹ The Scottes myd the
 Pictes *Ar.* ¹² The *pro* that
in Ar.

YRLOND ys ¹ aler yle best with oute Engelonde.
 þe see goþ al abouten hym eke as ich vnderstonde.
 More he ys þan Engolond, & in ² þo Souþ half he ys
³ Bradder & more of ynow þan in þe Norþ ende y wys.
 Ageyn þe lond of Spayne he stond in þe ⁴ Norþ syde rygt.
 Selde snowe þer inne ⁵ liþ, & nameliche þre nygt.
 So euene ⁶ hot þat lond ys, þat men durre ⁷ selde
 Here orf in howse awynter brynge out of þe felde.
 Lese lasteþ þer al þe wynter. Bute hyt þo more wonder be,
 Selde me schal in þe lond eny foule wormes se.
 For nedres ny oþer wormes ne mow þer be nogt.
 And gef he beþ þider ⁸ bi cas' from oþer ⁹ londes y brogt,
 Heo dyeþ þorz smel of þe lond, oþer þorz towchyng y wys.
 Eche gras þat þer inne wexeþ a geyn venym yt ys.
 For men, þat ben venymed, þorz grasses of Yrlond
 Y dronke he beþ y clansed sone, þoru Gode's sonde.
 Hony & mylk þer ys muche. mony folk & bolde.
 þis ys þe stat of Yrlond, as iche hadde y tolde.

AFTUR kyng Gurguont, kynges mony on
 þer were here in Engelond, me may not telle echon.
 A boutte a four hundred ger aftur hym þer com
 A kyng, þat was Lud y clepud, þat wel hult þe kyndom.

Lud.

¹ Al ther Ile best, ontake Engelonde *Ar.* ² The *Ar.* ⁶ A temple *pro* hot *in Ar.*
³ Bradder a gret del than in the Northside ywys *Ar.* ⁷ But seyde Hure bestes an house *Ar.* ⁸ By happe *Ar.*
⁴ Northwest ryght *Ar.* ⁵ Lith, ⁹ Lond *Ar.*

Grete townes in Engelond he amendede y nowe.
 And London ¹ aller most, for þer to hys herte drowe.
² þat folk he hett of þe town so noble bold þer rere,
 þat in al Engelond so noble a cite nere.
 Walles he lette make a boutte & gates vp & doun,
 And aftur Lud, þat was hys name, he clepude yt Lude's toun.
 þe hexte gate of þe toun, ³ þa zet stond þere and is,
 He lette yt clepe Lude's gate, aftur ys owne name ywis.
 He let hym, þo he was ded, burye at þilke gate.
 þer fore zet aftur hym me clepof hit Lodegate.
 þe toun me clepuf Lude's toun, þat ys wyde cowþ:
 And now me clepef it London, zat ys lygter in þe mouþ.
 And Newe Troie hit hette er, ⁴ ac þus yt is a go
 þat Londone he ys now y cleped, and worþ euermo.

ENGELOND hap i be with strengþe y wonne y lome,
 And first, as ich telle can, þorþ þe emperoures of Rome.
 Aftur kyng Lud þer was kyng ys broþer Cassibel,
 þat noble Prince was y now, & þat lond gouernede wel.
 Julij þe emperour of Rome by his day com,
 And mucche del of þe world bi Est to hys power nom.
⁵ Seþþe he drow hym Westward, & werrede in mony londe,
 And wan lond ⁶ aftur oþer, hym ne mygte non at stonde.
 þo he hadde y wonne France, þe see he wende ney,
⁷ And bi huld Westward, and som del of Engelond y sey.

Julius.

¹ Alther *Ar.* ² He het in
 thulke toune the folk suche
 buldyng a rere, *Ar.* ³ That
 yut stant *Ar.* ⁴ Ac nough hit
 is so ago, That Londone is
 hit cleped, *Ar.* ⁵ And tho he
Ar. ⁶ Aftur lond, ne myghte
 hym no man astonde *Ar.*
⁷ And as he lokede West-
 ward, Engelond he seygh *Ar.*

He

He askede, wat lond yt were, & wat folk þer inne was?
 Me seide hym þat it was Bretayne, ne betur lond nas,
 And þat þe folk was of þe kynde of Troie, & of þe Brut y come.
 “¹ þenne beþ heo, quop þe emperour, of the kynde of Rome.
 “ For, aftur þe batail of Troie, þe noble mon Eneas
 “² To Lumbardye com, and oure firste fader was.
 “ And Brut al so com of hym, þat seþþe hys fader slowg,
 “ And þer fore was þenne y dryue, & to þilke lond drowg.
 “ þanne we beþ of on kynde, ³ ac, bute ich þer to lye,
 “ A gen kynde he beþ a zeyn vs, as of chiuall rye.
 “ For þer of ne mowe heo konne nozt, y not how he myzte,
 “ To be by hem self in an hurne as þe rof with oute syzte.
 “ For nozt we schulleþ hem ouercome, ac naþeles as þe hende
 “ We schul hem warne of oure þogt, er we to hem wende.

¹ *Cumque nomen regni didicisset & populi, dixit, Hercle ex eadem prosapia nos Romani & Brittones orti sumus, quia ex Trojana gente processimus. Nobis Æneas post destructionem Trojæ primus pater fuit. Illis autem Brutus, quem Silvius Ascanii, filii Æneæ, filius progenit. Sed, nisi fallor, valde degenerati sunt à nobis. Nec quid sit militia noverunt, cum infra oceanum extra orbem commaneant. Leviter cogendi erunt tributum nobis dare, & continuum obsequium Romanæ dignitati parare. Prius tamen mandandum est*

eis, ut inaccessi à Romano populo & intacti vectigal reddant, ut ceteræ etiam gentes subjectionem senatui faciant, ne nos, ipsorum cognatorum nostrorum sanguinem fundentes, antiquam nobilitatem Priami patris nostri offendamus Galfridus Mon. ² To Itaille com, that is now Rome, and oure aun- cetre was *Ar.* ³ And ich can a spie, Hit were a ye kynde to be a yenset vs, as of chiuall- rie. For ther on ne mowe hij konne nought, y not how hii myghte, To be in an herne by hem self, ther with oute fighte *Ar.*

þe emperoure's messingeres to Engeland hire come,
 þat þe kyng abowe ys herte ¹ to þe noble stude of Rome,
 And alle oþer kynges dude, and ys rygt seruage
 Dude to þe hye emperour, and sende hym hys truage,
 And hys lond huld of hym, and dude hym homage,
 Laste þe hye emperour for his outrage
 Come and destruye al hys lond; & zet þat worse were,
² þe blod schedde of ys owne kynde, & defoule yt so þere.
 And þe olde heynesse of Priamus werrede so,
 Of was kynde heo come echon, & þat were hym loþ to do.
 For þer ³ schulde in al ⁴ þo world no lond be for bore.
 þis was euene sixti zer er God were y bore.

Manda-
tum regis.

þe kyng ⁵ sende þis word a zeyn a non for þis tyþing :

“ Cassibel, kyng of Breyteyne, to July sendeþ gretyng.

“ Wonder it ys, Sire emperour, ⁶ þat noble gentrise

“ þat is so noble & eke y fuld with so fyl couetyse,

“ þat ⁷ worde's nobleye hast so muche, of eche mon mest,

“ þat for couctise art y come so fer fro þe Est,

“ To wilne oure lutel god, þat God vs wolde sende

“ þat beþ hire bi oure self, as at þe worlde's ende :

¹ To the cite of Rome, As alle othur kynges dude, in hys ryght seruage, And his lond holde of hym, & dude hym homage, Lest the heigh
Ar. ² To shede his owene kynde blod & defouled there; And take hede of Priame's prude, that werrede so. Of his kynde hij come echon, & that hij were loth do *Ar.* ³ Ne

sholde *Ar.* ⁴ The *Ar.* ⁵ Hym sende word a ye, tho he hurde this tydyng: *Ar.* ⁶ Of thy gret gentrise, That though so foule anetherest hit with thy couetyse, That wordles welth hast so muche, of alle men mest, That for couetyse ert y come so fer fram the Est *Ar.* ⁷ *L.* worlde's.

“ ⁸ And

“¹ And þou nart one y payed oure tresour to nyme at ene,
 “ Bute þou þer aftur vs binyme oure franchise al clene,
 “ To bryng vs so fre as we beþ in to² fyl seruage,
 “ þat we bere þe and þyne euermore truage.
 “ Gret wrong þou woldest don vs, wen of on kynde
 “ We beþ y come ge & we, as þou hast þi self in mynde.
 “ þenne azte yt be y nowg, wen we beþ of on blod,
 “ Loue & frenschipe aske vs, gef þou þe wel vnderstod,
 “ Thaw þou ne askedest³ þer vppe þralhed euermo.
 “ Sikerliche we ne konne nozt of þralhed ne of wo.
 “ So muche we habbeþ euer y be in⁴ franchise gef her to,
 “ þat þei oure owne Godes wolde in þralhede vs do,
 “ Fonde we wolde a zeyn hem⁵ our franchise withstonde.
 “ þei þou þer fore, Sire emperour, grete power habbe on honde,
 “ Wyte⁶ to soþe, þat we wollep for oure franchise fygt,
 “ And for our lond, raþer þen⁷ we lesed with vn ryzt.
 þis was eke four hundred ger, and four score, & þrottene,
 Aftur þat þe borg of Rome first was mad iche wene.
 þo þe emperour herde þis, to schippes he wende faste,
 And al hys power forþ with hym, and sailes vp caste.
 þei entrede in at Temse mouþ, and þer heo gonne a riue.
 þo Cassibel herde þis, ⁸ he zarked him bi lyue.
 Now hadde kyng Lud, ys broþer, zonge sones twei,
 Androge and Tennant, þat þo zonge were beye,

Julius ve-
nit Angli-
am.

¹ And þat though nert nought onliche apayd *Ar.* ²Gret *Ar.*

³ Eke ther to thraldom eueremo. For on thraldom konne we nought, ne of such other wo *Ar.* ⁴Franchise hider to. For

theygh that the Godes hem self wolde in to thraldom vs do *Ar.*

⁵ For oure *Ar.* ⁶ For soth *Ar.*

⁷ We wol leue hit with vnryghte *Ar.* ⁸ He greithed hym as blyue *Ar.*

þo here fader dyede to holde þe kyndom.
 1 þer fore þer to Cassibel al þat lond nom.
 Ac þo nolde not Cassibel, þat heo schulde allyng faille.
 Tennant þe zonger he made erl of Cornewale,
 And Androge erle of Kent, & gaf hym London þer to.
 Boþe heo were noble men þo þis dede was y do.
 þe kyng hadde 2 eke a broþer, Nenny was hys name,
 Strong knygt and hardi, and mon of gret fame.
 þe kynges's chef conseleres þese þre were of þis þing.
 Alle heo come to Canturburi at þe bi gynnyng.
 þere þe kyng & ys power such conseil to gedere nome,
 To kepe þe emperoure's folc er 3 heo to fer income.
 For gef þei hadde eny þing y wonne of castel or of toñ,
 Wel þe worse it wolde be to brynge hem þer don.
 4 þo kyng wente toward þe se mid fair ost ynowz,
 5 And as þe emperour hadde y piȝt ys paelon he drowz.
 þo 6 he hadde y ordeyned here ost in eyþer syde,
 7 þo batail heo smyton strong ynowz, þat cowþ was ful wyde.
 Bellum. Myd arwen & myd quareles so muche folk 8 first me slow,
 9 And seþþe with speres smyton a doun, þat deal was ynow.
 þo heo were þorz out y mengd with swerdes & with mace,
 Myd axe & mid aules, so muche folk in þat place

1 þerfore Cassibelan this
 lond to hym nom, And also he
 nolde, that eny thyng these
 children sholde faille *Ar.* 2 Eke
 a nothur brothur *Ar.* 3 Hij to
 bataille come *Ar.* 4 The *Ar.*

5 And toward themperoure's
 tente euene he hym drough *Ar.*
 6 Hij *Ar.* 7 An *pro* tho *in* *Ar.*
 8 *Deest* *Ar.* 9 And with swerd
 and with speres, that deal hit
 was y nough *Ar.*

Me slow, þat al þe erþe a boutē stod ¹ as in flode
 Er þe bataile were y do al of red blode.
 Nenny þe kynge's broþer and þe erl of Kent al so,
 Mid al here power of Kent, & myd þe Londreis þer to,
² Awatēde hem to þilke ost, þat þe emperour inne was.
 So þat ³ Nennyn þe emperour bi cas,
 Anon he willede in herte with so hey mon to fyȝte.
 He asailede hym & drow ys swerd, & smot with al ys myȝt.
 Ac þe emperour mid his ⁴ scheld þo strok hente ynow,
 And drow hys swerd ⁵ an hey, & to þe groude faste slow,
 And smot Nennyn þorȝ þe helm ⁶ somdel toward þe brayn.
 And seþþe toward þilke stude he smot with more mayne,
 To haue y cloue ⁷ hym" al þat hed, ac ⁸ Nennyn hys scheld
 nom,
 And dude by twene, þat þe strok so depe þer inne ⁹ ne" com,
 þat þe emperour ne myȝte yt out drawe with al ys mayn.
¹⁰ Nennyn caste ¹¹ caste" ys owne swerd anon a wey wel fayn,
 And ¹² nom þet swerd to hym, þat so noble was & riche.
 For þer nes in al þe world swerd hym yliche.
 For þer nas non þer with y wonded, þat euer keuer myȝte.
 þer fore yt was rede deþ y cleped and mid ryȝte.
 þo ¹³ Nennyn hadde þat gode swerd, a boutē he smot to gronde.
 Ech mon þat he þer with smot, he gef deþe's wonde.

Lucraccio
gladii.

¹ Al on a flode *Ar.* ² Or-
 deyned hem *Ar.* ³ Neny than
 Emperour y segh as fel by cas,
Ar. ⁴ Swerd thane strok *Ar.*
⁵ Anon, and to grounde slough.
 He smot Neny *Ar.* ⁶ Almost in

to the brayne *Ar.* ⁷ *Deest Ar.*
⁸ Neny *Ar.* ⁹ *Deest Ar.* ¹⁰ Ne-
 ny *Ar.* ¹¹ *Redundat.* ¹² Nam
 to hym themperoure's swerd,
 that *Ar.* ¹³ Neny *Ar.*

Victoria
Brytonum.

þe Romaynes laie sone a doun, he made emty place.
 And þe Brytones a ryse faste, so þat, þorw Gode's grace,
 Heo hadde þe maistry of þe feld. ¹ þo Romaynes flowe ² bi lyue,
 Ac mony was þe moder child þat arst was brogt of lyue.
 þe emperour and ys power to schip flowe faste,
 And to France flow azeyn, somdel þei were agastc.
 Here folc heo loren in þe se þorȝ tempest monyon,
³ Wat in batayle wat in se, & heore horses ney echon.
 Cassibel was glad y now þo he hadde þe maystrie.
⁴ Fayre he þonkede ys gode folc, and of gret corteysie
 Of giftes ⁵ delde among hem euer as heo were.
 So þat joye and ⁶ murþe y now among hem was þere.
 Ac þer was among hem deol ynow for ⁷ Nennyn y brogt,
 þat þe emperour þe wonde gef, þat he ne myȝt hele noȝt.
 He lai for ⁸ pyned in þe wonde, and to deþe drowȝ,
 And dyede þe ⁹ fyfþe day myd sorwe & deol y nowȝ.
 Atte Norþ ȝate of London heo buryode þis gode knyȝt,
 And buryede with hym in hys chest þat swerd þat was so
 bryȝt,
 þat he wan of þe emperour with honour y nowȝ,
 þat rede deþ was y clepud, war wyþ he hym slowȝ.
 Y buried it was forþ with hym, as in tokenyngc
 Of ys prowes, þat he yt wan of on so hey a kyngc.

¹ þe *Ar.* ² Blyue *Ar.* ³ Many in bataille & many in see, and hure hors euerichon *Ar.* ⁴ Faire gan to thonke his folk, and dude hem courtasie *Ar.* ⁵ He delde a mong hem euere as worthy were *Ar.* ⁶ Blisse *Ar.* ⁷ Neny *Ar.* ⁸ Pynyngc *Ar.* ⁹ Fiftenethe *Ar.*

Cassibel þe gode kyng hym gan euer vnderstonde,
þat þe emperour þougte zet werre in hys londe.

þe fyf townes of þe fyf portes he lette walle aboute,
And so gode knyghtes dude þer, þat he hadde þer no doute.

¹ Stakes of yrn mony on he pygte in Temese gronde,
A boue scharpe & kene ynow, bi neþe grete & ronde,
þat, zef þer eny schippes come er me y war were,
Heo schulde piche hem þoru out & a drenche hem so þere.
Here was coyntyse ynow, he lette al so a rere.

² Vp þe water strong hows, þat heo vn warned nere.
And of þe zonge folk of þe lond þer inne dude y nowe,
To be prest to kepe here fon, wen þei ³ to hem drowe.

JULIUS ⁴ þe emperour with strong power y nowz,

Reditus
Julii,

Two zer aftur þe bataile, to Engelond a zeyn drow,
And þougte sle al þat folk, & wynne þis kyndom,

⁵ Ac he caste þer of ambes, as þo he to londe com.

For as þis schippes with gret eir come toward londe

In Temse, as þei al þe world ne schulde hem at stonde,

þe pykes smyte hem þoru out, or þei wyste wat yt were,

And daschte and a dreynte fourty schippes þere.

And a þousant gode knyghtes þer inne were adreynt,

⁶ And al here atyl and tresour was al so a seynt.

¹ Piles he pighte manyon
vpon Themese gronde *Ar.*

² Upon Themese toures stronge,
that hij vnwarned nere *Ar.*

³ To londe droughe *Ar.* ⁴ The
seconde comynge of Julius *Ar.*

in margine. ⁵ And forto do
this ilke dede, gret people with
hym he nom. And as hure
shipes *Ar.* ⁶ And hure catel
and tresour *Ar.*

And so heo myȝte lerne, wuch Brytones were.
 Betere hem hadde be at Rome, þan y osted þere.
 þe emperour with drow hym þo, and by an oþer ende
 To londe he com ¹ wrog y now, þis lond forto schende.
 And kyng Cassibel y sei so muche folk y lore,
 And adreynt of hys fon, glad he was þer fore.
 And nabeles he was sori, and made gret mone
 Of hem þat of scapede, þat heo nadde be dreynt echone.
 þo þe Romaynes were y come to þe lond at þe laste,
 Cassibel with ys power a ȝeyn hem sette faste.
 Heo smyton batail strong y now, þer was y do gret wo,
 And mony slawe on eyþer half, ac of þe Romaynes mo.
 For þe Brytones wox faste, þe Romaynes by neþe were.
 þo þe emperour say, þat ys fare nas noȝt þere,
 Mid lute folk, þat him was bi leued, to schip he goþ faste.
 Hyt were men of a god lond þat ² hem so kouþe agaste.
 þe kyng Cassibel anon for joye made ys heste,
 þat alle þe knyȝtes of hys lond come to ys feste,
 To London at a certeyn day, and here wyues al so,
 Here sacrifice to here Godes, as ryȝt was, to do.
 Fourti ³ þousant of roþeren he lette quelle þer to,
 And of fatte weþeres an hundred þousand al so.
 Of wilde bestes he lette þritti þousant quelle.
 þe wylde foules & þe tame ne myȝte nomon telle.
 þo þis fest ȝare was, þat folk first in here wyse
 To heore Godes as heo wolde dude here sacrifice.

Bellum.

Numerus
animalium.

¹ Wroth *Ar.* ² Hem so wel a gaste *Ar.* ³ Thousand ox he
 let kulle ther to *Ar.*

þer aftur þe sete to heore mete with so gret noblei echon,
þat me nuste þer bi fore so noble ¹ fest non.

Aftur mete, as rygt was, þe menstrales zeode aboute,
And knyghtes and ² sweynes in carole gret route.

So þat þe kynges' neuw, and þe erles' neuw of Kent,
þat twei zonge bacheleres noble were and gent,

³ In þis noble companye strif bi gonne arere,
So þat þe erles' neuw þat oþer slowz rygt þere.

þo was al þe court anyed, as þei moste nede,
þe kyng ferde eke for wraþþe as he wolde wede.

⁴ Androge he sende word, þat he ys neuw toke

And brogte hym forþ ⁵ forte fonge þat þe court hym wold loke.

ontencio
regis & An
drogei.

Androge was a drad ⁶ for he uuste þe kynges' wille,

And loþ ⁷ he hadde ys neuw to honge or spille.

þe kyng he sende word a zeyn, þat he hadde ys franchise

In ys owne court, forto loke domes and asise,

And þat, zef ys neuw hadde mys do, in hys owne court he scholde
Onswere to eche mon, ⁸ þat to hym siwe wolde.

þo ⁹ þis kyng herde þis, þat he ne mygt bi rygt lawe

Juge hyin, þat ys neuw brogte of ys lyf dawe,

He greyþede ys ost ¹⁰ faste vp þe erl of Kent,

To brynge ys neuw with strengþe ¹¹ to stonde to juggement.

¹ A feste *Ar.* ² Ladyes *pro*
sweynes *in Ar.* ³ As they
pleide atte chesse, stryf they
gonne arere *Ar.* ⁴ To An-
droge erl he sende word, *Ar.*
⁵ Forto a vonge *Ar.* ⁶ Tho
he wuste *Ar.* ⁷ Hym was

that hys cosyn hange scholde or
spylle *Ar.* ⁸ That hym folwe
wolde *Ar.* ⁹ The *pro* þis *in*
Ar. ¹⁰ Swythe anon vpon
the *Ar.* ¹¹ To fonge juggle-
ment *Ar.*

Oþer mid fuyr or mid swerd bryng he wolde al out,
 Hym to nogt and al ys ¹ þing, ner he ner so prout.
 þis erl bi grete lordes to þis kyng ofte sende,
 þat he schulde for Gode's loue ys wyll ² som del amende,
 And þat he for ys neuwe wolde, for to a baty stryf,
 Do hey amendement, sawue lyme and lyf.

þo þer nas non oþer wey, bute stonde al out to dome,
 þe erl of an oþer wey bi þougte ³ bi þougte" hym ylome.
 And as he and ys conseil stable conseil nome,

þese letres sende to July þe emperour of Rome.

Litteræ
 missæ im-
 peratori.

" To July þe emperour of Rome Androge, erl of Kent,

" Gretyng and stable loue, aftur wrapþe, ⁴ send.

" Sire, wyte to soþe, þat sore of ⁵ þinket yt me,

" þat ich hadde for oure kyng's loue y holde ageyn þe,

" þat ⁶ my power nadde y be, þou haddest hym ouer come.

" Ac for he haþ now þe maistry, such pruyd hym haþ y nome,

" þat now me, þoru wam he haþ of ⁷ þe maistrie,

" Dryue he wolde out of ys lond myd gret vilenye.

" Ich hadde y holde hym in hys lond, & my mede þer of ys,

" þat he wol me dryue of ys lond vnderued ywis.

" For oure Godes y take witesse, þat oþer gult non þer nys,

" Bote þat i nelle mý neuwe, þat a lytel dude amys,

" Bi take hym to juggement, to honge oþer to drawe,

" ⁸ Ich wole, saue lym & lyf, brynge hym ⁹ to" eche lawe.

" þer fore ich bidde, þat ich mowe my stat holde þorg þe,

" And þat þou ¹⁰ vp hym Bretayne mowe wonne þorg me.

¹ Men *pro* þing in *Ar.* | ⁶ Yf my *Ar.* | ⁷ The the *Ar.*
² Somwhat amende *Ar.* | ³ *Dele.* | ⁸ Ac ich wolde, *Ar.* | ⁹ *Deest*
⁴ *þent Ar.* | ⁵ *Thynketh Ar.* | *Ar.* | ¹⁰ Of hym *Ar.*

“ And ne þenche þou, Sire, noþing, þat ich treson þenche.
 “ For siker ¹ þis þe soþe wei, withouten eny wrenche.
 “ ² And God wole, þat men ofte in wrappe & in sore,
 “ þat after here grete wrappe here loue be þe more.
 þo þe ³ emperou herde þis, he ne tryste not wel her to,
 With oute siker ostage, such þing to do.
 þe erl þritti noble men, þat were of ys blod,
 Sende hym and ys owne sone, þat were ostages god.
 Siker ⁴ was þo þe emperour, he ne leuede nogt by hynde,
 Ac com here to Engolond mid þe nexte wynde.
 þe kyng ⁵ þe while Londōn by segede faste,
 And destreyede þe erle's lond, & ys ⁶ contreis a doun caste.
 Ac þo he herde, þat þe Romaines y come were in hys londe,
 To hem he wende hastyliche, & lette London stonde.
⁷ þo he com ney Canterbury, in a valei þere by syde
 He sey þe emperoure's ost ysprad a boutte wyde.
 þe emperour first ⁸ in ys half, & he hym self al so,
 Ordeynede first here ⁹ ost, þe bataile forte do.
 Ac mid fyf þousand hors ¹⁰ ywrye, as it was bi speke,
 þe erl of Kent was in ¹¹ a wode, hym forte a wreke.
 þer of nas not þe kyng war, ac with oute faile
 Myd god herte he wende forþ to smyte þis bataile.

Ostages.

dventus
ulii.Paracio
belli.

¹ This is the *Ar.* ² And
 ofte hit falleth, that men, that
 both in wrathe and in sore,
 After hure grete wrathe, hure
 loue wexeth the more *Ar.*
³ *L.* emperour. ⁴ The thirde
 comynge of Julie Emperour
Ar. in marg. ⁵ Thulke while
Ar. ⁶ Courtes *Ar.* ⁷ *Utigi-*

tur vallemprope Dorobernium
intravit, aspexit in eadem Ro-
manorum exercitum castra &
tentoria ponentem Galfr. Mou.
⁸ On his half, and the kyng
 on his also, *Ar.* ⁹ Ostes, the
 bataile for to do *Ar.* ¹⁰ Y
 heled, as *Ar.* ¹¹ A wode, forto
 be a wreke *Ar.*

By twene þe see and Canterbury þis bataile was,
 Neuer ich wene more ¹ slagt in so lute wyle nas.
 þat folk fel down for wounded & y slawe in eyþer syde
² Ac þikke as leucs doþ of tren a ȝeyn wyntre's tyde.
 Ac þo ³ þat folk of þis lond neyȝ hadde þe maistrye,
 Com þe erl of Kent mid ys ost þoȝ ys tricherie
 Al fresch bi hynde þe Britones, alas ! þikke stonde.

Fugit Cas-
 sibellanus.

So þat þis lond was y broȝt þoȝ þis treson to gronde.
 Ac þe kyng and somme of ys defendede hem so faste,
 þat heo for hem alle o liue o scapede atte laste,
 And nolde hem ȝelde for no þing, ac among here fon þere
 Of scape vp an hey ⁴ hul, as mony roches were,
 And þer heo cudde here prowes, & kepte hem þere an heyȝ
 With stones, þat nomon ne durste come hem neyȝ.
 Ow ! lord þe noble folk, ⁵ þat ys of þis londe,
 Wan heo þe emperour of Rome, þat no lond ne myȝte of stonde,
 In bataile and al ys ost ouer come tuey,
 And euer wolde, as ich wene, nadde ybe tricherie.
 þer for ich wene, þat þis lond neuer y wonne nere,
 Bute yt þoȝ treson of þe folk of þe selue lond were.
 þo þe emperoure ne myȝte þe kyng myd strengþe ouer come,
 þat hul he kepte for to he hadde myd hongur hym y nome.
 Atte laste ⁶ þe kyng was y broȝt to gronde

Rex mittit
 comiti.

⁷ For hongur for defaut of mete, alas ! þilke stonde.

¹ Slaught *Ar.* ² *L.* as. ⁶ Tho the kyng was al y
³ The folk *Ar.* ⁴ Hulle, ther brought *Ar.* ⁷ Thurgh hun-
many roches were, *Ar.* ⁵ ger *Ar.*
That was on this londe, *Ar.*

And

And he sei wel, þat he moste nede for hunger dye,
 Or zelde hym to þe emperour, as al ys men seye,
 And þe emperoure's prison he dradde eke ful sore,
 þer fore þe erl of Kent he by sougte milce and ore,
 þat he hadde rewþe of hym, ¹ and for ys genterise
 Made ys pes with þe emperour with oute feyntyse,
 And þat þe kynde blod of þis lond, of wham * heo boþe,
 Nere þoru hym y brogt to schame, & þat he toke þer of gome.
 And þat gef he hadde ogt misde ageyn hym myd wowg,
 þat he yt wolde amendy ageyn hym wel y now.
 þo Androge herde þis, som del he was in þogt.
 " þe prynce," he seide, " oþer kyng nys to preyse nogt,
 " þat in tyme of werre as a lomb ys boþe meke & mylde,
 " And in tyme of pes as a lyon boþe cruel & wylde.
 " Mi Goddes of heuene and of erþe, wat segge now ge?
 " My lord bi secheþ now my grace, þat mygte er ² hoto me.
 " Mid þe emperour and mid me pes he secheþ to drawe:
 " And we boþe of hym bi fore pees wilnede wel fawe.
 " þer fore he schulde hym habbe y þogt, þat þorg me he was
 aboue,
 " And þorg me he mygt haue come a doun, & y kud⁴ me loue.
 " For yt ys to ³ eche prince y wis and kyng vilenye,
 " To de foule ys knyghtes, þoru wam he haþ maystrie.
 " For þe maistry nys not a kynge's, ne be he neuer so god,
 " Ac knyghtes, þat vnder hym fyghteþ, & schedeþ here blod.

¹ And of his gentrise *Ar.* | ⁴ My loue *Ar.* ³ Ech a kyng
² *Deest vox.* Nam hii both | or prince vilanye *Ar.*
 come in *Ar.* ³ Hote *Ar.*

" And naþeles ich wol fonde, to brynge hym of ys sore.
 " For ich hadde of hym wreche yn ow, wen he bi secheþ myn ore.
 þe erl wende ¹ to emperour, & ² set a doun on kne:
 " Sire," he seide, " al þi wille þou hast þou myzt y se
 " Of þe kyng, þat ys myn vncl, he ys at þi wille.
 " Haue merci of hym ich bidde, & let hym nozt a spille.
 " What woldest þou more of hym, bute þat he þe truage bere?
 þe emperour was stille, & ne gef hym non onswere.
 " Sire emperour," quoth þe erl þo, "³ ne be ge nozt so bolde.
 " Understond, þat forward ich hadde al þe y holde,
 " To brynge þe kyng bi neþe þe, & þat þou wonne ys londe.
 " Wat schulde ich þe more do, nast þou al þis in þin honde?
 " Nolde God, þat y suffrede my lord, þat is and was,
 (" ⁴ þat bid me for gefnesse, and to amende hys trespas)
 " þat he in þyne bendes come, ⁵ God yt schyld me.
 " For þou ⁶ ne schalt ⁷ so lygtliche hym nýme, y segge þe.
 " Wyle ich libbe for ich wole in eche maner fonde,
 " To helpe my lord & myn vncl, bute þou me vnderstoude.
 þo þe emperour herde þis, he bi gan hym by þenche,
 And hys wraþþe toward þe kyng, for drede of þe erl, quenche.
⁸ þo emperour & þe kyng in þis forme a cordede were,
 þat þe kyng of þis lond to þe emperour bere

¹ The emp. *Ar.* ² Sette hym
 doun a kne *Ar.* ³ Ne bere ye
 yough nought to bolde *Ar.*

⁴ And biddeth me foryeue-
 nesse to amendy his trespas
Ar. ⁵ God for schulde hit me
Ar. ⁶ Ne shalt nought so
 lightlyche hym take, ich segge

the. Al the while that ych
 lyue, euere ich wole fonde
Ar. ⁷ *Non leue est interficere*
Cassibelliaunum me vivente,
cui auxilium meum reddere
non erubescam, nisi consilio
meo parueris Galfr. Mon.

⁸ Tho the Emperour *Ar.*

þre þousant pownd of seluer from ȝer to ȝere,
 As to truage to Rome, þat non ¹ ner bore nere.
 And in þis maner was Engelond brougt first in seruage,
 And þorg treson of þis selue lond first ȝef truage.
 þer fore a kyng ne may noȝt among ys knyȝtes be
² To sturne of hys juggement, ac somdel hym by se,
³ þat he haþ to hem neode he not wuche stonde.
 For a such wille, as ȝe y seþ, broȝte þis lond to gronde.
 þe emperour & þe kyng to grete loue drowe,
 And eyþer ⁴ to" oþer by twene hem ȝiftes ȝeue ynowe,
 And bi leuede al þe wynter to gedere in þis lond.
 Ac ageyn somer þe emperour, ⁵ þo he hadde al on hond,
 Wende toward Rome, and myd gret loue
 Nom with hym þe erl of Kent, þorw wam he was a boue.
⁶ And þoru nobleȝo þat he was man of so gret fame,
 He let a moneþ of þe ȝer clepye aftur ys owne name,
 Julius, as he het ym self, þe moneþ þat next ys
 Bi fore heruest, as me clepuþ ȝet so þe moneþ y wys.

Vocacio
 mensis
 Julii.

CASSIBEL þe gode kyng, as God ȝef ⁷ þat cas,
 Deide aftur ⁸ sene ȝer þat he ouer come was,
 And y buryed was at Euerwyk, ⁹ & þis kyndom
 Temiwant, ys broþer sone, aftur hym nome,

Obitus Cas-
 sibellani.

¹ Forbore *Ar.* ² To strange
 of his juggementz *Ar.* ³ And
 that haueth to hem nede he not
 whuche stounde. For thurgh
 such a wilfulnesse this lond was
 brought to grounde. The em-
 perour tho & the *Ar.* ⁴ *Deest*
Ar. ⁵ Whan he hadde *Ar.*
⁶ This Julius the Emperour
 was of so grete fame, *Ar.*
⁷ The *pro* þat in *Ar.* ⁸ *Se-*
 uen *Ar.* ⁹ And tho this *Ar.*

þat was erl of Cornewaile, and þe erle's broþer of Kent
Androge, that was to Rome mid þe emperour y went.

AUGUSTUS was emperour aftur July of Rome,
þe truage boþe of þis lond from ȝer to ȝer heo nome.
þe kyng's sone Tenwant, Kymbel was ys name,
He huld with hym at Rome, man of noble fame,
He ȝaf hym armes & made him knygt ¹ ys owne honde,
þis Kymbel aftur hys fader kyng was of þis londe.
So mucche he louede þe ² emperour, þat þei he mygt out
Hys truage at holde a ȝer, for loue he nolde noȝt.
þo þis August hadde y be emperour two & fourti ȝer,
He let make a descriuyng, þat y mad nas neuer er.
He sende aboute ys messengeres (as yt ys y write)
To eche lond in al þe world a certeyn ³ forte wyte,
How mony schiren were in eche lond, & townes in eche schire,
And how mony men in eche toun, (he was a gret sire)
And þat ech mon paide a peny, & þat me hym þe money bere,
War þoru he wiste, how mony men in al þe world were.
And me made þis descriuing in þis lond, as wel
As in any oþer lond, bi þe kyng's day ⁴ Kinbel.
And napeles ⁵ y leue yt not, þat he ne dude al wel þanne
For loue of þe paues, as to wyte þe noubre of þe menne.

¹ With his owen honde
Ar. ² Emperour, than whan
he myghte he nolde, The tru-
age that his fader bar, he
wolde nought with holde *Ar.*

³ For to *Ar.* ⁴ Kymbel *Ar.*
⁵ Ich leue hit wel, he dude
hit somdel thanne, As wel for
loue of the pans, as to knowe
the noubre of manne *Ar.*

A bouthe Jerusalem þis noumbryng he bi gan,
 As in þe myddes of þe world, to noumbre eche man.
 þilke tyme oure lord was in ¹ Bedleem ybore
 Of ² Marie, to saue men, þat arst were for lore ;
 By Kinbele's day, þat kyng was of Breteyne here,
 And in þe emperoure's August two and fourti ȝere,
 þat was y clepud Octouian in an oþer name.
 þis emperour August was of so gret fame,
 þat, for Juli þe emperour, (þat bi fore hym was er)
 Hadde aftur hym y clepud a moneþ in the ȝer,
 þe nexte ³ moneþ afturward, þat heruest moneþ ys,
 He let clepe aftur ⁴ hym August y wys.
 þo August hadde y be emperour fyfty ȝer and fyue,
 And wel y holde ys power, he wende out of þis lyue.

Ortus
Christi.

TYBERI, ys stepson, aftur hym com,
 þat nobliche huld ys power, & eke ys kyndom.
 þe ⁵ Gywes, & Herodes (þat here ⁶ kyng was)
 He a dauntede harde y now, and non harm yt nas.
 Pilatus he sende þider, ⁷ here'' justise to be þere,
 Forto holde hem harde y now, as heo wel worþi were.
 And ȝet for al þan, by ys day, þoru here luþer mode,
 Heo broȝte oure lord Jhesu Christ ⁸ to dye on þe rode.

Pylatus.

Passio
Christi.

¹ Bethlem *Ar.* ² Maide Marie, to saue mankynde, that theigh nere for lore; By kynges day Kymbelyn of this Brutayne here, And the Emperoure's tyme August two & fourty yere, *Ar.* ³ Moneth in the yer, that harueste *Ar.* ⁴ His name *pro* hym in *Ar.* ⁵ Juwes *Ar.* ⁶ Kyng tho was *Ar.* ⁷ *Deest Ar.* ⁸ To dethe vpon the Rode *Ar.*

þre and twenti ȝer emperour he was by fore ys deþe,
 And aftur hym was Gayus fyf ȝer vn neþe.
¹ Kynbel, oure kyng of þis lond, sones hadde twei,
 Guyder and Aruirag, noble men beye.
 Guyder aftur ys fader kyng was of þis lond,
 And Claudius emperour aftur Gay ich vnderstonde.
 Y mad he was emperour sixti ȝer, ich wene,
 Aftur þat God was y bore, and a bouten an eigtetene
 Aftur oure lorde's deþ. a sene hundred ȝer.
 And euene eigte and nyenti Rome was y mad er.

GWIDER, our kyng of þis lond, ys truage at huld sore,
² To Rome þat ys eldore were y wond to done.

Claudius
 venit An-
 gliam.

Claudius þe emperour þer of hym gan bi se.
 þe ferþe ȝer þat he hadde emperour y be
 Mid gret ost he wende here to þis londe,

³ A boute Souþhamto he a ryuede ich vnderstonde.
 þo kyng Guyder vnder ȝet, þat heþ a ryuede þere,
 Hym þouȝte long mid ys ⁴ ost er he at hem were.

⁵ Heo mette hem to gedere ⁶ mid power ynog.

Bellum.

Muche folk ⁷ in eyþe half to gronde me slog.
 þe kyng Guyder more folk ⁸ slowe ys owne honde,
 þan muche del of ys ⁹ ost, as ich vnderstonde.

¹ Kymbelyn, kyng of Brutayne, sones hadde tweye *Ar.*

² That his auncetres to Rome were woned to done *Ar.* ³ In the contreie of Southamtone *Ar.* ⁴ Power *pro ost in Ar.*

⁵ Hii *Ar.* ⁶ With gret power ynough *Ar.* ⁷ On aither side to gronde me faste slough *Ar.* ⁸ Slough with his honde *Ar.* ⁹ Folk *pro ost in Ar.*

¹ þis Romaynes were for noȝt ouercome atte laste,
² þat þe emperour with ys ost bi gan to fle faste.
 A cheuenteyn þer was with hym, ³ Haym was ys name.
 He sey, þat ⁴ heore partye wrogt was ney to schame.
 He by þougte hym of felonye, and lette hym arme þere
 Mid armes of Brytones, as he of þis lond were.
 He sywede myd þe Brytones vp þe Romaynes so faste,
 þat vr Kyng ⁵ him louede, & ys herte al vp hym caste.
 He spek Englisch, for he was at Rome ynorisched bi fore
 Myd ostage of þis lond, me louede hym þe bet þer fore.
 He was euer ur kyng nex, and atte last he drow
 Hys swerd, ⁶ ar he were y war, and oure kyng so slow,
 þer was tricheri y now. for nomon ne may bet do
 Gyle ⁷ an oþer, þan þilke þat he trusteþ mest to.
 To hys felawes he ⁸ wende anon, & bad hem hardi be :
 So þat þe Brytones were ⁹ vp þe poynt to' fle
 Aruirag, oure kyng's broþer, wende forþ anon þere,
 And dude on þe kyng's armes, hym self as yt were:
 And lepte on ys stede, and siwede and slog fast ys fon,
¹⁰ And þe Brutones with hym, for heo wende, þat it were þe
 kyng echon.

Haym in-
 terfecit re-
 gem per
 fraudem.

¹ The Romaynes, *Ar.* ² So
 that themperour *Ar.* ³ Lellius
 Haym *Ar.* & Lellius Hamon-
 dus *in marg.* ⁴ His partye
 was neygh y brought to shame
Ar. ⁵ Hym louede wel, & his
 herte to hym caste. He spake
 Brutone, for he was with osta-
 ges at Rome byfore Of this
 londe a queynted, and hadde

hit nought y lore. He was
 euere oure kyng nexte *Ar.*
⁶ Er me were y war, and oure
 kyng a slough *Ar.* ⁷ To a
 nothur, than he that a man
 trusteth most to *Ar.* ⁸ Yede
 anon, *Ar.* ⁹ In poynt forto
Ar. ¹⁰ The Brutones wende
 hit were hure kyng, & siwede
 hym echon *Ar.*

Heo were alle þo so ¹ harde, and þat folk slowe so faste,
 þat þe emperour bi gan to fle mid ys folk at the laste
² To schippes, & into þe see with wrechede hed y now.
 Ac þe luþur Haym with ys folk toward þe wode hym drowe.
 Aruirag hym sywede, and ³ to grounde euer slowg.
 Atte laste ys tricherie wel lutel he ⁴ by lowg.

Hamptone. He ouer tok hym at an hauene & slog hym rygt þere.
 Lutel harm thei tricherus ⁵ so alle y serued were.
 þe hauene þer he was y slawe, aftur ⁶ Haym ys name y wys,
 Hamptone was y clepud, as he zet y clepud ys.
⁷ For Souþhamptone he ys y clepud, and worþ euermo.
 In þis maner þe Britones þis lond ⁸ wiste þo.
 Claudius þe emperour nolde not zet bi leue.
 Eft sone he ⁹ gan with ys ost into þis lond weue.
 Aruirag at Wynchestre with ys men was echon.
 With ys power þe emperour ¹⁰ bisegede hym anon.
 Aruirag greyþede hym and ys folk a bouete,
 And wendeþ forþ to geue hym batail with oute.
 þo he com out ward with ys folk, þe emperour with stod,
 And dredde of hys hardynesse, & þougte yt was not god,

¹ Wei y hardied, *Ar.* ² To
 his shipes in to the see with
 wrechede ynough. The luther
 Haym with othur folk to ward
 a wode hem drough *Ar.* ³ Euere
 to grounde slough. And atte
 laste *Ar.* ⁴ By lough *Ar.*
⁵ Alle so y serued *Ar.* ⁶ Haym
 ywis, Haymtonne was *Ar.*

⁷ Southamtonne hit is eke y clu-
 ped, *Ar.* ⁸ Kepte tho *Ar.*
⁹ Com with his ost in to the
 lond weue *Ar.* ¹⁰ Bysette hem
 echon [*l. anon.*] Aruiragus
 araiede hym, and ordeynede
 his route, Wende forth to yeue
 hem bataille that were with
 oute. He com outward *Ar.*

To do hys lyf ¹ an aunte, and ys men al so.
 He þougte te speke of a cord, ꝛef it myȝte be y do.
 To þe kyng he sende word, þat he schulde hym ² be se
 And make a forme of a cord, as yt myȝte best be.
 For when heo hadde al y foȝte, & here lyf ³ an aunte y do,
 And here folk slawe on eyþer syde, & peraunte hem self also,
 Al for a lutel couetyse ⁴ þe bi ȝete war þanne lute,
 Beter yt were ⁵ a cordy, and bi leue heore ⁶ prude.
 For he was so god ⁷ knyȝt, and also so noble kyng,
 He ⁸ beod for to ȝeue hym ys doȝter in spousyng,
 þe nobleste damesel þat was in eny londe,
 And to spouse þe emperoure's ⁹ doȝter yt ner hym no schonde,
¹⁰ For wat he bere ys truage, as ryȝt ¹¹ were, to Rome
 As ¹² alle oþer kynges dude, and ys eldren y lome.
 þe kyng for ys heye herte anon yt with seide;
 Ac noþeles ys conseil hym gan þer to rede,
 And saide, þat it was to hym gret prow and honour,
 To be in such mariage alied to þe emperour,
 þo ¹³ hexte prince of þe world, and þo maide so noble al so,
 And þat it ¹⁴ nere hym no schame, ys truage to do

¹ In aventure, and his men-
 nes also *Ar.* ² By se *Ar.* ³ In
 aventure *Ar.* ⁴ The by ȝete
 were thanne lȝte *Ar.* ⁵ To
 acordy *Ar.* ⁶ Pruyte *Ar.* ⁷ A
 knyȝt *Ar.* ⁸ Praide hym for
 to *Ar.* *At beod rectè se habet.*
idem nempe est atque offered.
⁹ Doughtur nere to hȝm no
 shonde, For thy that he bere
Ar. ¹⁰ *Ea condicione (ait) ut*

imperio Romano subditus es-
set. Sic enim Galfridus Mon.
“ Mandabat igitur ei [Arvi-
“ rago] concordiam, daturum-
“ que promittebat sese filiam
“ suam, si tantummodo reg-
“ num Britannia sub Roma-
“ na potestate recognosceret.”
¹¹ Was *Ar.* ¹² The *pro alle in*
Ar. ¹³ Heighest *Ar.* ¹⁴ Were
Ar.

To þe noble stude of Rome, wan oþer kynges echone
 Hit dude þorg al þe world, ¹ & in so noble forme none.
 þe kyng, þei he hawteyn were, ches þe best won,
² And vnder stod ys conseil, so þat heo were at on,
 þat he bere ys truage, as oþer dude, to Rome,
 And þat he þe emperoure's dogter in spoused þus nome.
 þat maide was to lond y brogt of so noble gentrise,
 Fairor womman nas þo non, y hote heo was Gewise.
 At a lute toun, þat was þo bi Est Walis,
 þat vp Seuerne stod, y spoused ³ heo were y wys.
 þe kyng louede ys wyf a non so purliche & so faste,
 þat al ⁴ ys herte ⁵ outliche on hire one he caste.
 For honour of þe mariage, þe emperour and he
⁶ Rerde, as heo y spoused was, a swyþe fair cite,
 And aftur þe emperoure's name, þat Claudius was,
 Heo lette þe cite clepe Clauestre for þis cas.
 And þe emperour bi zet seþþe in þilke toun bi cas
 A sone, þat me clepede Glow, þat gret mon seþþe was,

Sponsacio
 filiæ Clau-
 dii.

Vocacio
 Glouce-
 striæ.

¹ *Ac pro & in Ar.* ² And
 dude after his consail, *Ar.*
³ *Hii Ar.* ⁴ His herte toward
 hure al outrýght he caste *Ar.*
⁵ Ontliche *forsitan malint*
nonnulli, ut only denotet. At
outliche lectio verissima, idem
scilicet quod utterly valens.
Id quod etiam è Galfr. Mon.
liquet. Sic enim ille: "Erat
autem nomen puellæ Genui-
sa, eratque tantæ pulcritu-
dinis, ut aspicientes in ad-
mirationem deduceret. Et

"ut maritali lege copulata
fuit, tanto fervore amoris
succendit regem, ita ut
ipsam solam cunctis rebus
præferret." Et tamen ont-
liche ferri potest, ea, qua dixi,
significatione, pro more An-
glo-Saxonum, qui vocum ad
unam eandemq; rem signifi-
candam repetitionem amant.
⁶ *Thar (omisso rerde, quod*
tamen præfigi debet) that he ý
 spoused was, a noble cite, *Ar.*

¹ An hey duk of al þat stude, he clepede þat toun y wys
 Aftur ys name Gloucestre, as he gut y clepud ys.
 A boute four & twenti zer, as þis clerkes vnderstode,
 Aftur þat oure ² lord was y do on þe rode.
 Gloucestre þorg þe emperour first þus a reud was,
 And Souþhampton þer bi fore, ze habbeþ y herd þat cas.
 Sente Peter þer bi fore so much ³ so" it were
 Pope was ⁴ at Rome first, Cristendom to lere,
 And sende Sent Mark þe euangelist in to Egypt for to preche
 þe gospel þat he hadde y mad, and Cristendom to teche.
 Sent Poul eke þilke tyme to Cristendom wende,
 Sent Denys, & mony oþer, as vr Lord a boute hem ⁵ semde.
 Sent Peter fyue and twenti zer Pope bi leuede so
⁶ Forto yt was þe laste zer of þe emperour Nero.
 þo þe emperour in þis lond hadde is wille i do y nowz,
 He lette þe kyng ⁷ al y worþe, & to Rome a zeyn drowz.
 þe kyng dygte þo þis lond nobliche with alle:
⁸ He lette bulde vp grete townes, þat were ney a doun falle.
 þo Claudius þe emperour to ys ende was y do,
 Aftur hym was emperour þe luþer mon Nero,

Nero.

¹ That duk was aftur of the toun, and clepede hit y wis
 Aftur his name Glowcestre, as hit nough cleped is *Ar.* ² Lord
 Crist do was on the roode *Ar.*
³ *Erasit quispiam in Ar.*
⁴ Of Rome, Cristendom *Ar.*
omisso first. ⁵ *L.* sende *cum*
Ar. ⁶ Fort hit *Ar.* ⁷ *Totam*
Britanniæ potestatem, sua ab-

sentia, Arvirago concessisse
Claudium, hic indicat auctor,
illis verbis fultus, quæ Gal-
fridus protulit, viz. "Ædi-
ficata igitur urbe, ac paci-
ficata insula, rediit Claudius
"Romam, regnumque pro-
vincialium insularum Arvi-
rago permisit. ⁸ And pro
"he in Ar.

Passio Petri & Pauli.

¹ þrottene ȝer and an half, and þat was longe y now,
 And Seynt Peter & Seynt Poule in hys ² laste ȝer he slowȝ.
 He bi com ³ sone þer aftur pur gydi and wod :
⁴ For he was in ys moder wembe, as he vnderstod.
 He þogte he wolde wyte, & se how ⁵ fair þe chaumbre were,
⁶ War inne he was & kenede, ar ys moder hym bere.
 Ys moder he let quelle a non, forto se with inne
 How fair þe inward was, þat he kenede inne.
 þo ys moder y slaw was, me blamede hym þer fore,
 And seyde, þat heo bogte hym dere, er he were y bore.
 “⁷ ȝe is hyt,” quop þe, “so strong, myd childe to be stonde?”
 “Bi þe fey, þat ich owe Mahone, þe soþe ich wol fonde.
 Hys ficicianes he ⁸ clepede, and swor ys oþ anon,
 Bute heo maden hym with childe, he wolde hem sle echon.
 Heo bi speke hem ⁹ bi twene, and, þe deþ forto fle,
 þei ȝeuen hym a koynte drench, with childe for to be.
 Hys wombe bi gan to ¹⁰ grete, & euer þe lenger þe more,
 So ¹¹ longe,” þat hym þogte strong, hys wombe ok wel sore.
 He clepede ys ficicianes, ¹² and swor grete a non,
 Bute heo made hym bere child, he wolde hem honge echon.

¹ Trittene *Ar.* ² *Repone laste ex Ar. Nec est cur putet, laste recte posse retineri, ut sententia sit, eo anno, quo fuerit mortuus relictus. SS. Petrum atque Paulum occidisse.* ³ Sone afterward puȝr *Ar.* ⁴ And hough he was in his moder wombe he thoughte & vnderstood *Ar.* ⁵ Mury *Ar.* ⁶ What that he was ynne

y keuned, er *Ar.* ⁷ Ye, quath he, is hit strong, with childe to be bysonde? By the fey ich owe to my Godes, the sothe *Ar.* ⁸ Clepede tho, and *Ar.* ⁹ Bitwyne than, deth *Ar.* ¹⁰ Grety, *Ar.* ¹¹ *Deest Ar.* ¹² And swor his oth anon, Bute hii delyuerede hym anon, hii sholde deye echon. Hii yef *Ar.*

¹ þe

¹ þe geue hym an oþer drenche, to habbe child þer,
So þat atte laste a sory child he ber.

Rana.

² For it alles com forþ, yt was a foul frogge.

For gode me þinkeþ litel harm, þei yt hadde i be a dogge.
zet þis gredi wreche louede þis foule best,

As ³ wommon deþ hire child ⁴ alle þing mest,

And ⁵ let hym rere a noble court, with gret quoyntyse and gyune,

At þe on ende of Rome, to norische þe schrewe inne ;

And clepude þe court Laterane, aftur þe frogge y wys,

For in þe langage of Rome, rane a frogge ys.

So ys þat stude y clepud now, & euer worþ for þat cas.

Feble was þe Godfader, aftur wam þe name was.

⁶ þe firste chirche þat me lette in þo lond rere,

Seyn Jone's þe Lateran me rerede seþþe þere,

þat stond zet, & heued chirche þat of al Cristendom ys,

Ac a better chef þer ys now, þan þe frogge was y wys.

Seþþe þe luper emperour hadde in his herte joie,

To þenche ⁷ on fuyr, þat was in þe bataile of Troie,

þo me barnde grete townes & courtes day & nygt,

And þogte yt was mury joie, to se so fair alygt.

Combustio
Romæ.

¹ Hii *Ar.* ² For tho hit al
forth com, hit was a wel foul
frogge. His fisiciens hadde y
holde hym wel in the gogge.
Yut this gidy wreche *Ar.* ³ A
woman doth *Ar.* ⁴ Alther
thynge *Ar.* ⁵ Let arere (*omis-*
so hym) in *Ar.* ⁶ The ferste
cherche me rerede there of al
Cristendom. And of Seynt

Johanes de Laterane thus the
name com. Sutte the luthure
Emperour *Ar.* ⁷ On fair fuer,
that brend the toun of Troye,
When the grete toures brende
& courtes day and nyght, Hym
thoughte hit was a mury game
to se such a syght. The wood
wretche *Ar.*

þe

þe gydye wretche lette sette þe toun of Rome on fuyre,
 To habbe game of þe lyzt, þe while yt myzte dure.
 þo wende forþ þe toun folk, as heo moste nede,
 And nolde no more suffre þe schrewe among hem wede,
² And slowe þe schrewe in fyl deþ ynow,
 And þus hym fel wreche of God for he þe apostle slowz.

VASPASIAN þe emperour astur Nero com,
 þat beter man was þan he, & ³ ne'' worrede nozt Cristendom.
 þe Giwes he worrede ⁴ y now, & brozt hem ⁵ first to nozt,
 For as muche as þe luþer men oure Lord to deþ brozt.
 For he and Tytus ys sone of oure Lord vnderstode,
 Fourti zer astur þat he deide on þe rode,
⁶ And wende to Jerusalem, and þat toun felde to grounde,
 And slowe ⁷ þe luþer Gywes al þat heo founde,
⁸ Bute a schipful þer of a scapede, þat were to fele y wys,
 War of com þe luþer brod, þat a mong men zet ys.
 Ten ⁹ zer Vaspasian emperour was þo,
 And Tytus ys sone astur hym ¹⁰ ten zer, and no mo.
 Domician, Tytus broþer, emperour þo was,
 Fiftene zer astur hym. no more schrewe þer nas.

Occisio Ju-
 daeorum.

¹ Cite *Ar.* ² He fleigh for fere out of toun, and hym self slough, And for he Petur & Powel slough he hadde vengeance y nough *Ar.* ³ *Deest Ar.* ⁴ Stronge ynough *Ar.* ⁵ Al to *Ar.* ⁶ Wonne the toun of Jerusalem, and fulde hit doun to grounde, *Ar.* ⁷ There the *Ar.* ⁸ Som yut of hem a skapede, & that was harm y wis, *Ar.* ⁹ Yer afterward Vaspasian *Ar.* ¹⁰ Two *Ar. recte, Adeo ut teu reponerem.*

For he ¹ worrede Cristendom, as þe luper Nero,
And let ² martri Seyn Denys, & mony oþer al so.

³ **A** NERUA was þo emperour a ȝer, & somdel more.
Trajan ⁴ com aftur hym, mon of gret lore. Trajanus.
Nyentene ȝer & an half emperour he was,
⁵ þe noblest þat myȝte, bote þat he Cristene nas.
So ryȝtful he was, þat ⁶ þan he hadde a dede hym self ydo,
þat a ȝeyn ⁷ ys lawes was, and ys sone al so,
⁸ For such dede a man schulde, þat þis hadde y wroȝt,
Lese ys on eye, & he hym self ne sparede hym self nogt,
Bute let pulte out ys own eye, & ys sone's al so.
⁹ Welⁿ fewe kynges ¹⁰ me syþ, þat yt wolde do.
þer fore Seyn Gregori, þo he o londe was,
More þan fyf hundred ȝer aftur þis ryȝtful cas,
þat such a mon schulde in helle be, he carede in hys þoȝt,
þe soule ¹¹ þorp Gode's grace out of helle he broȝte,
And to ys body ¹² ys joyned, & ȝef hym Cristendom,
¹³ War with, as he worþi was, to blisse of Heuene ¹⁴ com.

¹ Werrede *Ar.* ² Martire
Seynt *Ar.* ³ *Litteram hanc
majusculam A rectissime omit-
tit Ar.* ⁴ Com tho after hym,
a man *Ar.* ⁵ Noble man for
soth he was, but he *Ar.* ⁶ Theigh
pro þan in Ar. ⁷ The lawe
were, or his sone *Ar.* ⁸ For

which dede a man sholde, for
that he hadde y wrought, Lese
eny of hys lymes, hym self ne
sparede he nought, Ac let *Ar.*
⁹ *Deest Ar.* ¹⁰ Me nough
sikth *Ar.* ¹¹ Thurgh *Ar.* ¹² Hym
Ar. ¹³ Whar thurgh, as *Ar.*
¹⁴ He com *Ar.*

ADRIAN com þo next, and twenti ȝer and on
 Aftur hym emperour he was, of Giwes ne louede he non.
 þe ¹ boru of Jerusalem he let somdel a ² ȝeyn" rere,
 þat Vaspasian felde adoun, þo he slow þe Giwes þere.
 Ac he nolde ³ þe Giwes leue ȝeue for noþing, þat heo myȝte,
 þat þe moste of þe boru enes hadde a syȝte.
 He dude hem schame y now, & temprede hem fulwel,
 And mad ⁴ hem sone milde y now, þo heo were rebel.

ANTONIN was þo emperour twenti ȝer and two,
 And aftur hym twei breþeren in þe emperie were y do,
 Marcus & Aurelius, nyentene ȝer heo were,
 Cristendam bi here day ⁵ me by gan faste lere.
 For ⁶ Eleuthere a god mon was þo pope of Rome,
 þorw wam first ⁷ Christenemen in to Engolond come,
 Ych wol sone telle how, as ich vnderstonde,
 And telle aftur þis emperoures of kynges of þis londe.

Reges.

AFTUR kyng Aruirag, of wam we habbeþ y told,
 Marius, ys sone, was kyng, quoynte mon & bold.
 And ys sone was aftur hym, ⁸ Coil was ys name,
 Boþe it were quoynte men, & of noble fame,

¹ Burgh *Ar.* ² *Deest Ar.* | gan faste to lere *Ar.* ⁶ Eleu-
³ The Jewes loue for no thyng, | therie the good man *Ar.* ⁷ Cris-
 that hii myghte, That hii moste | tendom *Ar.* ⁸ Kyng Coel was
 of the burghes ones haue *Ar.* | his name, A noble man &
⁴ Hem meok and mylde ynough, | queynte, and of good fame,
 that erst were rebel *Ar.* ⁵ Me | *Ar.*

And

And here truage dude to Rome, as hem agte to do.
 For þer nas ¹ nower so noble prince, þat ne dude ² so.
 Lucy, Coile's sone, aftur hym kyng was.
³ For, as me may þe soþe segge, by fore hym no beter nas.
 For he herde ⁴ of telle of miracles, þat come
 þorw Cristenemen al a boutte, as wel as at Rome.
 He willede anon in hys herte to fonge Cristendom.
 þer fore ys messageres mid gode lettres he nom,
 þat to þe pope ⁵ Eleuchere hastiliche heo wende,
⁶ þat he quik in to ys lond Cristendom hym sende,
 þat ⁷ heo mygte serue God, for he wilnede mucche þer to,
 And he ne schulde not be glad, er þe dede were y do.
⁸ þo pope here of was glad, & twei holy men hym sende,
 Fagan and ⁹ Dimian, hys soule for to amende
¹⁰ þat rygt bi leue hym tagte, and gef hym Cristendom.
 þo folk þo faste a boutte wyde þer to com.
 þis was an hundred ȝer, and sixti ȝer and two,
 Aftur þat God was ybore, þat þis dede was y do.
¹¹ þus com lo into þis lond first Cristendam,
 Bute yt were any holi man, þat priueliche arst yt nom.

Prima
 Christiani-
 tas Angliæ.

¹ None *Ar.* ² Also *Ar.* ³ To
 fore hym in Engelonde Cris-
 tendom none nas *Ar.* ⁴ Ofte
 telle *Ar.* ⁵ Eleutherie *Ar.*
⁶ And that *Ar.* ⁷ He *Ar.* ⁸ The
Ar. ⁹ Damian *Ar.* ¹⁰ The
 ryght bileue to teche, & yaf
 hym Cristendom. That folk
 faste a boutte wide ther to com
Ar. ¹¹ Thus com lo Cristen-

dom in to Brutayne londe, But
 ther were erst some preueliche
 Cristendom hadde fonge. As
 at the place of Glastyngbury
 Joseph of Arimathie Lyuede
 ther in Criste's lay, with hys
 companye. Ther were tho
 in Brutayne, false lawes to lere,
Ar.

þer

þer were arst in Engelond, hor false lawes to lere,
 Eygte and tuenti chef studes, bischopriches as it were,
 And þre architemples, as it were ¹ hext of echon,
 London, and ² Euerwik, and in Glomorgan on.

Episcopa-
tus.

þis gode kyng & his holi men lette felle hem alle þere,
 And eigte & tuenti bischopriches in here studes lette rere.

Archiepi-
scopatus.

And þe erchbischopriches as þe þre architemples were,
 As yt were of alle chef Cristendom to lere.

Alle þo bischopriches vnder Euerwik were ydo

þat ben bi Norþ Homber, as heo deþ zet al so.

London ³ hadde þo al þis lond, þat bi Norþ Homber ys,
 From Douere to Seuerne, and al Cornewaile iwis.

þe þridde erchbischopriche was at Carleon in Walis

Vp Osk in Glomorgan, ac þe see a doune ys,

Ac endes of olde walles þer stondeþ zet ⁴ euerne,"

Under hym Walis þilke hadde, & al bi West Seuerne.

Reditus
increduli-
tatis.

⁵ þus com lo in to þis lond first Cristendom,

Ac þoru a luþer emperour, þat þer aftur com,

þat het Dioclician, it was seþþe i brogt to gronde,

And ⁶ heþenes y brogt ageyn for to Seynt Austyn it vn bonde.

¹ Heýghest *Ar.* ² Ebrack-
 wik, and ther to Carlyon. The
 kyng and othur holy men de-
 struyde hem alle y fere, And
 eighte and twenty bisschopes in
 hure stede dude there, And
 thre Erchebisschopes ther the
 Erchetemples were, *Ar.* ³ Had-

de that othur del, that a this
 side Humber is, Fram Douere
 in to Cornewaile to the see
 ywis *Ar.* *Adeo ut Souþ pro*
Norþ reponi debeat. ⁴ *Deest*
in Ar. ⁵ Thus com in to this
 lond the lawe of Cristendom,
Ar. ⁶ Hethenese *Ar.*

Lucie þis gode kyng, þat þus Cristene bi com,
 Deide aboute four ȝer aftur ys Cristendom.
 At ¹ Gloucestre he deide, ac eir nadde he non,
 þat a corede al þis lond, and ys men echon.

SOUER was emperour þilke tyme at Rome,
 So þat þe tyþinges sone to hym come,
 þat ² þo kyng of Breteyne with oute eyr was ded.
 Sone he þoru is court þer of nom ys red,
 And wende hider hastiliche ³ with power y now,
 And folk, þat stode a ȝeyn hym, faste to ȝronde he slow.
 A duk þer was of þis lond, Fulgence was ys name,
 He stod aȝeyn hym mid ys ost, & dude hym gret schame;
 And, forto be þe sikerore, he wende ⁴ to Scotlond,
 And made hym þere ⁵ gret ost of folk of þat lond,
 And wende oft vp hym, and slow and barnde faste.
 Ac euer hadde þe emperour þe maystre atte laste.
⁶ þe emperour in þis lond weddede þo a wyf,
 þat was Fulgence's ⁷ sostre, þo in al þis strif.
 Bi hire he hadde a god sone, y clepud Basian;
 An oþer he hadde, y hote Get, þat he at ⁸ Rome biwan.
 þo Fulgence seiþ, þat he ne myzte aȝeyn hym stonde,
 To þe ⁹ lond of Scicie he wende out of þis londe,

Imperator-
 sponsat so-
 rorem Ful-
 gencii.

¹ Gloucetre he was y buried, ac heir hadde he non, Muchel sorwe to the lond, and to the men echon. Seuer was tho Emperour *Ar.* ² The *Ar.* ³ With gret power y nough. That folk *Ar.* ⁴ In to *Ar.* ⁵ A gret ost of landfolk of the londe, And wende out vpon hym *Ar.* ⁶ Themperour here in this lond tho weddede a wife, *Ar.* ⁷ Suster in this ilke strife *Ar.* ⁸ Rome wan *Ar.* ⁹ Contreie of Sithie *Ar.*

¹ And a gret ost of Picars, whas cheuenteyn he was,
Of stronge men he gederede, to helpe hym in þis cas.
þo he y mad hym a fayr ost of þis bacheleric,
He com a zeyn in to þis lond out of ² Scicie.

He by lay first Euerwik op þe emperour faste.

Bellum. So þat þe emperour hym zef batail at þe laste.

³ Ac mucche del of þis lond to Fulgence toke,
For ⁴ he more of kynde was, & þe emperour for soke.
Bataile þei smyte strong ynow, & mony slowe to gronde,
So þat Fulgence þere hadde deþeiswonde.

Ac þe emperour ⁵ was y slawe, & y buried at Euerwyk.

⁶ Ac Fulgence deide seþþe, þo he hadde y ley sik.

Contencio. þo þis men were b þe ded, me moste hadde a kyng.

Bi twene þo Romaynes & þis lond þer bi gan þo stryuyng.

⁷ Get, þe emperoure's sone, þe Romaynes to kyng nome.

For he was ⁸ of fader and moder of þe kynde of Rome.

Ac þe Brutones of þis lond nome Basian þer to.

For ys moder was of þis lond, & ys vncle al so.

⁹ þo þer were twei kynges þus, þer nas not wel gret loue,

Ne mygte, þei heo breþren were, er þo on were a bouc.

¹ And of Pictes gedered an ost, and hure cheuenteyn was, Staleworthe men and hardy, to helpe hym in this cas. Tho this ost y gadered was of yonge bachelrie, *Ar.* ² Sithie. He byseged Euerwyk vpon themperour faste *Ar.* ³ For *pro ac in Ar.* ⁴ He of hure kynde was, *Ar.* ⁵ Was er y slawe,

Ar. ⁶ And Fulgence deýde afterward, tho he hadde longe be sik. Tho these men *Ar.* ⁷ Geth, themperoure's *Ar.* ⁸ Of the fader blod, & of the kynde of Rome *Ar.* ⁹ Theigh they were bretheren beýe, ther was nought gret loue, Ne they myghte reste haue, forte on was a boue *Ar.*

So þat eiþer ¹ vp oþer werrede ² faste,
 And a batail strong y now smyten at þe laste.
³ And Basian and ys power slow ⁴ Get ys broþer,
⁵ And Basian bi leuede kyng, for þer nas þo non oþer.

A STALEWORþE zong bachiler in þis lond was þo,
⁶ Caraus was yclepud, þat couþe of mucho wo.
 For þo he hadde in werre y be, ⁷ & do gret maistrie,
⁸ And hym self mucho yfounded, he þouzte do tricherie.
 He wente and bed leue þo of þe emperour of Rome,
⁹ To wyte þe se a boute þis lond fram stronge men þat come,
 And bi het hym, þat, zef þer of wel auauused he were,
 To zelde more god to Rome, þan al Breteyne þider bere.
 þo þe conseil of Rome y leuede ys faire bi hest,
 And þat he was strong mon, & of gret power with þe meste,
 þe emperour with god cartre, & mid ys owne ¹⁰ cel,
¹¹ Hym zef of þe se a boute þe warde euer y del.
 þis false mon wende ¹² þo mid ys cartre a boute,
 And of ¹³ willesful men hym zederede a gret route,
 And bi het hem ¹⁴ god y now of purchas, þat God hem sende,
 And purueide ¹⁵ hem gode schippes, & in to þe se wende,

¹ Upon *Ar.* ² Swithe faste, *Ar.* ³ So Bassian *Ar.* ⁴ Geth *Ar.* ⁵ And so he was al one kyng, for ther was non other *Ar.* ⁶ Karant cluped he was, & couthe on muchel wo *Ar.* ⁷ Y do *Ar.* ⁸ And a sayd mucho hym self, he thoughte in trecherie *Ar.* ⁹ To kepe

the Bruttýsshe see fro strange men that come *Ar.* ¹⁰ Sele, *Ar.* ¹¹ Hym yaf the power of this lond to hym euery dele *Ar.* ¹² Forth tho with his chartre *Ar.* ¹³ Euel doynge men gaderede *Ar.* ¹⁴ Good *Ar.* ¹⁵ Hym *Ar.*

And won hem sone muche god mid strengþe & quoyntise,
 And seþþe mid robbery, bute þei mygte ¹ in" oþer wyse.
² Of hys purchas so large he was to men þat he fonde,
 þat he hadde a gret ost in a lutel stonde.
 þe yles he robbede in þe see, & þe hauenes ³ seþþe" a bouten.
⁴ So þat men of purchas come to hym so gret route,
 þat þer nas ⁵ prince vn næþe þat hym mygte at route.
 Hys power wex euer so, þat eche lond hym gan doute.
 So þat he spek mid hey men here of þis loud,
 And bi het hem faire y now, & dude hem to vnderstonde,
 þat gef heo abowe to hym, and to here kyng hym nome,
 þat he ⁶ wole al out hem bryng of þe daunger of Rome,
 And ⁷ deliuere þis lond of Romaynes, & of stronge men echon,
 þat so fre lond as þis ne schulde nower non.
 þe lond hym made þo here kyng, for he was so quoynte man,
 And he bi gan to werre anon vp þe kyng Basian,
 And eyþer ageyn oþer gederede ys ost faste,
 So þat þei comen and smyton a batail atte laste.
⁸ Ac ⁹ Caraus of felonye hym gan vnderstonde,
 And þogte, þat ¹⁰ Picars were of ¹¹ strong londe,

Bellum.

¹ *Omittit Ar.* ² So large he was to hys men of thynges that hii founde, *Ar.* ³ *Deest in Ar.* ⁴ *Sic igitur ipso a gente confluebant ad illum quicunque in aliena anhelabant; ita ut in brevi tantum haberet exercitum, quanto nullus vicinus princeps resistere quivisset* Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Prince non that *Ar.* ⁶ Wolde hem bryng al out of *Ar.* ⁷ De-

lyuere out of this lond the Romeynes echon: So freo a lond as this in the worlde sholde be non. That folk hym made tho hure kyng, *Ar.* ⁸ *Quod cum impetrasset, dimicavit confestim cum Bassiano & interfecit eum, & gubernaculum regni suscepit. Prodidant enim Bassianum Picti, quos dux Fulgentius, matris*

þat ¹ were with Basian þe kyng, þat Fulgence ² hider brogte,
þat ³ heo wolde ligliche to hym turne ⁴ he þogte.

Mid hem he spek so quoyntoliche, & mede ⁵ bi gan bede,
So þat þe kyng Basian heo by traide in hys nede.

For þo heo come to batail, heo turnede a zeyn hym echon :

⁶ Heo nuste wich were ⁷ here freud, ne wych were ⁸ here fon.

⁹ Ac Basian and al ys folk eode a non to gronde,

And he hym self and mony oþer y slawe were in astonde.

þo was þis false ¹⁰ Caraus kyng of þis lond here,

¹¹ Unel it bi com hym of kynde to ben of such power.

þo tyþing com þo to Rome, þat he dude hem such schame,

¹² Heo nome a gret lordyng, Allect was ys name,

And sende hym in to þis lond, & men mid hym ynowe,

So þat in batail þis ¹³ Caraus heo slowe.

þo þis batail was y do, heo bi gonne arere

Werre vp men of þis lond, for ¹⁴ heo with Caraus were.

*tris suæ frater, in Britanniam
conduxerat. Nam dum sibi
auxiliari debuissent, promissis
& donariis Carausii corrupti,
in ipso prælio divertērunt
se à Bassiano, & in com-
militones suos irruerunt.
Unde stupefacti ceteri, cum
ignorarent quis socius esset,
quis hostis, ocius dilabuntur,
& victoria cessit Carausio.
Qui ut triumphum habuit,
dedit Pictis locum mansionis
in Albania, ubi cum Britoni-
bus mixti per subsequens*

*ævum permanserunt. Galfr.
Mon. ⁹ Carant of his felonye
gan hym Ar. ¹⁰ The Pictes
Ar. ¹¹ Strange Ar.*

¹ Hii were Ar. ² His Uncle
broughte, Ar. ³ Hii Ar. ⁴ Hure
thoughte. To hem he spak
Ar. ⁵ Bygan hem beode, Ar.
⁶ He Ar. ⁷ His Ar. ⁸ His
Ar. ⁹ And Ar. Carant
Ar. ¹¹ Unele by cam hym of
kynde to haue such power Ar.
¹² Hii Ar. ¹³ Carant hii Ar.
¹⁴ ii wi h Carant Ar.

þe Brytones þo of þis lond, to schilde ¹ hem fro schame,
² Cheson hem anew kyng, ³ Asclepiod was ys name,
 þat was erl of Cornewail. he ⁴ gedere ys ost anon
 To werre, & to stonde a zeyn þe ⁵ Romaines ys fon.
 He ⁶ wende hym to Londone, as kyng Allect þo was,
 To honoure ⁷ here false Godes, as it fel þo bi cas.
⁸ þo þis kyng þis vnder zet, þat þis folk þus come,
⁹ He bi leuede ys sacrificise, & ys folk with hym nom,
 And wende out ageyn hem, & strong bataile heo smyte.
 Bellam. So muche folk þer was y slawe, þat deol yt was to wyte.
¹⁰ þis Britones were so egre, and wox euer so faste,
 þat ¹¹ þo Romaines and here kyng gonne fle atte laste.
¹² þo Britones siwede aftur, as heo agt do,
 And slowe mony þousant, and Allect þe kyng al so.
 A ¹³ lordyng of þe Romaines, þat y hote was Galle,
 Com & ¹⁴ zold hym to oure kyng, & ys men ney wat alle.
 þe kyng hym nom to prison, to London he was y brogt.
 þe kyng hym wolde zene lyf, ac ys men nolde nogt,
 Ne suffre, þat þer were ¹⁵ o liue eny of here fon,
 Ac ladde hym in to London, & ys men echon,
 To a rennyng water, þat zet ys þer y wene,
 And smyten of alle here hedes, to bryng hem out of tene.
 þe water þer heo were y slawe me clepude Galle brok,
 Aftur Galle þilke prince, þat þer ys deþ tok.

¹ Hem self fram *Ar.* ² Chese
Ar. ³ Asclepedot *Ar.* ⁴ Ga-
 derede *Ar.* ⁵ Romeynes, that
 were his fon *Ar.* ⁶ Wende
 thuder sone anon, ther as
 Allect was, *Ar.* ⁷ His *Ar.*

⁸ Tho Allect this vnder yat
Ar. ⁹ He by lefte *Ar.* ¹⁰ These
Ar. ¹¹ The *Ar.* ¹² The *Ar.*
¹³ Lordlyng *Ar.* ¹⁴ yeld *Ar.*
¹⁵ Alyue *Ar.*

þo was Breteyn þis lond of Romaynes almost lere,
¹ Ac albysi were yt ten ȝer, ar heo here ageyn were.
 Asclepiod let hym þo crowne to kyng a non,
 And kept a boutē ten ȝer þis lond ² wel mid.
 Ac þoru Romaynes, þat ³ here come, þat heþene were echon,
 And þoru ⁴ oþer, Cristendom was nei wat al agon.

TWEI ⁵ emperoures ⁶ of Rome, Dyoclician,
 And an oþer, ys felaw, þat het Maximian,
⁷ Were boþe at on tyme, þe on in þe Est ende,
⁸ And þe oþer in þe West, Cristendom to schende.
 For þe luþer Maximian Westward hider soȝte,
 And Cristenemen, þat he fond, to strong deþ he broȝte.
 Chirches he fel al a doun, þer ne moste non stonde.
 And al þe bokes, þat he myȝte fynde in eny londe,
 He wolde lete hem berne echon amid þe heye strete,
 And ⁹ þo Cristenemen ¹⁰ alle sle, and none ¹¹ o liue lete.
 Seþþe God was ¹² y bore, þer nas for Cristendom
 In so lute stonde y do so gret martirdom.
 For þer were in a moneþ seuentene þousant and mo
 Y martired for oure Lorde's-loue, (¹² nas not here gret wo?)

¹ Unnethē was hit ten yer, that hii her a yen nere. Ascleopedot hym let tho crouny kyng a non *Ar.* ² *Pro* wel mid legend. *potius cum Ar.* fram þis fon. *Id quod carminis ratio postulat.* ³ Hider *Ar.* ⁴ Othur mysbeleuede, Cristendom was al gon *Ar.* ⁵ *Vide Editionem nostram vitæ Ælfrædi Magni Spelmannianæ,*

p. 4. ⁶ At Rome were, on Dioclician, *Ar.* ⁷ And were bothe *Ar.* ⁸ The othur in the West of the worlde, al Cristendom to shende *Ar.* ⁹ The *Ar.* ¹⁰ A sle *Ar.* ¹¹ A lyue *Ar.* ¹² Y bore, vpon Cristendom Such persecucion as tho was hadde ther be non *Ar.* ¹² Nas there a gret wo? *Ar.*

With oute ¹ grete halwe, þat heo hulde longe in torment,
 As Seynt Cristyne & Seynt Fey, & al so Seynt Vincent ;
² As Sebastian, & mony oþer, as me may in Chirche rede,
 And monyon turnede a ȝeyn to heþene for drede.
 Among alle þese in þis lond, þat were monion
 Y martred as þilke tyme, Seynt Albon was on,
³ þat was þe firste martir, þat to Engolond come,
 Dere haþ, Lord ! mony a mon y bogt Cristendom.
 Under þis luþer ⁴ emperoures þer was a noble mon,
 As of ⁵ heore luþer lawes, þat vnder hem muche won.
 Constance was ys name, he conquereð of Spayne
 þe truage, and of Fraunce, & seþþe here of Bretayne.

Constan-
 cius.

COLE was a noble mon, & ⁶ gret power hadde on honde,
 Erl he was of Colchestre here in þis londe,
 And Colchestre aftur ys name y clepuð ys ich vnderstonde.
 Oure lord, among oþer þinges, hym sende a fair sonde,
 þat ⁷ he hadde an holy dogter al Colchestre in þis londe,
 þat Seynt Helene was y clepuð, þat ⁸ þo holy croys fonde.

¹ Othure grete halwen, *Ar.*
² Fabian and Sebastian, and
 othur, as men rede, that helde
 faste in the fey, and hadde
 non drede. And, among men
 of these londe, there were ma-
 nyon I martred at thulke
 tyme, *Ar.* ³ He was the furste

martir of Brutayne that com.
 Muche was the shame me dude
 tho to Cristendom. Under *Ar.*
⁴ Emperour *Ar.* ⁵ Hure luthur
 lawe, and vnder hym muche
 wan *Ar.* ⁶ Muche *Ar.* ⁷ He
 gat a fair daughter at Coel-
 chestre *Ar.* ⁸ The *Ar.*

Bi twene oure kyng ¹ Asclepiod & þis erl with oute faile
² þer wox gret worre, so þat heo smyte bataile. Bellum.
 And þis erl Cole slow þe kyng, & þo he hadde ³ þo ouer hond,
 Kyng he let hym crowne þo of ⁴ al þis lond.
 þat folk was þo of þis lond y payed wel ynow,
 þat he hadde y wonne þe kyndom, & þat he þe oþer slow.
 þe tyþing to Rome com, ⁵ þat he y slawe was,
 þat hem hadde y do schame, heo were glad of þat cas.
 þe noble prince ⁶ heo sende hyder þe gode knygt Constance,
 þat whan hem al þe power of Spayne & eke of France,
⁷ þat he scholde eke þis lond wynne a zeyn to Rome.
 So þat þis noble prince, and ys men hyder come.
⁸ þe kyng Cole yt vnder zet, he dradde in ys mod,
 For he was so noble ⁹ knygt, þat no mon hym with stod.
 To hym he sende of acord, zet it were is wille, Concordia.
 þat he wolde to Rome abowe, & lete alle strif be stille,
 And þider bere ys truage, as oþer dude bi fore,
¹⁰ For wat he huld þe kindam, wen þe truage were ybore.
 Constance it grantede, and nom ys truage,
¹¹ And nom also to be siker of hym god ostage,
 And grantede hym þe kyndom and þe pes of Rome,
 And bi leuede in þis lond ¹² to godere y some.

¹ Astleopedot *Ar.* ² Gan
 ther were a contek, so that hii
 smyte ane bataille *Ar.* ³ The
 heygher *Ar.* ⁴ Al the Bru-
 tayne lond *Ar.* ⁵ The kyng
 a slawe was, *Ar.* ⁶ Hii *Ar.*
⁷ And that *Ar.* ⁸ Tho Coel
Ar. ⁹ Prince *Ar.* ¹⁰ And
 to kepe the kyndom, that hit

nere forlose. Constancius
 grauntede this, & *Ar.* ¹¹ And
 to be the sikerour, of hym toke
 good ostage, *Ar.* ¹² To ge-
 dere botho y come. Sone by
 fel afterward, That Coel
 kyng sik lay, And deide sone
 afterward with ynne a short
 day, *Ar.*

A moneþ

A moneþ it was þer aftur, þat Cole syk lay,
 And deide, as God wolde, with inne þe eigteþe day,
 And oþer cir nadde he non, bute Seynt Helene þe gode,
 Ys dogter, þat seþþe fond þe swete holy rode.

Sponsacio
 Helene.

Constance, for hire eritage, þis maide to wyue nom,
 And nom with ¹ hire so þis lond, and þis kyndom,
 And let hym ² crowne kyng, & god kyng was and fyn.
 By hire he hadde a god sone, y clepu Constantyn.
 þo Constance hadde y be ellene ȝer kyng y wys,
 He deide at ³ Euerwyk, and yburied was þer and ys.

CONSTANTYN, is ȝonge sone, ycrowned was þo kyng.
 Noble mon he bicom, & ⁴ wytty þorp alle þing.
 Kyng he was þritti ⁵ ȝer. he ladde þis kyndom
 Ryȝt nobliche and swiþe wel with quoyntyse and wysdom.

ALUTHER emperour bi fore, þat het Maximian,
 þat was ⁶ vp Cristenemen (as we seide) so luþer a man,
 A sone he hadde ⁷ schrewe y now, Maxencius to name,
 Hym me made emperour, mony mon to schame.
 He wes, as wel as ys fader, gret schrewe y now.
⁸ For in strong martirdom Seynt Kateryn he slow,

¹ Hure al this lond, *Ar.* | wysdom. The luthur *Ar.*
² Crouny to kyng, that good | ⁶ Upon Cristendom a swithe
 knyght was & fyn, *Ar.* ³ E. | luthur man, *Ar.* ⁷ Sherewed
 bracwyk, and ther y buried | ek, Maxent was his name,
 ys. Constantyn *Ar.* ⁴ Wys | Hym he made *Ar.* ⁸ For
 thurgh *Ar.* ⁵ Yer of this | Kateryne, and other mo, in
 kyngdom, And gouernede hit | stronge deth he slough. Much
 swythe wel with [queyntise & | folk he dude shame, and the
 folk

And mony oþer martir, and þat folk of Rome al so
 He fondede to deserie, and mony schames do.
 So þat þe deserites in to þis lond come
 To Constantyn, þe godelkyng, for de faute from Rome.
 And he hem faire vnder fong, so þat mo and mo'
 þer come for enlegeance to habbe of heore wo.
 So þat ¹ þese deserites bi gonne al on hym grede.
 "Sire," heo seiden, "for Gode's loue bryng vs of þis
 wrechede.
 "Of þe kynde blod of emperie þer nys bi leued non,
 "² Ne þat bi kynde were emperour, non bute þou on.
 "How longe wolt þou suffre þe schrewe's out rage?
 "Go and wyn þi kynde lond and þyn eritage.
 "þou schalt habbe þer help y now of þi kynde londe.
 "Wel þou wost, þat ³ lute while þe schrewe þe at stonde.
 Constantyn hym vnderstod of ys kynde londe.
⁴ And god it were to habbe þis and þat on honde.
 Muche power of þis lond mid hym forþ he nom,
 And seþþe also of France, as he þer forþ com.
 And wende toward Rome to wynne þe emperie,
 To brynge þe schrewe adoun, þat dude þat robberye.
 As he wende, he bi huld toward heuene an hey,
 And þo vp in þe firmament an angel he sey,

Visio
 crucis.

folk of Rome also He fondede
 to disherite, and brynge hem
 to wo. The disheritez of
 Rome to this londe come To
 Constantyn, and bysoughte
 hym of hem to take gome.
 And he hem *Ar.*

¹ The disherites gonne on
 hym to grede *Ar.* ² That
 sholde be kynde emperour,
 non but though al on *Ar.*
³ Lytel while they shulleth
 the withstonde *Ar.* ⁴ And
 that hit were good to haue *Ar.*

þat

þat huld a crois, and þer on y write was lo! þis,
 “¹ Costantyne þorg þis signe þou schalt be maister iwis.”
 Constantyne þis vnderstod, heþene þai he were.
 A crois, in stude of ys baner, ² ys men bi fore hym bere.
 Maxencius þo he wiste him come, he hadde of hym gret
 doute.

He let at Rome a strong dich make al a boutte
 And dep agen Constantyne, and a zeyn al ys route
 Forto holde hem þer þoru wan heo come with oute.
 As he was a boutte þis dich, he ne gan not mucche wyne.
 For he fel al amidde, and dreynt hym þer inne.
 þoru þe vertu of the crois he was sone ouercome,
 And Costantyn hadde al so sone þe toun ynome,
⁷ Costantyn ne com nower in batail non,
 þat he nadde þorg þe crois þe maistri of fon.
 So þat he hym vnderstod ⁴ of þe beste won,
 And of Seynt Siluestre þe pope hym let baptize anon.
 And he was (as yt is ywrite) pur mesel þo,
 And he bi com in hys baptizing hol of ys wo.
 Seynt Siluestre was pope þo, and þe first þat þer com
 Of alle popes þat deide with oute martirdom.
 For þer nas non by fore him þat he martired nas
 Of þe luther emperours, for eche heþene was.
 A chirche of Seynt Jon þe baptist Constantyn let rere,
 And clepude yt ⁵ Costantiniane, for he was ybaptized þere.

Baptiza-
 cio Con-
 stantini.

Levacio
 ecclesia-
 rum.

¹ Constantyn *Ar. & sic in-* | ward com in bataille non *Ar.*
fra. ² Tofore hym he let rere | ⁴ What best was to don,
Ar. ³ Constantyn ther after- | *Ar.* ⁵ Constantiniane, *Ar.*

¹ Of Seynt Petur & of Poule an oþer he rerede al so,
And in strong ² mastlyng he haþ þer inne boþe heore bones
y do.

Of seynt Laurence he rerde anoþer, of seynt Anneis eke on.
And of oþer Seyntes þat ȝet stondeþ he rerede eke monion.
þo sende he Seynt Elene ys moder, ³ þat wys was y kud,
To Jerusalem to seche þe croys, þat þere was y hud.
So þat it was þer y founde ⁴ þe by gyng of þe Maý,
As ȝe habbeþ ofte yherd, þe holy rode daý.
Costantyn lette also in Jerusalem chirches rere,
And ⁵ wyde aboute elles wer, Cristendom to lere.
So þat þoru Gode's grace so noble mon he was,
þat þer nas prince in al þe world, þat vnder ys power nas.
þre vnclen ys moder hadde, þat on hatte Honyn,
And Trahen þo oþer hette, and þe þridde Maryn.
Alle þre Costantyn nom with hym to Rome,
And grete lordes þoru hym alle þre þer bi come.

AN erl þer was in þis lond, Octaui was ys name :
Romaynes, þat ⁶ here bileuede, he dude ofte schame,
And slow hem faste her & þer, ⁷ þat me schulde uewe y se.
þe Brutones hym crownede þo heore kyng for to be.
⁸ þis word com to Constantyn, he þouȝte was to done :
Trahen, ys moder vnclen, hyder he sende sone.

¹ To *pro* of in *Ar.* ² Mast-
lyng he let hure bones do *Ar.* | *boute Ar.* ⁶ Were byleued,
³ That wys womman was | *Ar.* ⁷ That few me myghte
kud, *Ar.* ⁴ In the gynnyng | y se *Ar.* ⁸ Whan this word
of Maý, *Ar.* ⁵ Wende a | what best to done: *Ar.*

With gret power ynow, to wyne þis kyrdom.
 At an hauene bi Souþe þis ¹ folk o londe com.
 þe kyng was of hem ywar, ageyn ² hem he sette.
 Bi side Winchestre in a feld to gedere heo hem mette.

Bellum.

Batail heo smyten þer, & to gronde slowe faste,
 So þat Octaui oure kyng aboue was ³ tte laste,
 And Trahen, & muche of hys folk, y wounded ney to deþe,
⁴ Flowe to se to heore schippes, and of scapede vnnep̄e.
 To Scotlond heo wende bi water, & þer þei gonne ariue,
 And gederede þer ⁵ al new ost ageyn þe kyng bi liue,
 And robbede faste and barnde al þe contrei a boutē.
 Oure kyng wende þiderward faste mid ys route.

Bellum.

In Westmerlond þei mette hem, and gonne figte biliue,
 Ac oure kyng Octaui of scapede vnnep̄e ⁶ o liue.
 He of scapede ⁷ in tor Norwei, to wyne hym help faste.
 þo was Trahen ⁸ al a lord, þe wyle yt wolde laste.
 Ac as he out of Londen wente in a tyde,
 A gret erl hym kepte þer in a wode syde,
 With an hundred knyghtes y armed wel ynow.
 þis prince al vn ywar toward hem drow.
 Heo comen ageyn ⁹ hym vn war, & slowe ¹⁰ hym al for noȝt.
 þis tyþing was ouer se to þe kyng sone y broȝt.
 He com hyder sone a ȝeyn joyful y now,
 And ¹¹ þo Romaynes, þat he fond, to gronde faste he slow.

¹ Folk to londe <i>Ar.</i> ² Hem sone he sette <i>Ar.</i> ³ Atte <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ Hii flough faste to hure shipes, and a scapede vnnethe <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ A newe ost a yenst	the kyng as blyue, <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ A lyue <i>Ar.</i> ⁷ <i>L.</i> into <i>cum Ar.</i> ⁸ As lord, <i>Ar.</i> ⁹ Hem <i>Ar.</i> ¹⁰ Hem for nought <i>Ar.</i> ¹¹ The <i>Ar.</i>
--	--

þo gederede he so gret ¹ tresour, and al so so gret route,
 And so gret power, þat he nadde of no prince in þe world doute.
 For þer nas prince non þat hym dorste arere strif.
 So þat he huld þo þis lond in pes al is lyf.
 He ² ascode at ys conseileres, þo he to elde com,
 How he mygte best do mid ³ þis kyndom,
 For he nadde bote a dogter ho mygte ys eir be?
 Some of ys conselers hym gonne þus bi se,
 þat he schulde nyme ys neuwe, þat ⁴ hatte Conan,
 And crowne hym kyng of þis lond, for þat he was ⁵ man,
 And lete ys dogter ⁶ spousi mid richesse y now
 To an oþer prince elles ware, as ys ⁷ herto to drow.
⁸ Oþer radde, þat he schulde al myd þe kyndome
 Late ys dogter spousi to an hey prince of Rome,
 And þenne, for ⁹ þe' alliance þat were hem ¹⁰ by twene,
 Heo mygt þis lond al in pes holde with oute tene.
 So þat þer was among hem gret strif for þis dede.
 Cradok erl of Cornewaile ¹¹ hy a vvs seide,
 þat a senatour of Rome, y hote Maximian,
 Was of þe kynde of þis lond, a swyþe noble man.
 For he was Leoline's sone, þat ¹² Elene vncler was
 þe gode Costantyne's moder, ¹³ for non beter nas,

¹ Ost, and so gret <i>Ar.</i>	he sholde with the kyngdome
² Axede <i>Ar.</i> ³ His <i>Ar.</i>	Lete his doughtur be y spou-
⁴ Was hote <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ A Man, <i>Ar.</i>	sed <i>Ar.</i> ⁹ Deest <i>Ar.</i> ¹⁰ So
⁶ Be y wedded with <i>Ar.</i>	by twene, Hii <i>Ar.</i> ¹¹ His a
⁷ Herte drough <i>Ar.</i>	vys he sede <i>Ar.</i> ¹² He-
⁸ A nothur radde, that <i>Ar.</i>	leyne's <i>Ar.</i> ¹³ That non <i>Ar.</i>

And wan he was a prince of Rome, gef he were eke þer to
 Kyng ¹ eke^r her of þis lond, swiþe wel yt were y do.
 Siker me mygte þenne be, to habbe here pais god ;
 For he was y bore at Rome, & of þis londe's blod.
 And for he was of þis kyng's kynde, þat of þis lond was,
 þe beter pays þer scholde be for the rigtful cas.
 Conan, þe kyng's neuwe, þo he herde þis,
² Was wroþ, and destourbede al þe court y wys.
 And napeles Cradok hym held al eucne and stille,
 And þe kyng stilleliche broȝte al to hys wille.
 To Rome he sende Morice, þat ys owne sone was,
 Pryueliche to Maximian, to telle hym of þis cas.
 þer was þo stryf at Rome bi twene þis Maximian,
 And þo emperour, þat was þo, þat hatte Gracian.
 þo Morice þider com, and faire was vnderfonge,
 And herde þis kontek, þat ilaste longe,
 To þis senatour he seide, " Sire Maximian,
 " " Whi art þou so sore a drad of þis Gracian,
 " " Wen þou migt of hym god wei alto þin wille y se?
 " For com with me to Bretayne, & þou schalt þere kyng be.
 " For þe kyng ⁵ now in elde naþ non eyr y wys
 " Kynde, bote ys doȝter one, þat hym fol lef ys,

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² *Wex wroþ,*
Ar. ³ *Ut quid Gratianum ti-*
mes, Maximiane, cum tibi pa-
teat via, qua ei imperium eri-
pere poteris? Galfridus Mon.
⁴ Thugh myght of hym haue

al thi wille, & thugh konne
 the by se. Com with me *Ar.*
⁵ Nough is old, & ne hath
 non heir y wys, But a dough-
 tur that is yong, that hym lef
 is, *Ar.*

" And he haþ god wille to þe, ¹ as me deþ hym to vnderstonde,
 " þat þou hire spousedest. for þou art of þe kynde of the londe.
 " And such myzt, wan yt so ys, þou myzt þer þoru a fonge,
 " þat þou myzt perauntre ² Rome wyne ar come ogt longe.
 " For þi gode eosyn Costantyn Rome wan al so,
 " And mony oþer of our kynges in þis maner come þer to.
 þo þis Maximian vnderstod al þis,
 He dude hym sone hyderward mid zret power y wis.
 He ariuede at Souþ hampton, as ³ þo wynd hym had y lad.
 þo our kyng herde her of, he was somdel a drad,
 Leste he hadde for vnel y come. ⁴ Ac þe he wiste wad he was,
 He vnder feng hym fayr y now, & conseilede of ⁵ þe cas,
 Some seyde, ⁶ þat hym wer beter take ys neuwe Conan
 þe kyndom of þis lond, and some ⁷ Maximian,
 And some, an hey mon of þis lond þat he ys dozter toke,
 And ys kyndom mid hire, for he yt wolde best loke.
 Ac ys hext conseil nabeles, that he mest vnder stod,
 Radde hym to Maximian, ⁸ for he was of so hey blod,
 Of þe gode quene Elene, & of þe noble Costantyn,
 (þat was kyng here of þis lond, & emperour atte fyn,)

¹ As he is vnderstonde,
 To wedde to the, by cause
 thugh ert of kynde of this
 londe. And such power whan
 hit is so though myght ther
 thurgh avonge, *Ar.* ² Be
 lord of Rome er longe *Ar.*
³ The *Ar.* ⁴ And tho he
 wiste hough hit was, *Ar.*

⁵ This cas *Ar.* ⁶ Beter
 hit were to take *Ar.* ⁷ To
 Maximian, And some othur
 lordes of this londe that hys
 doughtur toke, And the kyng-
 dom with hure, that hit
 couthe best loke *Ar.* ⁸ That
 was of heygh blod, And of
 the good *Ar.*

¹ And of þe kynges' blod Cole kyng of þis lond he com,
 þat god yt were to al þe lond to take hym þe kindom.
 þe kyng and ys meste men hulde al þis wisdom.
 So þat þe kynges' dogter mid þis lond he nom.
 Ac Conan, þe kynges' neuwe, ne likede not þis game.
² He garkedede power a zeyn hym to hym alle schame.
 Ac ys power ³ lute was. for þe kyng was ener aboue,
 So þat atte laste þei were y brogt ⁴ in loue
 Bi Graciane's dai þe emperour. þis was, as ich wene,
⁵ A boute þe zer of grace CCC. & LX. & seuentene.
 Withinne fyf-zer aftur þis kyng so prout bi com,
 For þe grete tresour naneliche þat he alday nom,
 þat he ⁶ nas not ene y paid to habbe þis kyndom,
 Bute he hadde France al so with strengþe wyþ oute donr.
 He nom with hym of ⁷ hys lond gret power y now,
 And to þe lond, þat was yclepud ⁸ Armore, he drow,
 þat Breteyn ys now yclepud, as he it ⁹ nempde þo.
 Fyftene þousant ¹⁰ hors y wrye þer were ageyn hym, & mo.
 Bellum. Of þe lond of France, and of oþer londes bi syde.
 þer heo smyte a batail, þat cowþ was fulwyde.
 þer was þe ¹¹ duk of France y slaw, and al is folk ney.
 þo þe kyng Maximian þis grete slagt y sei,

¹ And of kynges' blood | tene, (*sine* & LX.) *Ar. minus*
 Coel of this londe com, *Ar.* | *recte.* ⁶ Was nought onlich
² He ordeyned with his pow- | a paid to haue the kyngdom,
 er to do hem alle shame *Ar.* | *Ar.* ⁷This *Ar.* ⁸Armorike,
³ Litel *Ar.* ⁴To loue *Ar.* | *Ar.* ⁹Clupede *Ar.* ¹⁰Hors
⁵ In the yer of oure Lord | y heled there were *Ar.* ¹¹
 Crist thre hundred & seuen- | Kyng *Ar.*

He was glad, for he wiste wel to wyne þo al ys wille.
 Conan, ¹ þe quene cosyn, he clepude out þo stille.
 He bi gan som del to ² lihe. "We habbeþ now," he seyde,
 "Y wonne an ende of France, of þe oþer nys no drede.
 "þei ich be kyng of Breteyne, þat was þin ³ vncler lond,
 "Ne be þou not sori þer fore, for ich wol habbe more an hond.
 "Ych wol make þe of þis lond kyng, þou schalt yse,
 "⁴ And þis lond schal be þyn, and þe oþer Breteyn be.
 "For honour of Breteyne, to wam þou haddest kynde,
 "þe oþer Breteyne yt schal hote, as to habbe of þe mynde.
 "Deliuere we schul yt of þis folk, þat ⁵ hire inne ys,
 "And of folk fulle it fol of ⁶ oure kynde y wys.
 Conan bowede a doun to hym, & þonkede hym ⁷ faste,
 And bi het to serue hym trewliche, þe while ys lyf laste.
 Heo wende a boutte in al þe lond, & heye townes nome.
 And al þe men, þat heo fonde, heo slow euer as heo come,
 And let þe wimmen go aliue; & þo heo hadde al ⁸ an honde,
⁹ And hadde y slawe al clene a boutte þat folk of þe londe,

¹ The quene's cosyn, he let tho clepe hym tille, And thus he began to speke to hym. We haueth nough, he sede, Wonne that on ende *Ar.* ² *Id est*, to laugh. *Sic enim Galfr. Mon. "Vocaviter- go Conanum ad se extra tur- mas, & paulisper subridens ait: Ecce unum ex potioribus regnis Gallie subjugavimus, ecce spem ad cetera habere possumus. &c.* ³ Uncle's *Ar.*

⁴ And this, in mynde of that othur, the lasse Brutayne shal be. In honour of the more Brutayne, to what thugh haddest kende, The lasse Brutayne this shal be, to haue the more in mynde *Ar.* ⁵ Ther *Ar.* ⁶ Thyne kynde *Ar.* ⁷ Ful faste, *Ar.* ⁸ On *Ar.* ⁹ And hadde delyuered al a boutte clene that folk of londe *Ar.*

In eche stude heo sette þere strong warnesture and god
 Of folk of þis lond ¹ here, and of here owne blod.
 þe kyng an hundred þousant ² men in þis lond fette,
³ And þritti þousant knyghtes ⁴ here wardeynes he sette.
 And delde among hem al þe lond, & zef eche diuerse þing,
 And made Conan of hem alle, & of al þe lond kyng.
⁵ And þus was Breteyne y wonne þoru oure ⁶ prince here,
 And astur þis lond Bretayn ielepud in þis maner.
 Maximian wende ⁷ forþ þorw ys grete maistrie,
 And wan with strengþe al France, and seþþe Normondie.
⁸ For he zef ech mon, þat to hym com, his purchas in eche
 londe.
 So muche power fel hym to, þat noþing mygt hym at stonde.
 And Gracian þe emperour at Rome ⁹ seþþe he slowz,
 þat for hys hardy dedes of hym me dradde ynowz.
 Ac þoru þe emperour, þat seþþe com, y hote Theodose,
 Maximian was seþþe y slaw, ¹⁰ magrei ys nose.
 And so þe schrewe robboures hadde here wille at stonde,
 And cheui in here robberi, atte laste it goþ to gronde.

¹ Here of hure *Ar.* ² Men of this londe let fette, *Ar.*
³ *Prætereauxxx. milia militum, qui ipsos infra patriam, quam mansuri erant, ab hostili irruptione tuerentur.* Galfr. Mon.
⁴ Hure *Ar.* ⁵ Thus was litle Brutayne *Ar.* ⁶ Princes *Ar.* ⁷ Tho forth *Ar.* ⁸ He yaf ech man that to hym com of purchas of his londe. So muche people drough to hym,

myghte hym no man with- stonde *Ar.* ⁹ Suth he dude to dethe, And his brothur Valentinian a scapede a lyue vnnethe. Ac thurgh an emperour *Ar.* ¹⁰ Maugre al his nose. But erst these sherewe robboures hadde hure wille a stounde, And suth for hure roborie hii were y brought to gronde. þe Brutones *Ar.*

þe Britones, þat Maximian of þis lond brogte þo,
¹ In þe lasse Breteyn bi leueþ zet, and schul euer mo.
 And so þilke Bratayne of þis lond com
 More þoru strengþe, as ze yseþ, þan þoru ryzt dom.
 Of ² þe lasse Bretayn Conan þat was þus kyng,
 Among hem nolde of ³ þilke lond hadde no myngyng,
 Ne children of þilke kynde, þer fore he lette sende
⁴ To hye men of þis lond aboute ia eche ende,
⁵ þat of hye menne doxtren maydenes me nome
⁶ Ellene þousant at þe leste, & to hym þat heo come;
 And of ⁷ simplr maydenes an sixti þousant gode,
 þat heo migte ⁸ make here kynde al clene of heore blode.
⁹ þis maidenes wer y gedered, and ¹⁰ to London y come.
 Mony were glade þer of, and ¹¹ ful sori some
 þat heo schuld of lond wende, & neuer eft here frendes se,
 And somme to lese here maidenhed, wyues for to be.

¹ Byleuede in Brutayne,
 that Conan com thus ther to,
 That Armorike erst cluped
 was, & to newe name thus
 com By conqueste, as who
 seith, more than thurgh *Ar.*
² *Cumquesibicessisset victoria,*
voluit commilitonibus suis con-
juges dare, ut ex eis nasceren-
tur heredes, qui terram illam
perpetuo possiderent; & ut
nullam commixtionem cum
Gallis facerent, decrevit ut ex
Britannia insula mulieres veni-
rent, quæ ipsis marilarentur.

&c. Galfr. Mon. ³ That lond
Ar. ⁴ To the heigh *Ar.* ⁵
 That heighe mennes doughtren
 maydens me nome Enleuen
 thousand atte leste, *Ar.* ⁶ xi. ml.
 maydenes fre. lx. ml. madenes
 thewe *Ar. in marg.* ⁷ Simple
 menne doughtren sixti *Ar.*
⁸ Fulle that lond al clene *Ar.*
⁹ These *Ar.* ¹⁰ To shipe hii
 come *Ar.* ¹¹ Wel sory some,
 Some for hii sholde of londe
 wende here frendes neuere to
 se, *Ar.*

þo þei were in þe schippes y do, & in ¹ þe fer were,
² So gret tempest þer com, ³ þat drof hem here & þere,
 So þat þe meste del a dreynt were in þe se,
 And to oþer londes some y driue, and ne come ner age.
 A kyng þer was of Hongri, Guayu was ys name,
 And Melga, kyng of Picardye, þat couþe ynow of schame,
 þe wateres for to loke a boute þe se heo were,
 A companie of þis maydenes so þat heo mette þere.
 To here foly he wolde hem nime and hor men al so,
 Ac þe maydenes wolde raþer dye, þan a cente þer to.
 þo wende forþ þe luþer men, & the maydenes slow echon,
 So þat to þe lasse Breteyne þer ne com aliue non.

OF þe wo, þat þer haþ in Eugelond y be,
 þoru emperoures of Rome, here ȝe mowe y se.
 In oþer manere þat Scottes & ⁴ Picars, as ich seide,
 Habbeþ y worred þis lond, ich wol telle þe dede.
 Guain þe kyng of Hongri, and þe kyng of Picardie,
 þo heo hadde, as ych haue y scit, mid so gret vilenie
 Y slawe of þis maydenes þat swete companie,
 Bi þougte to do þis lond more tricherie.
 Heo vunderstode, þat þis lond ymad was al clene
⁵ Of god folk þoru Maximian and Conan ⁶ as" at eue,
 And þat heo myȝte þis lond al for noȝt wyne,
 Heo gederede folk faste, þe werre to bi gynne.

¹ *Lege potius, cum Ar.* þe | *Ar.* ⁵ Of people thurgh *Ar.*
 see fer were. ² A gret *Ar.* | ⁶ *Deest Ar.*
³ And blew hem *Ar.* Pictes

To þe se heo sende mid heore folk, þat heo hadde on honde,
 And come, as hem leuest was, first in to Scotlonde.
 Toward þis lond heo bi gonne forto robby faste,
 þat folk to sle, and townes and castles adoun caste.
 þe simple men, þat heore were, here red þer of nome,
 And sende aftur more help to þe emperour of Rome.
 A duk, þat ¹ het Gracian, from Rome me sende,
 þat mid gret power to þis lond hyder wende.
 þo lond folk, þo he hyder com, turnede to hym faste,
 So þat þer was slawgt gret, þe wyle it wolde laste.
 And þis kyng of Picardy, and al so hys felawe,
 Wer of come atte laste, þat heo nuste wyder to drawe.
 Viliche þei were & mid strengþe ydryue into Yrlonde.
 þo hadde Gracian þis lond al clauliche on honde,
² He let hym þo crowne kyng, and þo he alord was,
 No more schrewe, þan he bi com, ych wene non nas.
³ þat lond folk eode forþ, and to gedere drowe,
 And, ar he dude to muche wo, þo foule schrewe slowe.
 þat þo kyng was y slawe, it was sone coup
 In eche half from lond to lond, boþe Norþ & Souþ,
 So þat it to þe kynges come, þat wende in to Yrlond.
⁴ Heo porueide þat heo haddo folk y now on honde
 Of Norwei, and of Denemark, and al so of Seotlonde,
 And barnde and to gronde slowe faste in þis londe.

¹ Height Gracian, Maximian hider sende. With two legiones of men hiderward he wende. The landfolk *Ar.*
² And let hym self crouny kyng, & tho he al lord was, *Ar.*

³ The landfolk so hii sey this, to gedre faste hem drough, *Ar.* ⁴ Hii purueyede hem, that hii hadde sone power an honde *Ar.*

So þat þe folk of þis lond al clene was ouercome.
¹ For þe kyng had arst of þis lond þe knyghtes so clene y nome.
 Eft sone heo sende zet to Rome, wepyng ful sore,
 þat heo schulde in here wo zet hem helpe more,
 And ² hem wolde obligi, and sikernesse finde gode,
 To bere hem clene here truage, wyle þe world stode.
 Eft sone zet þo Romaynes power hyder sende,
 Knyghtes and oþer werrours, þat to þis lond wende,
 And in þe Souþ half ariuede of þis lond her.
 Heo gadered folk ynow, þat heo hadde gret power,
 And wende faste vp here fon, þat ne myzt hem nogt at stonde.
 For some were y slawe sone, and some flow out of londe.
 þo ³ þis lordes of Rome al here wille hadde,
 Heo nomen here conseil, & þe folk of þis lond radde,
 þat heo bi twene þis lond & Scotland schulde a wal rere,
 Strong and heyz on eche syde, þer no water nere,
 From þat on se to þat oþer, þat were hem bi twene,
 To lette hem wen heo come, & to saue hem fro tene.
⁴ For Scotlond haþ euer y be a luþer recet y lome,
 Wan þer any werrours toward þis lond come.
 þe Romaynes seide eke, þat heo nolde in nomaner so wende
 Out of heore lond hiderward, ne heore power so sende ;
 Ne to rokke hem so in þe se, ne heore lyf ⁵ an auntre do,
 Bote wite heore lond at home, and heore god al so :

¹ For Maximian hadde out byfore al clene the knyglites y nome <i>Ar.</i> hem oblege wolde, and <i>Ar.</i> ³ These lordlynges <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ For Scotlond haueth for vs y	be luther recet y lome, And euere enemys to this lond, & wolde neuere be some. <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ In a venture do, Ac witye hure owene lond at hom, and hure good also. For hii no more
---	--

Ac ze schulde of oure zonge folke teche for te fygte,
 For heo ne more in þis lond nolde come, ne mygte.
 þat folk þo of þis lond, þo heo nuste non oþer red,
 Bi gonne to rere þe stronge wal, as hem was y seyð.
 A rerde he was strong ynow, as þe stude is zet sene.
 Muche me moste swynke er, and ther aboute spene.
 þo þe wal wes zare y mad, a conseil heo nome,
 þat al þe ¹ conseil of þis lond schulde to London come.
 þo heo were alle ² ycome wisliche for to rede,
 þe bischop of London in þis maner hem seyde:
 “ Mi leue frende, to telle zou, as þis heye men me bede,
 “ Beter wille ich habbe to wepe, þan to do oþer dede.
 “ ³ For pite yt ys of þis lond, & of oure ⁴ wrecched hede,
 “ Aftur þat Maximian our ⁵ fol gan awei lede,
 “ Al our knyghtes, and swaynes, and al oure zong hede,
 “ And ⁶ astored þer with oþer lond, alas! þat deolful dede!
 “ For ze ben men beter y tagt to schouele and to spade,
 “ To cartestaf and to plowstaf, and a fischyng to wade,
 “ To hamer and to nedle, and to marchandise al so;
 “ þan ⁷ with swerd or ⁸ hauberk eny batail to do.

more in this lond wolde come
 ne myghte, And that hii sholde
 hure yong folk teche for to
 fyghte. That folk *Ar.*

¹ Grete *pro conseil in Ar.*

² Thuder y come wisliche to
 rede, Therchebisshop Gwi-
 thelyn of London thus sede:

Ar. ³ *Miseret enim me orphu-
 nitatis & debilitatis, quæ vobis
 accessit, postquam Maximianus*

*regnum istud omni militiu om-
 nique juventute spoliavit. &c.*

Galfr. Mon. ⁴ Wrecchede, Af-
 ter that *Ar.* ⁵ Folk *Ar.*

⁶ Othur londes storede ther
 with, alas! the deolful *Ar.*

⁷ With sper or with swerd
 bataille for to do. Whan your
 enemyes cometh yow to, ye ne
 kunneth bute fle, As shep by-
 fore wolues. *Ar.* ⁸ *Id est,*

haber-

- “ For wen oure son to ow comeþ, ze ne konne nozt bote fle,
 “ As schep to fore wolues: (how myzte more wo be?)
 “ And þe se bi set ow al ¹ a boutte, bote twei weyes ze mowe
 þenche,
 “ Oþer ligge a doun and be slawe, oþer fle and drenche.
 “ ² Wor þere ³ any hope of ow, bote clanliche al þat lond,
 “ Al þe help and loking, ys in oþer monne honde?
 “ ⁴ And þe Romaynes beþ anyed of here trauail so sore,
 “ Of perel on se, & eke on lond, þat heo nul come her no more.
 “ Heo wol raþer bi leue here truage, þat ze hem bereþ azer.
 “ Ne konne ze nozt lerne þing, þat ze dude neuer er?
 “ ⁵ Change zoure hond, & to vse of swerd & lance ys ydo.
 “ For no men ne beþ strengor þen ze, zef ze turnede þer to.
 “ ⁶ Me may se a bonde mone's sone ⁷ oþer wyle knyzt bi
 come,
 “ And some gromes and squiers, and seþþe knyghtes some.

habergion sive lorica. *Potest tamen* & haubert *legi, quomodo & ipse legisse videtur* Codicis *Ar. interpolator. Et quidem hodie itidem bipennem halbert vocitare solemus.*

¹ A boutte, hough mowe ye thanne - by thenche? *Ar.*

² Help is ther non with yow, but clenlich al this londe, Al the helpyng and loking, ys in othur manne's honde. *Ar.*

³ *Eritne ergo spes vestra semper in alieno tutamine, & non, instructis manibus vestris, ensibus & hastis depelletis la-*

trones, nequaquam vobis fortiores, nisi segnitia & torpor adesset? Jam tædet Romanos tam assidui itineris &c. Galfr. Mon.

⁴ *Malim ac pro aud.*

⁵ Aplieth your hondes to the spere and to swerd also *Ar.*

⁶ *Nonne homines transverso ordine nascuntur, ita ut ex rustico generetur miles, & ex milite rusticus? Miles etiam de mangone venit, & de milite mango.* Galfr. Mon.

⁷ Som tyme a knyght by come, And of a grom a squyer, and after knyghtes some *Ar.*

“ Wen

" Wen ge habbeþ ¹ forme of men, beþ men ² on alle wise,
 " And turneþ your hond to manhede, & ³ wyteþ oure franchise.
 * þis bischop, þat hatte Gocelyn, þoru heor ³ alle rede,
 To þe lasse Breteyne wende for þis dede.
 King Conan he fond ded, ⁶ an oþer of gret fame
 Kyng he fond in hys stude, ⁷ Androw was ys name.
 " Sire kyng," quoth þe bischop, gef þou wolt vnderstonde,
 " Deol þou mygt habbe in þin herte of þi kynde londe,
 " Of þe more Bretayn, ⁸ as þin eldre were y bore.
 " For þou wost wel Maximian þe kyng, & Conan her bi fore
 " þe bachelerie al þat ⁹ aȝt wes out of þat lond nome,
 " And a stored here þis ¹⁰ lond and þe power of Rome,
 " And londes abouten vs habbeþ wel vnder gite,
 " þat þer nis no folk bi leued, þat lond forto wyte.
 " Heo sleþ & destruyep al, þat þer nys noþing bi leued,
 " Warbi men ¹¹ mow libbe, and al for defaut of heued.
 " And þer nys no mor þat kynde haþ þerto bute þou ¹² on.
 " Help ¹³ þi kynde eritage, & þou worst þer kyng anon.
 þe kyng gan som del to ¹⁴ lyghe, þo he herde þis.
 " Ych ¹⁵ habbe," heseȝde, "sirebischoþ, suchtyme y sey y wys,

¹ The fourme *Ar.* ² In
Ar. ³ Kepeth youre *Ar.* ⁴
 The erchebisshop Gwithelyn,
Ar. ⁵ Aldre [*l. alre*] *Ar.*
⁶ And a nothur *Ar.* ⁷ An-
 droge *Ar.* ⁸ Ther thyne el-
 derne *Ar.* ⁹ Ought was *Ar.*
¹⁰ Lond thurgh the power
Ar. ¹¹ Myght *Ar.* ¹² Al
 on *Ar.* ¹³ Nough thyn olde

heritage, *Ar.* ¹⁴ Laughe, *Ar.*
¹⁵ *Olim tempus erat quo non
 negarem insulam Britannie
 accipere, si quis eam mihi lar-
 giretur. Non enim existimo
 alteram patriam fertiliorem
 fuisse, dum pace & tranquil-
 litate frueretur. At nunc,
 quoniam infortunia accesserunt &c.* Galfr. Mon.

“¹ þat y nolde noȝt hadde for sake þat lond ho me hadde y broȝt þer to.

“ Ac so muche² wrecched hed þer ys, þat nys not now so.

“ And nameliche for þe folk of³ Rome þat so muche seruise habbeþ þere,

“⁴ þat⁴ in such þraldam forto be⁵ eche god mon loþ were.

“ þis lond ich⁶ hadde here so fre, þat to non herre y schal abuye,

“ Bute wite fram þe kyng of France, þat doþ me ofte anye.

“ And for to wyte me from hym, y nyl not⁷ henne wende.

“ Ac for myn⁸ eldore hadde þat lond,⁹ y segge þe atte ende,

“ To brynge it ageyn¹⁰ to oure kynde, ich wol þider sende

“ Costantyn my broþer, þat god knyȝt ys and hende,

“ And wel¹¹ yfounded in armes, & two¹² hondred knyȝtes al so,

Wel¹³ y wrye with þe atyl, þat god dede mow do

“ Mid þe folk of þe lond, ȝef¹⁴ heo aȝtes beþ,

“ And ȝe mow hym make ȝoure kyng, wen ȝe¹⁵ tyme scþ.

þis Costantyn was of send, and¹⁶ þis knyȝtes also,

And¹⁷ schippes and here a tyl prest, such prowes forto do.

¹ That ich it wolde nought haue forsake, yf hit hadde ther to be brought *Ar.*

² Wrecchede now ther is, that now is hit so nought *Ar.*

³ Rome such seruice *Ar.*

⁴ *Deest Ar.* ⁵ Ech man ful loth were *Ar.*

⁶ Holde as freo, y ne dar non othur a buye, But witie me fro the kyng of France, *Ar.*

⁷ Hens

⁸ Elderne *Ar.*

⁹ Y seigh yow atten eynde, *Ar.*

¹⁰ To ryȝt, ich

¹¹ Y founded *Ar.*

¹² Thousand *Ar. cum Galfrido Mon.*

¹³ A rayd in good a tire, dedes of armes to do With the folk *Ar.*

¹⁴ Hii *Ar.*

¹⁵ The tyme *Ar.*

¹⁶ These *Ar.*

¹⁷ Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

¹⁸ These *Ar.*

¹⁹ Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

²⁰ These *Ar.*

²¹ Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

²² These *Ar.*

²³ Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

²⁴ These *Ar.*

²⁵ Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

²⁶ These *Ar.*

²⁷ Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

²⁸ These *Ar.*

²⁹ Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

Ac heo ne mygte ¹ so raþe come, þat þe kynges twei
 Nere y come out Yrlond, ² wyt gret power bey
 Of Scottes and of Picars, of Denemarch, ³ of Norwei,
 þat euer ⁴ habbeþ þis lond y hated, bote it were for eye.
 Fer bi Norþ ⁵ bi gonne, and hider faste drowe,
 And caste a doun ⁶ þis stronge wal, & townes grete y nowe.
 þe Britones, þat mygte of scapie, by gonne faste to fle,
 Some in roches, some in wodes, þat ⁷ rewþe yt was to se.

COSTANTYN ⁸ myd ys power, among al þis wrechedom,
 At þe hauene of Tottenais ⁹ stilleliche o lond com.
 Glad were þo þe Britones, & joyful & proute.
 Heo comen out of þe wodes sone, and of þe roches aboute.
 So þat Costantyn hadde sone ¹⁰ power y now,
 And toward þis luþer men Norþward sone drow.
¹¹ He cudde þat ¹² heo were men, & slowe ¹³ to gronde,
 þe prude ¹⁴ of Scottes & Picars abouten in a stonde.
 For heo flowe þat mygte fle, and some fel to gronde.
 Heo mygte ¹⁵ segge, wen heo come home, þat heo hadde here
 pere y fonde.
 To Yrlond heo flowe ageyn, & elles wyder heo mygte.
 Heo ne þougte not a god while with þe Brytones to fygte.

¹ So sone come, that the
 luther kynges tweye *Ar.*
² With *Ar.* ³ And of *Ar.*
⁴ Haueth hated this lond, but
Ar. ⁵ Bigonne (*simplici voce*)
 in *Ar.* ⁶ Pict Wall *Ar.* ⁷
 Deol *pro* rewþe in *Ar.* ⁸ And
 his power in al this *Ar.*

⁹ Stille a lond *Ar.* ¹⁰ Gret
 power y nough, *Ar.* ¹¹ Hii
Ar. ¹² Hii *Ar.* ¹³ Faste to
Ar. ¹⁴ Of this luther men
 hii batide in a stonde *Ar.*
¹⁵ Truly seigh tho, hure peer
 hii hadde y founde *Ar.*

þe Brytones nome þo Costantyn, & glade þoru all þyng
 In þe town of ¹ Cicestre crowned hym ² to here kyng.
³ þis was so wel y wist in pes, with oute strif,
 þat þer ne come ne Scottes þider, ne ⁴ Pycars al ys lyf.
 þre ⁵ sones he hadde al so, Costantyn was on,
 And Aurely and Uter, gode children echon.
 Costanteyn, ys eldeste sone, in Gode's seruise
 Monk he made at Wynchestre, & dude as þe wyse.
 God mon he was y now, and gode lawes forþ caste,
 And god pais ⁶ wes al ys lyf, ⁷ & to lute wyle þat laste.
 For þer com a ⁸ Pycard, þat ys maners wel ⁹ wiste,
 And þat he louede wel y now, & mucche to hym truste.
 He ladde hym into an ¹⁰ orchard, ¹¹ as yt gret ned were
 To speke wyþ hym priueliche, þat noman ywar nere.
 Ac þo heo were al bi hem selue, & no mon hem neyȝ,
 He drow ys knyf, & slow þe kyng, þat no man ¹² yt y seyȝ.
 He was ¹³ sone forþ y went, er any mon were war.
 And þo me hadde al y sought, þe kyng lay ded þar.

¹ *Rectius* Silchestre *cum*
 Galfr. Mon. *At Cirecestria in*
Aluredo Beverlacensi, quem de-
floravit Galfridus. ² *Desunt*
Ar. ³ The lond was tho wel y
 kept in pais *Ar.* ⁴ Picardes *Ar.*
⁵ Sones hadde this Constan-
 tyn, Constans [*Constans quoque*
in Aluredo Bev. & Galfr. Mon.]
 het that on, Aurelie Ambrose
 the other, the thridde Uter
 Pendragon. Constans his el-
 deste *Ar.* ⁶ Was in his tyme,

while his lyf y laste *Ar.*
⁷ *F. ac.* ⁸ Pictes *Ar.* ⁹ Wuste,
Ar. ¹⁰ *Postremo, cum x. anni*
præterissent, venit quidam Pi-
ctus, qui in obsequium suum
fuerat, & quasi secretum collo-
quium habiturus, in virgulto
quodam semotis cunctis cum
cultro interfecit Galfridus Mon.
¹¹ For consail as hit were
 And to speke *Ar.* ¹² Hit ne
 seigh *Ar.* ¹³ Anon *Ar.*

þo was þis lond kyngles, wat halt yt to telle longe?
 Gret word was among þat folk, ho mygte þe crowne fonge.
 For þe eldoste some monk was, & ¹ þe twei zonge were,
 And to nyme ² ferre of ys kynde no rygt nere.

VORTIGER, ³ þe quoynte swike, þat was erl of ⁴ Corne-
 wail,

Forto do ⁵ a swykedom no conseil schulde hym fail.
 To þe sone þat was monk to Wynchestre he wende y wis.
 "Lo," (he seide) "now þou ⁶ syst, þat þi fader ded ys,
 "And þi breþeren to zonge beþ to a fonge þe crowne,
 "And þei þou be in oþer cloþes, þi rygte ⁷ nys not þer downe,
 "Wel ⁸ me ⁹ wot eldest þou art, & myd best rygt kyng al so,
 "zef þou wolt ¹⁰ wol be my frend, & bi my red al do,
 "Ich wole brynge ¹¹ þat folk in wille, to crowne þe to kyng.
 "And þei þin ordre be þer ageyn, þer to ich wole it brynge.
 "þo monk was joyful y now, þo he hurde þis,
 "And bi het hym, zef it were so, euer more to be al hys.
 Out of ys abynt anon Vortiger hym drow,
 And cloþes, ¹² as to kyng bi come, dude on him faire ynowz.

¹ The othur two *Ar.* ² For-
 ther of his kyn no rygt
 men thoughte hit nere *Ar.*
³ The luther swike, *Ar.* ⁴
 "*Cronica Latina vocat eum*
 "*ducem Gewissorum*" *Ar. in*
marginē. Et quidem Consul
Gewissorum in Aluredo Bev.
At in Galfr. Mon. "consul
 "*Gewissorum. i. Orientalium*
 "*Anglorum.* ⁵ A swykedom

he caste hym sanz faille. To
 the monek at Wynchestre sone
 he wende y wys *Ar.* ⁶ Sukst
Ar. ⁷ Is nought ther *Ar.* ⁸
 Thugh wost *Ar.* ⁹ *Nec alium*
video in progenie tua, quem
populus in regem promoveret.
Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ Wel *Ar.* ¹¹ The
 people in wille, *Ar.* ¹² As a
 kyng *Ar.*

And bi fore al þe Parlement to London he gan hym brynge,
 And seide he was purest eyr, to be crowned ¹ to' kyng.
 No mon ne myzt wel it wyþ segge. ² me may ryzt y se,
 Wan he was þer, & was pur eyr, þei he hadde ³ monk.
⁴ Up hym self þe perel were, bote yt myzte wel do.

þo hey men þoru Vortiger ⁵ a fong hym alle þer to.
 þe erclibischop of London ⁶ Gocelyn was þo ded,
 And non oþer ⁷ nolde hym crowne, for al þat þe erl bed.
 For he hadde so longe in ordre be, & so was out y brogt.
 For al þat ⁸ Vortiger nolde bi leue yt nozt,
 Ac hym self hym crownede, & made hym kyng so.
 þe sacryng was lute worþ, and napeles yt was y do.
 þo he was kyng ymad, ys hest he made a non,
 þat clanliche to Vortiger ys men ⁹ abuyde echon.

¹⁰ For^{ll} hymself he ¹¹ nolde þenche nozt, bute take hym al on
 honde.

For he cowþe wel bet þan he gouerne such a londe.
 þo bi þougte Vortiger mest þoru alle þyng,
 How he myzte do quoynteliche, þat he hym selue were kyng.
 For that ¹² euer ys þogt, and þer fore þe monk he nom
 To ¹³ kyng be. for he was nyce and kowþe no wisdom,

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² Me may the
 ryght y se, That he ne is ver-
 rei heir, *Ar.* ³ *Adde y be cum*
Ar. ⁴ Upon hym self a peril
 hit were, but he hit wolde do.
 The heigh *Ar.* ⁵ Assentede
 alle ther to *Ar.* ⁶ Gwýthe-
 lyn *Ar.* ⁷ Hym crouny wolde
 theigh Vortiger hem bed *Ar.*
⁸ Yut Vortiger wolde by

leue nought, that hym self ne
 croune hym, and made hym
 kyng ryght tho, And were hit
 ryght othur wough, yut hit
 was y do *Ar.* ⁹ Aboughwed
Ar. ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.* ¹¹ Wolde
 thenke on nought, *Ar.* ¹² E-
 uere was his thought, *Ar.*
¹³ Be kyng. for *Ar.*

And

And ys twei breþren were brogt out of cradel vnnep̄e.
 And þe heye men mest of þe lond were y brogt to deþe
 Myd batailes & myd oþer wo, þer fore he was so prowte,
¹ And þe kyng ² nas bute a schade, & let hym worþe al out.
 To þe kyng he seide, þat he moste ys castles astore,
 þenne wolde ys fon aboute ³ doute hym þe more.
 And for þe ⁴ Picars were ys fon, some he wolde take
 To be pryue with þe kyng, for þilke schulde make
 Here felawes, þat were leued at home, to loue þat lond þe bet.
 Ac ⁵ napeles þer fore ⁶ nas yt nozt þo yt wes al bi set,
 Ac for þei louede not þe kyng, & in trayson were quoynte,
⁷ þat heo schulde þe kyng sle, wen heo come ⁸ vp þe poynte.
 þe kyng grantede al ys wil, and for ys gode ⁹ wende.
 Aftur an hundred ¹⁰ Picars into Scotlond he sende
 By certeyn messageres, so þat heo gonne brynge
¹¹ An hundred knyghtes of Picars, þat bi leuede mid oure
 kyng,
 Of mest priue men, þoru þis luþer Vortiger.
 And þe kyng's tresour he delde eke a boutte fer & ner,

¹ The kyng hym self was but a shade, & let him al one al out. And to the kyng *Ar.*
² *Totum namq; dispositione eius regnum commissum fuerat, & Constans rex dicebatur, qui nisi pro umbra principis astabat* Galfr. Mon. ³ Doute *Ar.*
⁴ Pictes *Ar.* ⁵ *Ecce occulta occulti amici proditio. Non enim id laudabat, ut salus inde proveniret Constantis, sed quia sciebat, Pictos gentem esse*

instabilem, & ad omne scelus paratam Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Was hit nouht what hit was al by set, *Ar.* ⁷ And that *Ar.* ⁸ To the *Ar.* ⁹ He wende *Ar.* ¹⁰ Pictes to *Ar.* ¹¹ An hundred Pictes soudeours to by leue with oure kyng, And to be most preue with hym thurgh this Vortiger. Of the kyng's tresour he delt fer and ner, Ac most to the Pictes *Ar.*

And mest to þe Picars, for to hem mest loue he drow.
 Myd alle þat he wolde hym self he made hym bi loued ynow.
 Alle ¹ þat seruede þe kyng, þoru hym ² were echone,
³ So þat ech mon was a boutte for to paye hym one,
 And ⁴ songe al day bi þe strete ⁵ al for hys honour,
 " Worþi were Vortiger ⁶ to kyng oþer emperour.
 þo þis Vortiger hadde ⁷ þat folk al ⁸ in ys hond,
 He seyde, he moste wende awyle out of þis lond,
 'To purchace more tresour þe kyng for to spene,
 For he hadde nogt y now ⁹ ys knyghtes to sustene.
 And ⁹ atte Picars nom ys leue, and at oþer þere,
 And wende hom ¹⁰ to ¹¹ hys fir, sori as he were.
 þer was sorwe and deol ynow among al þe mayne,
 For he schulde from hem ¹² wend, (for þer was no kyng
 bote he)

And nameliche among Picars, þat were of so luper þougt,
 þat he hadde do such honour, & þat ne louede þe kyng nogt.
 " Wat," heo seyden, " wat is ¹³ vs to lete þis badde kyng
 " Go þus o liue as a ¹⁴ schade, þat nys worþ noþing?

¹ The seruantes of the kyng
Ar. ² Were made echone
Ar. ³ *Ita ut eum pro rege*
haberent. Adulantes igitur ei
per plateas psallebant, " di-
 " *gnus est Vortigernus impe-*
 " *rio, dignus est sceptro Bri-*
 " *tanniæ, Constans vero indig-*
 " *nus Galfr. Mon.* ⁴ Synge *Ar.*
⁵ As for *Ar.* ⁶ To be kyng or
 emperour *Ar.* ⁷ This *Ar.* ⁸ On
Ar. ⁹ Of the Pictes tok his

leue, and of othur there, *Ar.*
¹⁰ *Ad hospitium suum Galfr.*
Mon. ¹¹ His contre in sorwe
 as hit were *Ar.* ¹² Wende,
 (that was so large and fre)
 And among the Pictes most,
 that were of luther thought,
 That he hadde do so muchel
 honour, and louede the kyng
 nouht *Ar.* ¹³ This *pro vs*
in Ar. ¹⁴ Shadewe, *Ar.*

Warto tarie we so longe, to quelle hym atten ende
 þat Vortiger ¹ were kyng, þat a zen vs ys so hende?
 In gret ² wayþe & hastinesse to þe kynges chaumber heo
 wende,

And smyten of hys hed, and to Vortiger yt sende.
 Vortiger made deol y now, ³ and sori was þer fore:
 Ac naþcles so glad he nas seþþe he was y bore.
 For ⁴ y compaced he hadde þat atte bi gynnyng,
 First ⁵ wen he brogte on so nyce a mon to kyng.
 And seþþe þo he lette ys fon & ⁶ Picars to court brynge,
 þat hatede mucche þe kyng, ⁷ & al was for þis þinge.
 And þo he was so large & hende of hys giftes al so.
⁸ þo hadde he al ys wille, for when yt was al ydo,
⁹ And to suc ende yt was y come, ¹⁰ as he hadde y compaced
 in ys þogt.

And naþeles he feynede hym, þat me vnder zet yt nozt.
 At London þis kyng was y slaw. he let þo nyme anon
¹¹ þe Picars, & þoru jugement let smyt of þe hedes echon.
 þer he kudde ¹² wat he was, vn kynde schrewe & quoynte.
¹³ Ac al he dude, þat me ne vnder zet in swykdom in no poynte.

Decollatio Pictorum.

¹ Myght be kyng, that to us is so heynde? *Ar.* ² Wrath *Ar.* ³ And wep fol sore ther fore *Ar.* ⁴ He hit hadde by compaced atte *Ar.* ⁵ Tho he made the monek, þat nyce was, to kyng *Ar.* ⁶ Pictes *Ar.* ⁷ And mucche was for these thynges. And that he was *Ar.* ⁸ Tho he hadde al his wille, when this was *Ar.*

⁹ *Omittit Ar.* ¹⁰ As he cast in his thought. And euere he made hit so queynte, that me wiste hit nought *Ar.* ¹¹ Alle the Pictes thurgh jugement, and hefdede hem echon *Ar.* ¹² That he *Ar.* ¹³ And al was, that me ne sholde asprie his falshede in no poynte. Ac natheles some hit vnder yede, & ne leuede *Ar.*

And napeles men yt trowede, and leuede not ys glose.
 þe kynges ¹ breþren, Aurele and Ambrose,
 Dradde, for here eritage, ymorþred for to be.
 And ² heo, that hem hadde ³ to ward, þer fore gonne by se,
 And to þe lasse Breteyne wende to þe kyng,
 And he ⁴ susteynede hem wel, for drede of þis þinge.
 þo Vortiger al one was, and no pere ⁵ nad a londe.
 Sone he lette hym ⁶ crowne kyng, & þe power nom on honde.
 Princes ouer al aboute of ⁷ eche kyndom
 Speke hym vnel, & hatede hym for hys ⁸ swikedom.
 þe ⁹ Picars were wroþ eke, and ¹⁰ þratten hym ynow,
¹¹ For he myd such vnkyn dede heore felawes slow.
 From þe lasse Bretayne eke hym com word ylome,
 þat ¹² þo twei children gret power to hem nome,
 And ¹³ þat hit stronge childre were of here age,
 And þat þei wolde hyder come, to wynne here heritage.
 Such strong tyþinges in sorwe and in sore
 Brogt þis false kyng, and er þe lenger þe more.

¹ Yonge bretheren, Uter
 and Aurelie Ambrose, *Ar. re-*
ctius. ² Hii, *Ar.* ³ In warde,
 ther fore hem gonne by se.
 To the lasse Brutayne hii
 wende to Budic the kyng,
Ar. ⁴ Hem let wardy wel,
Ar. ⁵ Hadde in londe, *Ar.*

⁶ Crouny *Ar.* ⁷ Euery *Ar.*
⁸ Swikeldom *Ar.* ⁹ Pictes
Ar. ¹⁰ Hatede *Ar.* ¹¹ That
 he with so vile deth hure fe-
 lawes he slough *Ar.* ¹² The
 two *Ar.* ¹³ That hii stale-
 worthe were, as of hure age,
Ar.

'HORS and Hengist bothe, þat twei breþre were,
 Come to Kent þilke tyme, and a riuede þere,
 Myd þre schip ful of ² knyghtes y armed wel ynow.
³ þo þis folk was on lond, forþ into Kent hit drow.
 þo kyng was þo at Canterbury, and herde her of anon :
 Bi fore hym he lette brynge ⁴ þis knyghtes" echon.
⁵ þo kyng bi huld hem faste ynow, (for it muchel men were)
 And nameliche þe twei breþren, (⁶for so muchel non þer nere.)
 He ⁷ ascode hem, of wanne þei, and ho" hem þider brogte,
 And for wat encheson heo come, & wat þing þei sozte ?
 " Sire kyng," (quoþ Hengist, þat for al oþer spek y wys) Hengistus.
 " ⁸ Of Saxonie we beþ y bore, ⁹ þat of Germanie ys.
 " þe maner ys of þilke lond, þat wen þer ys forþ ybrogt
 " So muche folk ¹⁰ of men," þat ¹¹ þo lond may ¹² susteyne
 noht.
 " ¹³ þo" heye men of ¹⁴ þo lond schulle com bi fore þe kyng,
 " And ¹⁵ alle þo zonge men of þe lond lete bi fore hym brynge.
 " þe strengeste me schal bi choys and bi lot al so
 " Chese out, and sende in to oþer lond," here beste forto do.

¹ Horn *Ar.* ² Men *pro*
 knyghtes *in Ar.* *At militibus in*
 Galfr. Mon. ³ The tydýnges
 hough they come, were in
 contreie a brod drough. The
 kyng *Ar.* ⁴ These men *Ar.*
⁵ The *Ar.* ⁶ *Nam ipsi præ*
ceteris & nobilitate & decore
prænitabant Galfr. Mon. ⁷ Ax-
 ede hem, whans hii were, &
 ho *Ar.* ⁸ *Saxonia tellus edi-*

dit nos, una ex regionibus
Germaniæ Galfr. Mon. ⁹ Of
 Germanye that is *Ar.* ¹⁰ *De-*
sunt Ar. ¹¹ The *Ar.* ¹² Hem
 susteyne *Ar.* ¹³ *Deest Ar.*
¹⁴ The *Ar.* ¹⁵ Alle the yonge
 bachelrie me shal to fore hym
 bryng. The stalewortheste me
 shal by loth and by chois also
 Chese, & sende hem out of
 londe, *Ar.*

“ And ¹ heo schulle be such, þat no prince ² dorre hem for sake,

“ ³ Ac for heore prowessse gladliche in to here seruise take.

“ þis cas ys to vs y come, y chose we beþ þer to,

“ ⁴ For so muche ys in the lond, oure beste forto do.

“ And forto be maistres of þis folk we beþ y chose & ynome

“ Mi broþer & ich, (for wo beþ of dukes kyn y come.)

“ For þorn our Godes in to þe se we wende ich vnderstonde,

Mercurius. “ And Mercurius haþ vs y lad into ⁵ þi londe.

þo þe kyng herde nempne Mercurius in þis cas,

He askede, wat God and wat þing Mercurius was ?

“ Oure bi leue (quof ⁶ þis oþer) in þe hye ⁷ Godes ys y do,

“ Saturnus and Jupiter, and al þe oþer al so,

“ þat vp holdeþ þe world, & in Mercurius mest y wys,

“ ⁸ þe heye God, þat in oure tonge Woden y clepud ys.

“ ⁹ þer ner vrel dore him bi toke of þe woke þe ferþe day,

“ In honour of hym y clepud in oure tonge Wednesday.

Venus. “ Aftur hym we honoureþ Venus mest, þat Frie y clepud ys

“ In oure tonge, & in þe wyke Friday for hym y wys.

“ Her of ¹⁰ ge schul vnderstonde, þat in þe firmament beþ

“ Planetes, y liche cler sterres, seuene, as ¹¹ ge seþ :

“ Saturnus and Jubiter, Mars and þe Sonne y wys,

“ Venus and Mercurius, and þe Mone lowest ys.

¹ Hii shulleth *Ar.* ² Ne der *Ar.* ³ But *Ar.* ⁴ And for ther was to muche folk, oure beste we mote do. And to be *Ar.* ⁵ This *Ar.* ⁶ That *Ar.* ⁷ God *Ar.* ⁸ *Omittit Galfridus Mon.* ⁹ *Lege,* þer uer vr eldore, *i. e.* therefore

our elders &c. *Nam in Galfr. Mon.* “ *huic veteres nostri dicaverunt quartam feriam septimanæ, quæ usque in hodiernum diem nomen Wodnesdei de nomine ipsius sortita est.*

“ Aftnr

" Aftur ech of hem in þe wike y clepud ys a day :
 " First ¹ os Sonne, & so of oþere and þe seneþe Saturday.
 " And for weder, & oþer ² þing on erþe, aftur hem muche is,
 " ³ þis mys bi leuede men hem clepede Godes while y wis.
 " Sori ich am" (quoth Vortiger) " þo he herde þis.
 " For zoure bi leue, þat ⁴ ze segget, for no bileue yt nys.
 Ac for zoure coming ich am glad, ho so ow hider ladde,
⁵ Were yt God, were yt oþer, for nede ich hadde.
 For ich am myd my fon ⁶ on ech half by set,
 And gef ich hem may ouer come þoru zou þe bet,
⁷ Ich zou myd me at holde, & in grete richesse zou do
 Of gyftes, and of chatews, and of londes al so.
 Heo ⁸ maden certeyne couenaunt þat heo wereal at on ;
 So þat þei bi leuede forþ with ⁹ þe kyng echon.
 Hit was not longe ¹⁰ þer aftur þat þis Picars ne come
 Out of Scotlond Souþward, and townes faste nome.
¹¹ þe tyþing her of to oure kyng com,
 þe wey mid al ys power agen hem faste he nom.

Bellun.

¹ Of the Sonne, & so forth
 the senethe *Ar.* ² Thynges
Ar. ³ These mysbyleuede *Ar.*
⁴ Ye bileueth, no bileue is. But
 of youre come ich *Ar.* ⁵ Were
 hit God, or eny othur, for al
 nede ych hadde *Ar.* ⁶ In
 euery half *Ar.* ⁷ Ich yough
 wole with me witholde, &
 gret honour yut do, And
 yiftes yiue ynough of londes,
 & othur catelles also. Hii
 made a certayn couenant, so

that hii were at on ; *Ar.*
⁸ *Paruerunt illico barbari, &*
sædere confirmato in curia
ipsius remanserunt. Nec mora
emergentes ex Albania Picti,
exercitum valde grandem mit-
tunt, aquilonaresque partes
insulæ vastare cæperunt Galfr.
 Mon. ⁹ Our *pro þe in Ar.*
¹⁰ Afterward that the Pictes ne
 come *Ar.* ¹¹ Tho the tydyng
 of this thyng to Vortiger
 come, *Ar.*

Strong bataile heo smyte þer, ac þe Saxones anon
 So god were, þat þe oþere bi goune to fle echone.
 þo Vortiger þoru hem hadde þe maistrie,
 He gef hem giftes grete ynow, and dude ys corteyse.
 Hengist, þat here maistre was, he gaf in Lyndeseje
 Loudes faire, and rentes and ¹ townes grete and heye,
² War þoru hym & ys men ³ in fair wareson he brogte.
⁴ þo Hengist hadde þis, forþer more he þogte.
 þo he hadde þe kyng in priuete al clene at ys wille,
 "Sire," he seide, "of derne ⁵ cas ich wol þe warne stille.
 "þine fon beþ in ech half, & þis ys þe meste doute,
 "þat þin owne men ne loueþ þe nozt, þat þe beth aboute.
 "Heo þretneþ þe stille, & seggeþ heo wolleþ ⁶ þe" brynge.
 "þe twei breþre from Breteyne, & ⁷ crowne þat on kyng:
 "⁸ þer fore ich ⁹ rede, þat me sende into my contrei ywys
 "To ¹⁰ Saxoine aftur more help, for help y now þer ys.
 For ¹¹ habbe þou power ynow, þou myzt be glad & bliþe.
 Ac oþing ich ¹² wolde bidde þe, þat þou me woldest tyþe.

Peticio
 Hengisti.

¹ Tounes, & gret nobleye
Ar. ² *Quibus sese & commilitones suos sustentaret* Galfr. Mon. ³ In to rýchesse *Ar.* ⁴ And yut tho he hadde al this, forthermore he thoughte *Ar.* ⁵ *Thyng pro cas in Ar.* ⁶ *Voculam hanc erasit in Ar. eadem, ut videtur, manus quæ & scripsit.* ⁷ *Crouny on to kyng* *Ar.* ⁸ *Si placet tibi, mittamus in patriam nostram, & invitemus milites ex ea, &c.* Galfr. Mon. ⁹ The rede, that we sende to

my *Ar.* ¹⁰ *Sic in Cod. Harleyano. At Saxonie in Ar.* ¹¹ If thugh hast power y nough, thugh maist be *Ar.* ¹² Wole bidde the, & thugh wolt me lithe. Bidde what thugh wolt, quath the kyng, ich wole the graunte ywis, Elles forsothe ich were to blame, yf hit to graunty is. And fetthe [*l. fetch*] help al that thugh maist, that be of good araye, And ich wole hure while yelde, and hure huyre

paye

“ Send 'aftur help,” quof þe kyng, “ þat þou me nozt bi traie,
 “ And wole heore while gelde, so þat scholle holde hem wel
 paie.

“ And bidde of me wat þou wolt, & ich wol þe grante ywis,
 “ For elles ich were vnkynde, zef it to grante ys.

Hengist faire hym þonkede, and hys hed lowtede a doun.

“ þou hast,” he seide, “ zue me mony a fayr town.

“ And napeles such þing² nabbe y nozt, as it to duk bi come.

“ For wan ich am³ duke's sone, yt bi comeþ to me”

“ For to⁴ habbe som⁵ gret” cite or castel me to⁶ ware,

“⁷ War inne y myzte to þyn nede habbe my folk zare-

þer fore,” as ich am þi knyzt, &⁸ prest to þi nede al so,

Grante me⁹ castel oþer cite þi nede in to do.

“ Hengist,” quof þe¹⁰ kyng þo, “ ner me not to done

“ Such þyng, as þou me biddest to graunte þe, so sone.

“ For þou art mon off strange lond, & Cristene mon non.

“ And eke, þei ich wolde, my barones wolde yt with segge
 eþon.

“ Sire, grante me þonne,” quof Hengist, “ zef yt ys þi wille,

“¹¹ As mucche place, as myd a þong ich may a boutte tille,

paye. Hengis faire hym
 thonked tho, and his heed
 bowed a doun *Ar.*

¹ *Ad hæc Vortigernus,*
 “ *Mitte ergo legatos tuos ad*
Germaniam, & invita quos vo-
lueris, & pete à me quod de-
sideras, & nullam repulsam
patieris Galfr. Mon. ² Haue
 ich nought, as a duk *Ar.* ³ A
 duke's sone, me thinketh hit

were to done *Ar.* ⁴ Haue *Ar.*

⁵ *Deest Ar.* ⁶ Where, *Ar.*

⁷ And, yf that ich nede hadde,
 kepe me fro dere. Ther fore, *Ar.*

⁸ Redy to the also, *Ar.* ⁹ Cite
 or castel my nede inne to do *Ar.*

¹⁰ Kyng, hit were me nought
 to done *Ar.* ¹¹ As much as
 with a bole huyde ich may
 ouer tille, *Ar.*

“¹ þat

" 1 þat ich þer 2 vppe mowe a siker bold" a rere,
 " þat ich 3 mowe in þi seruise wytie, gef yt nede were.
 þe kyng ne hulde þat bute a 4 lutel, he grantede hys bone.
 Hengist sende in to hys contre after more power sone.
 þo carf he a bole hyde smale al 5 to a þong
 þoru out, wil he wolde laste, & þo was he somdel long.
 In an hard 6 roche stude ys þong aboute he drow,
 And þer wýþ inne al to ys wille markede place ynow,
 And rerde þer an castel god y now and strong,
 7 þat þangcaster, oþer Tangcaster, yclepud was for þe þong.
 þer come out of Germanie vnder þat, ych wene,
 Y charged mid gode knyghtes, schippes eigtetene.
 And Rowen, Hengiste's doȝter, among hem y broȝt was,
 þat fairor wommon nower a boute in no lond nas.
 þo þis castel 8 ȝare was, Hengist þe king bi soȝte
 9 To come to hys castol, & se þe knyghtes þat he broȝte.
 þo kyng com þider priueliche, & 10 þis knyghtes y sey,
 And þis castel, 11 so" sone a rerd. so 12 strong and so hey.

þongca-
ster.

1 *Quo me, si opus fuerit, re-*
cipiam Galfr. Mon. 2 Vppon
 may a siker place *Ar.* 3
 Myghte in thyne seruise me
 wytie and nede were *Ar.*
 4 Lite, & grauntede al his
 bone *Ar.* 5 To one thonge
 Thurgh out, while hit wolde
 y laste, and that was somdel
 longe *Ar.* 6 Roche's stode *Ar.*
Saxorum locum habet Galfr.
Mon. 7 And Thwong castel, or

Tancastel, cleped is for the
 thwong. Thenne come ther
 out of Germanye vnder that,
 ich wene, Charged with or-
 pede men, shipes eightetene
Ar. 8 A redy was *Ar.* 9 To
 come and se his castel, and
 men he hadde y broughte.
 The kyng *Ar.* 10 These *Ar.*
 11 *Deest Ar.* 12 Noble *pro*
 strong in *Ar.*

▪ Mid al ² he was wel a payed and bi leuede atte mete.
 þis mayde out of chambre com, þo ³ þei hadden y gete,
 With a coppe of gold, fol of wyn, syde drow hire tail
⁴ A kne to þe kyng heo seyde, ⁵ “ lord kyng wasseyl.

Wasseyl.

¹ With al *Ar.* ² *Ut vero regis epulis refectus fuit, egressa est puella de thalamo, aureum ciphum, plenum vino, ferens. Accedens deinde propius, flexis genibus dixit, louerd ching woschail Galfr. Mon.* ³ Hii hadde y yete *Ar.* ⁴ A kne sheo sette hure byfore the kyng, & seide, “ sire wassail *Ar.* ⁵ *Vide Seldeni Notas in Draytoni Poly-olbion, pag. 153. ubi locum quendam è Roberto nostro (ulio tamen usus MS.) adduxit, innuitq; Louerd kyng was-heil idem esse quod Lord kyng a health; Drinc-heile vero idem quod Drinke the health. Verum his de rebus scripserunt plures, in quibus & ipse numerandus est Somnerus. Atqui tot auctorum verba non est cur exscribam. Sat est si eu tantummodo in medium proferram, quæ observavit in Itinerario Cantiano (p. 20.) doctissimus Lambardus. idque eu potissimum de caussa, quod & illum hac occasione plane consulendum esse monuerit eruditissimus Spelmannus in Glosario. [Hengist] espying there-*

fore, that king *Vortiger* was much delighted in womens companie, and knowing wel, that *sine Cerere & Libero, friget Venus*, he bad him to a solempne banquet, and after that he had (according to the maner of *Germanie* yet continuing) well plied him with pots, hee let slip before him a faire gentlewoman, his owne daughter, called *Roxena*, or *Rowen*, which being instructed before hande how to behaue hir selfe, most amiablie presented him with a goblet of wine, saying in hir own language, þær Hæle Hlaƿopð cýnŷng ʒ wessail Lorde king, that is to say, bee merie Lord king: with which hir daliance, the King was so delighted, that he not onely vouchsafed to pledge hir, but desired also to performe it in the right maner of hir owne countrey. And therefore he answered (as he was taught) vnto hir againe, ʒrinc Hæle ʒ drinke merily. Which when shee had done, himselfe tooke the cup, and pledged hir so hartely, that fromthencefoorth hee

The first
wasseling
cup.

could

þe kyng bi huld hire ¹ swiþe ynow, & wondrede hire ² fair hede.

³ For so fair wommon nuste he non. He askede wat heo seide? Men, þat knew þe langage, seide, wat was wassayl, And þat he scholde þat broȝte onswere, “ drynkhayl. “ Drinkhayl, quop þis kyng aȝen, & bed hire drinke anon. þe coupe ⁴ he nom seþþe of hire among hem echon, And custe hire, & sette hire a doun, & glad dronk hire hail. And þat was lo! in þis lond þe firste wassayl, As in langage of Saxonie, þat me myȝte euer y wyte, And so ⁵ wel he paiþ þat folk aboute, þat he nys not ȝet for gete.

No sire, ne be þe day so ⁶ long, þe while heo sitteþ o benche, And som of þe nyȝt nimeþ þer to, þe drynke forto sthenche.

The issue of
an ungodly
marriage.

could neuer be in rest, vntill he had obtained hir to wife, little weighing, either how deeply he had endaungered his conscience in matching himselfe with a heathen woman, or how greatly he had hazarded his *Croune* by joyniug handes with so mightie a forein Nation.

¹ Faste ynough *Ar.* ² Fairhede *Ar. unica voce. Nec tamen idem quod forehead esse iudicari.* *Non aliud enim plane est quam facies pulchra. id quod è Galfrido Monumetensi constat, qui sic ait: At ille, visa facie puellæ, admiratus est tantum ejus decorem, & incaluit.* And of men of hure langage

couthe he axede what sheo sede? A non men tolde the kyng fore what was to seye wassail, And that he sholde to hure that tyme answeere ther to drynk hail. Drynk hail, seide the kyng a ye, *Ar.* ⁴ He toke of hure anon, and a mong echon Kussed hure & a doun hure sette, & gladly dronk hure hail. And thus was here in this londe furst y knowe wassail *Ar.* ⁵ Wel yut hit paieth the folk, that hit is nought for yite *Ar.* ⁶ Long, and sitteth murye a benche, And of the nyght yut nymeth ther to, drynke ther by to shenche, On an holy rechoure's word hii wol nought

Of an holi prechoure's word heo nolde not so ofte þenche,
 As of the muri word, þat hem þinkeþ of þe sely wenche.
 So foul lechour was þe kyng, that anon¹ in þe howse
 He willede, for foul lecheri, þis mayde² forte spouse.
 Hengist wiste wel ys wille,³ & þat he wes hastyf.
 He grantede⁴ in hys felonye ys doxter to be ys wyf,
 For wat þe kyng geue hym þe⁵ coutre of Kent y wis.
 þe kyng in ys foule wille grantede al þis,
 And weddede þis mayde⁶ in a wel luper cas,
 For þat he was Cristenc, and heo a paynen was.
⁷ þat lond wes vnel y paied þer wyþ, & ys þre sones also,
 Vortimer, and⁸ Catigen, and Passen þer to.
 Four hundred ger and fourti and⁹ nyene, ich vnderstonde,
 Yt wes of grace, þat þe Saxones þus come to þis londe.
 þo were among Cristenemen¹⁰ þis paynes þus y menged,
 þat mys bileue¹¹ into al þis lond a moug men was y sprenged.
 Hengist seide to þe kyng, "Sire, þou mygte y se,
 " þat ich am in stude of þi fader, & þi conseiler schal be.
 " Do al aftur my conseil, and þou schalt þoru me
 " Ouer come al þi fon, to soþe ich segge þe.

Consil'us
 Hengisti.

nought so wel thenche, As
 hii doth of that mury word
 of that sely wenche. The
 kyng on hure gan madde so,
 that anon *Ar.*

¹ *Pro*, forto. ² And knew
 his nycete, And grauntede
 al for felonye his doughtur
 his wif to be, By so the
 kyng hym wolde yiue the *Ar.*

³ *Sed omnibus unum consilium*

*fuit, ut puella daretur regi, &
 ut peteret pro ea provinciam
 Cantie ab illo. Nec mora, data
 fuit puellaregi Wortigerno, &
 provincia Cantie Hengisto,
 &c. Galfridus Mon. 4 This was
 a sory cas Ar. 5 The people
 was Ar. 6 Katigern Ar. 7 Sic
 plane in Cod. nostro Har-
 leyano. At fyue in Ar. 8 The
 hethene thus Ar. 9 In al Ar.*

"Sende

Duo filii
Hengesti.

“ Sende we zet aftur my sones ¹ Octe and Ebise,
 “ þat quaynte werroures heþ, and stalworþe and wyse.
 “ In þe Norþ half zet hem lond, wher þou wolt by se,
 “ þat heo mowe bi tuene þe and þe Scottes be.
 “ þenne þou ² myzt siker be by Souþ Homber ywys.
 þe kyng he sende aftur hem, and grauntede al þis.
 So þat mid þre hundred schipes heo ariuede here,
³ Ful of armes and of men, here was gret power.
 þe kyng wel ⁴ fayn gaf hem lond, as Hengist hym bi sogte,
 And Hengist euer mo and mo schippes hyder brogte.
 þo þe Brytones þis y seye, of treson heo were in drede.
 For þo lond was al mid hem y fuld, þer fore þe kyng ⁵ heo
 bede,
 þat he schulde hym vnder stonde, & out of ⁶ lond hem do.
 For yt ne bi com nozt to payns among Cristen men be so.
 For yt was Cristendam, & in mony studes me nuste
 Wuch was on, ne wuch was oþer, ne to wam me myzte truste.
 Some faderes were Cristene, & þo moderes heþene were.
 Me nuste to weþer heo bi come þe children þat heo bere,
 þe kyng louede þe Saxones, for loue of ys wyue,
 And nolde, for al þe Britones, out of ⁷ hys londe hem dryue.

¹ Octa & Ose, *Ar.* ² Maist | *Ar.* ⁴ Fawe *Ar.* ⁵ Hii *Ar.*
Ar. ³ Ful of trauailling | ⁶ This londe *Ar.* ⁷ This
 men, this was gret power | *Ar.*

SEYNT ¹ Germayn þe bischop to þis londe com,
 For misbileue þat tyme, & to amende Cristendom,
 And prechede, as yt nede was, & faire miracles wroghte,
 So þat þe Cristene men in beter stat he broghte.
 And heo a forcede hom" þe more, þe heþene a way to dryue.
² He nolde bileue here porpos for þe kyng, ne for ys wyue.
 Heo for soke þe kyng al out, & binome ³ ys power,
 And hys eldest sone made kyng, þat hatte Vortimer.
 þis Vortimer with gret power and god earnest ynow,
 þoru conseil of Seynt Germayn, agen ⁴ þis heþene drow.
⁵ þo sene ȝer yt was astur, þat heo to londe come,
 þe kyng was, God i þonk, a boue in four batailes, þat heo nome.
 Alle heo were in one ȝer. atte firste, withoute one,
 Catigen, þe kyng's broþer, myd hys men echone,
 Asailede Hors and hys ost, so þat heo fongte faste,
 So þat þis Catigen yslawe was atte laste.
 þo kyng for ys broþer deþ sori was y now.
 To þis Hors he smot anon, & among al ys folk hym slow.
 þo þis strong mon was slawe, þat so strong was in fygt,
 Ys men bi gonne to fle ⁶ and" fayn þat heo mygt.

Bellum
Hors.

¹ Germayn bysshop of Auferne, as ich vnderstonde, And of Treueros seynt Lup, come to this londe, For mysbileue among men, and othur here-sye, That me clepede Arriane and also Pelagye, And prechede the people, as nede was, and faire miracles wroghte,

So that thurgh hem Cristendom to betere stat was broughte. And hii a forcede hem *Ar.* ² And wold nought leue for the kyng, *Ar.* ³ Hym his *Ar.* ⁴ The *pro* þis in *Ar.* ⁵ The senethe yer ther after hit was, that hii *Ar.* ⁶ *Deest Ar.*

þe

þe þridde batail, þat heo smyte, was rygt ¹ vp the se,
 þer com þe kyng myd ys ost, and Hengist hym a ze.
 þer was batail strong y now, and mest yt was vp tweye,
 Up þe kyng and Hengist, þat were so stronge beye.
 þo stronge dyntes, þat heo smyten, grisliche yt was to se.
 So þat Hengist bi gan atte laste to fle.
 He, þat neuer er ne fley, fond þer ys pere.
 He fley in to þe yle of Tenet, he no dorste a bide no ner.
 zet eft heo fougten in þe se, and by side þere;
 Ac þe Britones at eche tyme þe maistrye a wey bere.
² þo Saxones heo seye, þat heo mygte no leng at stonde,
 To þe kyng þei sende, þat þei ³ most wende hom to here londe.
 þo heo were alle henne y went, here was joye y now,
 þe kyng zef ys men grete ziftes, & gret loue to hem drow,
 And let arere chirches vp, þat þe schrewes a doun caste,
 And bi gan to make a muri lond, ac to lute wyle yt laste.
 þe Deuel hadde enuy þer to, þat he susteynede Cristendam,
 And in ys ⁴ stepmoder herte ys woniung he nom.
 So þat ⁵ þo luþer wommon of poyson hire bi þougte,
 And apoysnede þe godeman, and to ⁶ þe' deþe hym brogte.
⁷ þis kyng, þo he sey þen deþ, ys knyghtes he let of sende,
 And schewede hem al þe wey wyder he schulde wende,
 And zef hem gold and' soluer, and ziftes riche and gode,
 And ⁸ bad hem for þe loue of God, þat heo hem vnderstode,

¹ Upon *Ar.* ² The Sax-
 ones sey, that they ne myghte
 a yenst the Brutones stonde,
Ar. ³ Myghte *Ar.* ⁴ Step-
 modere's herte sone his In
 he nom *Ar.* ⁵ The *Ar.*

⁶ *Deest Ar.* ⁷ The kyng, tho
 he sholde be ded, his knyghtes
 let of sende, And shewede hem
 of his stat, and of his lyf is
 ende, And yaf hem goold *Ar.*
⁸ *Audaccs autem & bellicosos*

And ¹ stabliche holde to gedere, to saue þat lond,
þat neuer þe luþer payns yt hadde eft an hond.

² And gef he mygte libbe lenger, he nolde drede noȝt.

And wan it alles so was, þat he was to deþe y broȝt,

He bed, wan he were ded, þat me schulde ys bodi nome,

And burie yt ³ þe hauene, wer þe payns come,

In a temple swiþe heye, þat heo myȝt yt fer yse,

þat heo, for drede of þe syȝte, myȝte sone fle.

⁴ Hardi was is herte to hem, wen he wolde þat þei hadde

Drede of ys bodi ded, ⁵ wan heo o liue hym dradde.

þer was deol & sorwe y now, þo þis gode mon was ded.

Ac noþeles heo ne buriede hym noȝt, as he hym self bed.

For hem þoȝte yt nas bute a wille, ac, as hee hem by þoȝte:

In London myd honour þis bedi an erþe broȝte.

VORTIGER, þe luþer mon, þo hys sone ded was,

Underfong ageyn to hym þe kyndam, alas!

For sone, þoru ys wyue's red, aftur Hengist he sende,

þat he þider to hym with ⁶ simple folk wende.

For he dradde, gef he hadde to gret power an honde,

þat þer schulde a rise strif by twene hym and þe londe.

juvenes, qui ei in debellationibus suis astare solebant, hortabatur, ut pro patria pugnantibus, eam ab hostium irruptione tueri niterentur Galfr. Mon.

¹ Stabelliche helde hem to hepe, forto sauy that lond, *Ar.*

² And if he langor myȝt haue leued, he wolde haue drad ryȝt nought. But whan

hit ther to come were, he were to deth y brought, *Ar.*

³ At an hauene, þer the he-thene men vp come, In a tumbe swithe an heigh, þat me myȝhte hit fer y se, *Ar.*

⁴ Hard *Ar.* ⁵ As they a lyue hadde *Ar.* ⁶ *Ut iterum in Britaniam rediret; attamen privatim & cum paucis* Galfr. Mon.

Reditus
Hengisti.

þo Hengist herde telle, þat Vortimer was ded,
 He gaderede power y now, and sone nom ys red.
 And þre hundred þousond ¹ men mid y armød he nom,
 And mid al þe atyl þer to in to þis lond he com.
 þo þe kyng & ys consel wiste of ² ys grete companye,
 Heo bi þougte & dradde sore; ³ þat it were for tricherie.
 And napeles he sende hem word a gen in ys felonye,
 þat in gret loue hider he com, and no þogte no vilanye,
 Bute for drede of Vortimer, ⁴ last he o liue were,
 Such folk myd hym he brongte, for he hadde of hym fere.
 Ac wen he nas o liue nogt, he bad þe kyng be hende,
 þat he mygte myd ys folk ⁵ vp ys lond wende,
 Bi fore hym and ys conseil, ⁶ a certeyn tyme and place,
⁷ With any maner arme to fonde ys grace,
 And þat ⁸ þo kyng of hys men at huld wuche he wolde,
 And dryue ageyn ouer þe se þilke þat he nolde.
 þe kyng was her wyþ wel ypayd, & sette hem þo day,
 And al ys owe folk, þat heo come þe firste day of May
 At Ambresburi, ⁹ for to of þis þing som ende,
 To at holde wuche he wolde of hem, & þe oþer agen sende.
 þo þis folk in eyþer syde y war was of þe day,
 In a newe maner Hengist þougte þe kyng & ys ¹⁰ bi tray.

¹ Men yarmyd with hym he nom, And with al hure atyr to this londe he com. Whan the kyng <i>Ar.</i> ² This comp. <i>Ar.</i> ³ Deest <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ Lest he a lyue <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ Upon his <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ In certeyn <i>Ar.</i> ⁷ With	oute eny manere armes to fondy of his grace <i>Ar.</i> ⁸ The <i>Ar.</i> ⁹ For to speke of this <i>Ar. rectius. Et tamen Auc-</i> <i>tori magis commodum,</i> for to do (<i>i. e.</i> to make.) ¹⁰ To by traye <i>Ar.</i>
---	--

He

He lette al ys knyghtes, þat myd hym þer were.
 þat in ys hose stilleliche ych of hem a knyf bere,
 And, wan heo to ¹ þis semble among þis Britones come,
 þat ech of hem an hey mon in conseil to hym nome,
 And swyþe faire speke with hym, & wan he þanne seyde,
 “ Nymeth zoure saxes,” ² þat he a non mid þe dede
 Drow ys knyf, and slow a non al an ou ywar,
 þat heo mygt of þe hexte men þat lond make bar.
 þis word was wel vnderstode, ³ so þat þo heo come
 In eyþer syde to Ambrisbury, þo day þat heo nome,
 And þe Brutones al simpliche in god pay, as heo vnderstode,
 And Hengist spek with þe kyng, as yt were for gode,
 And þo he say ys time wel, he gan to grede anon,
 “ Nymeth zoure saxes,” and ys men ⁴ þer with echon
 Kypte heore longe knyues, and slowe faste to gronde,
 So þat heo slow ⁵ four hundred & sixti in astonde
 Of erles and of barons þe ⁶ hexte þat þer were.
 Alas! þe deol to þis lond, ⁷ wuch treson was þere?
 Now ne kouþe þe Britones non Englisch y wys,
 Ac þe Saxones speche it was, & þorw hem y come yt ys.

Nymeth
 owre
 saxes.

¹ The assemble among the
 Brutones *Ar.* ² Thanne a-
 non with that ilke rede, Ech
 drough his knyf, and slough his
 felawe an vnywar, *Ar.* ³ And
 to hure day they come To
 Ambresbury on aithur side,
 as they the day nome. Sym-

pleliche the Brutones come
 for pees they vnderstode, *Ar.*
⁴ Tho anon echon Kaughte
 out hure longe knyues, and
 slough ther with to gronde,
Ar. ⁵ *Ita & Galfr. Mon. Sed*
 thre *Ar. cum Aluredo Bev.*
⁶ Heighest *Ar.* ⁷ Such *Ar.*

Hengist anon ¹ mid þe word ² þe kyng hente faste
 Bi þe mantel, and anon to his fet hym ³ caste.
 So þat þis gode men were y brogt myd treson to gronde,
 Ac some, þat of scapede, mid stones, þat heo fonde,
 And mid staues of hegges, defondede hem a boute,
 And slow of þis luþer men mony on in þe route.

Pugna.

ELDOL, erl of Gloucestre, ⁴ þat a strong knygt was,
 Hente a strong leuour, þat hym a com at honde bi cas.
 þo he say ys felawes ymorþred so viliche,
 God ernest he nom to hym, and sturde hym harde liche.
 He smot to gronde, & lyztliche he ne gef strok non,
 þat he ne brak hed oþer arm, or som oþer bon.
 He ne gef of hys lyf noȝt, ys felawes for to awreke,
 So þat he slow in þe place, er ys staf gonne breke,
 Sixti mon and tene, and wondede mony on,
 And zet he of scapede o liue for hem euer ech on
 And þe luþer folk, þat slowe þus þat folk myd tricherie.
⁵ þo kyng þei bonde faste ⁶ y now, þat rewliche he gan crie,
⁷ And defoulede hym myd bendes, forto he swor ys oþ,
 Alle here wille euer eft to do, ner hym ner so loþ.
 þo wende forþ þis luþer folk, and nome ⁸ London,
 And Euerwyk, and Lincolne, al ⁹ þoru þis treson.

¹ With that word the kyng
 to hym caughte *Ar.* ² *Et*
ilico Vortigernum accepit, &
per pallium detinuit Galfr.
 Mon. ³ Raughte *Ar.* ⁴ That
 staleworthe man was, Hente a
 tronchon on his hond that
 hym com by cas, *Ar.* ⁵ The

Ar. ⁶ Anon *pro* y now *in*
Ar. ⁷ And so they gonne fare
 with hym, forte he swor his
 oth, Al hure wille for to do,
 were hym neuere so loth *Ar.*
⁸ Town *adjicit* *Ar.* ⁹ With
 tresoun *Ar.*

And

And ' seþþe' Wynchestre bi Souþe, & oþer ² greteⁿ townes mo,
 And robbed euer as heo wende, & slow, & dude gret wo.
 þese were ³ lo! our faderes, of wam we beþ of y come,
 þat mid such traision habbeþ þis lond þus y nome.

VORTIGER, ⁴ oure feble kyng, þat lute was worþ þo,
 As he it hadde of serued wel to lutel hadde of wo,
 He flow in to Walis, þider he com sone,
 He ascode of hys conselers wat was best to done?
 Me radde hym, for ys casteles al hym bi nome were,
 þat he in som siker stude a castel ⁵ bulde þere,
 þat he mygte sikerliche wyte hym from hys fon.
 þe kyng ⁶ a god stude þer to let seche out a non,
⁷ And bigan a strong castel of lym and off ston,
 And of quoynte werkmen let hym brynge mony on.
⁸ þo heo bi gonne þis castel,⁹ al þat heo made a day,
 O morwe, wen þei come þer to, al clene þer downe it lay

¹ Deest Ar. ² Omittit Ar.

³ Oure olde fadres lo! of wham we both y come, And with such trechourie this lond thus hii haueth ynome. Vortiger this luthur kyng, that litel worth was tho, As he hadde of serued wel, hadde muche wo, And was let go a lyue. To Walis he wende sone, And axede tho of his consaillers, what best hym was to done? Ar. ⁴ Cum igitur tandem tantam cladem inspexisset Vortigerus, se-

cessit in partes Cambriae, inscius quid contra nefandam gentem ageret. Vocatis denique magis suis, consuluit illos, jussitque dicere quid faceret? &c. Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Sholde rere, Ar. ⁶ A good place ther fore let Ar. ⁷ And let bygyne a castel of strong lym and ston, Ar. ⁸ In Herefordshire vp the mont of Eirik [Eir Galfr. Mon.] ful high Was this castel by gone, vpon the water of Wigh. Tho hii bygonne the castel Ar.

¹ No beter sped heo, nere þat werk ner so strong.
 þe kyng ascode at enchanteres, war on yt was ylong?
² þe enchanteres seide, þat me a childe soȝte,
 þat were y gete with oute fader, & þat me yt þider broȝte,
 And slow yt, and mid þe blode bisprenge wel here ston"
 And here mortar, & yt scholde stonde þenne anon.
³ Hem þoȝte yt was euel y do, ac heo bi leuede yt noȝt,
 þat in mony a contrey such a child nas y soȝt.
 So þat some ⁴ þe messingeres to Kermerdyn come,
 And ⁵ how children bi fore þe ȝate ple yede he toke gome.
 þo seide on to ⁶ an oþer, " Merlyn, wat ys þe,
 " ⁷ þou faderles schrewe wy ⁸ misdostow me?
 " For ich am of ⁹ kynges ycome, & þou nart not worþ a fille.
 " For þou ¹⁰ naddest ner no fader, þer fore hold þe stille.
 þo þe messageres herde þis, heo astynte þere,
 And askede ¹¹ at men aboute, wat þat child were?
¹² He ne bod neuer fader, heo seyde, þat me myȝte vnder-
 stonde,
 And ys moder a kynge's doȝter was of þilke londe,

Invenio
Merlini.

¹ Euere more hit ferde
 thus, nere that werk so strong
Ar. ² The kyng's enchaun-
 tours seide hym tho, ther most
 a child be sought, That hadde
 neuere fader, and thuder hit
 moste be brought, And sle that
 child, and with the blood me
 sholde bysprenge the ston *Ar.*
³ This thoughte hem won-
 der for to do, & yut they left
 hit nought, *Ar.* ⁴ Of the *Ar.*

⁵ Of children in the strete
 that playde they toke gome
Ar. ⁶ That other, " what
 " myschaunce is the, *Ar.*
⁷ *Quid mecum contendis fatue?*
Galfr. Mon. ⁸ Mysdoist thugh
 me? *Ar.* ⁹ Good men *pro*
 kynges in *Ar.* ¹⁰ Haddest
 neuere fader, *Ar.* ¹¹ Of the
 men *Ar.* ¹² Men seyde, he
 hadde fader non, as hii couthe
 vnderstonde. His moder
 kynge's

And wonede at Seynt Petre's in a nonnery þere.
 þo þe messageres herde þis, joyful y now þei were.
 To þe baylys of þe toun hastiliche heo wende,
 þat he þe moder and þe sone to þe kyng sende.
 þo me wiste wat ¹ heo were, me ne durste with segge it noȝt,
 So þat þe moder & þe sone to þe kyng were y broȝt.
 þe kyng ² bad þe wommon segge soþ, ³ þat heo noþing lete,
 þat he ne seide in soþnesse, ho þat child bi gete.
 "My lord ⁴ kyng," quoth þis oþer, "to þe soþe i segge it þe,
 "þat neuer mon ney me ⁵ com, þat yt bi get on me.
 "Ac of o þing ich wot, wan ich ofte was
 "In chambre mid my felawes," þer com to me bi eas.
 "And swyþe fair mon with alle, & bi clupte wel softe,
 "And semblant made fair ynow, & custe me wel ofte.
 "þenne wende he forþ, as in schade, y nuste how ny ware.
 "þo he hadde y siwed me longe in þis fare,

kynges daughter was of
 i. *Southwales*

Demecie londe, And duelleth
 and [l. at] Seynt Petre's
 church, as a nonne there *Ar.*
Adeo ut hod, *sive* had, *pro*
hod reponerem.

¹ They *Ar.* ² Het *Ar.*

³ For no thyng shold heo lete,
 That heo ne told openlich, who
 þat child was by yete *Ar.* *per-*
inde ac si who *idem quod*
how valeret. Illud tamen noto
in margine (ab eadem autem
manu) vocylam was *adjectam*

esse, hac nota (viz. ^) in
textu posita. ⁴ Kyng, seide
 heo tho, the soþe ych sey the,
Ar. ⁵ Cam, þat hit by gat in
 me. And of on thyng ich wote,
 whan ich al one was In priue
 chaumbres with oute felawes,
Ar. ⁶ *Folia octo in Ar. ex-*
cisa esse deprehendo, in quo
proinde de sequentibus, usque
ad hanc notam ¶ *(quam in*
marginē apposuimus, utpote
ad quam iterum occurrit Ar.)
longe fusius quam in Codice
Harleyano tractatum est.

" Alte laste in forme of mon ofte he lay bi me,
 " Ac oþer mon neuer non; to soþe y segge it þe.
 þo þe kyng herde þis, gret wonder he þouȝte þere.
 He asched at is clerkes, ' were yt to leue were ?
 þe clerkes seide, þat yt is in philosophie y fonde,
 þat þer beþ in þe eir an hey, fer fro þe gronde,
 As a maner gostes, wyȝtes as it be,
 And me may hem ofte on erþe in wylde studes y se,
 And ofte in monne's fourme wymmen heo comeþ to,
 And ofte in wymmen forme þei comeþ to men al so,
 þat men clepuþ eluene, and perautre in þis maner
 On of hem in þis wommon bi get þis child her.
 þo Merlyn hadde al þis y herd, to þe kyng he sede :
 " Sire kyng, wy dudest þou my moder & me bi fore þe lede ?
 " My enchantoures," quof þe kyng, " me habbeþ þer to yrad,
 " þat a child, þat nadde no fader, bi fore me were y lad,
 " And þat þe werk myd ys blod, þat we habbeþ on honde,
 " Be sprenged þat falleþ adoun, & þenne yt schulde stonde.
 " Lat þin enchantors," quof Merlyn, " sone bi fore me brynge,
 " And ich wol preue bi fore þe, þat heo telleþ al lesynge.
 þis enchantors were ybroȝt sone bi fore þe kyng.
 " Wad segge ȝe," quof Merlyn, " of þis newe þinge ?
 " Radde ȝe, þat me by sprengede þat mortar mid my ² blod.
 " Here me schal sone y se, þat ne konne no god.

¹ *I. e.* whether he might believe it? *Nam, si id, quod mulier dixerat, fieri potuisset, in Galfr. Mon.* ² *Potest & interrogandi nota distingui, nisi quod plenam sane distinctionem in Co-*

dice eximio (utcumque ad finem manco) Galfridi Monumethensis, mihi donato ab amico illo eruditissimo Richardo Gravesio de Mickleton in agro Gloucestriensi, reperiam. Sic enim ibi:

“ Seggeth me, zef þat ze konne, wat ys bi neþe þe gronde,
 “ þat makeþ þat þo fundement no stond none stonde.

þei ne kouþe onswere nozt, as it ys y wryte.

“ Lord kyng,” quof Merlyn, “ zef þou wolt þe soþe wyte,
 “ Lat delue vnder þe fundement, & þou schalt bi neþe fynde

“ A water pol, þat haþ y mad, þat þis werk ys bi hynde.

Me dalf bi neþe, and fond þe water, as Merlyn hadde y seid.

“ Wat segge ze maistres,” quod Merlyn, “ þat zeue þat cole
 red,

“ To bi nyme blod & my lyf, was ys bi neþe now þere ?

þe maistres sete stille y now, ryzt as heo doumbe were.

“ Doþ out þis water,” quof Merlyn, “ & wen it is a weye,

“ ze schul bi neþe zet y fynde holwe stones tweye,

“ And in eyþer a dragon þer inne slepe faste.

Me let sone out of þis pol þe water elene caste,

And fonde, as he hadde y seid. Men wondred ynow,

And þohte, þat ys monhede to Godhed drow

As þis Vortiger and þis folk token gome,

Twei grete dragones out of þis stones come,

þat on was red, þe oþer wyte. þo gonne to fyzte faste

Strong batail, and þe fuyr out of þe mouþ caste.

So þat þe white was aboue, as þe folk y seye,

And drof þe rede al abak out of þe put ney.

þe rede, as for sorinesse, by turnede hym atten ende,

And asailede þe wyte, & made hym abac wende.

As þis dragones fozte þus, þe kyng hette Merlyn þere,

Forthe segge, zef he kouþe, wat þe tokonyng were.

Pugna
draco-
num.

Laudavistis, ut sanguis meus | dicite michi quid sub funda-
 diffunderetur in cœmentum, & | mento latet ?
 quasi illico opus constaret. Set

Mer-

Prophecia
Merlini.

Merlyn gan to wepe þo, and bi gan ys prophecie :

“ Awey ! ” he seide, “ þe rede dragon ! for ys ende gynneþ to hye,

“ And þe white dragon schal in to ys holes wende,

“ þat bi tokeneþ þe Saxones, þat þou let astur sende.

“ þe rede bi tokeneþ þe Britones, and goure kynde þat is,

“ þat þe Saxones schulleþ zet ouer come, and here londe
wynne ywis.

“ Grote watres worþeþ zet rede of monne's blode,

“ Cristendom worþ y cast a doun, & chirchon þat er stode.

“ Ac zet schul þe Britones som tyme ageyn stonde,

“ For þe bor of Cornewail schal helpe þis londe,

“ And þo Saxnes hedes vnder fet trede.

“ Mony yles wyne he schal, lond and oþer stude

“ Lord he worþ of France, & Rome schal bys sturnhede

“ Doute, & quake þerfore, ac ys endyng worþ in drede.

“ ¹ þat folk schal euer speke of hym, and ys noble dede

“ Worþ to hym a swete mete, þat it con a rede.

“ ² Siþe, þat comeþ astur hym, schulleþ holde þe seynorie.

Ac astur hem schal aryse a worm of Germanye,

And þe ³ se wolf hym schal brynge vp, ⁴ & þanne religion

And holy chirche eftsone worþ y brogt al a don.

Change worþ of bischopriches, & þe digne sege y wys

Worþ y brogt to Canterbury, þat at London now ys.

¹ *In ore populorum celebra-
bitur, & actus ejus cibus erit
narrantibus* Galfr. Mon. ² *Ser-
posteri ejus sequentur scap-
trum, sed post ipsos exsurget
Germanicus vermis,* Galfr.

Mon. ³ *Æquoreus lupus*
Galfr. Mon. ⁴ *Delebitur item
religio, & transmutatio pri-
marum sedium fiet. Dignitas
Londoniæ adornabit Doro-
berniam* Galfr. Mon.



¹ Al þis bi fel afturward, as ze schul² y hure,
² þo Cornewaile's bor, of wam he spek, þat³ was kyng Arthure,
 þat so wel huld vp þis lond, and ys fon ouer com,
⁴ þat þoru ys nobley wan mony a kyndom.

Of prophecie of Merlyn we ne mow telle no more,
 For it so derk to symple men, bute me were þe bet in lore.

Gret wonder hadde þat folk of þe wisdam, þat he seyde,
 Of þing, þat to come was, and of his zong hede.

þe kyng bed þo Merlyn, þat he hym tolde an dede.

In wat deþ he scholde deye, & Merlyn þis hym seyde.

“⁵ Costantyne's sones⁶ fur fle, zef þou mygt.

“⁷ For heo garkeþ here schipes toward þi lond rygt.

“ Heo bileueþ þat lond of Armore,” þat þo lasse Breteyn ys.

“ Heore seyles heo spredeþ in þe se, & hyder comeþ y wis,

“ þe Saxones heo wolleþ a saile, & to gronde brynge.

“⁸ Ac heo wolle þe in þin owne tour sle⁹ atte bigyunnyng.

“⁹ þoru þi traison luþer mon heor fader þou slowe.

“¹⁰ And¹¹ þoru þi trayson Saxones¹¹ into þis lond þou drowe.

“ þou bede hem forto helpe þe, ac to þin wo heo beþ y come.

“ Twei sorwes¹² þe beþ vp on, & þe ne worþ nowþer bi nome.

¹ Much of this *Ar.* ² Hure, as of the Cornyssh boor, that *Ar.* ³ *F. þro.* ⁴ And thurgh his grete nobleye *Ar.* ⁵ Costantyne's sones fuir *Ar.* ⁶ *Ignem filiorum Constantini dif- fuge, si diffugere valueris* Galfr. Mon. ⁷ For hure naueye hii arayth hiderward nough ryght. They leueth the londe of Armoryk. *Ar.* ⁸ And the

sle in thyn owen tour *Ar.* ⁹ Hure fader and hure brother eke þurgh thi treson men slowe *Ar.* ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.* ¹¹ Ferst in to this lond drowe *Ar.* ¹² The cometh an honde, & neither the ne worth by nome. The Saxones nough destroyeth thy lond in the on ende. The two *Ar.*

“ For

- " For ¹ þe Saxones destruyep þi lond in to þo on ende.
 " þo twei² breþren in þe oþer half ² vp þi lond wol wende,
 " To awreke on þe here heor fader deþ, þe ne tyd no pays.
 " For heo wolleþ to morwe aryue atte haue of Tottenays.
 " And wen Hengist ys yslawe, Aurely worþ kyng.
 " Pays he wole brynge ageyn, & ³ chirchon þoru alle þing.
 " Apoysned he worþ atte ende, and aftur hym an haste
 " Hys broþer schal haue þe kyndam, þat apoysned worþ atte
 laste.
 " So gret treson worþ among hem, þat aftur þe schul come,
 * Ac þe Cornewaile's bor hem schal chaste some.

AURELI & Uter, þe twei breþren corteys,
 With gret power a morwe ariuede at Totteneis:
 þo þe tyþing sprong, þat heo comen attelaste,
 þe Brutones, þat were helples, come aboute hem faste,
 þat were to sprad here & þere, heo were þo glad ynowg,
⁵ þat folk al so of holy chirche aboute hem faste drowg.
 þer heo made Aureli kyng, & homage hym dude echon,
 And ⁶ bede, þat heo moste vp þe Saxones wende anon.
 Ac þe kyng Aurely þer ageyn gan ⁷ speke.
 For he þogte on Vortiger ys fader first awreke.

¹ *Hinc enim regnum tuum
 devastant Saxones, &c. Galfr.
 Mon.* ² Up the wolleþ wende,
 To a wreke hure fader deth,
 the ne tideth no pays *Ar.*
³ Chirches *Ar.* ⁴ But thurgh
 the boor of Cornewaile shal

wrech of hym be nome *Ar.*
⁵ The folk eke of holy *Ar.*
⁶ Consailed hym on the Sax-
 ones, forto weynde anon *Ar.*
⁷ To speke, and wylned vpon
 Vortager his fader *Ar.*

¹ For ys herte was so gret for ys fader deþ þere,
þat he ne mygt glad be, ar he awreke were.

Vortiger² ys y flowe, for drede of hym ywis,

³ To an castel in Yrchenfeld, in þe Est ende of Walis,

A boue þe water of Wye, vp an hul on heyg.

þe kyng Aureli þider com, & þat castel y seyð.

To Eldolf, erl of Gloucestre, he spek in þis manere :

“⁴ Sire noble erl nym god geme of þis castel here,

“ Were he mowe þe luþer Vortiger wytye fro þe deþe,

“ þat ich in ys inneward my swerd ne make a scheþe,

“ þat ys aller mon worst, þat me euer sey with ye.

“ þe deþ ne mygte be to luþer, that he schulde in dye.

“ For my fader Costantyn first he bi trayde amys,

“ þat sauede hym & al þat lond from þe⁵ Picars y wys.

“ Seþþe my broþer⁶ Constance he brogte hym to kyng :

“ For he wolde hym bi traie, and to deþe brynge.

¹ *Adeo enim propter proditorem patri illatam doluerat, quod nil agere videretur, nisi ipsum prius vindicaret* Galfr.

Mon. ² Was *Ar.* ³ To Genor castel in Yrchne, in the on ende of Walis, Vp an hille, that Dirty hight, þis castel stode ful hie, In the shire of Hergyn [Heryngfordshire, *i.* Herfordshire, *in margine*] vp the water of Wye. The kyng tho he thunder com, spake in this maner to Eldolph, Erl of Gloucestre, sure se this castel here,

Wher may hit this Vortiger wity fram his deth, And hit ich myghte in his body make my body a sheth. He is to me man worst to loken on with eye, His deth ne myghte to luther be þan he sholde deye *Ar.* ⁴ *Respice, dux nobilis, hujus urbis mœnia, utrum poterint Vortegirnum protegere, quin gladii mei mucronem ipse infra viscera ipsius recondam.* &c. Galfr. Mon. ⁵ *Pictes Ar.* ⁶ Constans he made to be kyng : *Ar.*

“ And

" And seþþe, þoru ys tricherie þo he hadde þis lond on honde,
 " He mengede þe luþer payns among ' zou in þis londe,
 " ² Forte holde me & myn broþer out of oure eritage.
 " ³ Ac oure Lord haþ vp ys heued ybrogt ys owne outrage.
 " For þe luþer Saxones vnder zete ys luþer dede,
 " Heo by nome hym ys kyndom, ⁴ & þat was a rygtful dede.
 " Ac of o þing ich hadde deol, þat þis payns, þat luþer beþ,
 " þat he brogte first to londe, as ze alle y seþ,
 " þe noble men of þis lond þus to schame brogte,
 " And þis lond, þat was riche, wastede al to nozte,
 " And al holy chirche & Cristendom haddeþ y brogt to gronde
 " Fram þat ⁵ o se to þat oþer, ⁶ a las! þilke stonde!
 " Now ze kynde mon of þis lond ⁷ cuþeþ zoure monhede.
 " And awrekeþ zou of þis luþer men, þoru wam com þis
 wrechedhede;
 " ⁸ And seþþe turne we oure hond vp oure oþer fon,
 " And ⁹ delyuere þis lond of þe luþer men echon.
 " ¹⁰ þis folk myd god herte þis castel a sailede.
 Ac for þe castel wes strong, here wille þo hem faylede.

¹ The Cristenmen *pro* zou
in Ar. ² To *pro forte in Ar.*
³ But God on his owene
 hede hath tournd his outrage.
 The Saxones whan hii vn-
 derstode of his luther dede,
Ar. ⁴ Thurgh gile and fals-
 hede. Ac of one thyng *Ar. Sed*
Galfr. Mon. plane ut Codex
Harleyanus. Sic enim ille:
 " *Nam ut nequitiam ipsius com-*
 " *pererunt Saxones, ejecerunt*

" *illum ex regno, quod nemi-*
 " *nem pigere debeat.* ⁵ On see
Ar. ⁶ Alas! the harde stounde!
Ar. ⁷ Kyeth your manhede *Ar.*
⁸ *Deinde vertamus arma in ho-*
stes imminentes, &c. Galfr.
Mon. ⁹ Delyuere we this lond
 of luther *Ar.* ¹⁰ The folk with
 good herte tho this castel
 gonne asaile. And for the ca-
 stel was so strong, whan will
 dude hem faile, With queyn-
 tise

Myd quoyntise heo casten fuyr, & barnde þat castel withinne,
 And þe kyng Vortiger was to doust y barnd þer inne.
 And þo mygte he fynde soþ, þat Merlyn hym er seide,
 þat ¹ heo Costantyne's sones fuyr schulde fle & drede.
 þo was Hengist sore adrad of kyng Aurely þer,
 And nomeliche for þe noble los, ² þat he herde of hym er.
 For þer nas in non ende of France, ny in no lond þer a boutē,
 þat in joustes & ³ tornemens echo mon gan hym doute.
 For þer nas so god knygt non nower a boutē France,
 þat in joustes scholde at sitte þe dynt of ys launce,
 þat he ⁴ ne schulde a down oþer ys hors oþer boþe anon,
 Oþer þe lance schulde breke in peses mony on.
 þer fore Hengist was a drad to mete with ys launce,
 Ouer Homber he fley a non, to wyte hym from meschance;
 And casteles and cytees a storede faste þere,
⁵ And in Scotlond al so; for þilke londes were
 A luþer recēt euer a geyn Engelonde.
 For eche þat wolde hider harm, þer mygte at stonde.
⁶ þo Aureli wiste, þat heo were y flowe to hurne,
 He was glad, þat heo were a ferd, & þogte be hom sturne."

tise hii caste fure, and brende hit with gynne, And Vortiger alto douste brende ther with ynne *Ar.*

¹ Constantyne's sones fuyr he sholde fle *Ar.* ² That men of hym bere *Ar.* ³ Tournamentz me ne hadde of hym gret doute *Ar.* ⁴ *Nam si congressum fecisset, vel hostem ab equo prosterneret, vel has-*

tam in frustra confringeret Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Al toward Scotlond, ther his recettes were. For ther a luthere recett hath be euer to Engelonde. All that hiderward wolde harme, ther hii mowe astonde *Ar.* ⁶ *Cumque id Aurelio nuntiatum fuisset, audacior effectus, spem victoriæ recepit* Galfr. Mon. *At in Cod. Ar. Tho kyng Aure-*

He zarkedē ys ost, & siwede aftur hem faste Norþ,
 And þo he sey þe contreis, as he passede forþ,
 Destruyde & bare in eche half, gret deel he made þere,
 And nameliche for chirches, þat y cast to gronde were.
¹ He bi het God almyzty, zef he sende hym þo ouer hond,
 To rere vp agen þe chirches a boutē into al þat lond.
 þo Hengist wiste, þat ² heo come toward Scotlond,
³ He zarkedē ys ost faste, ageyn hem for to stonde.

ELDOL, erl of Gloucestre, as he wende in þis ferhede
 Toward þe batail, to þe kyng þese wordes he seyde :
 “ Sire kyng, for al þe dayes, þat ich haue on erþe y go,
 “ O day me wolde þinke ynow to ⁴ libbe with oute mo,
 “ þat ich þe luþer Hengist in Batail myzte mete,
 “ For on of vs schulde deye er we ⁵ þat batail lete.
 “ So ⁶ muche for ich hadde in myn hertē, wan y þer on
 þenche,
 “ ⁷ þon come to make pays, of ys luþer wrenche,

lie hadde word, the Saxones
 were yflowe, Wel the more
 was his joye, the lasse was
 his howe.

¹ He made to God his a-
 vow, to haue the heigher
 honde, *Ar.* ² He *Ar.* ³ He
 gan faste to greithi his oste,
 ayen hym forto stonde. El-
 dolf, erl of Gloucetre, that
 wende in companye Wiþ the
 kyng thunderward, gan to hym
 speke an hie: “ Sire kyng,
 he seide, alle deies þat y haue
 go *Ar.* ⁴ Lyue *Ar.* ⁵ To

pro þat in Ar. ⁶ *Reminiscor
 namque diei, qua convenimus
 quasi pacem habituri. Cum-
 que & de concordia ageretur,
 prodidit omnes qui aderant,
 & cum cultris interfecit, præ-
 ter me solum, qui reperto palo
 evasi. Succubuerunt eadem die
 cccc, lxxx. barones ac consu-
 les, qui omnes inermes advene-
 rant Galfr. Mon.* ⁷ Whan we
 come to make pees, of his lither
 wrenche, That of Erles and
 Barons, that *Ar.*

“ þat

" þat of oure erles and barnes, þat so noble men were,
 " Four hundred & four score ¹ mid treson he slow þere,
 " Of hem þat ² were al on war, & with oute armour were also.
 " Now God leue, þat þe wreche þer of by twene vs mow be do.
 þe kyng Aurely ys felawes comforted wel to fygte,
 And al ys hope in ³ Godesone dude & al ys mygte.
 As þe ost in eiþer syde to ⁴ þis batail drow,
 Heo come & metten baldeliche mid god earnest y now.
 Heo smyten harde & made mony a strong wonde.
 Heo schedde blod and slowe in eyþer syde to gronde.
 Aureli comfortede þe Cristenemen a bouete,
 And Hengist in his ⁵ half þe heþene menne's route.
 Ac þe Cristene, þoru Gode's grace, hadde þe beter ende,
 So þat toward ⁶ Corneborw þe heþene gonne wende,
⁷ And þo Cristene aftur, & to gronde brogte y nowe.
 For al þat heo mygte of take, heo nome oþer slowe.
 þo Hengist y sey þe Cristene men hym siwe so faste,
 And þat he moste nede turne ageyn, oþer deye atte laste,
 He bi gan to ordeyne ys folk, & to batail agen drow,
⁸ And in eyþer syde, as heo dude er, to gronde me slow,
 þat þe cry of þe folk, þat me slow, þe oþere⁹ brogte in drede.
 Atte laste þe heþene men bi gouue hem to sprede.

¹ With *Ar.* ² Were an
 vnywar, and vnarmed also.
 God leue that hit mote be
 wreke by twixte vs two. The
 kyng Aurelie *Ar.* ³ Gode's
 sone *Ar.* ⁴ The *pro* this *in*
Ar. ⁵ Half also the hethene
 of his route *Ar.* ⁶ Cones-

burgh *Ar.* ⁷ The Cristene
 siwede after faste, broughte
 to grounde y now *Ar.* ⁸ Yn
 aither syde, as hii dude er,
 muche folk me slough. The
 cry of folk þat was a slawe,
 the other *Ar.*

þe Cristene were þe boldere, ¹ þe kyng faste sette
 Forto comforte ys men, and slow al þat he mette.
 Eldol, erl of Gloucester, al so in hys syde
² Arnde, and kepte her and þer, and slow a boutte wyde.
 And muche hys entente was ³ Hengist forto mete.
⁴ Heo mette hem atte laste, er heo þe batail lete.
 Ow! Lord! þe dyntes stronge, þat" were bi twene hem þere,
⁵ þat fuyr smot out of þat yre, lygtyng as yt were.
 So strong knyghtes boþe þei were, ⁶ & here herte gret was.
 Gorlois, erl of Cornewail, ⁷ þer forþ com bicas.
 As sone as Eldol hym seye, ys herte vpward drow :
 Hengist by þe helme by neþe he hente faste ynowg,
 And myd strengþe hym drow a doun, & lowde bi gan to grede,
 " Cristenemen figteþ now, of noþing ge ne drede.
 " God me haþ my wille y geue; for ich hym habbe nowþe,
 " Flym þat made al þis wo bi Norþ & eke by Souþe.
 " Cuþeþ now, þat ge ben men; for þe maistry al oure ys.
⁸ þo Cristene men to grounde slow, þo ⁹ heo herde þis.
¹⁰ Heo ne fynede neuer mo, ar þo oþer ware at grounde.
 Some flowe to hulles and to wodes, þat heo fonde.
 Ac Octa, Hengiste's sone, and ys power atte laste
¹¹ Of scapede to Euerwik, & strengþede þe toun faste.

¹ And the heþene faste of sette, And faste comfortide his men to sle alle that hii mette *Ar.* ² Rood, & kept her and ther all a boutte wide *Ar.* ³ With Hengis *Ar.* ⁴ So at last to gedere hii mette, and other batailles lete. Wonder stronge were the strokes, that

Ar. ⁵ The fuir smot out of the ire, *Ar.* ⁶ And the herte so gret was *Ar.* ⁷ By side hem com by cas *Ar.* ⁸ The Cristene to grounde *Ar.* ⁹ Hii *Ar.* ¹⁰ And neuer wolde fyne, er the other were to grounde *Ar.* ¹¹ Askapide in to Ebracwike, *Ar.*

Hengist was o liue y nome, and y holde faste.
 þo þis batail was y do, ¹ þis Britones attelaste
 Nome þe town of ² Cornboru, and þer inne hadde reste
 þre dayes and þre ³ nygt, forto bi þenche hore beste.
 þe kyng lette ⁴ þe wyle burye þe dede men þere,
 And do vnder lechecraft hem, þat y wounded were.
 þe kyng ⁵ lette bryng þer aftur Hengist bi fore hym sone,
 And aschede at erles & barnes, wat were mid hym to done?
⁶ Eldal, þat bischop of Gloucestre ⁷ was,
 And þe erl ys broþer Eldol, was þer bi cas
 þo he sey Hengist stonde bi fore þe kyng þere,
 He stod vp & seide þe verdyt by fore alle oþere at þer were.
 “gef oþer,” he seide, “þat þer beþ hym wol deliucere echone,
 “To smale peces ich hym wolde to hakke al one.
 “⁸ For ich wolde þo prophete wyle Samuel vnderstonde,
 “þat þo he hadde þe luper kyng Agag vnderhonde,”

¹ These *Ar.* ² Cones-
 burgh *Ar.* ³ Nyght, as hem
 thought beste *Ar.* ⁴ Thulke
 while the deed bury there,
 And dude tho to lechecraft,
 that y wounded were *Ar.*

⁵ The kyng let Hengist af-
 terward be brought to fore
 hym sone, And axede of his
 Barones, best what was of
 hym to done? *Ar.* ⁶ Eldad,
Ar. ⁷ Tho was, And the
 ferthe brother Eldolf, ther
 was eke by cas. Eldad seide
 the verdit for alle that ther
 were, When he seygh Hengis
 stonde byfore the kyng there.

“Theigh alle,” he seide, “that
 here beth him wolde dely-
 uere echon, To smale pecis
 alto hacky ich hym wolde a-
 lone. For of prophete Samu-
 el ich wolde vnderstonde,
 That Agag the luthur kyng
 hadde vnder hond, *Ar.* ⁸ *In-*
sequeretur namque prophetam
Samuelem, qui cum Agag re-
gem Amalech in potestatem
retinuisset, concidit illum in
frusta dicens, “Sicut fecisti
“matres sine liberis, sic fa-
“ciam hodie matrem tuam
“sine liberis inter mulieres.
 Galfr. Mon.

" He lette hym hewe to peses, and also he seide,
 " As þou hast y mad mony ¹ wyf deolful lyf to lede,
 " And mony child with oute fader, & mony wif lordles,
 " ² Al so ich wole make to day þine sones faderles.
 " Al so ³ doþ bi þis mon, þat so muche wo haþ y do,
 " So mony child mad faderles, dygteþ hym al so.
 þis word was for dom yholde, þe erl Eldol hym drow,
 And ladde hym with oute þe town ⁴ mid god herte y now;
 And smot of hys hed, þat so muche wo hadde y do.
 þo was mony mon a wreke, and mony mon glad al so.
 þis was euene fourty ȝer, þat he hadde þis dom,
 Aftur þat ⁵ he mid his folc to þis lond com.
 þo wende þe kyng myd god ost to Euerwik anon,
 For to sle ⁶ Hengistesone, and ys men echon.
 þo Octa hit onderstod, þat heo comyng were,
 He sei wel, þat ⁷ power nas noȝt ageyn hem þere.
 An ⁸ raketyne of yre in hys hond he nom,
 And myd þe hexte of ys men ⁹ to þe kyng he com.
 " Sire," he seide, " myne Godes al ouer come beþ,
 " And þi ¹⁰ Lord ys God al one, as we to soþe seþ,

¹ A wif *Ar.* ² So wole
 y make to day thi sone fader-
 les *Ar.* ³ Do *Ar.* ⁴ With
 gret filte y now, *Ar.* ⁵ He
 ferst with his *Ar.* ⁶ Hen-
 giste's sone, *Ar.* ⁷ His pow-
 er was nought a yen so many
 there. A gret cheyne of iren
Ar. ⁸ *Communicato itaque*

*consilio, egressus est cum no-
 biliaribus qui secum aderant,
 gestans catenam in manu, &
 sabulonem in capite, & sese
 regi in hæc verba præsentavit*
Galfr. Mon. ⁹ A ye the kyng
 com *Ar.* ¹⁰ God is Lord al
 one, as we alle y seth, *Ar.*

" þat þus noble men to þyn wille bryngeþ in þis manere.
 " ¹ þer fore vs with ² veteres vnderfong now here.
 " ³ þat to eche torment, þat ze wole vs, zere we beþ in þis
 place,
 " Bute þou wole of vs here pyte habbe and grace.
 þe kyng hadde rewþe ⁴ of hem, & ys conseil hym gef þo,
 Non of hem sikernesse to ys þral euer mo"
 And of eche þat with hym was, and in gret destresse,
 Bi syde Scotlond hem gef a place, al in wildernessse,
 To wone inne in þraldam vnder þe kyng euer mo.
 þese, and mony oþere, þat y flowe were þo,
 Y sei, þat þe kyng hadde such mercy hem do,
 To hym heo wende as prisones, and ⁵ bedom mercy also.
 þe kyng al inon maner hem gef ⁶ mercy and grace,
 To wone al in ⁷ þralhede in þike wylde place,
⁸ To wroþe hele al þis lond was he so mylde þo.
 For þe schrewes dude to þis lond seþþe wel muche wo.
 þo al þis was y do, þe kyng, ar he wende,
 Let ordeyne in Euerwik þis lond for to amende,
 And lette rere vp chirches in al þe lond a bowte,
 And bischopes dude in heore power, þat ⁹ er were al withoute.

¹ *Accipe ergo nos & catenam istam, &, nisi misericordiam habueris, habe nos ligatos, & ad quodlibet supplicium uoluntarie paratos* Galfr. Mon.

²Thes feteres *Ar.* ³To (*omisso* þat) which torment though wlt vs do, we beth redy in this place, But though wlt vs pyte do, or eny other grace

Ar. ⁴ Of hym, as his conseil yaf hym tho, And sikernesse nam of hym, to serue hym euere mo *Ar.* ⁵ Mercy bede also *Ar.* ⁶ Mylce *Ar.* ⁷ Thraldom *Ar.* ⁸ To wrotherhele to al this lond, that he mylde was tho. For they dude to al this lond suthe muche wo *Ar.* ⁹ Erst *Ar.*

Aftur fyftene dawes, þat ¹ he hadde y ordeyned ² þis,
 To London ³ he wende, for to amende ⁴ þat þer was amys.
 He let amende al þo town of howses þat were a downe,
⁵ And in þe contrey chirches let rere, and in þe towne.
 Gode lawes, þat were aleyd, newe he lette make.
⁶ Londes, þat were ⁷ arst by nome, ⁸ þe rygt eyr he lette take.
 Bute ys wille al clene was ys lond forto amende.
 And aftur al þis to Wynchestre from Londone he wende,
 For to amende þilke ⁹ syde, & so & so to Salusbury.
 And so, for to amende more, to þe ¹⁰ downe of Ambresbury.
 þo he com to þat place, þat þe heye men inne laye,
 þat Hengist myd ys sexes let sle and by traye,
 Of þe morþre he hadde deol, & bi gan to wepe sore,
 He þogte in hys herte, how he mygte þe place ¹¹ worþi.
 For þer lay so gode men, ¹² yt was wel ydo,
 þat, for to defende þat lond, y morþred were so.
 Hys conseil he tok þo, how he mygt make þere
 Some werk, ¹³ in honowr of hem, þat euer in mynde were.
 þe erchbischop of Walis seide ys auys,
 "Sire," he seide, "gef þer ys any mon so wys,

¹ Hii *Ar.* ² Al this *Ar.* ly this lond for to amende
³ Hii *Ar.* ⁴ Thyngs that *Ar.* ⁹ Cite, and so to Sales-
 were amys. And let amendy *Ar.* bury *Ar.* ¹⁰ Toune *Ar.*
 al the toun *Ar.* ⁵ Churchen *Ar.* ¹¹ Worshipe more. For ther
 he rerde in contreye fram *Ar.* ¹² Hym thought hit wel
 toun to toune. Olde lawes, *Ar.* to do, By cause, in sense of the
Ar. ⁶ And londes, *Ar.* ⁷ Er *Ar.* lond, they were amorthered
Ar. ⁸ To the rygt heires *Ar.* so *Ar.* ¹³ That hii euere
 take. His wille was al clen- *Ar.* more after in mynde were *Ar.*

" ¹ þat beste red þe can rede, Merlyn þat ys.
 For ² þer nys in þi kyndam so wys mon y wys,
 To segge soþ of þinges, þat to comene beþ.
³ Ne of quoyntes for to rede, as we al day y seþ.
 Merlyn was þo in Walis. he was sone of soȝt
 Myd messingeres, & y fonde, & to þe kyng y broȝte.
 The kyng made hym joye ynow, & ⁴ amon hem alle
 Bed hym telle of som ⁵ þing, þat hym schulde bi falle.
 " Sire kyng," quof Merlyn þo, " suche þinges y wys
 " Ne beþ for to schewe noȝt, but wen gret nede ys.
 " For ⁶ ȝef ich seide in bismare, oþer bute yt ned were,
 " Sone from me ⁷ he" wolde wende þe Gost, þat doþ me lere.
⁸ þe kyng, þo non oþer nas, bod hym som quoyntyse
 Bi þenke aboute ⁹ þilke cors, þat so noble were and wyse.
 " Sire kyng," quof Merlyn þo, " ȝef þou wolt here caste,
 " In ¹⁰ þe" honour of hem, a werk that cuer schal y laste,
 " To þe ¹¹ hul of Kylar send in to Yrlond
 " ¹² Aftur þe noble stones, þat þer habbet lenge y stonde,
 " þat was þe treche of geandes, for a quoynte werk þer ys
 " Of stones al wyþ art y mad, in þe world such non ys.

Kylar.

¹ That best red can ther of rede, Merlyn hit is *Ar.*

² *Quippe non existimo, alterum in regno tuo esse, cui sit clarius ingenium, sive in futuris dicendis, sive in operationibus machinandis* Galfr. Mon. ³ Ne of queynte thynges for to rede, *Ar.* ⁴ Among *Ar.* ⁵ Things, *Ar.* ⁶ *Nam si ea in derisionem sive vanitatem proferrem, taceret spiritus, qui me docet, &*

cum opus superveniret, recederet Galfr. Mon. ⁷ *Deest Ar.*

⁸ The kyng, tho other [*f.* tho non other] myghte be, bad hym *Ar.* ⁹ Thulke bodies, *Ar.* ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.* ¹¹ Hille of Kildar *Ar.* ¹² After stones noble and goode, that longe han ther stonde, That was carole of Geantz, for queynte werk hit is *Ar.*

- “¹ Ne þer nys noþing, þat me scholde² myd strengþe a doun
caste.
- “ Stode heo here, as heo doþ þere, ³ euer a wolde laste.
þe kyng⁴ somdel to lyghe, þo he herde þis tale.
- “⁵ How mygte,” he seyde, “suche stones, so grete & so fale,
- “⁶ Be y brogt of so fer lond? & zet mest of were,
- “ Me wolde wene, þat in þis lond no ston to worche nere.
- “⁷ Sire kyng,” quof Merlyn, “ne make nogt an ydel such
lyghyng.
- “ For yt nys an ydel nogt, þat ich telle þis tyþing.
- “ For in þe farreste stude of Affric geandles while fette
þike stones for medycine, & in Yrlond hem sette,
- “⁸ While heo woneden in Yrlond, to make here baþes þere,
“ þer vnder forto baþi, wen þei syk were.
- “ For⁹ heo wolde þe stones wasch, & þer inne baþe y wis.
- “¹⁰ For ys no ston þer among, þat of gret vertu nys.

¹ Ne ther is nothing, that hem sholde with strength a doun caste *Ar.* ² *Grandes sunt lapides, nec est aliquis cuius virtuti cedant. Qui si eo modo, quo ibi positi sunt, circa plateam locabuntur, stabunt in æternum* Galfr. Mon. ³ Euere hii wolde y laste *Ar.* ⁴ By gan somdel to laugh *Ar.* ⁵ Who *Ar.* ⁶ Bryng fro so ferre lond? And the meste were, that men wolde wene in þis *Ar.* “⁷ Sire,” quath Merlyn, “ne taketh nought an ydel such lyghyng. For hitt is an

ydel nought, that y telle of this thyng *Ar. Ad hæc Merlinus: “ Ne moveas rex vanum risum, quia hæc absque vanitate profero* Galfr. Mon. ⁸ The while hii wonede in Irlonde, to make hem bathes there, *Ar.* ⁹ *Lavabant namque lapides, & infra balnea diffundebant, unde egroti curabantur. Miscebant etiam cum herbarum confectionibus, unde vulnerati sanabantur. Non est ibi lapis, qui medicamento careat* Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ For ther is *Ar.*

þe kyng and ys conseil ¹ radde þo stones forte fette,
² And with gret power of batail, zef any mon hem lette.
 Uter, (þe kynges's broþer,) þat Ambrose hette al so,
 In anoþer maner name, y chose was þer to,
 And fiftene þousant men, þis dede forto do,
 And Merlyn, for his ³ quoyntise," þider wente al so.
⁴ Gynemon was þilke kyng of Irlonde.
 þo me tolde hym, þat þis Britones y come were to ys londe,
 Azen hem he wente anon myd ⁵ god power ynowz.
 þo me told him here ernde, he astynte and lowz.
 "No wonder," he seyde, ⁶ þaw Breteyne al day go to gronde,
 "⁷ Wan heo, þat þer inne beþ, suche folcs beþ yfonde.
 "Wo haþ y herd such folye; wer þer be in non ende
 "Stones, þer þat aztes be heo hyder sende?
 "Armeþ zow ⁸ faste now, and wyteþ zowre lond.
 "For ⁹ heo schul not habbe here no ston, wyle ich may
 wolde myn hond.
 Uter and ys companye redi azeyn hem were,
¹⁰ And a strong batail smyte, & þe Yrische to driue þere,
 And wende forþ myd strengþe, þo nomon hem no lette,
 And come to Kylar, þo stones forto fette.

¹ Radde tho the stones *Ar.*
² And that with gret power
 of men, yf eny wolde lette *Ar.*
³ Queynte witt, *Ar.* ⁴ Gwy-
 neman, that was thulke tyme
 kyng *Ar.* ⁵ Gret *pro god in*
Ar. ⁶ Theigh Brutons *Ar.*
⁷ The moste folcs of the
 worlde ofte hii beth y founde.
 Who saw such a folye in to
 the worlde's eynde, Stones

out of Irlond to Brutayn
 seynde? *Ar.* ⁸ Sone y now
Ar. ⁹ Hii ne shul haue the
 leste ston, the while ic welde
 myn hond *Ar.* ¹⁰ So that
 the Irissh men hii ouercome
 there, And wente forth with
 strengthe, that noman hem ne
 lette, To the hulle of Kildar
 the stones forto fette *Ar.*

þo heo sey ¹ þo stones, heo wondred y now
 Of þe werk, þat was so gret, & ² ho yt þider drow.
 “ze zonge men,” quof Merlyn, “cuþeþ now zoure myzte,
 “How ze mow ³ þis stones best to þe ⁴ schip dyzte.
 Heo stode, & bi þogte hem best, & cables fette ynowe,
 And laddres, and leueres, & faste schoue & drowe.
 Ac heo ne myzte come for noþyng to ende ⁵ myd here wille.
 Merlyn ⁶ say þis, and low, and bad hem stonde stille.
 He sette hys gynnes, as he wolde, & ⁷ ys quoyntise dude stille,
 And þe folk myd þo stones þo dude al here wille,
 And lette hem to schippes brynge, & so in to þis londe,
 Ac þer was som enchantery þer to, ich vnderstonde.
 To þe ⁸ downe of Ambres bury ⁹ þe stones y brozt were,
 A zeyn þe fest of ¹⁰ Wytson tyde, as Merlyn gan lere.
 Four hondred zer & four score & aboute þe tenþe zer,
 Aftur ¹¹ þat gon on erþe com, y set þei were þere.
 Alle þe hey men of ¹² þo lond þe kyng lette of sende,
 Erles and barones and knyghtes ¹³ in eche ende,
 Bischopes and abbotes and ¹⁴ oþere þat þere were,
 þat þe fest of Wytson tyde myd hem were þere.”

¹ þis *pro þo in Ar.* ² Who
Ar. ³ Thes *Ar.* ⁴ Shippys
Ar. ⁵ Of hure wille *Ar.*
⁶ Sey al this, *Ar.* ⁷ His
 queyntise caste. The folke of
 the stones tho hadde hure
 wille an haste, And hem to
 shippe gonne bryng, and so
 in to this londe, Ac nought
 with out enchaumentente, as

y vnderstonde *Ar.* ⁸ Dounes
Ar. ⁹ Thes stones *Ar.*
¹⁰ Wittsonday, as Merlyn gan
 hem lere *Ar.* ¹¹ *Lege, cum*
Ar. that God on erthe come
 &c. ¹² The *Ar.* ¹³ By
 euery ende *Ar.* ¹⁴ Othur
 soth y say, That sholde come
 to the kyngus fest a Witt-
 soneday *Ar.*

þe kyng at Wytsonday, þo heo come alle to ys heste,
Sette þe crowne on ys heued, and huld ² noble feste.

² And alle þe foure dayes þe fest ³ he huld there.

⁴ Bischopes also, þat delyuered were,
In honour of þilke stude, þere he ⁵ gef ys þo,

As of ⁶ Euerwyk, & of Walis, & also of oþere mo.

Merlyn with ys chauntement, & myd ys quoyntyse, þer

Sette vp þe stones rygt so, as heo stode in Yrlond er.

þus was Stonehenge þus ⁷ y mad, þat men al day seþ,

In honour of þe noble men, þat þer y buried beþ.

⁸ PASCENCE, Vortigere's sone, ys fader for barud was,
Fley into Germanye ⁹ myd wel hasty pas.

þere he gaderede folc of Saxones y nowe,

For to a wreke hym of hem, þat ys fader slowe.

In þe Norþ ende of þis lond heo by gonne ariue,

And faste slowe and ¹⁰ barnde, and robbode bi lyue.

þat word ¹¹ to owre kyng com, so þat he wende

Myd ys power among hem, & heore prude schende.

Pascence and ys men, ¹² þo ascapede o lyue,

To schippes flowe faste ¹³ agen, ech whyle hem þogte fyue."

¹ A noble *Ar.* ² And fully alle *Ar.* ³ Held he

there. Bysshopryches, that he held, delyuered there were *Ar.*

⁴ *Interea honores, qui possessoribus carebant, domesticis suis largitur, ut eis obsequii sui laborem remuneraret*

Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Yaf hem tho,

⁶ Walis, & Ebracwick, and

othur many mo *Ar.* ⁷ Furst y made, that we al day seith,

Ar. ⁸ Passent, Vortigeris sone, tho his fader forbrend

was, *Ar.* ⁹ With full hasty *Ar.* ¹⁰ Brende, and robbode

swythe blyue *Ar.* ¹¹ To kyng Aurelye come, *Ar.* ¹² That

Ar. ¹³ A ye, hying swyth blyue *Ar.*

A bouthe heo wende by þe se, so þat to Yrlond heo come.
 Gyneman kyng of Yrlond and heo gret conseil nome.
 And þis lond forte schende alle heo swere an oþ.
 For Gyneman was for þe Stonhenge hiderward zet wroþ.
 So þat þe Yrische and heo myd gret power y wys
 Come toward þis lond, and aryuede in Walis.
 In þe town of Sent Dauid heo by leuede and aboute,
 And forto asaile þis lond greyþed here route.
 Kyng Aureli at Wynchestre to gret siknesse drow,
 Gyneman and Pascente wer glad þer of y now.
 A quoynte maistre of þe Saxones (¹ Eope was ys name)
 To Pascence wende ² anon, þat God zeue hym schame.
 “³ Wat woldest,” he seyde, “þilke mon to ys mede zeue fawe,
 “þat þe kyng Aurely brogte of lyf dawe?
 “gef ich mygte,” quof Pascence, “such mon fynde on,
 “A þousant pownd of seluer ich wolde hym zeue anon,
 “And make hym euer vnder me mayster of al my londe,
 “And þat ich hym wolde myd trewþe siker faste on honde.
 þis forward was faste y mad, now couþe þis lufþer man
⁴ Langage of þis lond, as” he were Cristeneman,
⁵ And þe maner of Bruytones, as he hadde among ⁶ hem y go,
 And þe art of lechecraft, al to mucche po.
 His berd he lette schere first, ⁷ and a brod crowne al so,
 And seþþe a monke’s abyt on hym he lette do.

¹ Coppa *Ar.* ² A non,
 God yif hym moch shame *Ar.*
³ “What wolt thou,” he sayne,
 “yiue the to his mede fawe,
 “that wolde kyng Aurelie
 “brynge of lyf dawe? *Ar.*

⁴ The langage of Brutones,
 as *Ar.* ⁵ And all the ma-
 nere of hem, *Ar.* ⁶ Hem
 go, *Ar.* ⁷ And made hym a
 croune also, *Ar.*

And nom with hym spicery, ¹ þat to fysik drow,
 And wende hym to Wynchestre quoynstolliche y now,
 And seyde ² þe kynges, þat he wolde hym to hele brynge.
³ þat folk was sone glad y now for þe ⁴ tyþinge.
 So wysliche he made yt & so wel, þat me leuede hym faste.
 þe kyng in hys ⁵ syde ys herte al vp hym caste.
 He gef hym a luþer drench, & þo he hadde dronke yt so,
 He bed hym lygge & slepe wel, þat yt mygte do bet hym do.
 þe kyng hopede wel ⁶ to hym, and lette hym helie faste,
 And stille was with oute noyse, & lay & slepte ys laste.
 For þe poyson in ys slep þe veynes so ⁷ þorp songte,
⁸ þat it of eode al þat body, & to deþe sone hym brogte.
 þe ⁹ wyle he slep, ¹⁰ þe traytour þo wey awayward nom
 Stilleliche bi halues, þat me nuste wher he bi com.
 Rigȝt aboute þe kynges deþ, in þe firmament an hey
 A sterre, gret and fayr ynow, and swyþe cler, me sey.
¹¹ O cler leom, with oute mo, þer stod fram hym wel pur,
 Y formed as a dragon, as red as þe fuyr.
 Out of þe dragone's mouþ twei leomes þer stode þere;
¹² Grettor tylde euene Est ouer Fraunce, as yt were,

¹ And *pro* that in *Ar.*

² The kyng (that longe hadde be sike) he wolde to hele brynge *Ar.* *Urbem postremo ingressus, obtulit obsequium suum clientibus regis, & gratiam in oculis eorum inuenit. Nihil enim desiderabilius expectabant, quam medicum* Galfr. Mon. ³ The folk *Ar.* ⁴ Tydyng *Ar.* ⁵ Side also, his herte *Ar.* ⁶ On hym, *Ar.* ⁷ Thurgh *Ar.* ⁸ That

all the body hit oueryede, & sone to deth hym broughte *Ar.* ⁹ *Interea nefandus proditor ille, inter unum & alium elapsus, in curia nusquam comparuit* Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ This traytour his wey a weyward nome Al by halues stillelych, me nuste *Ar.* ¹¹ A cler leome fro hure com, bryght so gold pure, *Ar.* ¹² The gryttre *Ar.*

þe oþer hadde sene branches, alle cler ynowe,
 And toward þe Yrische see Westward euene ¹ þei' drowe.
 þo þis sterre was y sey, men ² wondrede y now.
 Uter, þe kyng's broþer, myd ys ost þo drow
 To Walis to þis strange men, to a sayle hem & fygte.
 A drad he was ³ sore y now of þis wonder sygte.
⁴ Merlyn he clepude & aschede anon, how he mygte þer of be?
 Merlyn wep a non so faste, þat deol yt was to se.
 "Alas!" he seyde, "þe deolful harm, þat ys endeles!
 "Alas! ⁵ þat folk of Breyteyne, þat now ys helples!
 "Ded ⁶ he' ys þe noble kyng Aureli þi broþer.
 "Ac þe sterre, þat me yseyþ, bi toþoneþ a noþer.
 "Hye now þou noble duc, þat þe batail were y smyte:
 "For kyng þou worst of Breteyne, & þe ⁷ maistry þou schalt
 gete.
 "For þe sterre bi tokoneþ þe, and þe fur dragon al so.
 "þe leom, ⁸ þat out of ys mouþ ouer France ys y do,
 "þat by tokeneþ a chyld, þat þou schalt bi gete ywys,
 "þat schal wyne France & oþer londes, in þe world such
 mon nys.
 "þe leome, þat tylde Westward, a dogter þat ys,
 "⁹ þat þou schalt bi ge'e, and schal habbe sones ywys.

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² Wondrede
 ther on y nowe *Ar.* ³ Swythe
 sore of *Ar.* ⁴ Of Merlyn he
 axede anon, hough hitt myght
 be *Ar.* ⁵ The folk *Ar.* ⁶ *Deest*
Ar. ⁷ Maistry biyite. The
 bryght sterre bytokneth the,
 and the fury *Ar.* ⁸ That

cometh out of his mouth, *Ar.*
⁹ Thugh shalt biyite of thy
 body, that shal haue sones y
 wis, That kynges of Bru-
 tayne shul here aftur be, Of
 sorwe and of kontak thenne
 me shal y se *Ar.*

"þat

" þat scal, eche aftur oþer, kyng of Breteyne be,
 " Of some oþer al in contek, and þis me schal y se.
 þe noble mon, of wam he spek, þat he ¹ wolde be gete,
 þat was þe kyng Arthure, as ze schul ywyte.
² Uter let al þis be (for he ne leuede yt not anon)
 And wende toward Sent Dauid, to mete with ys fon.
 þe oþer were of hem y war, & ³ garkede hem in here syde,
 And ⁴ lette arme here ost wel, batail forto abyde. Bellum.
 Heo come & smyte þis bataile, & faste slowe to gronde,
 In eyþer syde muche folk in a lute stonde,
 Knyztes and oþer folk, atte laste oure Lord þogte
 On ys Cristene folk, and þe ⁵ maystry hem brogte.
 For þer was Gynemon y slawe, (þe kyng of Yrlonde)
 And Pascence (Vortigere's sone) þat so gret power hade in
 honde,
 And muche of here folk with hem, so þat fowe ⁶ atte nende
 Alyue þer of scapede, þat to schip myzte wende.
 And so ⁷ heo schulde lerne, with Cristenemen to fyzte.
 For our lord wole among hys men euer cuþe ys myzte.
 To Uter of ys broþer deþ þer com werd atte laste.
 Aftur þis batayl he wende to Wynchestre faste.

¹ Sholde biyite, *Ar.* ² U-
 ther, when he hadde hurd al
 this, forth he wende anon
 Toward Seynt Dauidis, to
 mete with his fon *Ar.* *At U-*
ther (in dubio tamen existens,
an verum protulisset Merli-
nus) in hostes, ut cæperat,

progređitur. Advenerat nam-
que prope Meneviam, &c.
Galfr. Mon. ³ Greithede hem
Ar. ⁴ Lete hem army swithe
 well, the bataille to a hyde
Ar. ⁵ Victory *Ar.* ⁶ Atten
 ende *Ar.* ⁷ Hy myghte lerny,
Ar.

¹ Arst was þe kyng y buryed, er he ² mygte" come þere,
 Withinne þe place of þe Stonheng, þat he ³ lette rere.
 For he lette þe stude halwe, for þe gode cors þat þer were,
 And bischopes and worthi men ys body þider bere."

UTER, aftur ys ⁴ broþer deþ, þe crowne to hym nom,
 And þoru þe heye men ⁵ of þis lond fong þis kyndom.
 Of þe dragon ⁶ he vnderstod, þat y seye was on heye.
 And of þat Merlyn hadde ⁷ y seid, of þe sigte þat me seye.
 To riche dragones of gold he lette ⁸ make anon,
⁹ And at þe mynstre of Wynchestre he offerede þat on.
¹⁰ þat oþer he lette bi fore hym bere in batail wan he was.
 Me clepede hym Uterpendragon þer aftur for þis cas,
 þat ¹¹ was, Uter dragone's heued, ¹² &'' þat was to signifie,
 þat Merlyn hym clepude dragon in hys prophecie.
¹³ Otte, (Hengiste sone) þat luþer Saxone,
 And ¹⁴ Eose ys cosyn, heo þogte of treson.
 þe oþ, þat to kyng Auryli heo swere by fore,
 Hem þogte, þo he was ded, þat yt was al for lore.

¹ Ac er was the kyng *Ar.*
² *Deest Ar.* ³ Lett first rere.
 He hadde lete halwy the
 place, for coorses that ther
 were, By therchebisshopp
 Seynt Dobrice, and other
 that were there *Ar.* ⁴ Bro-
 ther is deth, *Ar.* ⁵ Of the
 lond a veng the kyngdom *Ar.*
⁶ He gan by thenche, that

was y seye an hegh *Ar.* ⁸ Y
 seid, thurgh sight that he segh.
 Two ryche *Ar.* ⁸ Makie *Ar.*
⁹ Atte hegh mynstre *Ar.* ¹⁰
 The othur *Ar.* ¹¹ Is, *Ar.*
¹² *Deest Ar.* ¹³ Octa (Hen-
 giste's sone) the luthere *Ar.*
¹⁴ Osa his brother also by-
 thoughte hem on treson *Ar.*

Heo,

Heo þogte, to do þis lond schame, to Germany heo sende
¹ y lome,"

(þat ys lond in Alymaine, ² from wam heo alle come)

Aftur more folk of here kynde, so þat þer come ynowe.

At Scotlond heo by gonne, and faste barnde and slowe,

And so ³ forþ toward Euerwyk þe contre ⁴ a doun þei caste,

And bi segede Euerwik, þo heo þider come, faste.

þe kyng Uter herde" here of, þiderward faste he drowþ.

To gedere heo come, and smite a batail strong y now.

Bellum.

Heo ⁵ smyten & slowe in eyther syde, þat rewþe yt was to se.

Atte laste ⁶ þis Saxones by gonne forto fle,

And ⁷ þis Britones aftur, and slowe to gronde faste;

So þat some of scapode vp monteynes atte laste,

And some in to townes, and yt drow to nygt,

So þat ⁸ heo ne mygt noþer longor y se to fygte.

And þe Britones hem wyþ drow, & þe Saxones hem reste.

Kyng Uter nom ys conseil, ⁹ wat red were beste.

Gorloys, erl of Cornewayl, (þat wysest was y holde,

And old, and mest hadde y seye) ys red first he tolde.

"We mote," he seyde, "be hardy, & stalworþe, & wyse,

"gef we wol habbe oure lyf, and holde oure franchise.

"Wexing euer beþ oure fon bi water and by londe,

"þat, gef we abydeþ longe, we schal hem not at stonde.

¹ Sone, *Ar.* ² Of wam
 hii furst come) *Ar.* ³ Euer
 to ward *Ar.* ⁴ Doun caste,
 And whan hii come to Ebrac-
 wyk by segede the toun faste.
 Whan kyng Uther hurde *Ar.*

⁵ Foughte and *Ar.* ⁶ The
 Saxones *Ar.* ⁷ The Bru-
 tones *Ar.* ⁸ Hii ne myght
 y se no lengor forto fight *Ar.*
⁹ What hym were do beste
Ar.

" Now ¹ he beþ al on ywar, heo wolleþ y swike by daye,
 " þer fore ² y ne rede in no maner þis nede lengor delaye.
 " We schul hem habbe now for noȝt, y ne rede no lengor
 abyde,
 " For he beþ naked & on ywar, ³ & to sprad wyde.
 " þis consel was wel yherd, heo hulde þer to echon :
 Al by nyȝte he wende forþ, and soȝte out here fon.
 Some heo fonde ligge ⁴ slepe, heo demayde hem anon.
⁵ Some hem wolde arme, ac wyle nadde he non.
 So þat heo slow þere a þousant and mo,
 And nome ⁶ Octe and Eose, þat wroȝte al ⁷ þe wo,
 And dude hem at London in pryson, & þat was rewþe sore
 þat heo nadde hem y slawe, for sorw þei dude ȝet more.

Capcio
Octæ.

⁸ **A**T þe fest of Estre þo kyng sende ys sonde,
 þat heo comen alle to London þe hey men of þis londe,
 And þe ⁹ leuedys al so ¹⁰ god," to ys noble fest wyde,
 For he ¹¹ schulde crowne bere, for þe hye tyde.
 Alle þe noble men of þis lond to þe noble fest come,
 And heore wyues & heore doȝtren with hem mony nome.
 þis fest was noble ynow, and ¹² nobliche y do ;
 For mony was þe faire ledy, þat y come was þerto.

¹ Hii beth an vnywar, hii
 wole y swyke *Ar.* ² Y rede
 in no wise this thýng lengour
Ar. ³ And y sprad a wyde
Ar. ⁴ A slepe *Ar.* ⁵ And
 some wolde haue armede hem,
 but tyme hadde the non *Ar.*
⁶ Octa and Osa, *Ar.* ⁷ This

wo, *Ar.* ⁸ At Ester the kyng
 made a feste, & sende a boutte
 his sonde, That to London
 sholde come alle the hegh men
 of the londe, *Ar.* ⁹ Ladyes
Ar. ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.* ¹¹ Wolde
Ar. ¹² Nobelly *Ar.*

Ygerne,

Ygerne, Gorloys wyf, was fairest of echon,
 þat was contasse of Cornewail, ¹ for" so fair nas þer non.
 þe kyng by huld hire faste y now, & ys herte on hire caste,
 And þogte, þay heo were ² wyf, to do folye atte laste.
 He made ³ hire semblant fair y now, to non oþer so gret.
 þe erl ⁴ nas not þer with y payed, þo he yt vnder get.
 Aftur mete he nom ys wyf myd ⁵ stordy med y now,
 And, with oute leue of þe kyng, to ys contrei drow.
 þe kyng sende to hym þo, to by leue al nygt,
 For he moste of gret consel hadde som insygt.
⁶ þat was for nozt. Nolde he nozt þe kyng sende zet ys sonde.
 þat he by leuede at ⁷ ys" parlemente, for nede of þe londe.
⁸ þo kyng was, þo he nolde nozt, anguyssous & wroþ.
 For ⁹ despyte he wolde ¹⁰ a wreke be he swor ys oþ,
 Bute he come to amendement. Ys power atte laste
 He garked, and wende forþ to Cornewail faste.
 Gorloys ys casteles a store al a bout.
 In a strong castel he dude ys wyf, of hire was al ys
 doute.

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² A wif, *Ar.*
³ To hure semblant fair, to
 non *Ar.* ⁴ Was nought a
 paid ther with, tho he *Ar.*
⁵ Stourdy mod *Ar.* ⁶ But
 al was nought. The kyng
 eftsonde sende a yen his sonde
Ar. ⁷ *Deest Ar.* ⁸ The kyng
 was, tho he wolde nought,
Ar. ⁹ That despit *Ar.*
¹⁰ Be a wreke, & that he swor
 his oth. And but he wolde

do his wille, he wolde hym a
 gaste. So that in to Corne-
 waille he greithed his ost
 faste. In a castel of that cost,
 me cluped Tyntagel, The erl
 let putte his wif that stored
 was ful wel. And in anothur
 hym self he was, for he wolde
 nought, Yf cas come hit were
 wonne, bothe to dethe be
 brought *Ar.*

In anoþer hym self he was, for he nolde noȝt,
 ȝef cas come, þat heo were boþe to deþe y broȝt."
 þe castel, þat þe erl inne was, þe kyng by segede faste,
 For ¹ he myȝte ys gynnes for schame to þe oþer caste.
² þe he was þer sene noȝt, and ³ he^l spedde noȝt,
 Igerne þe contesse so muche was in ys þoȝt,
⁴ þat he muste non oþer wyt, ne he ne myȝte for schame
 Telle yt bute a pryue knyȝt, Ulfyn was ys name,
 þat he truste mest to. And þo þe knyȝt herde þis,
 "Syre," he seide, "⁵ y ne can wyte, wat red here of ys.
 "For þe castel ys so strong, þat þe lady ys inne,
 "For ich wene al þe lond ne schulde yt myd strengþe wynnē.
 "For þe se ȝef al aboute, ⁷ bute entre on þer nys,
 "And þat ys vp ⁸ on harde roches, & so narw wei it ys,
 "þat þer may go bote on & on, þat þre men with iune
 "Myȝte sle al þe lond, er heo come þer inne.
 "And noȝt for þan, ȝef Merlyn at þi conseil were,
 "ȝef ⁹ any myȝte, he couþe þe best red þe lere.
 Merlyn was ¹⁰ sone of send, yseid yt was hym ¹¹ sone,
 þat he schulde þe beste red segge, wat were to done.
 Merlyn was sory ynow for þe kyng's folye,
 And napeles, "Sire kyng," he seide, "¹² here mot to maistrie.

¹ F. he ne myȝhte. *Et tamen particula negativa deest etiam in Ar.* ² Tho *Ar.* ³ *Deest Ar.* ⁴ That almost he loste his witt, ac yut he ne dorste for shame Telle hyt but to a pryue *Ar.* ⁵ Y can no red, what vs to don is *Ar.* ⁶ That y wene al this lond hym ne

sholde a wyne *Ar.* ⁷ But on entre ther is, *Ar.* ⁸ An harde roche, & so narw wyis, *Ar.* ⁹ Eny man couth or myȝhte, he wolde the best lere *Ar.* ¹⁰ Fulsone *Ar.* ¹¹ Fulsone, *Ar.* ¹² Her to by houeth maistrie *Ar.*

"þe

“ þe erl hath twey men hym next, ¹ Brygthoel & Jordan.

“ Ich wol ² make þi self, gef þou wolt, þoru art þat y can,

“ ³ Habbe al þo fourme of the erl, as þou were rygt he,

“ And Olfyn as Jordan, and as Brithoel me.

þis art was al ⁴ clene y do, þat al ⁵ changet he were.

Heo þre in þe otheres forme, ⁶ þe selue at yt were.

Ageyn euen ⁷ he wende forþ, ⁸ nuste nomon þat cas.

To þe castel heo come rygt as yt euene was.

þe porter y se ys lord come, & ⁹ ys meste priuey twei,

With god herte he lette ys lord in, & ys men beye.”

þe contas was glad y now, þo hire lord to hire com,

And eyþer oþer in here armes myd gret joye nom.

þo heo to bedde com, þat so longe a two were,

With hem was so gret delyt, þat bitwene hem þere

Bi gete was þe beste body, þat euer was in þis londe,

Kyng Arthure þe noble mon, þat euer worþ vnderstonde.

þo þe kyng's men nuste amorwe, wer he was bi come,

Heo ferde as wodemen, and wende he were ynome.

¹⁰ Heo a saileden þe castel, as yt schulde adoun a non.

Heo, þat with inne were, ¹¹ garkedede hem echon,

And smyte out ¹² in a fole wille, & fogte myd here fon :

So þat þe erl was y slawe, & of ys men mony on,

Occisio
Gorlois.

¹ Bryghtel *Ar.* *Britahel* *Ar.* ⁹ His meste priuees
Galf. Mon. ² The make, if *Ar.* beye, Als hym thought, and
thuw wolt, *Ar.* ³ Haue the let hem yn, & his seriauntz
fourme *Ar.* ⁴ Sone *Ar.* tweye *Ar.* ¹⁰ They assail-
⁵ Changed hii *Ar.* ⁶ Hem self ede the castel egrely, as he
as hit were *Ar.* ⁷ Hii *Ar.* skold down anon *Ar.* ¹¹ Grei-
⁸ Ne wiste no man this cas *Ar.* thed *Ar.* ¹² With a full *Ar.*

And þe castel was y nome, & þe folk to sprad pere,
 zet, þo þei hadde al ydo, heo ne fonde not þe kyng þere.
 þe ¹ tyding to þe ² compas sone was ³ y nome,
 þat hire lord was y slawe, and þe castel y nome.
 Ac ⁴ þo þe messinger ⁵ hym sey þe erl, as hym þogte,
 þat he hadde so foule ⁶ ylow, ful sore hym of þogte.
 þe contasse made some del deol, ⁷ for no soþnesse heo nuste.
 þe kyng, ⁸ for to glade here, bi clupte hire and custe.
 " Dame," he seide, "⁹ no sixt þou wel, þat les yt ys al þis ?
 " Ne wost þou wel ich am olyue ? Ich wole þe segge how it ys.
 " Out of þe castel ¹⁰ stilleliche ych wende al in priuete,
 " þat none of myne men yt ¹¹ nuste, for to speke with þe.
 " And þo heo myste me to day, and nuste wer ich was,
 " ¹² Heo ferden rigt as gydie men, myd wam no red nas,
 " And fogte with þe folk ¹³ with oute, & habbeþ in þis manere
 " ¹⁴ Y lore þe castel & hem selue, ac wel thou wost y am here.

¹ Tydyng *Ar.* ² *L.* contas. *Nam countesse in Ar.* ³ *Re-*
ctius, y come, cum Ar. ⁴ *Sed*
cum regem in specie consulis
juxta eam residere inspexis-
sent [nuncii,] erubescences
admirabantur ipsum, quem in
obsidione interfectum deseru-
erant, ita incolumem præve-
nisse Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Y seigh the
 Erl right, as hym thought, *Ar.*
⁶ Y lowe, sore hit hým of
 thought, *Ar.* ⁷ But yut forsothe
 heo nuste *Ar.* ⁸ Thenne, to
 glady hure, clupte hure ofte &
 kuste *Ar.* ⁹ Ne seist though
 well, that fals hit is al this? Ne

seist though well y am a lyue ?
 Y woll telle hough hit is *Ar.*
Potest tamen ne idem quod now
hic significare, quo sensu plena
distinctione, non interrogandi
nota, est utendum, id quod di-
cendum etiam est de no in tex-
tu, quod idem atque now va-
lere queat. ¹⁰ Priuely *Ar.*
¹¹ Wiste, to speke a word with
 the. And whanne hii faillede
 of me to day. *Ar.* ¹² Hii ferde
 y wot as gidy men, with wham
 no red nas, *Ar.* ¹³ Ther oute,
 and haueth *Ar.* ¹⁴ I lost the
 castel and hem self, but y am
 with the here *Ar.*

" Ac for my castel, þat ys ylore, sory ich am y now,
 " And for myn men, þat þe kyng and ys power slog.
 " Ac ² my power is now to lute, þer fore y drede sore,
 " Leste þe kyng ³ vs nyme here, & sorwe þat we were more.
 " þer fore ich wole, how so yt be, wende azen þe kyng,
 " And make ³ my pays with hym, ar he vs to schame ⁴ vs"
 brynge.

Forþ he wende, & het ys men, ⁵ þat gef þe kyng come,
 þat þei schulde hym þe castel zelde, ar he with strengþe it
 nome.

þo he come toward ys men, ys owne forme he nom,
 And leuede þe erle's fourme, ⁶ & þe kyng Uter by com.
 Sore hym of þogte þe erle's deþ, ac in oþer half he fonde
 Joye in hys herte, for þe contasse of spoushed was vnbonde.
 þo he hadde þat he wolde, and payسد with ys fon,
 To þe contasse he wende azen, me let hym in a non.
 Wat halt it to telle longe? bute heo were seþþe at on,
 In gret loue longe y now, wan yt nolde oþer gon;
 And hadde to gedere þis noble sone, þat in þo world ys pere
 nas,
 þe kyng Arture, and a dogter, Anne hirę name was.

¹ Oure power ys now lyte, <i>Ar.</i> ² Her ynne vs nyme, that were sorwe more <i>Ar.</i> ³ Ferst my pees with hym,	<i>Ar.</i> ⁴ Recte omittit <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ Yf that the <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ And kyng a ye by cam <i>Ar.</i>
--	---

¹ OCTE and Eose, þis luþer Saxones twey,
 In prison were at London, as ich zou tolde, beye.
 Myd here wardeynes þei spekon, so þat þei boþ y wys
 Flowe into ² Germaine, þat in Alimayne ys,
 And grete power gaderede of Saxones þer.
 zet it hadde beter ³ y bo, þat me hadde y slawe hem er.
 In Scotlond heo ariuede, and ⁴ werreden faste,
 And barnde & slow to gronde, & townes a doun caste.
 þe kyng lay þo sore syk, heo were glad for þat cas.
 An erl þer was of Leycetre, Lot ys name was,
 þat ⁵ strong knygt was & god, þe kyng hym by tok ys mygt,
 And þe power of þis lond, ⁶ with þe heþe men to fygte.
 Also ys doxter Anne he gif hym to ⁷ hys^{ll} wyue.
 þis noble ⁸ erl with þe Britones ageyn ys fon wente biliuc,
 And fagt, and slow ⁹ faste, and þe heþene ¹⁰ al so god.
 Ac napeless þe heþene folk faster a zen stod.
 For þe Brutones nolde for prude aftur þe erl do.
 For he nas not kyng, & þer fore þe worse hem ¹¹ com to.
 þo þe tiþing com to þe kyng, þat ¹² heo so feblliche spedde,
 He was so sori and so wroþ, þat he ney awedde.

¹ Octa and Osa, the luthere
 Saxones tweye, *Ar.* ² Ger-
 manie *Ar.* ³ Y be, they hadde
 he queld ere *Ar.* ⁴ Werrede
 swithe faste, *Ar.* ⁵ Stale-
 worth man was & good, the
 kyng toke hym his mygt,
Ar. ⁶ With hethene men *Ar.*
⁷ *Deest Ar.* ⁸ Erl a yenst the

Saxones wende forth as blyue,
Ar. ⁹ Staleworthly, and
Ar. ¹⁰ Also good. For the
 hethene men strengore euer
 with stood. The Brutones
 eke for pruyte nought for the
 Erl do *Ar.* ¹¹ Cam to *Ar.*
¹² Hii *Ar.*

Bi fore hym he lette brynge ys men, & bi gan hem faste blame,
 þat heo for heore prude brogte þis lond to schame.

þider he seide he wolde hym self, þaz he ne mygte on fote, go,
 gef any horsbere wold him bere, to wreke hym of ys fo.

Myd god wille he wende forþ in an horse bere,

¹ And ys folc forþ with hym, þat þe balder for hym were.

þe Saxones were so prowde, þat þe kyng com so,

þat ² vnnep̄ heo wolde² armes on hem do.

For heo seide, it were schame, þat we y armed were.

³ Nys he more þan half ded y lad in a bere ?

þe kyng ⁴ set vp ys herte hye, & ordeyned ys men faste.

þe Saxones ⁵ he asailede, and to gronde caste.

So þat sone dayes hem of ⁶ þogte here prute,

þat heo of þe noble mon þe kyng tolde so ⁷ lute.

For þer was ⁸ Otte y slawe, and ys cosyn Oese al so,

And so yt hadde be beter, þat me hadde er y do.

þe Saxones, þat mygte fle, bi gonne to fle faste.

þus ⁹ þe same dede kyng couþe hem agaste.

“ ¹⁰ Lo,” he seide, “ þei clepude me sam ded kyng some,

“ And zet ich habbe leuer sam ded henu ouercome,

“ þan hol and sond be ouercome ; and leuer al so me ys

“ For to dye myd honour, þan ¹¹ libbe in schame y wys.

Occisio
 Octæ.

¹ The folk, that wende
 forth with hym, the bolder for
 hym were *Ar.* ² Unnethe for
 hure prute hii wolde *Ar.*

³ He is more than *Ar.* ⁴ His
 herte sett an hygh, & ordenyd
 his folk faste *Ar.* ⁵ Hii asail-
 lede, and slough to gronde
 faste *Ar.* ⁶ Thought al hure

gret pruyte, That hii of the
 noble man *Ar.* ⁷ Luyte *Ar.*

⁸ Octa y slawe, and Osa also,
Ar. ⁹ The half dede *Ar.* *Se-*
mimortuus Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ “ Lo
 “ half dede kyng,” he sede,
 “ ye clupeth me somme, Yut
 “ haue y leuer half dede hem
 “ ouercome, *Ar.* ¹¹ Lyue, *Ar.*

¹ þe

¹ þe Saxones ² were þo ouercome, ac heo ne leuede zet nozt
Heore schrewede dede, ac to wroþe hele wer heo to deþe y
brogt.

For heore ost euer wax hem com euer mo and mo.

Boþe bi Est and bi Norþ þei dude ³ muchel wo.

þe kyng wolde agen hem wende, ac he no moste for ys conseil.

For þe ⁴ feblor wel he was for þe oþer trauail.

þe Saxones hem hadde ymad in þis lond ywys

Kynges in þre ⁵ studes, þat al to on y comen ys.

Hengist ⁶ was first kyng of ⁷ Keng, & Elle in Souþsex,

And seþþe last wast Certyk kyng of Westsex.

For he and Kenryk ys sone come vp at garnemouþe,

And seþþe a duk, þat hatte Port, com vp at Portesmowþe.

Yt was as ⁸ in gere of grace þat God was bore, ich wene,

þat Certik com first, four hundred zer & four score & tene.

Kyng he was of West sex, and ys ofspryng al so,

And atte laste þilke kynde al þe oþer wan þer to.

For Port, þike grete duk, com vp here by Souþe,

Me clepuþ ⁹ yt," þer he first com vp, aftur hym Portes-
mowþe.

Primi re-
ges Saxo-
num.

¹ The Saxones tho were
ouercome, that hii by left hit
nought. Hure shrewed herte
hem wrother hele to deth for-
soth brought. fterwar eft
the Saxones ost wax euer mo
and mo *Ar.* ² *Devicti autem*
Saxones, non idcirco à mali-
tia sua destiterunt, sed aqui-

lonares provincias ingressi,
populos incessanter infesta-
bant Galfr. Mon. 3 Gret Ar.

⁴ Feblor he was tho for his
erst travayll *Ar.* ⁵ Stedes,
that come to on now is *Ar.*

⁶ Furst was kyng in Kent,
and Elle *Ar.* ⁷ *Sic.* ⁸ In
the yer *Ar.* ⁹ *Deest Ar.*

þus

þus were ¹ heo" in werre and ² wo ymenged þe Saxones,
Som tyme aboue ³ &" some tyme by neþe, ⁴ here myd þe
Britones.

Ac al aboue ⁵ neuere hii nere ar aftur þe kyng Arture.

⁶ Ac supþe hii wonne al cleue out, as ge solle here aftur hure.

Uter, þe gode kyng, (of ⁷ wan we speke bý vore,)

⁸ Was feble after þat he was in þe hors bere y bore,

þat he moste vor feblesse nede" holde hým stýlle,

⁹ þer vore þe luþer Saxons ¹⁰ so muche adde her wýlle.

¹¹ And gute þo hýy ne myzte hym se, ¹² hýy þogte wyt trayson

In some manere hym brynge of lýue, oþer wyþ þoyson.

Hii sende her feble messagers in pouere monne wede,

þat at doles in þe court her mete myd oþere bede.

Hii aspýed in þe court ouer al of þynges alle,

So þat hyi vnder zete ¹³ an welle, neý þe halle,

Of wat þe kýng ofte dronc. vor he ne dronc in such cas

Lutýl oþer þyng bote þere of, vor þe wadyr so cold was.

Wanne he dronc ekyn wyn, þeramong yt was ýdo.

And me made metes in þe court myd þulke water al so.

¹ Deest Ar. ² In wo men-
ged Ar. ³ Deest Ar. ⁴ A-
mong the Ar. ⁵ Where hii
neuere er after Ar. ⁶ But
after hym hii wonne al cleue,
as ye shul after hure Ar.
⁷ Wham Ar. ⁸ Gan faste for
to feble an horse beere y bore,
So that he moste for feblesse
nedes Ar. ⁹ Ther fore Ar.
¹⁰ To muche Ar. ¹¹ ýut
(omisso and) tho they ne Ar.
¹² Hii thoughte in treson For

to brynge hým to deth with
som maner þoyson. Hii sende
fele messageres in pouere men-
nes wede, Ar. ¹³ A well,
negh the kyng's halle, Of
which the kyng ofte dronc.
For in this ilke cas Litel
othur thýng he dronc, but
water that cold was. Whanne
he dronc also any wyne, ther
on hit was y do, And mete
me made in the court of thulk
welle also Ar.

þo þe traytors yt vnder gete, hii ¹ en venymede wjþ ynne
 þe welle about in eche syde ² myd her luþer gynne.
 þat þe water, þat þerof com, poyson was ³ wel strong.
 þe kyng was sone apoysond, ⁴ þo he þerof dronc,
 An mo þan an hondred of hys men, ar me wyste were of yt com.
 Muche ssame were hii wurþe, þat doþ such ⁵ suyke dom.
 Soþ hym sede Merlyn er, þat he solde þoru puyson deye.
 þe chere men of lond, þo hii ded hym yseye,
 Deol & sorwe hii made ynou, ac þo þer nas oþer red,
 Hii let hym beburye by ys broþer, as he hym sulf bede.
⁶ Atte mynystre of Ambysbure, at Stoneheng ywys.
 Wel agte ⁷ þat he be wurþe stude, þat such sepulture ys.

ARTURE, ⁸ Uter sone, (of wan we tolde by uore,)
 Ye abbyth y hurd hou he was bygete & ybore.
 þo þys kyng was þus ded, þe heye men alle come
 Of þe lond to ⁹ Cylýcestre, and conseyl þerof nome
 Vor to make hem a kyng. ¹⁰ Vor nede hom drof þerto.
 Vor the Saxons wuste, þat þe kyng was ded so,

¹ *Fontem namque aggressi sunt nephandi proditores, ipsa sumque affecerunt veneno, ita ut manans aqua tota corrumpetur* Galfr. Mon. ² With hure enuynmouse gynne *Ar.* ³ Full *Ar.* ⁴ Whan he *Ar.* ⁵ Swikeldom. So hym seyde Merlyn er he sholde thurgh poyson deye. The hegh men of the lond, tho hii his deth yseye, *Ar.* ⁶ By side the toun

of Ambresbury, at Stonhenge y wis *Ar.* ⁷ That be a worthi stede, ther such sepulture is *Ar.* ⁸ Uthere's sone, (of wham) *Ar.* ⁹ Cilchestre *Ar.* ¹⁰ *Urgebat enim eos necessitas, quia, audito predicti regis obitu, Saxones concives suos ex Germania invitaverant, & duce Colgrino ipsos exterminare nitebantur* Galfr. Mon.

Hii sende uorthe to Alymayne after more poer blyue,
 And þogte þys Brutons al clene of londe dryue.
 So þat hii adde ýwonne al clene þat Norþ londe,
 Fram Homber to Cataney's, & adde al in her honde.
 Artur was þo zong mon of vyftene zere vnneþe,
 And zut al þat londe made ¹ hym, after ys fader's deþe,
 And ² began suon eke er such man vorto be,
 þat menessolde in none londe ys per nour ýse.
 So large he was & so hende, & ³ al" so de bonere;
 So hardy and so gentyl, and of so vayr manere.
⁴ þo so muche folc to hym come, ⁵ of kynztys zong & olde,
 þat he ⁶ hadde nozt wel ware wyth such meyne up to holde.
 Ac ⁷ ys herte was euere god, zong þey he were,
⁸ Vor he þogte of þe Saxons ys spence vp arere.
 He býgan þo wel sonè to arere ýs baner.
 Vor ys prowess he adde sone gret folc and poer.
 He wende toward Euerwyk ⁹ myd vayr ¹⁰ copanye ý nou.
 þo þe Saxons hyt vnder zete, þat he þuderward drou,
 Of Scottes, and of Pýcars, and of hym sulue hii nome,
 Gret poer ý nou and strong, and azen hym come.

¹ *Subintellige*, kyng. ²
 Thenne bygan such a man
 to be, That me myghte in
 non londe no whar his per se
Ar. ³ *Deest Ar.* ⁴ And so
Ar. ⁵ Of yonge and of olde,
Ar. ⁶ Hadde vnnethe whar-
 with such a meyne holde *Ar.*
⁷ *Arthurus ergo, quia in illo*

*probitas largitatem comitaba-
 tur, statuit Saxones inquietare,
 ut eorum opibus, quæ ei fa-
 mulabatur, ditaret familiam*
Galfr. Mon. ⁸ And euere he
 thoghte of the Saxones his dis-
 penses rere *Ar.* ⁹ With gret
 power y nozh *Ar.* ¹⁰ *Sic.*

¹ þer was slagt in eyþer half, none mercy þer nas.
 Ac kyng Arture atte laste (as God wolde) aboue was,
 And sywede into Euerwýk ² Colgrym her cheuenteyn,
 And hym, þo he was wyþynne, byseged ³ myd al ýs maný.
 Baldulf, Colgryme's broþer, syx þousend men myd him nom,
 And, ýs broþer vorto help, toward Euerwýk com.
⁴ So he was fram Euerwyk aboute ⁵ an ten myle,
 He ⁶ at stunte, & þogte, þat he wolde myd gyle
 Up þe kyng Arture come anonywar by nygte,
 And so him and al ýs fole ssende, zyf he mytte.
 þe kyng was ⁷ þerof ýwar, he þogte to do bote.
 Myd sýx hondred kynztes, & ⁸ þre þousend men ⁹ auote,
 Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, agen hym he sende,
¹⁰ þat agen hym come anonyware, by aweý þat he wende,
 And slou and vere woundedede, and monye brogte to deþe,
 So þat þýs ¹¹ Baldulf of scapede alýue vnneþe.
 þe wýle ¹² þat" þe kyng Arture biseged Euerwyk,
 Me tolde hym of a gret duc, ¹³ þat het Theldryk,
 þat out of Alemaýne com ¹⁴ in to Scotlonde so
¹⁵ Myd syx hondred syppuol kynztys, & al þe atyl þer to.

¹ Ther was slaughter gret
 y nogh, and mercy lite ther
 was *Ar.* ² Colgryn *Ar.*
 With his myght and mayn.
 Bathulf Colgryne's brother,
Ar. ⁴ And tho he was *Ar.*
⁵ A *Ar.* ⁶ Astynte, *Ar.* ⁷ Her
 of y war, and thoghte her of
 do bote. With six *Ar.* ⁸ Foure
Ar. Sed ut Codex noster Har-
leyanus in Galfr. Mon. ⁹ A fote,

Ar. ¹⁰ An vn ywar to falle
 on hym, by weye as hii wende.
 The Erl brak vp his bussh-
 ment, & broghte manyon to
 dethe *Ar.* ¹¹ Ilke Bathulf
 ascapede a lyue vnnethe *Ar.*
¹² *Deest Ar.* ¹³ Me clupede
 Cheldryk, *Ar.* ¹⁴ To Scot-
 londe tho *Ar.* ¹⁵ With VI.
 hundred shupfull of men, and
 hure atyr ther to. That was
 power

þere was so gret poyr in to an londe y lad.

þo þe kyngy's conseyl wuste þys, hyt was som dele adrad.

þe kyng Arture hii radde anon, to London vorte wende,

To nyne þer ys conseyl, wuch were best gende,

Leste such poer come vp hym, and hym ssende.

þe kyng dude aftur her rede, and to Londone wende.

þere he hulde ys Parlement, wat were best to done.

¹ þo ² þat he and ys conseyl at one red were sone.

³ þo þat to þe lasse Brutayne þe kyng sone sende

To Howwel, kyng of þe lond, þat he to hym wende

To helpe hym in such nede, and that hym vnderstode

þat kunde yt wolde þat he dude, vor hii were of one blode.

þe kyng Arture's syster's sone þys kyng Howwel was,

⁴ And þe kyngys sone of lasse Brytayne, & none nerer kunde
þer nas.

þo þe messenger wyþ þe tydýng to kyng Howwel com,

Hys conseyl wel hastelyche in such nede he nome,

Vor to helpe ys ⁵ neuu, and ys kynedom.

⁶ Myd vyftene þousend kyngtes into þys londe he com.

power wonder gret to on londe y ladde. Tho the kyng hurde this, he was somdel a dradde. The kyng's counsail radde hym a non, to London forto wende, To counsaile hogh he myght best his enemyes a shende *Ar.*

¹So that *Ar.* ²*Communitandem assensu illato, mittuntur Armorican nuncii ad regem*

Hoëlum, qui ei calamitatem Britannie notificarent. Erat autem Hoëlus filius sororis Arthuri, ex Budicio, rege Armorieorum Britonum, generatus Galfr. Mon. ³To the lasse Brutayne forto sende sone. *Ar.* ⁴The kynredene of hem no ferther was *Ar.* ⁵Kynnesman, *Ar.* ⁶With XV. thousand of men to this *Ar.*

At

At Souphamtone ¹ he com vp, & þo hyi to gadere come
 þys tueye kyngys hii custe hem, & hii clupte hem ylome.
 þo hii adde her folc y set, ² as rygt was in such cas,
 Vorþward toward Lyncolne hii wende ³ myd god pas.
 þere hii come & mette hym, & strong batayle smyte þere,
 So þat moo þan sýx þousend of þe Saxon aslawe were,
 Wat aslawe wat adrent, so þat atte laste,
 þo ⁴ hii ne seye oþer won, hii gonne to fle vaste
 In to a wode þer bý syde: and ⁵ þo hii þer in come,
 Hem þogte hii were sykere ynou, & toke þe lasse gome.
 þe kyng sýwede ⁶ after, & býseged hem aboute.
⁷ Ac'' among þe ⁸ tren hii wuste hem, þat hii nadde nodoute."
 þo þe kyng Arture ýsey, þat hii nolde out come,
 A boute þe wode he let fulle þe grete tren sone,
 And leyde ech vpe oþer aboute in ech ende,
 þat yt was, as yt were, awal þat hii ne solde out wende.
 þre ⁹ dawes & þre nygt mete les hii wuste hem so,
 þat hii nuste hou on take, ne wat vor hunger do.
 þe kyng'' Arture hii býsozte mercý ¹⁰ atte ende,
 þat he granted hem in pes out of ýs londe wende,

¹ This kynges tweýne furst
 to gedre come. Aither othur
 clippe gan, and kuste to
 gedre y lome *Ar.* ² As hit
 fel in such *Ar.* ³ A ful good
 pas. The Brutones and the
 Saxones smýte a gret ba-
 taille there, So that sixty
 thousand [*sed, sex milia in*
Galfr. Mon.] Saxones ther y
 slawe were, And fele ther of

were a dreýnt, so *Ar.* ⁴ Hii
 seygh non othur won, *Ar.* ⁵
 Whenne *Ar.* ⁶ After faste, and
Ar. ⁷ *Deest Ar.* ⁸ Trees hii
 kepte hem longe, for al Ar-
 thure's route *Ar.* ⁹ Dayes
 & thre nyght hii were y kepte
 so, That hii nuste for hungre
 What hii myghte do. Of
 kyng *Ar.* ¹⁰ Atten ende, *Ar.*

An hii granted hym al her god, þat hii hyder ladde,
 Gold and seluer and tresour, al clene þat hii adde.
 Hii ¹ býhete hym eke ech ger, to bere hym truage
 Out of her londe, and þerto ² take hym god ostage.
 þe kyng þoru ys conseyl ³ encented wel her to,
 And god ostage of nom, þe truage vor to do;
 And atel al her god, and let him al bar wende.
 And gut hym of þogte sone, þat he was hem so hende.
 Myd her gold & seluer & myd her tresour he myzte
 Susteyný gode wýle hys ost vorto fygte.
 Ac gut þys lufere false men, in þe see þo hii come,
 Turnede azen to suykedome, and anoþer red nome.
 Atte hauene of Tottenas hii gonne ⁴ eft arýue,
 And dude hym alond, & rewede in Deuenyssyre blyue.
 And so uorþ in Somersete, ⁵ and^u muche wo gonne do
 Al anone to Seuerne, and to Baþe ⁶ so,
 And bysegede þe ⁷ thoun, ac wyt þoute hii were.
 Vor þe kyng byuore was hii bygonne her werre þere.
 Vor þe kyng was toward Scotlond, & awreke hym þogte
 Of Scottes and of Pigars, þat euer vnele hym wrogte.

¹ *Promiserunt quoque, se duros ei tributum ex Germania, obsidesque inde mansuros* Galfr. Mon. ² Make hym good *Ar.* ³ Assentede ther to, And ostage of hem nam truage to do. At helde hem & al hure good, & let hem bar wende *Ar.* ⁴ Up arýue, And come a londe, & robbede in Deuernesshire as blyue *Ar.*

⁵ *Deest Ar.* ⁶ Also, *Ar.* ⁷ Toun, but out hii holde were. The kyng fer by Northe was forto werry there. Of Scottes & of Picardz a wreke hym he thoghte, That euermore to his lond muche shame wroghte. The tydyngge to hym com of thes Saxones tho, He wiste neuere hoder turne so wo was hym tho. Of Scottes *Ar.*

þo þe tydȳng to hȳm come of þe Saxons ¹ we,
 He muste in weþer ende turne, so wol he was of wo.
 Of þe Scottes² he wolde awreke be, ȝȳf tȳme hym þerto ȝeue,
 Ac he ³ nolde vor non þyng þe Saxons byleue.
³ Howwel, ys scȳster sone, kȳng of þe oþer Brutayne,
 Mest in ȳs herte was, vor angȳsse to playne,
 (Vor he laȳ bynore sȳk) þat he solde bý leue hym þere,
 Laste þe Scottes hym dude ssame, oþer þat he ded were.
 He bylenȳd hȳm poer ȳnou, and toward Somersete
 Wende toward þe Saxons, vor þat nolde he noȝt lete."
 þo he come to Somersete, and þe Saxons seȳ,
 He houede, & spec to ȳs men þes wordes al an hey :
 " Vor ⁴ þȳs luþer Saxons ⁵ abbyt gret dedeȳn
 " Vorto holde me treuþe, ȝȳf ȳch abbe enȳ maȳn,
 " Ich chȳlle treuþe holde to Jhesu Crist treuly (ȝȳf ȳch maȳ)
 " And þat blod of ȳs kunde floc awreke ȝut to day."
 " Armeþ ȝou nou hastelȳche, armeþ ȝou anon,
 " Vor we ssole to day ⁶ mȳd God help ouercome vr fon.

¹ We *idem est quod Anglo-Sax.* þa *sive* pæ, i. e. wo vel sorrow. *Sed þo (ut reor) est reponendum è Cod. Ar. ut prius* þo, when, *posterius* then *signet.* ² Wolde for no thyng *Ar.* ³ But for Howel, his suster sone, kyng of lasse Brutayne, At Alclud sore sik lay, he was in gret payne, And that he moste nedely byleue hym tho there, Leste the Scottes dude hym shame, or elles that he dede were. He bileft a power

with hȳm, and toward Somersete He wende a yen the Saxones, he wolde hit noȝt for lete *Ar.* ⁴ These *Ar.* ⁵ Haueth of vs dedeȳne, And haueth thus y broke hure oth, yf y haue mȳght and mayne, I make a vogh to Jhesu Christ, (to holde, ȳf y may,) The blood, that they haueth shad, to venge yut to day *Ar.* ⁶ Thurgh Gode's help ouercome oure fon. The kȳng at the gynyngge let an hange anon

Ac þe kynnng atte bygynnyg let hang echon
 Her ostages vor þe treson, he ne byleuede nozt on.
 þo þys ¹ gode^{ll} folc zare was * in to batayle ryde,
 Seyn Dubryc, þe archebyssop of Carleon, gan abyde,
 And wende 3 vp a lute hul amydde þys companye :
 “ ze Crystýne men,” he seyde, “ of ⁴ so^{ll} noble seynore,
 “ þat beþ Gode's owe lymys, þoru zoure Crystendom,
 “ ⁵ þenc he on God, þat vor vs deýde, & on ⁶ þys kýnedom.
 “ Fyztel vor zure ⁷ kunde, and defendel zoure ryzte.
 “ þenchel þe nede of þe londe, & of ⁸ vr louerd^{ll} myzte.
 “ And zyf eny of zou ys aslawe here in þys fyzte
 “ To sauý ⁹ þe lond folc vor þe londe's rýzte,
 “ He syweþ purlyche God, þat zef ys owe lyf here,
 “ To sauý vs synneol men fram þe deuele's poer.
 “ And wo so here ys aslawe, ys del þym sal be
 “ In ¹⁰ lesnesse of al ys synnys, & ys soule ssalle fle
 “ And be ybrozt byuore God, ar ¹¹ þat body be cold.
 He ¹² asouled al þys folc, þo he adde al þys ý told.
¹³ þat folc þoru ys prechyng so god wylle nom þere,
¹⁴ þat hem þogte echewýle fyue, in bataýle ar hii were.

anon Alle hure ostages, he leste a lyue non *Ar.*

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² In bataille for to ryde, Therchebisshop Dobryght bade hem alle abyde, *Ar.* ³ Upon a litel hulle among this *Ar.* ⁴ *Deest Ar.* ⁵ Thenketh on God, *Ar.* ⁶ His *Ar. sed rectius* þys. ⁷ Kynde blod, and also for your ryght *Ar.* ⁸ Our Lorde's *Ar.* ⁹ The Christene fey,

and his Lorde's ryght, he syweth purly God, that yaf *Ar.* ¹⁰ Foryieuenge *Ar.* ¹¹ The body *Ar.* ¹² Asoil-ede *Ar.* ¹³ The people *Ar.* ¹⁴ That euery while hem thoughte ten, er hii were there. The kyng thanne let arme hym self in hauberk noble & riche. An helm of gold vpon his hed, nowher non hittliche *Ar.*

þe ¹ kynng was aboue yarmed wyþ haubert noble & rýche,
Wyþ helm of gold on ys heued, (nas nour hym ýlyche)
þe fourme of a dragon þeron ² was ycast.

Hys sseld, þat het Prydwen, was þanne ý longe wast
About ys ssoldren, and þeron ý peynt was and ý wort
þe ýmage of our Lady, inwan was al ys þogt.

Mýd ýs suerd he was ýgurd, þat ³ so^{ll} strong was & kene,
Calýbourne yt was ýcluped, ⁴ nas nour no such yc wene.

In ys rýgt hond ýs lance he nom, þat ycluped was Ron,
Long & gret ⁵ & strong ynou, hym ne mýzte atsytte non.

He þogte al ⁶ on Jhesu Criste, and ýs men echon,
Upe þe doune aboue Baþe hii ⁷ mytte mýd her fon.

Hii smýte bataýle strong ý nou, þat al long day ýlaste.

þe Saxons in her syde stode euere azen vaste.

Mýche folk þer was ýnon aslawe in eýþer syde.

þo þe nygt vp hem come, þat hii ne mygte no leng abyde,

⁸ Up an toret of an ⁹ herre hulle þe Saxons wende þere,
þat þe heyte hulle to hym was a castel, as yt were.

Amorage, þo yt day was, adoun eft hii alygte,

And in bataýle strong ynou býgonne ef sone to fygte,

¹ *Ipse vero Arthurus, lorica, tantorege digna, indutus, auream galeam, simulachro draconis insculptam, capiti adaptat* Galfr. Mon. ² Was his crest. His shild, that het Pridewen, aboute his nekke he kest. A cros ther on was peynt, and on a corner An ymage of oure Lady on that sheld he ber. With his sweord *Ar.* ³ *Deest*

Ar. ⁴ Perlees as y wene *Ar.* ⁵ And poynted wel, myght hit of sitte non *Ar.* ⁶ In *Ar.* ⁷ Mette with *Ar.* ⁸ Up the cop of an hull the Saxones wende there, For to be refuyt to hem, and castel, as hit were. A morwe as sone as hit was day, doun hii a light, *Ar.* ⁹ *L.* heyte.

And

And slowe vaste in eyþer half, þat reuþe yt was ynou.
 þo þe kyng Arture y seý, þat me so vaste ys men slou,
 Hys herte he gan vp arere, þat he nadde þe maýstrýe,
 And dude ys wýlle ¹ al to God, & on ys moder Marie,
 And Calýbourne, ys gode suerd, ² mýd gode earnest adrou,
 And smot aboute ³ in euþer syde to grounde & hard ynou,
 And four hondred men, ar he reste, ys owe honde he slou,
 An syxtý and ten al so, þe asaut was somdel tou.
 And þer to nadde he oþer help, bote God & Seynte Marie,
 An Calýbourne ys gode suerd, to do suche maýstrýe.
 þo ys men ýseýe þýs, after vaste hii drowe,
 And to grounde aboute smýte, & þe Saxons vaste slowe.
 Colgrým, þat her maýster was, and ⁴ Baldulf, ys broþer,
 Aslawe were at þulke asaut, & also moný ⁵ a noþer.
 Vor moný þousend þere were aslawe, & Teldryc atte laste,
 Hys felawes þo he seý aslawe, býgan to fle vaste."
 þo þýs batayle was ýdo, to þe kyng com message,
 þat þe Scottes & ⁶ Pýgars dude hým gret out rage,
⁷ And syre Howwel ys neuue, kyng of þe oþer Brutannýe,
⁸ þat sýk ⁹ day, as ých seyde er, byseged mýd al her mayne

¹ Al on God, and his moder *Ar.* ² With ernyst vp he drogh, *Ar.* ³ In aither half to grounde and faste slogh. Foure hundred vnder his hond with his sweord gon deýe, Thurgh the help of our Lord and his moder Marie. The kynges men seigh this, & after hym faste drogh, *Ar.*

⁴ Bathulf *Ar.* ⁵ Anothur. Than thes men thus were slawe, Cheldrik atte laste, Tho he segh non other won, gan to fle faste *Ar.* ⁶ Picardes *Ar.* ⁷ And that Howel *Ar.* ⁸ That sik was, as I seyde er, by seged with hure mayne *Ar.* ⁹ *Lege*, lay.

þo þe kyng hurde þys, hym longede þuder sore,
¹ He ne mygte þer leng abyde, þe Saxons to sywe more.
 Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, he ² byleuede þere
³ Myd ten þousend men ⁴ vorto sywe hem, þat of scaped were.
 The erl sywyde ⁵ myd ys men þe Saxons vaste ynou,
 And strong batayle smot, and ⁶ Teldryc þe prince slou,
 And ys compaynye þe mestedel, bote auewe atte nende
 Mercy hym cryde, þat hii moste in to her owe lond wende,
 And suore ⁷ & toke hym ostage, þat hii ne ssolde neuere ywys
 Thys lond ⁸ eft asayly, ne ssame don amys.
 þo þat þe folc of Saxons ⁹ namore hýdyr ¹⁰ ne" come,
 þe wyle þe kyng Arture ¹¹ wuste þys kynedome.
 Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, þo he adde ydo al þys,
 To þe kyng ys louerd wende, to Scotlond ywys.
 þe kyng adde ¹² er" among þe Scottes ýsturyd hym vol wel,
¹³ And delyuered of hym, or he come, ys neuue syre Howwel,
 And ýslawe of hem monyon, so þat ¹⁴ in an yle
 Hii ¹⁵ of scapede atte laste ¹⁶ by uore mony amyle,
¹⁷ þet water geþ al aboute, and þer ynne eke beþ
¹⁸ Sýxtý heye roches, as men þere ýseþ.

¹ Ne myghte he ther no lengor byde, the Saxones to werry more *Ar.* ² By lefte *Ar.* ³ With *Ar.* ⁴ To folwe hem, that a scaped were *Ar.* ⁵ With *Ar.* ⁶ Cheldrik *Ar.* ⁷ And ostages yeue, hii sholde neuere y wis *Ar.* ⁸ A saily more, ne shame, ne do a mys. So that *Ar.* ⁹ No more

Ar. ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.* ¹¹ *W ar. dede Ar.* ¹² *Deest Ar.* ¹³ And remewed the sege, er he come, fro his cosyn Howel, *Ar.* ¹⁴ In to an *Ar.* ¹⁵ A scapede *Ar.* ¹⁶ Byfore hym many *Ar.* ¹⁷ The water by goth hit al *Ar.* ¹⁸ *Lx. roches* in that ile, ho that cometh ther seth *Ar.*

þer ynne noman ne wonyþ, ac in eche roche þer ys
 In tyme of zere an ¹erne's nest, þat hii bredeþ in ýwys.
 Ech ys in a roche hym sulf, vor hii ne mowe nozt ne be.
 Vor hem býhoueþ mucho mete, & hii ne mowe nozt wel fle
 Vor feblesse of her brode, ac wan her bryddys rýpe beþ,
 þere hii fyndeþ more mete, in londes aboute hii fleþ.
 þe kyng ²býlay þýs Scottes ³þere mýd al wo,
 þat þer deýde of hem vor hunger a þousend and mo.
 And zut nolde þe ssrewen to none pes go.
 Gyllam, kyng of ⁴her londe, to hem wende þo
 Wyth gret poer in þe water, to helpe hym in þýs cas.¹¹
 þo kyng Arture ýt wuste, prest azen hem he was
 And slou of hem to grounde, so þat hii gonne with drawe,
 And hii, þat myzte com azen, alýue were wel vawe.
 þo þe kyng hem adde afayted so, þat hyi ne kepte nanmore
 hym mete,
 zut he þogte asaýtý þe Scottes, ar he hem lete.
 He býsette hem vaste ynou, so þat atte laste þere
 þe býssopes and oþer prelats, þat of londe were,
⁵Some with grete processyon in gret anguyssse and fere
 Wepýnde býuore þe kýng, & her relykes mýd hem bere,

¹ Egle's *Ar.* *At in marg.*
¹ Isles of Ernes *ab ead. ma-*
nu, licet adjecerit manus admo-
dum recens, or Isles of Eagles.
Et quidem voci Eagles adsti-
pulatur Galfr. Mon. ² Bisegede
Ar. ³ Ther and dude hem
 mucho wo, So that of hem
 for hunger deide a thousand

& wel mo. And yit wolde
 nocht the sherewes the
 kyng's wille do. The kyng
 of Irlond Gwillamour to
 Scotlond com that while
 With gret power by water,
 to helpe hem in this Ile *Ar,*
⁴ *L.* Irlonde. ⁵ *L.* come
cum Ar.

And oþer holý chýrche þýnges ¹ bare vorþe echon.
 Hýý ² welle alle adoun eke býuore þe kyng anon,
 And bed hým, vor ýs suete loue, þat deýde on þe rode,
 þat he hadde reuþe of hem, & of ³ ýs" soule vnderstode.
⁴ Wanne he adde þer býuore of hem ýslawe ý nowe,
⁵ þat he soffrede þulke lybbe, þat he follýche alle ne slowe;
 And þat he som hurne of þe londe grauntede hem þere,
 War ynne hii leuede, & euermo seruage hým bere.
 þe kyng, vor pýte ⁶ herof, býgan to wepe sore,
 And nom of hem sykernesse, þat hii ne solde mýs do nanmore,
 And graunted hem ⁷ annende lond, to wonýe ynne in seruage,
 To bere ⁸ þerof hým and ýs eueremor truage.
 Nou ⁹ were þer myd hým þre men, (þat of rygte kunde come
 Of kýnges of þulke lond, ¹⁰ vorte Saxons hem bynome)
 Auncel, and Vryan, and Lot þe þrydde was,
 þat spousede þe kýnge's ¹¹ suster, (ge abbýþ ýhurd þat cas,)
 And adde bý hýre tueýe sones, syre Wawen þe hende,
 þe oþer het Mødred, þat þe kyng bytraýde ¹² atte nende.

¹ *Lege, bare votte, siue, ut in Ar. barfot. Nam nudis pedibus in Galfr. Mon.* ² *Felle Ar.* ³ *Deest Ar.* ⁴ *And suth he Ar.* ⁵ *A fewe, that leste, hii prayde hym saue, and holde hem al his owe. And that som heorne of the lond he wolde hem graunte there, Wher inne hii myghte lyue, and euere aftur truage hym bere Ar.* ⁶ *Hadde reuthe, he segh hem wepe so sore Ar.* *aliter atque Galfr. Mon.* ⁷ *An*

ende of lond, to lyue inne in seruage, Ar. ⁸ *Ther fore hym Ar.* ⁹ *Aderant ibi tres fratres, regali prosapia orti, Loth videlicet, atque Urianus, nec non Auguselus, qui antequam Saxones prævaluissent principatum illarum partium habuerant Galfr. Mon.* ¹⁰ *Fort Saxones it hem by nome) Aguisel, & Urien, and Loth Ar.* ¹¹ *Anne addit Ar.* ¹² *After atten ende Ar.*

þe kyng Arture þys þre men kynges made þere
¹ Ech of ȝs rygte ertage, as her elderne were.
² Auncel kyng of pur Scotland, and ³ Vryan ȝs broþer
⁴ Kyng of lond of Murȝfycens, vor he was ner þen anoþer,
 Of þe contreye of ⁵ Ledeneseye Lot he made kyng,
⁶ And of al contreye þat þerto vel, & þat was muche þyng.
 þo he adde al þys lond ȝbrogt and Scotlond al so
 Al clene in rygte to ȝs wylle, anoþer he moste do.
 He spousede a noble wȳf ⁷ Guerwar her name was
 Of þe heȳe kunne of Rome, no vayror womman nas.

AS sone as Somer come, to Yrlond he gan wende,
 Vor to afaytȳ þat lond, ⁸ & to wynne ech ende.
 Gyllam, kyng of lond, ar he þuder com,
 Volc, as ȳt were wyþoute noumbre, agen hym he nom.
 Hii com ⁹ & ȳmette hem sone, & gret batayle hii smȳte,
 Ac þe kyng Arture was aboue, as me may wel ȳwyte.
 And þe kyng Gyllam was ȳnome, and so al þat lond
¹⁰ By certey conuenant was in kyng Arture's hond.
¹¹ Fram ¹² þan he wende sone to þe lond of Ys lond,
 And wan hȳt al clene to hȳm, and al þat he wond."

¹ Euery in his heritage
Ar. ² Anguissel *Ar.* ³ V-
 rien *Ar.* ⁴ Kyng he made of
 Moreff, for he was ner than
 othur, *Ar.* ⁵ Lioness Loth he
Ar. ⁶ With al the porte-
 naunce ther to, and that was
 gret a [*l.* a gret] thing *Ar.*
⁷ Gunnore *Ar.* ⁸ And wynne
 in euery ende. Gwillamour,

kyng of that lond, *Ar.* ⁹ And
 mette with hem sone, & gret
 bataille smyte, *Ar.* ¹⁰ By a-
 cordement *Ar.* ¹¹ *Hæc duo*
carmina omittit Ar. ¹² *Subju-*
gatis itaque totius Hybernæ
partibus, classem suam direxit
in Yslandiam, eamque debel-
lato sibi populo subjugavit
 Galfr. Mon.

¹ So ² such tythynge aboute com, as ech sende oþer sonde,
 þat so noble man he was, þat ne mygte no lond at stonde,
 Doldam wende anon to hym, þat was kyng of Godlonde,
 And ³ Gumýas, kyng of Orcadas, ys grace vorto fonde,
 And býcome ys men, & býhete hym, to bere hym truage
 Eche ȝer, and holde of hym and of hys in seruage.
⁴ Of þys Brytanye he was þo kyng, & adde also Scotlonde,
 And ys londe and Orcadas vnder hym, and yr londe.
 þo wynter was al ýdo, in to þys londe he wende,
 To brynge þys londe in god pes, and þe lawes amende.
 Tuelf ȝer he býleuede þo here wyth nobleye y nou,
 And ⁵ hexte men of mony londes aboute hym vaste drou.
⁶ And býgan to astrengþý ys court, & to eche ys maynye;
 And myd so gret plente holde ys hous, & myd so gret cortesyē,
 þat me ne mygte ⁷ of so noble los man neuere vnderstonde.
 And þat þer ⁸ nas þere aboute ⁹ kýngt in none lond,
 þat ¹⁰ me tolde of ený þýng, bote he of sýwte were
 Of þe kyng Arture's hous, oþer som sýgne ¹¹ þer of' bere,
 Of robes oþer of armes, & þe god mon was so hende,
 þat he ¹² aueng vawe echon, þat to hym wolde wende.

¹ Kynges a boutē ech to o-
 ther sende thanne hure sonde,
 Of the dedes that he dude,
 non myght hym a stonde.
 Doldyn *Ar.* ² *Exinde divul-*
gato per ceteras insulas ru-
more, quod ei nulla provincia
resistere poterat, Doldanius,
rex Gotlandiæ, & Gunvasius,
rex Orcadum, ultro venere,
promissoque vectigali subjec-
tionem fecerunt Galfr. Mon.

³ Gwýnas *Ar.* ⁴ Thanne was he
 of Brutayne kyng, & hadde al
 Scotlonde, Godlonde and Or-
 chadas vnder hym, and Irlonde
Ar. ⁵ Beste *Ar.* ⁶ He gan to
 strengthi his lond, & encreste
 his mayny; *Ar.* ⁷ Of such a
 los no man vnderstonde *Ar.*
⁸ Was *Ar.* ⁹ Knyght *Ar.*
¹⁰ Men *Ar.* ¹¹ *Desunt Ar.*
¹² Faire vnderfenge alle, that
 to hym *Ar.*

Bote

Bote to segge ssortlyche, ¹ nas ver né ner,
 Of prowesse ² ne of cortesyē, in þe worl ys per,
 Hys los sprong so wyde sone of ys largesse,
 Of strengþe and of corteysye, and of ys prowesse,
 To þe verrost ende of þe world, þat such man nas nour non.
 So þat oþer grete kыnges douted hym echon
 Bygēde see in eche stude, and dradde ver and ner,
 þat he come and by nome her londes, oþer her poer.
³ Hii bygonne her heye tounes strengþy vaste aboute,
 Her castles & storys, þat hii mygte be ynne in doute.
 þo þys gode tydýng com to þys noble kыng Arture,
 Myd god herte he wolde such tydýng yhure.
 He þogte come by hem, & brynge hem somme to lure,
 And to ynnne gut al Europe, ȝyf he mygte dure.
 þe þrydde del of al þe world Europe yclýped ys,
⁴ þat tylþ fram ver bygonde Rome to þe West worle's ende
 ywys.

Hym þogte he adde yrest ynou, ⁵ no leng he nolde abyde.
 Hys poer he let sumny, þat ysprad was wel wyde,

¹ Was non fer ne nere, *Ar.*
² And of courtaisye, *Ar.* ³ Hii
 lete hure tounes strengthe
 faste, for hii hadde gret doute,
 By cause he myghte with
 hym lede of knyghtes such a
 route *Ar.* ⁴ That is bi hi-
 dere the Grekissh see al Cri-
 stendom y wis *Ar.* ⁵ He
 wolde no lengor abide. He let
 of sende his power, that spar-
 puled was ful wide. And

whan that they al redy were,
 thei went forth in hure weye,
 And dude hem so in to the
 see, and sutthe to Noreweye.
 So fell, er thei thuder come,
 the kyng of Noreweie dede
 was, And Loth, Arthure's
 othom, his heir was by cas,
 And hadde ordeyned hym
 ther to by fore his deth longe.
 But the men *Ar.*

And

And greȳpede ȳs noble ost, and dude hȳm in þe weȳe,
 And dude hȳm so in to see, and vorst to Norþweȳe.
 Nou was þe kȳng of Norþweȳe ded þer bȳ uore bȳ cas,
 And Lot, þat was ȳs oþom, þe kȳnge's neuenu was,
 And þe kȳng hȳm adde mad ȳs eȳr þer bȳuore longe;
 Ac þe men¹ of Norþweȳe nolde vor prute hȳm ¹ ȳnder vonge,
 Ac adde ȳmad anoþer man kȳng of þe londe,
 þat aȳen þe kȳng Arture hopede wel at stonde.
 Chȳld ² Waweȳn, Lotȳs sone, þulke tȳme was
 Bote of tuelf ȳer, & þe pope of Rome bȳtake was
 To norȳs þoru þe kȳng Arture, & þulke tȳme ryzt
 þe pope hȳm tok armes, & ȳs owe honde made hȳm ³ kyngt.
⁴ As þe kyng Arture, as ȳch seyde, to Norweȳe com,
 þe kyng of londe aȳen hȳm þen weȳ sone nom
 Mȳd ȳs poer, and smyte an batayle strong ȳnou,
 And ssedde blod in eȳþer half, and muþe folc me slou.
 Ac her poer of Norweȳe ydo was anon,
 þe kyng hȳm sulf was sone aslawe, & ⁵ ȳs men monȳou.
 þe Brutons hȳm stured e þo, and slowe and barnde vaste,
 So þat hii wonne al clene Norþweȳe atte laste.
 þer after hii wonne Denemarch, vorto do seruage
 To þe kȳng Arture euermo, and to bere hȳm truage.
 He ⁶ made Lot ȳs oþom kyng of Norþweȳe,
 þer ⁷ after toward France hii dude hȳm in þe weȳe.

¹ A vonge *Ar.* ² *Erat tunc Walwanus, filius prædicti Loth, XII. annorum juvenis, obsequio Sulpicii papæ ab avunculo traditus, à quo arma recepit Galfr. Mon.* ³ *Knȳght Ar.* ⁴ *Whan the Ar.* ⁵ *His men negh* | *echon Ar.* ⁶ *Quibus subactis, cum Loth in regem Norguegiæ promovisset, navigavit Arthurus ad Gallias, factisque turmis patriam undique vastare incepit Galfr. Mon.* ⁷ *Afterward toward France he dude Ar.*

¹ Nou adde France þulke tyme þe emperour Leon ;
 And he býtoc yt in warde an duc, þat het Follon,
 þat hardy body was and god, and poer adde y nou.
 þo he wuste, þat þe þyng Arture þuder drou,
² Alle þe kyngtes and þe folc, þat in ys poer were,
 He nom, & mette þe Brutons, & smýte batayle þere.
 Ac al þat hem was lute wurþ, vor azen þe kyng Arture
 And ys poer hii mygte lute wule dure.
 Vor ² euere, wanne he ⁴ nom alond, al þe bachelerye,
 þat agt was in þe lond, he ³ nom in ys companye
⁶ And of ys maynage vp ys coust, & vor he was so hende,
 Ech noble man vawe was myd hym vorto wende.
⁷ And beste partye of Fraunce to hym al so drou.
⁸ Vor he was so large & hende, þat to hym com poer ynou.
 Vor me ne tolde welney of no mon, noþer here ne þere,
 Bote he myd þe kyng Arture in som manere were.

¹ Nogh hadde Fraunce thulke
 tyme a lord, het Frollon,
 (That vndertok the gouer-
 nauce thurgh emperour Leon)
 That hardy man was & strong,
 and hadde power y nogh *Ar.*
² Alle maner of men, of his
 power that were, He toke,
 and with the Brutones mette,
 & smyten a bataille there *Ar.*
³ *Nam Arthurum iuventus in-*
sularum omnium, quas sub-
jugauerat, comitabatur. unde
tantum perhibebatur habere
exercitum, quantus erat diffi-

cile ab ullo posse superari
Galfr. Mon. 4 Wan a lond
Ar. 5 Toke *Ar.* ⁶ And of
 mayne at his cost. and for he
 was so hende, Euery noble
 man was glad with hym forto
 wende. And the best part of
 Fraunce *Ar.* ⁷ *Famulabatur*
quoque ei melior pars Gal-
licanæ provinciæ, quam sua
largitate sibi obnoxium fece-
rat Galfr. Mon. 1 For his
 largeste & hendeneste, that
 hym com folk y nogh *Ar.*

1 þo þe duc Follon ýsey, þat ýs poer noþyng nas,
 He fien in to Parys mýd wel quyç pas,
 And astorede 2 þen toun, and strengþe hým aboute.
 Kýng Arture and ys poer aseged hým wýþoute.
 So þat wýþynne 3 a monþe þe duc Follon ýsey,
 þat ýs men, vor defaute and vor hunger, deýde ný,
 And þat ýs poer nas noþyng, agen kýng Arture
 4 He þogte do ýs owe body, wýle he mýgte dure.
 Vor he was strong man & hardý, þe strengoste of ýs londe.
 To þe kýng Arture he sende, þat he ssolde 5 hým" vnder stonde
 6 To do an bataýle hem sulue tuo mýd her owe honde,
 And weþer so mygte aboute be were louerd of oþere's londe.
 þo kyng Arture hurde 7 þýs, no gladdere man nas.
 He sende word, þat al prest to such bataýle he was.
 Sýkernesse 8 & trouþe 9 ýplygt, of þýs vorewarde hii nome.
 So þat, at certeyn daý ýset, to þýs bataýle hii come
 A lute wýþoute Parys, 10 atýled wel ý nou.
 Muche was 11 þat folc aboute, þat to þýs bataýle drou.

1 Whan that Frolle vnder-
 stod, that he sconfited was,
 He flegh in to Parys with a
 quyke paas, *Ar.* 2 The toun,
 and strengthened hym a boutte
Ar. 3 A monthe day duk
 Flolle y seigh, That his men
 in defaute for hunger deide
 negh, *Ar.* 4 He thoghte with
 his owene body, while he
 myght endure *Ar.* 5 *Dæst*
Ar. 6 And do the bataille,
 yf he wolde, with his owen
 honde, And whether myghte

a boue be were maister of
 othere's londe *Ar.* 7 This,
 gladder neuere he nas *Ar.*
 8 *Dato igitur in amba parte*
sædere, conveniunt uterque in
insulam, quæ erat extra civi-
tatem, populo expectante quid
de eis erat futurum Galfr.
Mon. 9 Hii plight, and hure
 forward nome. So that at a
 day sett to bataille hii come
Ar. 10 Arayed wel y nogh
Ar. 11 The folk *Ar.*

¹ Hii fondede her steden vorst, & her lancen suþþe hii nome,
And wýþ hard dunt & gret ýre to gadere suþþe hii come.

² þe kyng Arture azen þe brest ýs felawe uorst anhýtte
Azen þe breste, þat he vel, & ne mýzte noleng sýtte.

As sone as he myzte turne ýs hors, ýs suerd he drou þer,

Vor to asayly hým þerwyþ, ac þe oþer was vppe er,

And ³ zef þe sted mýd ýs sper azen brest deþe's wounde,

So þat boþe stede and kyng leýe sone at grounde.

⁴ þo þe ⁵ Brutons seye þýs, hii vor bere vnneþe,

þat hii ne breke þe couenant, & brozte þen oþer to deþe.

Ac kyng Arture keuerede vp, & asaylede Follon vaste,

And smyte eyþer oþer her & þer, & harde duntaste,

So þat Follon mýd a stroc þe Brutons sore azaste,

Vor þe kyng Arture azen þe frount he smot atte laste,

þat, zýf he nadde wýþ þe selde somdel þe dunt ýhent,

Sýker he hym adde aslawe, al out ýssent.

þo kyng ⁶ Arture ýt ýuelde, and ýsey al so ýs blod

Vp ýs haubert & ýs sselde, he was neý vor wraþþe wod.

¹ Hii a saide hure stedes furst, hure lances *Ar.* ²And kyng Arthur on the brest Frolle so hitte, That he fel down to grounde, he myghte no lengor sitte *Ar.* ³Smot his stede in the breste, & yaf hym dethe's wounde *Ar.* ⁴*Desunt aliquammulta in Ar. utpote in quo folium unum integrum (fol. sc. LXIX. quatuor duntaxat versibus exceptis) híc loci excisum esse, particulamque unius paginæ (sive faciei secundæ folii LXVIII.) plane vacuam, video, in*

cujus tamen particulæ vacuæ margine The rounde table of Arthur scriptum legitur. 5 Brittones ut regem prostratum viderunt, timentes eum peremptum esse, vix potuerunt retineri, quia rupto fœdere in Gallos unanimiter irruerent Galfr. Mon. 6 Manante igitur sanguine, cum Arthurus lorica & clipeum rubere vidisset, ardentiori ira accensus est, atque erecto totis viribus caliburno, impressit

a cum

He drou syre Calýbourne ys suerd, þat was so gode,
 An anowarde þe helm wyþ wel stourdý mod
 þen oþer he smot, and to clef þat heued myd þe wounde.
 He vel and ssoc þe helm, and deýde in astounde.
 þo þýs dede was ýdo, and þere oþer was ded,
 þut conseyl of France sone nom ys red,
 And to þe kýng Arture hým zolde ech man þat was wýs,
 And zolde hým vp al þat lond, & þe keyen of Parýs.
 þýs was lo þe Cornwellýssebor, of wan Merlýn spec ynou;
 And clere leme of þe sterre, þat ouer France drou.
 Som was ýcome, as he sede, of þe noble kyng Arture,
 Wel me ssal her after of hým zut ýhure.
 þo he adde ýwonne France þus, & al þýs was ýdo,
 þýs noble kýng Arture delde ýs men atuo.
 ' þe kýng Howwel he býtoc, and þe oþer princes al so,
 þat odel of ys ost to wende to Peýto
 Vor to wýnne þat lond, and hým sulf he wolde wende
 Vor to wýnne seýnorýe aboute in oþer ende.
 Kyng Howwel wyþ ýs poer wan sone Peýto
 Al to kýng Arture's wýlle, and Gascoýne al so.
 þe kýng won Normandýe, and also god Aungeo,
 And wýþýnne anye zer al þýs was ýdo.

*cum per galeam in caput Follo-
 nis, quod in duas partes disse-
 cuit. Quo vulnere cecidit Follo,
 tellurem calcaneis pulsans, &
 spiritum in auras emisit Galfr.
 Mon.*

¹ *Et unam partem Hoelo duci*

*commisit, præcepitque illi, ut,
 ad expugnandum Guitardum,
 Pictaviensium ducem, iret; ipse
 vero cum reliqua parte ceteras
 provincias sibi subjugare vaca-
 vit Galfr. Mon.*

þe kyng wende þo to Parÿs, þo he adde ýdo al þÿs,
 And al heÿ men of lond þuder come ýwÿs.
 Her homages of hem, and her seruyse, he nom,
 And þe lawes, as he wolde hÿm sulf, sette on þe kÿnedom.
 He gef þat lond of Normandÿe Bedwer ýs boteler,
 And þat lond of Aungeo ¹ Kaxe ýs panter,
 And oþer þÿng oþer heÿe men, & syker ýt made ýnou,
 And suþþe aboute Leynte toward þÿs lond drou.

þO þe kÿng Arture com here in þÿs londe,
 And so muche lond adde ýwonne, & adde al so an honde,
 In yoe & blÿsse he was ýnou, & alle þat wyþ hÿm were,
 And azen Wÿttesonetÿd yt was in þe zere.
 He þogte þe heÿe feste of Wytesontÿd do
 Wÿþ honour among ýs men, and þat alle come þer to,
 Boþe kÿnges and dukes, and erles echon,
 Barons and kÿngtes, squeers monÿon,
 Laydÿes and maydens, and ech mon þat azt were
 In enÿ lond, þat ýs was, þat hii were alle þere.
 Of ýs rounde table ýs ban aboute he sende,
 þat eche a Wÿtesonetÿd to Carleon wende,
 A toun þat ýs in Glammorgan vp þe water of Osc ýdo,
 A lute bysyde Seuerne, in murÿe stede al so.
 Vor me maÿ þere in þe Souþhalf al by the see lede
 Fram oþer londes god ýnou, to endy such a dede.
² In oþer alf beþ grete wodes, lese and mede al so,
 So þat þer vas no defaute such noble þÿng to do.

¹ F. Kaye. *Nam Gaiouque Dapifero in Galfr. Mon.* ² *Hic denuo pergit Cod. Ar.*

þer come to þys rounde table, as he sende ys ban,
¹ Aunsel kyng of Scotlond, and al so Vryan,
 þat was kyng of Murýfýcens, & also of Norþ Walýs
 Cadwal, and also ² Scater kyng of Souþ Walys,
 Cador kyng of Cornwaýle, and erchebýssopes al so
 Of Londone, and of Euerwýk, and of ³ Carlen þer to.
 Erles þer come ek monýon, as þe erl of Gloucestrye
⁴ Morond, and Ingomer erl of Leycestre,
⁵ Maron erl of Warewýk, and Cursal of Cýcestre,
 Galluc erl of Salesburý, Jonatal of Dorcestre,
 Kýmmar erl of ⁶ Canterburý, of Baþe syre ⁷ Vrgen,
 Bose" erl of Oxenford, þat were alle noble men.
 þe barons & the kyngtýs, þat of hys londe aday
 At hys rounde table were, noman telle ne maý.
 Kýnges þer were eke of ýlýs, ⁸ ar þe kyng of ýrlonde
⁹ Gýllam, and also Malueýs kyng of ýslonde,
 Lot kyng of Norþeweýe, and ¹⁰ Doldam of Godlond,
 And þe kyng of Orcadas, & of Denemarch ých vnderstonde.
 Kýnges eke of býgende see, as Kay of Aungeo,
 Bedwer of Normandýe, Guýder of Pejto,
 Lygger of Colonýe, and al so the ¹¹ dosse pers
 Of France were þere echon, þat so noble were and fers.

¹ Anguissel *Ar.* ² Estanter *Ar.* ³ Carlyon *Ar.* ⁴ Morwid *Ar. in quo & Dudywan pro Ingomer.* ⁵ Mauran of Wircetre, [*Maren Gwígornensis, quæ nunc Warguic dicitur, Galfr. Mon.*] Cursal erl of Chestre, Aleth of Sa-

lesbury, Jonathas of Dorcestre, Kynmar *Ar.* ⁶ Kent, *Ar.* ⁷ Vrbygen, Boso *Ar.* ⁸ As *Ar.* ⁹ Gwillamour, & Maunsel kyng of Islonde, *Ar.* ¹⁰ Doldan *Ar.* ¹¹ Dusze *Ar.*

Hys neuwe kȳng Howwel of þe lasse Brutenyē al so
 1 Mȳd so vaȳr folc þuder com, & mȳd so gret charge þerto
 Of mules, of cartes and of hors mȳdde alle gode,
 þat þer nas non so wȳttȳ man, þat ȳt al vnderstode.
 2 þer nas 3 bytuene þys & Spanye no prince wiþoute al þys,
 þat nas at þys rounde table, & at þys feste ȳwȳs.
 And no wonder. Vor þe kynges los so wyde sprong ȳnou
 Of godenesse & of cortesyē, 4 þat her herte to hȳm drou.

þo þys heȳe men were alycome, & þe heȳe tȳme also
 Of Wȳtsontȳd, þe feste vor to do,
 5 þe herchebyssopȳs were ȳbroȳt, to sette þe kynges croune
 On ȳs heued. Ac 6 Seyn Dubrȳc of sulue tȳme
 Was erchebyssop. hȳm byuel þe croune on hȳm do,
 And þe sernyse of holy chȳrche ek, þat byuel þer to.
 þo croune was on ȳs heued, and ȳdo was ech oþer þȳng,
 Tueȳe erchȳbyssopȳs ladde þys noble kȳng

1 With muche poeple thuder
 com, and gret nobleie ther to
 Ar. 2 Ther was no pryuce by
 twixte Spayne & Alemyne
 of pris, Ar. 3 *Præter hos non
 remansit princeps alicujus
 pretii citra Hispaniam, quin ad
 istud edictum veniret. Nec mi-
 rum. Largitas namque Arthu-
 ri, per totum mundum divul-
 gata, cunctos in amorem il-
 lius illexerat* Galfr. Mon. 4
 That euery man to hym drogh

Ar. 5 Thre Erchebisshopes
 were come, to sette on the
 kynges croune. But Seynt
 Dubrice, that Erchebisshop was
 of the selue tounē, (As hit was
 his costume that offys te do)
 Dude the seruisse of holi churche,
 that byfel ther to. Tho the
 croune. 6 *Dubricius ergo,
 quoniam in sua diocesi curia
 tenebatur, paratus ad cele-
 brandum obsequium, hujus rei
 curum suscepit* Galf. Mon.

To þe chýrche of heye munstre. And þer geode byuore hým
þere

Four kyngs, and four suerdes of golde býuore hým bere;
Vorst þe kyng of Scotlond, and þe kýng of Norþwalys,
And þe kyng of Cornwale, and þe kýng of Souþwalýs.

¹ Oþer býssopys and prelats by uore þýs kyng Arture
And clerkes songe as rýzt was, þat joye yt was to hure.

In ² oþer alf þe quene was ³ of erchebyssopys al so
ýlad, and ýcrouned eke, as ryzt was vor to ⁴ do,
And to noþer munstre ýlad, & four quenes bý uore hýr wende,
þe four kýnges wýues, þat we bý uore nemde,

⁵ And foure wyte colfren byuore hýr also bere.

þe companye of laýdýes wel grete also were.

þo ⁶ hii were to chyrche ybrozt eýþer in ýs sýde,

⁷ So gret & murýe was þat song, þat me song þer inne wyde,
þat þe folc stod, þat þer were, as hii were y nome,

Ne hii nuste to weþer chýrche murgorýe ýt was to come.

þe kyng was to ýs palcýs, þo þe seruyse was ý do,

Ylad wyþ ⁸ þýs menýe, and þe quene to hyre al so.

¹ And bysshopes, and other
prelates, to fore the kyng Ar-
thure Songe with hure cler-
gie, that joye it was to hure
Ar. ²The othur *Ar.* ³Of
therchbisshop also *Ar.* ⁴Do,
To a nother munstre there, &
iiii. quenes by fore wende
Ar. ⁵And euery of hem in
hure hond a whit coluere
bere. Ladies fele & faire y
nogh also ther were *Ar.* ⁶

Postremo peractaprocessione,

*tot organa, tot cantus in utris-
que fiunt templis, ut præ nimia
dulcedine milites, qui aderant,
nescirent quod templorum
prius adirent Galfr. Mon. ⁷*
So noble and mery was the
song and melody that tyde,
That men thoghte also murye
as thegh hii hadde be nome, Ne
hii ne wiste to whather churche
meryer it was to come *Ar.*
⁸ His meyne, *Ar.*

Vor ¹ hii hulde þe olde vsages, þat men wyþ men were
Bý hem sulue, and wymmen bý hem sulue al so þere.

þo hii were echone ý set, as ýt to her stat bycom,
Kay, kýng of Aungeo, a þousand kýngtes nome
Of noble men, ý cloþed in ermýne echone

² Of on sywete, and seruede ³ as þýs noble feste a non.

Bedwer þe botýler, kýng of Normandye,

Nom al so in ýs half a uaýr companye

⁴ Of on sywyte, vorto seruy of þe botclerye.

Bý uore ⁵ þe ⁶ quene ýt was also of al suche corteýsýe,

Vorto telle al þe noblye þat þer was ý do,

þey my tonge were of ⁷ stel, me solde noxt dure þerto:

Wýmmen ne kepte of no kýngt as in druery,

Bote he were in armýs wel ýprowed, & atte leste þrye.

þat made, ⁸ lo! þe wýmmen þe ⁹ chastore lýf lede,

And þe kýngtes þe stalwordore, & þe betere in her dede.

Sone after þýs noble ¹⁰ mete, as rýgt was of such týde,

þe kýngtes atýled hem aboute in eche syde,

¹ *Antiquam namque consuetudinem curiæ seruantes Brittones, consueverant mares cum maribus, mulieres cum mulieribus festivos dies celebrare separatim* Galfr. Mon. ² Alle in on sewte, to serue the feste a non *Ar.* ³ *Malim, at.* ⁴ Of a nother siwte, to serue the butlerie *Ar.* ⁵ *In palatio quoque reginæ innumerabiles ministri, diversis ornamentis induti, obsequium suum præstabant, morem suum exercentes. Quem si omnino describere pergerem,*

nimiam prolixitatem historiæ generarem Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Quene eke also ther was such courtaiysye, *Ar.* ⁷ Stel, hit nolde suffice ther to. Wommen tolde of no knyght tho as in loue and druerye, But he were in armes preued atte leste thrye *Ar.* ⁸ Tho the *Ar.* ⁹ Chaster lýf to lede, *Ar.* ¹⁰ Mete, ech wende in his syde, Knyghtes and squyers eke, and buskede hem to ryde, In the foldes and in the medes *Ar.*

In feldes and in medys to preue her bachelerye.
 Somme wyþ lance, some wyþ suerd, wyþ oute vlyenye,
 Wyþ pleyynge at ¹ tables, oþer atte chekere,
 Wyþ castynge oþer wyþ ssetynge, ² oþer in som ogyrt manere.
 And ³ wuch so of eny game adde þe maystrye,
⁴ þ kyng hem of ys gyfteþ dude large corteysye.
 Vpe þe alurs of þe castles þe laydes þanne stode,
 And byhulde þys noble game, & wyche kynzts were god.
 Alle þe þre hexte dawes ylaste þys nobleye
 In halles and in veldes, of mete and eke of pleye.
 þys men come þe verþe day byuore þe kyng þere,
 And he gef hem large gyftys, euere as hii wurþe were.
 Byssopryches and cherches ⁵ clerkes he gef somme,
 And castles and tounes kyngtes þat were ycome."
 Seyn Daud was þe kyng's vncl, hym he ⁶ gef adaþ
 þe herchebyssopryche of Carleon, as he wel bysaþ.
 Vor he was suþþe holy mon, ⁷ and munstre let rere,
 þat me clepuþ in Walys Seyn Daud, & gut he lyþ þere.

¹ The tables, & the esche-
 kere, *Ar.* ² Othur som othur
 manere. What man of any
 game hadde *Ar.* ³ *Quicumque*
ergo ludisui victoriam adeptus
erat, ab Arturo largis muneri-
bus ditabatur Galfr. Mon. ⁴ *Sic*
Codex Harleyanus; at in Ar.
plane, The kyng hem yaf
 yiftes grete, & dude hem cour-
 taisye. An hegh vpon alures
 ladies gonne by holde, To
 waite ho so dude best, & most

was of tolde. Alle fulle fower
 daies last thus hure pleye
 In valeis aboute, and faire
 feldes, & mete eke of nobleye
 The v. day come thes men
 bifore the kyng there, *Ar.*
⁵ To clerkes he yaf sone,
 Castelles to knyghtes eke, as
 best hym thocht to done. *Ar.*
⁶ Yaf that day *Ar.* ⁷ And
 let a munstre rere In the cite
 of Meneve, and lith nogh bu-
 ryed there *Ar.*

þe byssoprýche of Wýnchestre a god mon he zef þo,
Of Chychestre anoþer, and gut oþer mo.

þe wule þe kýng and ýs men aboute þýs nobleye were,
þer come in tuelf olde men mýd ¹ eucne pas þere,

Men of wel vayr semblant, and brancliýs hii bere
Of olyue, as in sygne þat hii of þes were.

A letter ² he toc þe kyng, þat þo he yt let rede.

Fram þe cenatour of Rome hii come, and þys seyde :

“ Lucie, þe cenatour of Rome, to Arture þe kyng,

“ ³ Send, þat he ⁴ ofte serued aþ, wyth oute gretýnge.

“ Muche ⁵ me wondreþ and ouer muche of þy reuerýe,

“ Of þyn cruel luþer hede, and of þyn robbery ;

“ And namelyche of þyn vn rygt ychabbe gret dedeýn,

“ þat þou to þe noble stede of Rome dest mýd al þý mayn.

“ And þat þou nelt ⁶ hým ýknowe, ne do þyn seruage,

“ Ne vnder stonde hou luþer yt ys, to ⁷ do ený outrage

“ ⁸ Oþer werný out þe noble stude, þat al þe world ⁹ abueþ to.

“ Vor þyn auncetres dude al, þat we þe hoteþ do.

“ And þou, as in gret despyt of so noble seýnorýe,

“ ¹⁰ Ne at halst noxt one þy truage, ac myd þy reuerye

¹ *Moderatis passibus* Galfr.

Mon. ² Hii toke to the kyng, and he than let hit rede. Fro Lucýe the senatour hit come, and thus hit sede : “ Lucie senatour *Ar.* ³ Sendeth, as he hath deseruyd, with oute gretýng. Muche wonder we haueth of thi reuerye, *Ar.* ⁴ *F.* of deserued aþ. ⁵ *Admirans vehementer admiror su-*

per tuæ tirannidis protervia. Admiror, inquam, & injuriam, quam Romæ intulisti, recolligens indignor Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Hure *Ar.* ⁷ Do hure eny *Ar.* ⁸ Or greuy oght that noble stede, *Ar.* ⁹ Boweth *Ar.* ¹⁰ Noght only at halst hure truage, but dost also roberie, By reuynst Fraunce and othur londes, *Ar.*

“ Rauysest France & oþer londes, þat þy Weste beþ echon,

“ þat bere ¹ truage to Rome, & þoru þe ne doþ noȝt non.

“ Vor þanne of þe gret despyt þe noble court of Rome

“ Ryȝt wole habbe of þe ýwys, þat þou hym dest ýlome.

“ Amydde haruest we þe setteþ day of þýs nexte ȝere,

“ At Rome vorto ansuerýe, and þat þou be þe sulf þere

“ We þe hoteþ, vorto auonge þat þe court þe wole deme.

“ And bote þou do ² of one þyng ným wel ȝode ȝeme,

“ þat ýchylle my sulf þe seche out, & þoru suerd restore

“ Al þat þý reuerýe vs aþ by nome, and more.

þýs was a prout mandement, ³ and an heýnol dede.

þe kyng adde þerof gret despyt, þo he hurde ýt rede.

Vor þe vorste truage, þat he sende to Rome, of seluer oþer
of golde,

þat was Lucy's bod aslawe, burýe ȝyf hii ýt wolde.

The kyng cluped ac noȝt vor þan ys conseyl wel sone,

To ansuerýe to þýs ⁴ mandement, wat were best to done.

Cadour, erle of Cornwayle, stod somdel and lou,

And verste seyde ys auýs myde gode wylle ýnou.

¹ Som tyme truage to Rome, & nogh bereth hii non. And for this ilke grete despit the noble Court of Rome Ryght wole haue of, that thugh hast mysdo ofte y lome *Ar.* ² Of that y seighe take ryght nogh good yeme, E les my self y wole the seche, and thurgh my sweord restore

Al that thugh vs hast bynome, and yut ther to wel more *Ar.*

³ And gret manassyng. The kyng hadde foul scorn of this ilke bostyng. For in stede of truage of siluer and of goolde He sende hem Lucie's body, burie hit ho so wolde *Ar.*

⁴ Ilke lettre, what *Ar.*

“ Syrc,

" Syre," he sede, " þer ¹ byuore ychabbe ybe sore drad,
 " Laste ² þat ydel lyf, þat þyne men ³ abbjþ y lad,
 " Nou mony day out of los and in sleuþe hem brogte.
 " Vor wanne men beþ al ydel, þat er batayles sozte,
 " Her ydelnesse hem ssal brýnge to synne lecherye,
 " To tauerne, and ⁴ to sleuþe, and to hasarderýe.
 " Hyt ys ney vÿf zer, þat we abbjþ ylyued in such vyce,
 " Vor we ⁵ nadde nogt to done, and in suche delýce.
 " And þer wjþ ⁶ nys nogt God ýpaýd, þer vore he aþ ybrogt
 " þe Romeyns ⁷ in suche wýlle, þat we nere to ydel nogt,
 " Ac þat we come to vr stat azen of vre verste prowessse,
 " Lest we felle in dedlych sunne vor vr ydelnyssse.
 þo he adde ysed ys auys, & oþere hym bere wýtnysse,
⁸ þe kyng Arture sede ys al in gladnesse.
 " ze louerdýnges," he sede, " þat ychabbe in conseyl & in batayle
 " ý foneded as vor agte men, þat me nolde neuere fayle,
 " Doþ nou ⁹ al goure wyt þerto, me wel to consayle,
 " ¹⁰ And ych hopýe we ssolle þe lasse recche of þe Romeyns
 taylor.

¹ *Huc usque in timore fueram, ne Britones, longa pace quietos, otium, quod ducunt, ignavos faceret, samamque militiæ, qua ceteris gentibus clariore censentur, in eis omnino deleret* Galfr. Mon. ²The ydel *Ar.* ³Longe haueth y lad, Nogh out of hure good loos in to slouth hem broghte *Ar.* ⁴To drunkenesse, & othur hasardrie *Ar.* ⁵Hadde noght to done, and haue had oure delice *Ar.*

⁶ Is noght God a payd, *Ar.*
⁷ In to such a will, that we be ydel noght *Ar.* ⁸Than seide kyng Arthur in murthe & in gladnesse. "Ye lordynges, that y preued haue in consail and bataille, And as noble men founde, & wolde me neuere faille, *Ar.* ⁹*Facilius ergo inquietationem Lucii tolerare poterimus, si communi studio præmeditati fuermus, quibus modis eam debilitare*

tare

- “ Vor me þencheþ myd vn ryzt hii ¹ esseþ vs truage.
 “ Vor ² July Cesar yt nom vorst myd strengþe & myd outrage,
 þoru descord & contek, þat bytuene vr elderne vas þo.
 “ He nom verst myd vnryzt, & brogte þat lond in wo.
 “ And þyng þat ys myd strengþe ýnom, hou mygte yt be myd
 ryzt?
 “ Vor he ³ naþ reson non, bote robberye and mygt.
 “ ⁴ And ⁵ myd as reson we mowe of hem esse ywýs.
 “ Bere he þaune þe oþer truage, þat byneþe ys.
 “ Vor July and oþer emperours, hii seggeþ, com þer to,
 “ þat emperors were of Rome. ých may segge al so,

ture institerimus. Quam non multum timendam nobis existimo, cum, irrationabili causa exigat tributum, quod ex Britannia habere desiderat Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ And casteth, hogh to make a knotte in the Romaynes taille *Ar.*

¹ Axeth *Ar.* ² Julius Cesar alther furst tok hit with outrage, For a contek that bytwýne oure eldrene was tho. He nom hit furst with vnright, & broght the lond in wo. That thyng, that with wrong is nome, hogh myght hit be with right? *Ar.* ³ Hath no reson to, but *Ar.* ⁴ And with also good reson we mowe of hem y wis Abere thilke truage, that as thyng robbed is. For by Julie and other emperours hii thenk-

eth com ther to, And we in the same manere may seye also, That oure auncetres of this lond som tyme wonne Rome, As Belyn & Brenne, noble men that ye haue hurd of y lome *Ar.* ⁵ *Quoniam ergo id, quod injustum est, à nobis præsumpsit exigere, consimili ratione petamus ab illo tributum Romæ, & qui fortior supervenerit ferat quod habere exoptavit. Nam si, quia Julius Cæsar, ceterique Romani reges Britanniam olim subjugarunt, vectigal nunc debere sibi ex illa reddi decernit, similiter nunc ego censeo, quod Roma mihi tributum reddere debet, quia antecessores mei eam antiquitus obtinuerunt. Belinus etenim &c. Galfr. Mon.*

“ þat

" þat myn auncetres of þys lond wyle wonne Rome,
 " As Bely þe noble kyng, þat ze abbeþ yhard y lome,
 " And Constantyn, Eleyne sone, ¹ hii wuteþ wel Rome nom,
 " And subþe Maxymyan, and of ² beyre blod ych com,
 " Myn auncetres ³ were alle þre, & kynges of þys londe,
 " ⁴ And wonne þe emperye of Rome, & boþe adde an honde.
 " Of ⁵ France & ⁶ oþer londes, þat we wonne myd vr mygte,
 " We mowe segge, þat we ⁷ nabbeþ to ansuerye nozt myd rygte.
 " Wanne hii for soke ys, & for slewþed, & to non defence ne
 come,
 " þo we þoru chyualerye out of her poer ys nome.
 " Vor hii ne mowe nozt segge, þat with treson, oþer stalþe, yt
 were do.
 " Vor wyþinne nye zere non of hem ne com enes þer to.
 Howwell, kyng of þe oþer Brytayne, þo he hurde þys he sede:
 " þey ech of vs sete alday, þe best red to rede,
 " Betere ansuere ne ssolde we fynde, ⁸ þan ge abbeþ nou ysed.
 " þere vore we agte honoury wel of so noble wyt þy red.

¹ Ye witeth *Ar.* ² *F* heyre. *Nam hure in Ar.* ³ Hii were alle *Ar.* ⁴ Hii wonne themperie of Rome, & tho hii hitte hadde an honde *Ar.* ⁵ *Censetisne ergo vectigal ex Romanis petendum? De Gallia autem sive collateralibus insulis non est respondendum, cum illas diffugeretur defendere, quando eadem potestati eorum subtrahebamus* Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Of other londes, that we wonne with varyght *Ar.* ⁷ Ne

mogh ansuere ther to with ryght. When they forsoke and for sleuthede, and to non defence come, Tho we thurgh chiualrye out of hure hondes hit nome. For hii ne mogh seye with treson, ne with stalthe, hit was do, For thes ix. yer non of hem ones come ther to *Ar.* ⁸ Than that that ye han sede. Wel oughte the man honoured be, that is so noble of rede *Ar.*

" Vor

“ Vor ¹ zyfwe in þys manere wendeþ, we ne fayleþ ² anone wyse,

“ þat we ne ssolde abbe þe maýstre, wanne we defendeþ oure franchise.

“ And wo so anoþer monne's ³ god bynyme wole myd vnrygt,

“ Myd rygt he maý ys ⁴ owe lese, zyf þe defendor aþ þe mygte.

“ And ⁵ wanne þe Romeyns aboute beþ, vs to bynyme vrrygte,

“ Wýþ reson we ⁶ wolle hem bynyme, zyf we mowe to gadere fygt.

“ Nou yt worþ ⁷ zended, þat Sýbyle þe sage sede bý uore,

“ þat þer ssold of Brutayne þre men be ýbore,

“ þat ssold wýnne þe emperýe of Rome, ⁸ & þe tueye ýdo yt ys,

“ As of Bely and Constantýn. & þou art þe þrydde ywýs.

“ Hye ⁹ nou vaste vorto auonge þys noble honour al,

“ To brynge hem vnder þe, ¹ þat þe wolde make her þral.

“ Hye ¹¹ nou to anhansý vs alle, & ýnelle nozt be byhýnde,

“ Ten þousend hors ¹² ywrýe, ých þe wolle fynde.

¹ *Nam si, juxta prædictam rationem, Romam adire uolueris, non dubito quin triumpho potiamur, dum libertatem nostram tueamur; dum juste ab inimicis nostris exigamus, quod à nobis injuste ipsi repetere inceperunt. Quicumque enim sua alteri eripere conatur, merito, quæ sua sunt, per eum, quem impetit, amittit* Galfr. Mon. ² In non wise, To haue the maistre, in defence of oure owene franchise *Ar.*

³ Good taketh with vnright, *Ar.* ⁴ Owene lease, & the defendour haue myght *Ar.* ⁵ Sutte the Romeynes beth aboute to reue vs of oure right, *Ar.* ⁶ Wolleth hem hure bynyme, & to gederes fight *Ar.* ⁷ Fulfuld, that *Ar.* ⁸ Of the two do hit is, *Ar.* ⁹ The faste for to *Ar.* ¹⁰ That wolde the make thral *Ar.* ¹¹ Blyue to a vaunce vs alle, y wole nocht be by hynde, *Ar.* ¹² Heled ther to y wole the fynde *Ar.*

Aunsel, þat þe kȳng adde ýmad kȳng of Scotlonde,
 Glad ý nou was ¹ myd þys word, & vor joye held vp ýs honde.
 “ Vor þat,” he sede, “ ýchabbe ýhurd, so gret joye ýchabbe
 and blys,
 “ ² þat ý nabbe non tonge, þat mowe al yt ssewe ýwȳs.
 “ Vor al, þat we abbȳþ of londes and of kynges byuore
 “ ý wonne mȳd chȳualerȳe, ýt þyncþ me al vor lore,
 “ Bote we of Romeȳns be awreke & of Saxons al so,
 “ þat vre elderne er þȳs so muche ssame abbeþ ýdo.
 “ And nou þe tȳme ýs icome, þat we mowe ben awreke,
 “ So glad ycham, ³ þat ý not, wat vor joye speke.
 “ Vor ý ne wȳlnede neuere þȳng so muche, as ych do her blöd,
 “ ⁴ Ou! Jhesu! þat þulke day worþ me suete and god.
 “ Suete wolleþ þe wounded be to me, & nobȳng stronge:
 “ Suete wole ek mȳ deþ be, ȳȳf ych ým auonge
 “ Vorto awreke ⁵ hor faderes, & to holde vp oure franchȳse,
 “ And vorto ⁶ anansȳ our kȳng, as we ssolde in al wyse.
 “ Seche ⁷ we out þulke halue men, ne abyde we nogt to longe,
 “ þat ⁸ we after her wrecche deþ her londes auonge.
 “ And ycholle our ost eche, & our bachelerȳe,
 “ Wȳþoute archers & vot men, wȳþ tuo þousend hors ý wrye.

¹ For that word *Ar.* ² That
 I haue no tonge, to telle
 hogh joyful my herte is *Ar.*
³ That I ne wot, what *Ar.*
⁴ Me thinketh, to haue to
 do o day with hem wold do
 me good. Softe wolde the
 woundes be to me, and no
 thyng stronge: Swete wolde
 also be my deth, yf y hym shal

a fonge *Ar.* ⁵ Oure *Ar.*
⁶ A vance *Ar.* ⁷ *Aggredia-*
mur igitur semiviros illos, &
aggrediendo perstemus, ut,
devictis ipsis, eorum honori-
bus cum læta potiamur vic-
toria Galfr. Mon. ⁸ We mogh,
 when they beth dede, hure
 faire londes fonge *Ar.*

Of men here of þys lond þe kȳng adde þer wyþoute
 Sýxtȳ þousend hors ¹ y wrye, & þat was a uayr route.
 þe kynges of sȳx ȳles ek, as Norþewey & Yrlonde,
 Godlond and Orcadas, Denemarch and Yslonde.
 Sene kynges ek aboute Fraunce, as Brutayne & Normandye,
 Gascoyne and Aungeo, and al so Pycardye,
 Of Peyto, and of oþer tuo, and ² dozze pers of France.
 Among hem alle ³ hii were sȳker al, wyþoute balance,
 Of an hondred þousend hors, & four score þousend þerto,
 And þre ⁴ sousend wel ywrye, & tuo hondered also,
 Wyþoute fot men, þat were so vale, þat þer nas of non ende,
 þys was a uayr compaynye, þoru al þe world to wende.
 þo þys was sȳker & byspeke, þe kyng hem het ⁵ echom,
 þat hii wende ech in ȳs syde to her contreȳe anon,
 And þat hii alammasse day mȳd her poer come
 Echone to Barbesflet, and þes veage nome.
 þe kȳng bed þe messagers, þat hii þe senatour sede,
 þat he wolde to Rome come, ac no truage hȳm to lede,
 Ac vorto conqery of hȳm þulke sulue seruage,
 þat hii askȳþ of hȳm ⁶ vyllȳche, & mȳd outrage,

¹ Y heled, and that *Ar.*
² Dusze *Ar.* ³ Syker hii
 were, with oute variaunce.
 An hundred thusend hors he
 led, of fotmen was non ende.
 Ther was a faire companye
 thurgh al the worlde to wen-
 de. Tho that al this was
 byspoke, and syker were
 alle at on, Euery man to his
 contre hihede sone anon, I

charged a Lammasse day with
 hure power hii come Euery
 man to Barbefleet, and this
 viage nome. Thanne to the
 messagers answerd Arthur the
 kyng, That to Rome he wolde
 come and no truage bryng,
 But forto wyne ther of hem
 thulke self seruage, *Ar.* ⁴ *Sic.*
⁵ *L.* echon. ⁶ Spitously, *Ar.*

And

And þat he wolde to Rome come þe day þat hii hym sette
¹ þe rygte abbe weþer so mygte, wanne hii hem to gadere
 mette.

þus ² departede ³ þo" þe court, and ⁴ eche in ys syde
 garked hem agen þe day, vor hii ⁵ mygte leng abyde."

LUCYE þe senatour, þo he wuste þys maundement,
 Sone he adde wyde aboute ys messagers ⁶ ysend,
 Vorto gadery to ys help al ⁷ þat poer of Rome,
 So þat agen Lammasse alle þes kynges to hym come,
 Of Affryc and of Grece, of Spayne and of Sýrre,
 Of Medes and of Perces, ⁸ of ⁹ Ytours, of Lybye,
 Of Egypt and of Babylonye, and of Frugye,
 And al so of ¹⁰ Mesopot, of Bytynie, of Boecye.
 Alle þes kynges, and al oþer þat were by Este Rome
 And al þat to Rome ssolde seruýse, to hym come,
 So þat fourty þousend hors & sixty hondred also
 þer were, ¹¹ þo hii gare were, þys chyualerye to do.
 Kýng ¹² Arture bytok Modred, ys sýster sonc, ých wene
¹³ þys lond to loke, þo he wende, & Gouvernewaur þe quene.

¹ And ryght haue ho so myght
 when hii to gederes mette *Ar.*
² *Digrediuntur ergo legati,*
digrediuntur reges, digredi-
untur proceres, &, quod eis
præceptum fuerat, perficere
non differunt Galfr. Mon.
³ *Deest Ar.* ⁴ Euery man wende
 on his syde, And euery man
 to holde his day a rayde hym
 thanne to ryde *Ar.* ⁵ *F. ne*

mygte leng. ⁶ Sent *Ar.* ⁷ The
 power *Ar.* ⁸ Of Tharce and
 of Libie *Ar.* ⁹ *Ituræorum*
 Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ Mesopotanie
Ar. ¹¹ Tho hii were alle
 redy, this *Ar.* ¹² *Compo-*
sito igitur adventu ipsorum,
Arturus, Modredo nepoti
suoconservandam Britanniam
atque Gannumaræ [Sic Co-
 dex MS. quem mihi perquam be-

nigne

Vor he truste to ¹ hym mest, as me þyngþ he wel aȝte,
² And, as ȝe ssolde her after yhure, hii broȝte hym supþe to
 naȝte.

Mýd al ys ost of þys londe to Souþhamptone he wende,
 And dude hym ³ in see, mýd wýnd þat God hym sende.
 þo he come ver in þe see, and he aslepe was,

⁴ At tyme of mydnyȝt of þe nyȝt, hym mette a greuous cas.

Hym þoȝte he sey a grýslých beore ⁵ fle in þe eyr anheȝ,

⁶ þat alle þe hauenes quakede of þe flyȝt hym þoȝte he sey.

And an dreduol dragon fram the West come myd hym to fyȝte,
 þat ⁷ þe leom of ys eyen al þe contreye ⁸ lýȝte.

And þe dragon ⁹ velde þulke bere, & to grounde hym caste.

¹⁰ An noþer dragon com fram Est, & mýd þulke dragon faȝt
 vaste."

þo þe kýnge awok, he told ys meyne of þys cas.

And some býþoȝte, and tolde wat þe ¹¹ býtokne was,

nigne donavit amicissimus Gra-
 vesius, licet alii *Guennoveram*
 & *Guenheram*, vel *Gonnoram*
 sive *Gouernwauram* appellant]
reginæ committens, cum exer-
citu suo portum Haymonis a-
divit, ubi tempestivo ventorum
flatu mare ingressus est Galfr.
 Mon. ³ Hys lond to kepe
 tho he wende, & also Gonnore
 the quene *Ar.*

¹ *F. hem.* ² Ac, as ye schulle
 her after hure, to most sorwe
 he hym broȝht *Ar.* ³ Forth
 in the see, *Ar.* ⁴ Euene a

boute mydnyȝt, hym mette a
 wonder cas *Ar.* ⁵ Fle out of
 the Est an hegh, That alle
 men, that negh hym were,
 quaked, whan they hym segh.
 A grisly dragon fro by Weste
Ar. ⁶ *Cujus murmure totali-*
tora intremebant Galfr. Mon.
⁷ Thurgh the lightnesse of
 his eyen *Ar.* ⁸ A light *Ar.*
⁹ Ouercome this bere, *Ar.*
¹⁰ *Loco hujus versus hæc habet*
Ar. And ded left hym in the
 feld, this Arthur sore a gaste
Ar. ¹¹ Bitoknyng *Ar.*

þat þe dragon of by Weste bytokned þe kȳng Arture,
 And þe beore som foul geant, þat me ssolde of yhure.
¹ þat he ssolde ouercome þe geant; & þe dragon of byheste
 Bytokned þe emperour of Rome, & þe batayle of the beste
 Ouercome bytokned þat þe Romeyns ssolde al so.
 Ac þe kȳng ne jugede noȝt, þat yt ssolde be so y do,
 þer after hii come" to Barbesflet, & pȳȝte þer by syde
 Her tentes and pauylons, her compaynye to abyde.
 Under þat þer com word to þe kyng Arture,
 þat þe meste geant, þat mon ssolde of yhure,
 Out of þe lond of Spayne com, & adde ² ynome' Eleyne,
 þat was so vaȳr, þe kȳnge's nece Howwel of Brutayne,
 And vpe þe mount of Seyn Mȳchel yre lede atte laste,
 And þe kynȝtes of þe lond sywed after vaste,
 Ac hii ne myȝte nout agen hȳm do. Vor ³ weþer so hii wende
 By water, oþer by londe, anon rȳȝt he hem ssende,
⁴ Mȳd gleȳue oþer mȳd roches, and uewe alȳue he let.
 And some he mȳd strengþe nom, & al quyc hem fret.
⁵ Al stȳllyche wȳþinne nȳȝt þe kȳng nom ys boteler
 Bedwer, þat nomon yt wste, and Gay ys panyter,

¹ Some seide also, that the kyng sholde with honour Fighte er longe were with the Cenatour, And seide, the Cenatour bi tokned the best of by Est, And Arthur to the dragon that com fro by West. Ther after hii come *Ar.* ²Rauesshed *Ar.* ³*Nam sive mari, sive terra illum invadabant, aut naves eorum ingentibus saxis*

obruebat, aut diversorum generum telis interimebat. Sed & plures cupiebat, quos semivivos devorabat Galfr. Mon.

⁴ With speres & stones also, fewe a lyue he let *Ar.* ⁵ Al stillely, whan hit was nyght, Arthur clepede a part Beduer his boteler, and Kay his stiward, And two squyers with hem also, that he muche

(Vor he truste to hem meste) and wende vorþ as alone,
 Vor ¹ he volde to such geant verdes lede vone
 Vor o body, as we seyþ, and so muche ek he truste
 To hym sulue & to hardýssý. Ys men wanne hii ýt wuste,
 þo he come toward þys hul, a gret fur þeruppe he sey,
 And anoþer vppe a lasse hul, þat þer býsyde was neý.
 Nou ² nuste hii" to soþe, vppe weþer þe geant were ;
 Bedwer he sende vorto aspýe stýlelyche verst þere.
 Verst to þe lasse hul ³ mýd ⁴ assýp, þat he vond,
 He wende al bý water, vor he ne ⁵ mýgt nozt alonde.
 þo ⁶ he com ⁷ vp þe hul an hey, he hurde atte býgynnyg
 Of a womman a deoluol crý, and a pýtos wepýnge.^h
 Verst he was sore adrad, þat þe geant were þere neý,
 And naþeles he ⁸ hente herte, & drou more an heý.
 þo vond he ¹⁰ zere þet fur, and a lute þer býsyde
¹¹ An ¹² burýels al nywe ýmad, & a womman, þat so crýde,

triste, And wende forth al pri-
 uely, that his ost hit nyste.
 Whan thei negh the hulle
 come, a fure uppon they segh,
 And vppon the lasse hulle a
 nother that were somdel negh.
 Than nuste hii *Ar.*

¹*Tanta namque virtute præ-
 valendo negligebat contratalia
 monstra exercitum ducere, cum
 & suos hoc modo inanimentet,
 & solus ad illa destruenda suffi-
 ceret Galfr. Mon. ²Dubitantes
 illico super quem eorum habi-
 tasset gigas, Beduerum diri-
 gunt, ut certitudinem rei explo-
 raret Galfr. Mon. ³In a bot, that*

he fond, *Ar.* ⁴*Navicula Galfr.*
Mon. ⁵Myght by lond Ar.
⁶*Cujus [montis] dum cacumen
 incepisset ascendere, audito
 desuper fenineo ululato [Sic
 Codex ille, quem mihi dono de-
 dit amicissimus Gravesius, non
 ululatu] primo inhorruit, quia
 dubitavit monstrum adesse*
*Galfr. Mon. ⁷Up to the hulle
 an hegh, at the bygynnyng, Of a
 womman he hurdea cry pitously
 playnyng Ar. ⁸Tok good herte,
 Ar. ⁹Tho he fond ther a fuyr,
 and a lytel Ar. ¹⁰Sic qui-
 dem Codex (quem sequimur)
 Harleyanus, pro quo alii (ut*

Alner holded sytte þere, and anon, so heo y sey
 þe kyng Bedwer, heo sýzte, and býgan to grede an hey,
 " Alas! alas! þou wrecche mon, wuch mys auenture
 " Hap þe ýbrozt in to þys stede, alas! hou ssalt on dure?
 " Alas! þe pýnes, þat þou ssalt sone þolye, deþ!
 " þe pýte, þat ýchabbe of þe, þoru out mýn herte geþ.
 " Vor þys verbroyde geant, abbe he of the an sýzt,
 " þy fayre body so gentyl vor suolwe he wole to nýzt.
 " Vor he wole sone come þulke verbroyde pece,
 " þat nom Helene, noble mayde, kyng Howwel nece,"
 " þat ýchabbe nou rýzt her ýbured, was norýse ých was,
 " þat was al mý soule, & al mý lyf, ých wene non such nas.

in Ar. þer (sive þere) forsitan malint. Sed zere (quod paratum notat) retineo. ¹¹ A bu-rieles newe made, & the woman, that cride, Al for olded & for woþe, and tho heo segh Bedewer, " Lord haue mercy," sheo sayde, " on the man " what dost though nouth her? " Alas!" sheo seide, " though " wrecche man, what mys a " venture Hath broght the to " this stede, hogh shalt though " longe endure? The pite, " that y haue of the, thurgh " my herte it geth. Sory I " am, that though shalt suffre " sone deth. For this foule " Geant, haue he of the a- " syght, Thi body, that so

" gentil is, wole sone be to
 " twyght. For hider he wole
 " come right sone that ilke
 " foule pece, That raunesshede
 " faire Eleyne, kyng Howe's
 " nece *Ar.* ¹² *Inspexit quo-*
que tumulum recenter factum,
& juxta eum quandam anum
flentem & ejulantem. Quæ
ut eum aspexit, conspectum
stetu impediante in hunc mo-
dum profuta est: " O infelix
" homo, quod infortunium te
" in hunc locum subvectat?
" O! inenarrabiles mortis
" pænas passure! miseret me
" tui, miseret, quia tam detes-
" tabile monstrum florem ju-
" ventutis tuæ in hac nocte
 " consumet Galfr. Mon.

“¹ And² þe wule he wolde þys tendre þyng wemmy foule
y nou,

“ And heo ne mygte yt soffry noht, myd lecherye he yr slou.

“ þo eode he to me olde³ werche, to endy ys⁴ floule cas,

(“ To wytnesse God ych take, þat aȝen my wylle yt was)

“ And dude by me ys lecherye, alas! þulke stounde!

“ þer uor fle þou hendy mon, vor syker be þou y founde,

“ Wanne he comþ by me to lyyge, he wole þe lyme mele

“ To drawe and vorsuolwe, perauntre at one mele.

Bedwer⁵ bygan to comforty þe womman in þe place,

And by het yre bote of hyre wo bytyme, þoru Gode's grace,

And wende aȝen to þe kyng, and tolde al þys cas.

þe kyng was sorý, þo he wuste, þat⁶ þet mayde aslawe was,

⁶ Ac anauntre he þogte hym do, & dude hym⁷ in weye,

þys clene mayde vorto⁸ awreke, and ys felawes beye.

¹ And as this foule Geant wold haue leye hure by, This ilk faire mayde he slogh thurgh his lechery. Tho yede he to me, olde wrecche, his lechorye to fulfille, I take God to witnesse hit was a ye my wille, So that euere wole, whan hym lust with me haue a do. And thus I lyue in this penance, and dury moch wo. Wel sone he wole come her to me, and if though her be founde, Though shalt sey waillaway, & curse the harde stounde. Bedewer *Ar.* ² *Namque, recepto infra tenerri-*

*mum pectus timore, dum eam nefandus ille amplecteretur, vitam, diuturniore luce dignam, finivit. Ut igitur illum, quæ erat mihi altera spes, altera vita, altera dulcedo jucunditatis, fædo coitu suo deturpare nequivit, detestanda venere succensus, mihi invita (Deum & senectutem meam testor) violentiam ingessit. Fuge, dilecte mi, fuge, &c. Galfr. Mon. ³ L. wrecche. ⁴ L. foule. ⁵ The *Ar.* ⁶ In a venture *Ar.* ⁷ In his weye, *Ar.* ⁸ A wreke, with his felawes tweye *Ar.**

Ar hii come vpe ¹ þys hul, arst he was ycome
 þys grýslyche geant, & hadde an vatte baru ynome,
 And yspýted hým þoru out mýd an ýrene spýte,
 And rostede in þys grete fure, to abbe þe folle býte.
 Artur bed ys ² felawes, talate hým ýworþe alone,
 Ac gýf hii seye hým in nede, þat hii me made targynge none.
 Kýng Artur hým blessede, and baldelyche ynou
 Toward þys grýslyche ³ fourme myd gode herte hým drou.
 þe ⁴ geant, þo he sey hým come, býgan ys mace adrawe,
 þat tueye stalwarde men ne ssolde nozt ⁵ enes wawe.
 Toward ⁶ þe heued þe kýng he smot, ac he henite mýd ys
 sselde.
 Ac gut he brýde aladoun, and wel harde ýt velde.
 Yor ýt ⁷ þorte al þe hul mýd þe stroc was astoned.
 Artur was lyzt ynou, as he was ýwoned.
 He hupe vp, þo he wroþþe was, and ys suerd adrou,
 And smot ⁸ þen ssrewe in the frount, mýd gode earnest ýnoug.

¹ To the hul, the Geant was come, And hadde broght a gret swyn, that he hadde nome, *Ar.*
² Felawes tho to lete hym al one, *Ar.* ³ Gest with good hert he drogh *Ar.* ⁴ *Mox illos ut, nihil tale præmeditatus, aspexit, festinavit clavam suam sumere, quam duo juvenes vix à terra erigerent. Evaginavit ergo rex gladium suum, & prætenso clipeo, quantum velocitus sinebat, properabat eum præcedere, antequam clavam cepisset. At ille, non ignarus meditationis, jam cepe-*

rat eam, regemque interposito clipeo tanto conamine percussit, quod sonitus ictus & tota littora replevit, & aures ejusdem ultra modum hebetavit
Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Ones *Ar.*
⁶ The kyng's hed he smot; he hept hym wyth his shelde. But yut he bowede hit al doun, and wel harde hit felde. For hit ferde of the stroc al the hulle was stoned. Arthur was light a fote, as he was woned. And lept vp, tho he wra-
 thed was, *Ar.* ⁷ *F. þogte,*
⁸ The *Ar.*

Ac þe vel & fless was so ¹ bard, & þe scolle hard & þycke,
 þat, vor þey yt ne come noȝt þoru, þe dunt nas noȝt wycke.
 And ys mace he dude ek bytuene, ² ac þet blod adoun wende
 So vaste in eye, and in face, þat hym ney ablende.
 þe kyng ³ hupte her & þer, & leyde on euere vaste,
 So strong vas þe ssrewe, þat no dunt ne myȝte hym adoun
 caste.

He vemde, & grunte, & stod aȝen, as yt were a strong bor,
 þat euere wole aȝen þe stroc, vorte he ne may namor.
 þe kyng smot euere her and þer, so þat atte laste
 Ernest of herte he nome to hym, and adrou so vaste
 Calyburne, ys god suerd, þat he scolle clef a tuo,
 þat þe suerd was al þer inne yhud, ⁴ þat brayn ornout also.
 þo ⁵ gryslych ȝal þe ssrewe þo, þat grislych was ys bere.
 He vel dounȝ as a gret ok, þat byneþe ycorue were,
 þat yt þoȝte þat al hul myd þe vallynge ssok.
 þo stod þe kyng and lou, þey ech lyme hym ok,
 Vor he was werȝ yfagt. Bedwer he het þere,
 þat he ⁶ croune of þe grislych heued, & to castel bere.
 So þat hii come to her felawes ⁷ in dawynge.
 So noble ⁸ los nas neuere yhurð, as me bar þo þe kyng.

¹ Togh, and the scolle so
 thicke, That hit greuede hym
 noȝt ful muche, thegh he harde
 hitte *Ar.* ² And yut the blod
 out wende, And ran in his eyen
 so, that hit hym muche a blen-
 de *Ar.* ³ Lepte *Ar.* ⁴ The
 brayn orn out also. So grisly
 yul the sherrewe, and grisly

was his bere, And fel doun
 as an oke, that for torne
 were *Ar.* ⁵ *Exclamavit ve-*
ro invisus ille, & velut quer-
cus, ventorum viribus era-
dicata, cum maximo sonitu
corruit Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Smyte
 of *Ar.* ⁷ In the dawenyng
Ar. ⁸ A los was neuere *Ar.*

Hys men truste þe bet to hym, and mony blessynge
 He adde, vor he delýuerede men of an so voule þynge.
 þo kyng Arture's men y come were eckon,
 Sone hii drowe hem toward France, vorto seche her fon.
 Hem com týtynge, þat ¹ emperour to France ycome was
 Mýd so gret folc hym to seche, þat such neuere ýseye was.
 þer of nas nozt þe kýng adrad, ² ac vorþore he wende býsyde,
 And býgan to ³ puthe ýs pauylons, hym vorto abyde.
 þe erl of Oxenford he nom, and anoþer erl al so,
 And sýre Waweýn, ýs sýster sone, þo al þýs was ýdo,
 And to Lucýe þe senatour in þýs manere hem sende,
 To hote hym, þat hastelyche out of France he wende,
 Oþer þat he come ⁴ amorwe, bataýle vorto do,
 Vorto cuþe, weþer adde beterre rygzt þer to.
⁵ þýs noble kýngtes wende vorþ, and hete Lucýe so
 Vorto wende out of France, ⁶ oþer bataýle do,
 Quýntylyan, ýs neuue, ansuerede atten ende,
 þat he nas nozt þuder ycome, out þanne vorto wende,
 Ac to gouerný France, ⁷ þat of rygzte of Rome ýs,
 And þat bote guldþynge and bost noþýng mýd Brutons nýs.
⁸ Sýre ⁹ Waweýn, þe gode kýngt, was þo wroþ ýnou,
 And among al þat folc hupte ner, and ys suerd adrou,

¹ Themperour *Ar.* ² Ac
 wende ther by side *Ar.* ³
 Picche his pavelones, them-
 perour to a bide *Ar.* ⁴ On
 the morwe, *Ar.* ⁵ Thes *Ar.*
⁶ Or elles the bataille do.
 The senatour's cosyn Quin-
 cian answerede gayue atten-

ende, *Ar.* ⁷ That holden of
 Rome is, *Ar.* ⁸ Sire Wa-
 wayn the good knyght was
 tho wroth y nogh, God wot,
 And sodeynly drogh his
 sweord, & of his hed he smot,
 And with that hed to hors he
 lepte, ther folwede hym y

And smot of þat heued, & anon þat heued myd hym nom.
 And wýþ ys felawes to ys hors vor hem all gut he com.
 Ac wat an horse, wat a vote, þe Romeyns hym sjwyde ynouz.
 Vorto awreke her gret maýster, þat syre Waweýn slou.
 Geryn, erl of Carcoys, þat myd kyng Arture was,
 He býturnede hym þo he sey þe Romeyns luþer pas,
 And on þoru out þat body he smot myd ys lance.
 þe erl of Oxenford ek þogte of ys cheance,
 And býturnde hym, & myd ys lance þoru þe þrote smot on.
 And þus þys þre gode kýngtýs stured hem among her fon.
 þo was þer on, þat het Marcel, þat fondede myd al ys maýn,
 Forto ¹awreke Quintýlyan, to sle syre Waweýn,
 Syre Waweýn hym býturnde, & an stroc hym gef,
 þat al ²þat heued & þe brest ³clanlýche hym to clef.
 “Go,” he seyde, “to ⁴Quintýlyan in helle þer he ys,
 “And seye hym, þat syre Waweýn hym sende word þys,
 “þat suche strokes þe Brutons conne gýue ýwys,
 “⁵þat he seyde, þat myd hym bote gulpýnge & bost nýs.
 “Vor ⁶ýchot wel þuder þou ssalt, þýn del þou mygt hym ssewe.
 Hýs felawes he bed turne agen, ⁷al þey hii were vewe.

nowe Of Romeyns, to haue
 wreke hure maistre, & made
 gret a vowe. Geryn Erl of
 Chartres, that messenger also was,
 Byturnde hym, whan he sey the
 Romaynes folwe such a paas,
 And thurgh the body on he smot
 with his good launce *Ar.* ⁹*Ira-*
tus illico Gwalguanus, ense,
quo accinctus erat, irruit in
eum, &, ejusdem capite ampu-
tato, ad equos cum sociis re-

greditur. Insequuntur ita-
que Romani, partim pede,
partim equis, ut concivem
suum in legatos omni nisu dif-
fugientes vindicent Galfr. Mon.

¹ A venge Quincian, and
 quelle sire *Ar.* ² The *Ar.*
³ Al clene he to claf *Ar.*
⁴ Quincian *Ar.* ⁵ For he
 seide, but ýlpyng and bost
 with Brutons is *Ar.* ⁶ Ywot
Ar. ⁷ Al thogh they *Ar.*

Hii turnde azen, & ech of hem atte leste one slou.
 Ac euere þe Romeyns after sýwede vaste ynouȝ.
 So þat þer com out of an wode, as ýt was býspeke,
 An sýx þousend of Brutons, her felawes vorto awreke.
 Hii come out mýd god eýr, and asaylede vaste
 The Romeyns, & monýe slowe, & somme adoun caste.
 þo to Petreye, a gret Romeyn, þýs týdýnge come,
 Ten þousend of hors ý wrýe mýd hým sone he nome,
 Vorto helpe ýs felawes, and þo oþer ne mýȝte be,
 Toward þe wode, fram ¹ wanne he come, þe Brutons gonne
 to fle.

Ac þo hii come among narwe heggýs, hii stode azen anon,
 And turnde ² þe breste azen, & vaste slowe her fon.
 And þe Romeyns stod azen þo, þat þer was gret slaght.
³ þe erl of Oxenford ýsey, þat þýs fare nas noȝt,
 þulke, þat he mest truste to, as a gret companýe,
 He bed hým sýwý, trwelyche to do chyualerye.
 þo þýs vorewarde was ýmad, þoru out ⁴ ost he drou,
 And percede þe ost þoru out, and vaste aboute slou.
 So þat to her majster Petreye he come,
 And vaste, as he adde ýþoȝt, bý þe necke hým nome,
 And ⁵ þraste hým adoun of ýs hors, & hým sulue al so
⁶ Anowarde hým vel adoun, as he adde ýþoȝt to do."

¹ Whennes that hii come,
Ar. ² Toward hure enemýes,
 & faste leyde hem on *Ar.* ³ So
 that the Erl of Oxenford seygh
 hure fare was noȝt, *Ar.* *Adeo*
ut in Codice etiam Harleyano
was pro nas forsitan sit repo-

nendum. ⁴ This ost *Ar.*
⁵ Wrast *Ar.* *quo modo etiam*
in Codice Harleyano potest
legi, si litteram primam
non pro þ sed pro p (nam
in hoc codice eodem modo
hæ litteræ effinguntur) ha-
beas.

þe Romeyns sturte ¹ to'' anon, her prince vp to rere,
 þe Brutons to helpe ² her alf, vaste aboute were.
 þer was pultýng and ssouýng, and stroc mony one.
 So þat þe Brutons atte laste, among alle her fon,
 Mýd strengþe ladde vorþ Petreýe ³ her prince þere.
 þo þe Romeýns were wyþ out chef, dýscomfortd hii were
⁴ And to spradde hem her & þer, & þe oþere after vaste,
 And slowe & despoýlede, and to grounde hem caste,
 And astored hem mýd her armes, & þe hexte alýue nome,
 So þat mýd gret prowessse to ⁵ þe'' kyng Arture hii come.
⁶ Welle þat þe kyng was þo glad, vor he nuste her of nocht,
 Vayre gýftýs he hym gef, and wel mo he adde yþoht.
 þe prysons amorwe to Parýs he sende,
 To holde in prison, & wyþ ⁷ hým god condut þer wende.
 þe Romeyns ⁸ þohte þýs wel, and, as þe maýstres hete,
 Výtene þousend þer wende, þýs prisons vorto mete.
 þo þe Brytons come mýd þe prisons þar,
 þe Romeyns come agen hem al anonywar,
 And wende hem to ssende anon, ac þe Brutons agen stode,
 And defended hem wýle hii mýgte mýd wel stourdy mode.
 So þat, vor defaute of help, hii were al ney ýssend.
 Ac þo com þe duc of Peyto, as God adde þe grace ýsend,

beas. Fel doun euene vp
 hým, and ley ther bothe two
Ar.

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² Hure lord,
 faste *Ar.* ³ The Romeynes
 prince there *Ar.* ⁴ And dis-
 parpled her & ther, the Bru-

tones after hem faste, *Ar.*
⁵ *Deest Ar.* ⁶ The kyng
 was tho glad y nogh, for he
 wiste ther of nocht, *Ar.*
⁷ Hem *Ar.* ⁸ Thoght her
 on wel *Ar.*

Mýd þre þousend hors ywrýe, & þer of was ¹ y war.
 þo were þe Brutons glad ýnou, & þen feld made bar,
 And þe kyng of ² Syrge, and mony oþer hii slowe,
 And lonerdýnges, þat hii nome, to prison vaste hii drowe.
 þo hii to þe kýng come, and ssewed her stalwardhede,
 þe kýng was þo glad ýnou, vor hym þogte he nadde no drede.

LUCÝE þe senatour in þogt was he sone,
 In such ard cas as hým vel, wat were best to done.
 So þat he þogte ³ stýlleyche, to a strong cyte wende,
 Vorte þe emperour hým mýgte more poer sende.
 Kýng Arture was her of ýwar, and þogte, ar he slepe,
 Mýd al ýs poer bý þe wey somwar hým ⁴ kepe.
 Vorþ he wende mýd ýs ost, and þo he was ý come
 To þe stede, þer he wolde bee, cheueteyns he made somme;
 As þe kyng of Cornwayle, and of Scotlond al so,
 Of Norþweye, of Denemarch, of Bruteýne, of Peýto,
 Of Gascoýne, of Normandýe, and erles gut þerto
 Of Cartoýs, of Oxenford, of Leycestre al so,
 And syre Wawein ýs neuue, flour of corteýsye.
 Hýs ost he delde a seuene, and in ech companýe
 Vyf þousend and vyf hondred he dude of bachelerye
 And výtý and výue, and þat was vayr seyngnerýe.
 þe eýgteþe ost to hým sulue he adde þer wyþoute,
 Sýx þousend and sýx hondred þere were in þulke route

¹ *Id est*, he was aware of the trap of the Romans. Nam, "*Guithardus etenim, dux Pictavensium, comperto*" | "*dolo cum tribus milibus aduenerat,*" in Galfr. Mon. ² Sirie, *Ar.* ³ Priuely, *Ar.* ⁴ To kepe *Ar.*

And syxtý and syxe, and ys dragon yrerd of golde,
 As in stede of ys baner, and þanne, gýf eny wolde
 Come as to defense, þat ner wounded were,
 Oþer wery, as in a castel recetted were þere.
 þo he adde þys ost ýset, he býgan hem rede,
 And in þys bataýle to conseýly, and þes wordes seyde :

“ Myn ¹ leue ² priue kýngtes, þat gode abbýþ euere y be,
 (“ Vor non, as wýde as ys þe worl, me ne ssal goure per yscy)
 “ ³ ze abbeþ ý mad leuedý, Brutayne goure owe lond,
 “ Of þrettene kýnedoms, þat we abbeþ in vr hond.
 “ Vor þey ze abbeþ nou výt zer ⁴ of bataýle vn vsed be,
 “ gut in goure noble prowesse wel ⁵ durýnde ých zou se,
 “ þat so gret folc of Romeýns ze vewe mad fle
 “ In to þys toun her býuore, þat sone wolleþ out te.
 “ And ze ssolle hem mete & quelle, as so monye ssepe, vor nozt.
 “ Hii ⁶ wende wel her owe sleuþe on zou abbe y cast,
 “ Wanne hii wolde of goure lond so vyllyche abbe truage
 “ And noble men, as ze beþ, býnge in so vyle seruage.
 “ Nuteþ hii nozt þe chyualerye, þat ze abbeþ in France ýdo,
 “ In Norþweýe, & in Denemarch, & in oþer londes al so,
 “ Of her stýnkýnge seruyse þat ze abbeþ out ýbrozt ?
 “ þys alue men ze ssolle wýnne wel lyztloker & vor nozt.

¹ *Domestici mei, qui Britanniam terdenorum regnorum fecistis dominam, vestra congratulor probitati, quam nullatenus deficere, immo magis vigere, considero &c.* Galfr. Mon. ² Preuede Ar. ³ Ye haueth wonne to Brutayne, that is our kynde lond, Thritty

grete kýngdomes, and beth nogh in oure hond Ar. ⁴ Out of bataille be, Ar. ⁵ Duryng Ar. ⁶ *Sane orientalium gentium segnitiam in vobis esse existimabant, dum patriam vestram facere tributariam, & vosmetipsos subjugare affectarent* Galfr. Mon.

“ 1 Wuch

“¹ Wuch onouers wolde zou come, zȳf ze hem ouercome?

“ Vor we wolde anon þer after vorþ and wynne Rome.

“ Of þe tresour, þat zou þanne ² worþ,” ne of tounes, ne of
tours,

“ Ne of londes, non ende ne worþ, ne of oþere honours.

þet folc by hete hȳm þo echon, prest vor to be

To deȳe raþer in ³ feld, þan þe bataȳle fle.

Lucye þe cenatour al so in ys dede

Ordeȳned and radde ys ost, and þes wordes seȳde:

“ Mȳne noble kȳngȳs, to was poer and heste

“ Alle londȳs ssole abouȳe ⁴ to⁵ by Weste and by Este,

“ þencheþ on zoure elderne, þat were of so noble mȳȳte,

“ ⁶ Ne dradde noȳt to ssede her blod, vorto wynne her rȳȳt,

“ Ac euere foȳte, ⁶ as hem nere deþ ȳssape none,

“ An so hii wonne her seȳgnerye, & ouercome her fon,

“ And adde seruage of al þe world, were ȳt nou wel býgonne.

“ þat we lore þe nobleȳe, þat hii so noblyche wonne?

An ern, in stede of ȳs baner, he sette vp of golde,

And wende toward þȳs bataȳle, ahȳde woso wolde.

Hii made her crȳ in eȳþer half, & to gader esmȳte,

Wo nuste neuere of slagȳt, þere he mȳȳte ȳwȳte.

⁷ þat folc vel doun to grounde aslawe, as leues doþ of tre,

þe Brutons adde þe worse ⁸ vorste, vor hem was loþ to fle.

¹ Gret honour yogh wole
byfalle, the Romeynes and ye
ouercome, For we wole a non
ther after wende to wynne
Rome *Ar.* ² Shul haue, *Ar.*

³ The feld, *Ar.* ⁴ *Deest Ar.*

⁵ That dradde *Ar.* ⁶ As

thogh hem nere deth shape
non, *Ar.* ⁷ The folk *Ar.*

⁸ Fight *pro* vorste in *Ar.*

þe kyng Bedwer was þere aslawe, vor þe kȳng of Medes
him slou

Wyd an lance þoru þe þrote, as he toward him drou.

Kaȳ ȳs felawe hȳm wolde awreke, kyng of Aungeo,

And to deþe was in þulke ¹ verde ȳwounded al so.

And ȳut, as a noble kȳngt, hȳs felawe's body he nome,

And þer wyþ, ded as ȳt was, to þe kȳnge's dragon come.

Ou! louerd! þe deol þat þer was of hem of Normandȳe,

þo hii seȳe her kȳng aslawe, flour of chyualerȳe!

þe deol ek of hem of Aungeo, þo hii her kȳng ȳseȳe

² Wȳþ wunden to rauced so, þat he moste nede deȳe!

Hȳrel, Bedwer's neuue, þo ȳs vncle aslawe he seȳ,

³ He verde as a wytles mon, yt was to be hȳm neȳ.

Mȳd þre hondred hors ywrȳe in ȳs wod rage he wende

Vorto a wreke ȳs ⁴ vncle deþ, as ver ȳs herte tende.

He perced ost and oþer, vorto he ȳseȳ ȳnou

þe kȳngȳs baner of Medes, þat ȳs vncle slou.

So gret was ȳs herte, þat of deþ he ne rogte noþȳng.

⁵ To grounde he smot he & ȳs, & aslowe þen kȳng,

And þer, as ȳs vncle ded laȳ, ȳs foule caroȳne he broȳte,

And rȳgt þer bȳ pece mele haked ȳt al to nogte.

þo gradde he to ȳs felawes, mȳd gode herte þere,

To legge on vaste þe luþer men, þe wule hii ⁶ versse were.

¹ Route wounded *Ar.*

² With his woundes alto
raced, that *Ar.* ³ He ferd, as
he were wod, myght noman
come hym negh *Ar.* ⁴ Un-
cle's deth, so his herte tende

Ar. ⁵ But atte laste the
kyng Mede to his eynde he
broȳte, And thuder, that
his vncle laȳ, his caroȳne
broȳte *Ar.* ⁶ Fresh *Ar.*

Vor þe prowesse þat he adde ydo, hii stured hem alle vaste,
 1 And fogte in eyþer alf, and þet folc adoun caste.

In þe Romeyns alf to deþe þer were ydo
 þe kýng of Babylone, & þe kýng of Spayne al so,
 And þe kýng of Medes, & tueye gret scenatours, & folc wýþ-
 onte ende.

2 In þys half þere were aslawe þe noble men and hende,
 Syre Lyger duc of Babyloýne, & anoþer duc al so,
 And þe erl of Salesburý, and of 3 Cýcestre þerto;
 And also þe erl of Baþe, so þat þoru þys cas
 þe compaynye 4 aþes half muche aneþered was.

þo com þe kyng of Brutayne, & syre Waweýn þe hende,
 Mýd her nywe ost al 5 verss, & stured hem in ech ende;
 So þat þer were among hem þere to deþe y do
 A gret duc, and tuo þousend, and oþer mýd al so.

6 þe kyng Howwel, & syre Waweýn, 7 þat so gode bodýes
 were,

8 Euere hii were ylych verss, & slowe here & þere.
 Bote hii som mon brogte adoun, newe dundes hii smýte.
 Weþer of hem betere were, 9 strong yt was to wýte.

Syre Waweýn wýlnede euere mýd al ys mygte
 Mýd Lucýe þe scenatour in bataýle to fygte.

10 Lucýe ne wýlnede naþemo, noþyng so muche alonde,
 As to fygte mýd a such kynzt, hym sulue vorto fonde.

1 So that ther was in ai-
 ther side much folc down caste

Ar. 2 In Brutones side *Ar.*

3 Chestre *Ar.* 4 Of Bru-

tones half much a peired was

Ar. 5 Fressh *Ar.* 6 *Deest Ar.*

7 *Omittit Ar.* 8 That place

hii made whar hii come, and
 stored her and there *Ar.*

9 Wonder it *Ar.* 10 Lucie

welnde also no thyng more in

loude, Than forto fight with

sire Wawayn hym self forto

fonde *Ar.*

So þat hii mette hem þer, boþe hii were wel vawe.
¹ þer were dundes arȝt, and suerdes wel ydrawe.
 þe Romeyns come to her maýster sone, to helpe hem in such
 cas,

So þýcke, þat syre Waweyn ney ýbroȝt to grounde was.
 þe kýng Arture ýt vnder zet, and come sone in astounde.
 "Wat do ² ze," he seyde, "syre kýngtýs? Quelleþ on to
 grounde.

"Wý lete ze ³ þýs alue men þus longe alýue go?
 "þencheþ on þe bataýles, þat ze abbyþ ar þýs y do,
 "On vr elderne, þat þýs wrecches ⁴ worrede mýd vnrýȝte,
 "On vre franchýse, þat hii wolde býnýme vs, zyf hii mýȝte.
 "Ne lateþ none alýue go, to grounde smýteþ zoure fon.
 "Sýre Calýbourne ýs suerd he býgan to ssake anon,
 And slou to grounde her & þer, ac he ne smot noȝt one,
 þat he ne slou hym oþer ýs hors, &, among hem echon,
 þe kýng of Lýbye & of Bytýnie hym sulf he gan quelle
 Myd Calýbourne, & sende her heþene soulýs to helle.
 þe Brutons, as hii versse were, to grounde þo slowe,
 And þe Romeyns in her alf vaste ek aȝen drowe.
 Lucye, to hardý ýs men, prýkede her and þer,
 And býgonne as anýwe bataýle ryȝt as hii versse were.
 Morond, erl of Gloucestre, mýd ys ost bý syde
 In an valeýe honede, þe endýnge vorto abyde.
 Atte laste myd ys versse volc to hem he come þar,
 And býclosede ⁵ þýs Romeyns bý hýnde anonýwar.

¹ Dundes þer were grete y knyghtes alle? quelleth *Ar.*
 smyte of sweordes that were ³ Thes halue men *Ar.* ⁴ Wer-
 drawe *Ar.* ² Ye nogh my ⁵ red *Ar.* ⁵ The *Ar.*

þo were þe Brutons al aboue, hii slowe þo to grounde
ze mony þousend of þe Romeyns in a lutel stounde.
þe ¹ scenatour was wýþ a sper Lucye þoru ýsmýte.
þo adde þe Brutons þe maystrýe al býgýte,
þe Romeyns, þat mýgte of scapýe, flowe vaste sone,
And þe Brutons after, vorte hii were alle ouercome.
² Armes hii adde þere & hors, & alle rýchesse ý nou.
þe kýng, þo hal þýs was ýdo, toward reste drou,
And let þe bodyes of ys men, þat aslawe were,
Gaderý out and burýe noblýche ýnou þere.
Kýngýs in to her owe lond he let lede al so,
As Bedwer in to Normandie, and Kay to Aungeo,
And anoþer in to Flandres, and oþere of þe route
Kýngtýs he let burýe in abbeyes þer aboute.
Men býsýde of þe lond he het to burýe ýs fon.
Vor hé ne kepte vor reuþe, þat þer wer vnbured non.
Ac Lucye's body he sende ³ hým to Rome,
And bed hem, þat her maystre's body vor ýs truage nome,
And þat he nolde neuere more oþer truage hem sende,
Ac he wolde hým sulf gút þuder come, & seche hem in ech
ende.

Grettore bataýle þan þýs was, ých wene, nas neuere non,
Bote ýt weré þulke of Troye, vor þer nas vnnþe non
Prince in al þe world, þat ne moste be þer, oþer sende
Fram þe West side of þe world to þe Estmost ende.

¹ Cheuenteyn *Ar.* ² *Ar.* | hors and rýchesse y nogh *Ar.*
mure the Brutones hadde & | ³ Hit *Ar.*

þo adde þe kȳng Arture ý wonne fram þe Westmost see
 1 Anon to þe mouns al þat lond, ar he come age,
 He þoȝte 2 wynne al clene Rome, & al þe lond þer aboute.
 And vorto 3 passȳ vorþ þe mouns, he ȝarkedede vaste is route.
 And as he was prest to do þulke noble dede,
 A messenger com fram þȳs lond, & nȳwe tȳdȳnge hym seyde,
 þat Modred, ýs neuueu, 4 wan he býtoe þȳs lond,
 Adde ýnome ys kȳnedom clanlyche in ýs hond,
 And ýcrouned hym sulue kȳng, þoru þe quene rede,
 And huld hȳre in 5 spousbruche in vȳl flesse's dede.
 Alas! þe luþer tricherye! hou mȳȝte 6 be more?
 þo was þe kȳng Arture vol of sorwe and sore,
 7 In wuch alf turne he nuste þo, weþer Est þe West,
 Ac to wreke hȳm 8 of ýs luþer neuueu, ys herte ber euere best:
 þe veage toward Rome he 9 býleuede vor þȳs cheance,
 And þe kȳng Howel of Brutaine mȳd þe poer of France
 He 10 býleuede þer, towardy ýs londes byȝonde see,
 And hopede to wȳnne Rome, wanne he come eft age.
 Mȳd þe poer of þȳs londe hȳderward he drou,
 And mȳd 11 þe kynges here býsȳde hȳm þoȝte 12 er longe ýnou.

1 A non to the mountes to ward Rome non was hym a yee, *Ar.* 2 To wynne *Ar.*
 3 Passe ouer the mountes, he grethed faste his route *Ar.*
 4 Wham he bytoke *Ar.* 5 Spousbreche in vil lechores ded *Ar.*
 6 Hit be *Ar.* 7 In whather half tourne he myȝhte he nuste Est or West, *Ar.*
 8 Of Mordred, his herte *Ar.*

9 *Lefte Ar.* 10 *Bilefte, to kepe his londes ther by yonde the see Ar.* 11 — *dimisso Hoëlo, duce Armoricorum, cum exercitu Galliarum, ut partes illas pacificaret, festim cum insularis tantummodo regibus, eorumque exercitibus, Britanniam remeavit Galfr. Mon.* 12 *Erst Ar.*

Ac Modred, þe luþer suýke, þer býuore býsozte
 Chelrýk kýng of Saxons, þat ¹ he hem help brozte,
 And he byhet hym and ys al Kent ver and ner,
 Al þat Hengýst adde wule ² wyþe kýnge's daye Vortýger :
 He býhet hým and ys also al Norþomberlond,
³ Al þat lond fram Humber anon into Scotlond.
⁴ þo þat eýzte hondred ssýpes into þys lond he brozte
⁵ Vol of Saracens ýarmed, as he hým býsozte.
 Gret poer of Yrlond Modred hým ⁶ wan al so
 Of Pýcars, and of ech maner men þer to,
 þat he wuste þat no loue to þe kyng Arture bere.
 So þat eýzte score þousend of hors ýwrye þer were
 In ⁷ ys ost, þo hii were gadered in þýs cas,
 Wat of Cristýne, wat of payns, & al to muche þat was.
 þo Arture mýd ys poer ariuede in þýs londe,
 Modred býgan mýd ys ost azen vaste stonde.
 Atte hauene an batayle hii smýte mýd gret maýn,
 þer was aslawe ⁸ þen hende kýngt þe noble syre Waweýn,
 And Aunsel þe kyng of Scotlond, and moný þousend also.
 Ac luþer Modred atte laste, þo al þýs was ý do,
 Flen mýd al ys poer to Wýnchestre vaste,
 So þat þe kyng Arture þe veld adde atte laste.
 þo ⁹ Guanwaur, þe luþer quene, hurde of þys cas,
 Fram Euerwyk to Carleon heo flen mýd quyc pas,

¹ He som help hym broght,
Ar. ² By kynges's *Ar.* ³ And
 the lond toward Humber *Ar.*
⁴ So that vi. hundred shipes
Ar. at Galfridus Mon. plane
ut Codex Harleyanus. ⁵ Ful

of mysbileued men, as he *Ar.*
⁶ Gat also *Ar.* ⁷ This ost,
 whan hii *Ar.* ⁸ The curteys
 knyght Walwayn *Ar.* ⁹ Go-
 noure, *Ar.*

And þy com nonne þer, to lýbbe in chaste lýue.
¹ Som wat heo was er adrad, ar heo hýcde so blýue.
 Heo ne hýcde noȝt agen ýre louerd, to wolcome hym to londe.
² ȝut ýre was betere nonne be, þan come vnder ýs honde.
 þo kýng Arture adde ýbured ýs folc þat ded was,
 He sywed after þe traytor myd wel quyc pas.
 þe ssrewe ³ ȝarked ýs ost, and agen hým com,
 And wyþout Wýnchestre anoþer bataýle he nom.
 þer hii dude sorwe ýnou, and slowe to grounde vaste,
 Ac þe traytor was ⁴ býneþe, and flen atte laste
 To Cornwaýle myd god eýr, he ne dorste no ner abyde.
 þer he gadered hým nýwe ost, aboute in eche syde,
 So þat he adde ⁵ vnder al. myd þat hým býleued er,
 Sýxtý þousend hors ⁶ ý wrýe, al to muþe was þer.
 Hys ost he ⁷ dýȝte suyþe wel, al hou ýt ssolde be,
 And suor he wolde raþer deýe, þan euer eft to fle.
 Kýng Arture was angúysous ⁸ in ýs companýe,
 þat þe luþer traytor adde of scaped hým so tuýe.
 He sywed hym myd ýs folc to Cornwaýle vaste,
 Býsyde þe water of Camble hii mete ⁹ hem" atte laste.
 þer hii smýte an bataýle deol uol ý nou,
 þat deol ýt was so muþe folc in eyþer syde me slou.
 Vor þer ne býleued in noþer syde none heý mon vnneþe,
 Kýng, ne duc, ne oþer, þat nas ýbroȝt to deþe.

¹ A gast heo was to religion, er heo highed so blyue. Heo ne yede a yens t hure lord, *Ar.* ² Beter hure thoghte nonne to be, than to come, *Ar.* ³ Yut ordeýned his ost, *Ar.*

⁴ Ouercome, and flegh, *Ar.* ⁵ Under hym, with that hym leuede er, *Ar.* ⁶ Heled, alto *Ar.* ⁷ Gan a raye faste, hugh hit sholde be, *Ar.* ⁸ And his *Ar.* ⁹ Deest *Ar.*

Ac Modred þe traytor adde more folc ¹ of" y nou.
 þo þe kȳng Arture ysey, þat me ys folc so slou,
 And þe kyng of Denemarch was aslawe, & þe kyng also
 Of Norþweye, & of ys oþer men mony þousend þerto,
 And he sey, þat ys fon stode eure agen vaste,
 Tō þe lutel folc þat he adde he spec atte laste.
 " ² Sulle, he seyde, " vr lȳf dēre ar we be ded,
 " ³ And ychelle sulle mȳn dēre ynou, wanne þer nȳs oþer red,
 " Abbe ych slawe þe false suȳke, þe luþer traytor,
 " Hyt worþ me þanne vorto deȳe gret joye & honour.
 He drou Calyborne ys suerd, and in eȳther syde slou,
 And vorte he to þe traytor com, made hym weȳ gode ynou.
 He hente of verst ys helm, and suþþe mȳd wylle god
 Anne stroc he gef hȳm, mȳd wel stourdȳ mod,
 And þoru haubert and ys coler, þat nere noþȳng souple,
 He smot of ys heued as lȳztlyche as yt were a lute stouple.
 þat was ys laste chȳualerȳe, þa vayre ended ynou.
 Vor þe folc so þȳcke com, þe wule he her louerd slou,
 Aboute him in ech alf, þat among so monȳ fon
 He aueng deþe's wounde, and wonder nas yt none.
 Ac ouercome vas he nogt, þeȳ ys wunden dedlych were.
 þo ⁴ he adde ys laste chȳualerȳe þus noblyche ydo þere,
 He ⁵ gef þe crowne of þȳs lond þe noble Constantyn,
 (þe erl Cadore's sone of ⁶ of" Cornwayle,) þat was ys cosyn

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² "Selle we," he seyde *Ar.* ³ Myn shal be dēre bought, ther is non othur red *Ar.* ⁴ *Sed & inclitus ille Arturus rex lethaliter vulneratus est, qui illinc ad sananda vulnera sua in insula Aval-*

lonis advectus, cognato suo Constantino, & filio Cadoris ducis Cornubiæ, diadema Britannicæ concessit anno ab incarnatione Domini D. XLII. Galfr. Mon. ⁵ *Desunt hic bina folia in Ar. in quibus, præter alia,*

And let hym lede in to an yle, vorto hele ys wounde,
 And deýde as þe beste kýngt, þat me wuste euere ýfounde.
 Ac napeles þe Brutons and þe Cornewalysse of ys kunde
 Wenýþ he be alyue gut, & abbeþ hym gut in mynde,
 þat he be to comene gut, to wýnne agen þys lond.
 And nozt, vor þan at Glastýnbury ys bones suþþe me wond,
 And þer touore þe heýe wened, amýdde þe quer ýwýs,
 As ys bones lyggeþ, ys tumbel wel vayr ys.
 In výt hondred zer of grace, and fourtý and tuo,
 In þys manere in Cornwale to deþe he was ýdo.

CONSTANTÝN was þo kýng, after þe kýng Arture:
¹ As þe Saxons sette agen hym, þe wule hii mygte dure;
 And Modrede's tueye sones, þe wule hii dorste abyde,
 Ac Constantýn ² hem to drof, eýþer in ys syde,
 þen anne in to Wýnchestre, and þer wýþ sorwe y nou,
 In chyrche to vore þe heýe wened Constantýn hym slou.
 þe oþer flen to Londone, and þoru Constantýn al so.
 þer bý uore þe heýe wened to deþe he was ý do.
 Conan ³ slou suþþe Constantýn in þe þýrdde gere.
 At Stonhenghe he was ýburýd, as ys elderne were.

oratione solutá quædam concepta fuisse à fragmento quodam plane colligo. ⁶ Dele.

¹ The Saxones werred faste on hym, *Ar. omissoas, pro quo ac malim.* ² Aboute hem drof ech on his side, And wente to Wynchestre, *Ar. ³Exindetertio*

anno interfectus est] Constantinus] à Conano, & juxta Utherpendragon infra lapidum structuram sepultus fuit, quæ haud longe à Salesbiria mira arte composita Anglorum lingua Stanheng nuncupatur Galfr. Mon.

Sejn Dauyd deýde þer býuore, býssop of Walýs,
 And þer he was vayre ýburýd, in ys owe chýrche ýwýs.
 Constantyne's neuou Aurelý was kýng þo,
 And leuede in ýs kenedom tuo ȝer and nanmo.

VORTÝPOR was þo kýng vour ȝere vnneþe.
 þe Saxons he broghte al býneþe, & moný on to deþe.

MALGO com þo after hým, þat þe vayroste kýng was,
 þat me wuste euere in þýs lond, & al so þer nas
 Strengore mon non bý ýs daý. vor he wan ek to þýs londe
 þe sýx ýles þat beþ aboute, and heldýs adde an honde,
 As Godlonde, and Orcadas, and al so Yrlonde,
 Norþweýe, and Denemarch, and al so Yslonde.

CARÝC was kýng after hým, þat stalworde mon was,
 Ac to prout he was & to fals, þat ssende þýs londe alas!
 Vor þe Saxons & þe Englýsse men were euere in þýs londe,
 And adde agen þe Brutons euere worre an honde.
 þo hii seýe þe falshede of þe kýng Carrýc,
 Hii wende after ² Godmond, þat was kýng of Affrýc,
 To helpe hem wynne þýs londe, & bý hete hym vayre ynou.
 þe kyng Godmond mýd vayr ost hederward sone drou,
 And mýd hondred þousend men, & sýxty þousend þer to,
 He come here mýd þe Saxons þe worre vor to do.

¹ Katerik Ar. ² *Qui tunc in Hibernia erat, ut è Galfrido Monumetensi liquet.*

þe Saxons, and ¹ þet grete folc, þat come so of Affryc,
 Asayled vaste þe Brutons, and her kyng Carryc.
 Moný batayle hii smýte, & sýwýde vpe hým vaste,
 And fram tounne to tounne hým dryue, so þat atte laste
 Hii dryue hým to ² Cýrencestre, & býsýged hým þer inne.
 þen tounne hii barnde vpen hým, ar hii myzte ³ hym wynne.
 þer hii smýte an batayle. suþþe hii dryue ywýs
 Caryc ouer Seuerne Weste in to Walýs.
 Vor þe ⁴ kunde men of þýs londe recetted were þer
 Euere, wanne of strangemen ýworred hii were,
 þet luþer heþene folc ⁵ varnde þo vaste,
 And ⁶ desturde al þýs londe, and tounes adoun caste.
 Wat mýd fure, wat mýd suerd, hii destrude al þat hii founde.
 Hii ne sparede prest, ne chyrche, þat hii ne brogte to grounde.
 Hii, þat myzte of scapýe, vaste flowe þere
 To Walýs, and to Cornwayle, and hudde hem vor fere.
 þe erche býssop of Londone, and of Euerwýk al so,
 þo hýi seye, þat Cristendom to grounde was al ýdo,
 And chýrchen alle ýcast ýdoun, þe relýkes hii nome ýwýs,
 þat hii adde of holý men, and flowe in to Walys.
 þe relýkes nolde hii nozt býleue, ac bere wýþ hem vor fere.
 Vor raþer hii wolde ýmartred be, þan hii ⁷ ýperýsed were.
 And into þe lasse Brutayne men flowe al so þycke,
 So þat here nas nozt býleued, bote heþene folc and wýcke.

¹ This much folc, *Ar.* | ⁵ Pro barnde. Nam brende in
² Circetre *Ar.* cum i. civitas | *Ar.* sed u pro b sapissime in
 passerum *supra lin. ab ead. ma-* | *vett. libris.* ⁶ Destroyde *Ar.*
 nu. ³ Hit *Ar.* ⁴ Kynde *Ar.* | ⁷ A peyred *Ar.*

So þat fram Norþ into þe Souþ no Cristendom nas,
 Ne fram Seuerne to þe Souþ see, ac pure heþenesse was.
 Alas! alas! þe god Arture, to ¹ ver he was þo.
 Hys deþ brogte to þys lond mucche sorwe and wo.

* **SAXONS** & þe Englysse, & her compaynye,
 Adde þo of þys londe al elene þe maystrye,
 And made hem kýnges of þys lond, as hii adde býuore,
 Ac þe Brutons nadde so clene er neuere her poer uerlore.
 þe Saxons and þe Englysse in pes hulde þo
 Ech kýng ys kýnedom, þat hii dude er in wo.
 Sýx kýnges hii were some týme, as of Kent, of Westsex,
 Of Estangle, of Norþomber, of þe Marche, of Estsex.
 In býgýnnýnge of þys boc me may rede, and nogt lýe,
 Hou mucche lond ech of hem adde to ys partýe.
 þe verste kyng þat of Saxons was, was verst kýng of Kent
 Hengýst, þoru wan þys lond verst was ýssend.
 Hýt was ² eýgte & fyfty zer after Hengýste's kýnedom,
 Ar ený kýng of Saxons in Westsex com.
 Vor Hengýst was kýng fourty zer, & in þe eýgte zere
 After ys deþ at zernemouþe aryued þer were
 Vyf ssypuol of Saxons, ý armed wel ý nou,
 Certýk het her cheunteyn, þat to þys lond hem drou.
 Wel sene zer þer after, a duc, (þat wýde was couþ,)
 Y cluped Port, myd ys ost ⁴ atte hauene of Portesmouþ,

¹ Fer *Ar.* ² The Saxones *Ar.* ³ xlviij. yer after *Ar.*

⁴ Aryued at the hauene *Ar.*

And after Port, þat was ys name, þe hauene me clupeþ so.
 So þat her poer euere wax, þe Brutons ssame to do,
 And mony a batayle hii smyte. So þat atten ende
 þe Saxons wonne of þys lond al þe Souþ ende
 Euere by Souþe Temese fram Est into West.
 Certyk hii made þer kýng, vor he was þerto best.
 Westsex hii clupede ys kýnedom, as ge abbyþ yhurð ylome.
 þys was a lute byuore ar kyng Artur come.
 þe verste kýng of Norþhomber in þe ger of grace býgan
 Vyf hondred & seuene and fourty, ¹ as me telle can.
 After kýng Arture yt was, and þo was Kynryc
 Noble kýng of Westsex, after ys fadyr Certyc.
 Vor þo þe Englysse men adde in þys londe poer,
 Hii worrede Norþward, and wonne ver and ner.
 So þat hii wonne Homberlond, & a noble bachýler,
 þat het Yde, hii made kýng, þer nas naur þo ys per.
 He come of Woden þe olde louerd, as ² in teþe kne,
 þat þe ³ Saracens weneþ, þat he a gret God be.
 Vor þulke Woden, þe grete louerd, sones adde þre,
 Weldeg, and Wýztleg, and Beldeg þat was so fre.
 Of Weldeg come þe kýng of Kent, & þe kýng of þe March of
 þe oþer.
 þe kýng of Westsex & of Homber of þe þrydde, þat was her
 broþer.
 þulke Woden adde a wýf, þat ycluped was dame Frye,
⁴ A Latyn dame Venus, as ýchabbe ýseyd nou tueye.

¹ As y wel telle can *Ar.* | he hadde be. This Woden
² In the tethe gre, *Ar.* ³ Mys- | *Ar.* ⁴ In Latyn *Ar.*
 bileued poeple wende, a God |

¹ þer uore þe Englyſſe clupede, after Woden, Wodnesday,
 þat ys day in þe wouke, and, after Frye, Fryday.
 Vor þe heþene Englyſſe men, þat mys byleued were þo,
 Byleuede, þat in heuene Godes hii were bo,
 And þat to tueye sterren, þat me such ylome
 Venus and Mercurys, hii weneþ þat hii bycome.
 þe Saxons and þe Englyſſe come in to þys londe,
 As we seþþ, at otyme, as ych vnder stonde.
² Her londes supþe, þo hii mygte, hii delde as hii couþe,
 þe Englyſſe þe Northalf, þe Saxons by Souþe,
 As Estsex and Myddelsex, and Souþ ward al Souþsex,
 And al West by ³ North Temese, al clene Westsex.
 þe Englyſſe Northuolc & Southuolc adde al in her hond,
 And al West by North Temese, & al North Humberland.
 And þe kynges of Westsex lengost gonne dure,
 And alle þe oþere wonne to hem, as ge ssole her after yhure.
 þe Brutons, as ychabbe ytold," in West Walys were,
 And worrede cuere, as hii dorste, fram zere to zere.
 Vor by þe kynges' daye Chenlyng, þat was Kenryke's sone,
 Hii dude hem verrere in þys londe, ⁴ þat hii were in wone,
 And wonne þe myddel of þys lond to Bedeford anon,
 And strengþede casteles and astoryde monyon.

¹ The olde Saxones, after
 Woden, cleped Wodnesday,
 And, after dame Frye, his
 wiff, me clepede the Friday
Ar. ² Hure lond sutthe by
 twixt hem hii delde as hii
 couthe, The Englishh in the
 Northhalf, & the Saxones by

Southe. And nempned the
 contrey's after hem, & lefte the
 names olde. As of Estsaxo-
 nes Estsex, of Estenglishh
 Estangle, that is yit holde.
 The Brutons, as y haue told,
Ar. ³ F. Souþe. ⁴ Than hit
 was hure wone, *Ar.*

So

So þat at Bedeforde come þe Saxons,
 And smýte an bataýle, and to dryue þe Brutons,
 And nome þre of her gode castles, þat stronge were al so,
 Eýnesham, and Bunsyntone, and Aýlesbur þerto.
 So þat Cristýndom was al clene ver lore,
 And heþenese ¹ in to al þýs lond, as ých seyde byuore,"
 And yt laste aboute an fourty ȝer, forte Seynt Austyn com,
 And þoru Seyn Gregory þe pope brogte Cristendom.

SEYNT Austyn myd ys felawes to Engeland com
 þoru þe pope Seyn Gregory to prechý Cristendom.
 Maurýce was þo emperour, & þer adde ýbe býuore
 Výfty emperours at Rome, ² subþe God was ybore.
 In þe výf hondred ȝer of Grace Seynt Austýn hýder com
 And four score ȝer and tuo, to prechy Cristendom.
 And aboute an hondred ȝer yt was, and fýftý al so,
 After þat Saxons & Englysse verst come þýs lond to.
 And after kyng Arture's deþe aboute an fourty ȝer
 þat so noble kyng was of þýs lond, as we abbeþ ýtold er.
 þo Seynt Austýn & ys felawes þus come to þýs lond,
³ Wýppe was kyng of þe Marche, & ⁴ Adelfred" of Homber-
 lond;
 Celryc was kyng of Westsex, & of Kent kýng ⁵ Aylbrygt.
 And of Estsex ýs sýster sone, þat me clupede kyng ⁶ Sebrygt,
 Wel an fourty holy men, and monekes ⁷ echone,
 Seynt Austýn adde wyþ hým, & þo nas he noȝt ⁸ one.

¹ In to al this lond by-
 gan to catche more, *Ar.*
² *Ar* God *Ar.* ³ With *Ar.*
⁴ *Deest in. Ar.* ⁵ Etherbert

[*A.* Ethelbert] *Ar.* ⁶ Se-
 bert *Ar.* ⁷ Negh echone, *Ar.*
⁸ Al one *Ar.*

þo hii come in to þys lond, to kyng ¹ Aylbrýxt of Kent,
 In was lond hii aryuede, hii sende her maundement,
 þat hii were fram Rome ycome, in heý message ywýs,
 þat so gret joye ssolde turne, to hym and alle hýs,
 And to joye wyþouten ende, gýf he hem vnder stode.
 “ Suche býhestes,” quaf þe kyng, “ me þencheþ beþ gode,
 “ Lateþ hem vynde mete ýnou, & þat hii abbeþ nede to,
 “ Forte ychabbe wyþ hem yspoke, ² & wyte wat hii wolleþ do.
 For þe kýng wel vnderstod of þe Cristýndom,
 þat by uore hem was in þýs lond, & þoru hem to grounde com.
 So þat atte laste, (wat halt yt to telle longe ?)
 þe kyng býgan and ys folc Cristendom auonge.
 And of Seynte Peter & Seyn Poul an chýrche he let rere
³ In Est ende of Kanterbury, þat þe ⁴ chef chýrche were.
 Erchebýssop of Kanterbury Seynt Austýn was þer
 þe verst þat euer was, vor at London þe se was er.
 þo com Merlyne's word to soþe atte ende,
⁵ þat þe dýgne se to Kanterbury of London ssolde wende.
 At Roucestre, þat ys ⁶ toun in Kent of grete fame,
 Seynt Austyn made a býssop, Seyn Juste was ys name,
 þat was a monek ys felawe. So þat atte fyn
⁷ Sýn Juste was þe vorste býssop, after Seynt Austýn.

¹ Ethelbert *Ar.* ² To wite
Ar. ³ In the Est *Ar.* ⁴
 Hed churches were *Ar. sed*
alibi in eod. Codice (in quo
sanemultæ, minus necessariæ,
repetitiones) hed church were.
⁵ That the se of London to

Canterbury sholde wende *Ar.*
sed alibi the dignyte *pra* the
 se. ⁶ A toun *Ar.* ⁷ Seynt
 Just was Erchebisshop made
 after Seynt Austyne. Seynt
 Mellyt *Ar.*

SEYN Mellyt þe holy mon in to Estsex wende
 To prechý þer Cristýndom, as Seynt Austyn hym sende.
 Nou departeþ ¹ euere^{ll} Temese Estsex fram Kent.
² Sebrýgt he vond þer kyng, þo he was þuder ywent.
 He turnde hym to Cristyndom, and þe contreye al so.
 Sebrýgt and þe kýng of Kent, þo al þýs was ý do,
 At Londone of Seyn Poul an heued chýrche gonne rere,
 þat gút ys, and Seyn Mellyt ³ byssop made þere.
 þus come, lo! Cristendom agen in to þýs londe
 Among þe heþene Saxons, as ych vnder stonde.
 Ac among þe Brutons in Walýs was euere Cristendom
 Suþþe yt verst þoru þe kyng Lucie hýder come.
 And þat was býuore þulke týme four hondred ger,
 An aboute an four & tuentý, as we abbeþ ýwrýte er.
 þe pope Eleuþerý, þat sende verst hýder Cristendom,
 Was þe ⁴ þretteþe pope, þat after Seynte Peter com.
 þe decýples, þat he hýder sende, Cristendom to brýnge,
⁵ Býleuede in a wýldernesse, after her prechýnge,
 þat me cleuþ nou Glastýnbury, þat desert was þo.
 And þer hii býcome monekes, and nome to hem mo,
 And þer mýd her owe honde hii rerde hem verst ⁶ anchyrche
 Of herdles, and of ⁷ gerden, as hii couþe wurche.

¹ Deest *Ar.* ² Sebert *Ar.* *contexto, &) non ita pridem*
³ Hii made bishop there *Ar.* *à nobis edito, cui tit.* The
⁴ xiii. *Ar.* ⁵ By lefte *Ar.* History and Antiquities of
⁶ *Cujus figuram cum alibi,* Glastonbury, *videsis.* ⁷ Yer-
tum etiam in libro præclaro des, *Ar.*
(ab Antiquario pererudito

And þat was þe verste churche, þat in Engelond come,
 And þe aldest hous al so, as in lawe of Cristendom.
 þeruore me yt aþ euere ycluped, þe olde chýrche, ýwýs.
 Moný ys þe ¹ holy halwe, þat her ý bured ýs,
² Nour so moný in Engelerde, to soþe ých segge þys.
³ And, as me aþ wale ýsed, grettre oþ non nýs,
 þan by þe olde chýrche of Glastynburý, wo so dep oþ nome."
 For þer was chýrche four hondred zer, ar Seynt Austyn hý-
 der come,
 And Seyn Patryc was þer monek, & abbeþ supþe þer,
 ze ar Seynt Austyn come mo þan an hondred zer.
 And in ryzt alf of þe wened ýbured he was þer al so.
 Sýx score zer and on he was old, ar deþ hym come to.
⁴ þus was at Glastýnburý verst ýholde vp Cristendom,
 And supþe nou, after þat þet folc of Englyss hýder come,
 And þe Brutons were ýdryue al in to West Walýs,
 Hii helde vorþ þer Cristendom, and býssopes ýwýs.
 So þat, þo Seynt¹¹ Austyn com among hem, he vond
 Byssopes and monekes moný on in þe lond.
 In þe cýtý of Bangor a gret hous þer was,
 þat were vnder ³ sene cellen, and þer of non nas

¹ Good seynt, *Ar.* ² No-
 whar *Ar.* ³ And, as me by
 olde daye seide, gretter oth
 was [*f. nas*] holde, Than by
 the olde church of Glastyn-
 bury ho so swery wolde *Ar.*
⁴ Thus alther furst at Gla-
 stynbury sprong vp Cristen-
 dom, That sutthe that En-
 glissh men to this londe com,
 That hethene were, The Bru-

tons dryue in to West Walis,
 And ther hii hulde hure Cri-
 stendom, that furst they toke
 ywis. So that whan Seynt
Ar. ⁵ vii. celles, & ther of
 non ther nas, That ccc.
 monekes nere inne othur mo.
 And alle lyuede by hure
 swynch, loke whare they do
 now so. Dinoc het *Ar.*

þat þre hondred monekes ¹ were inne, oþer mo.
 And alle leuede by her sueche, loke ȝyf hem nas wō.
 Dynok het her abbod, þat gret clerc was and god.
 Seynt Austyn was wel y payd, þat her býlyue was so god.
 And naþeles he hem en yoynede ² bocsomnessē do
 To þe herchebýssop of Kanterburý, & to Englysse men also,
³ And among Englysse men vorþ myd hym Cristendom to
 amende,
 And wende aboute and prechý, as þe pope hem sende.
 þe býssop hym ansuerede, and þe abbod Dýnok,
 Al myd grete resons and wyt of her boc,
 þat wan hii adde hem sulue erchebýssop and kýng,
 Hii ne ssolde to Englysse men abue rýgt noþýng.
 For þe folc of Englyss & Saxons ⁴ her lond hem býnome,
 And her kunde erytage, myd trayson & suyke dome.
 War vor hii nolde for non man nanmore to hem wende,
 þan to so mony houndes, bote yt were hem to ssende.
 “ȝyf ȝe nolle,” quaf Seyn Austyn, “wyt ȝoure breþeren in
 peys be,
 “þat beþ, as ȝe wýteþ wel, Crýstýne as wel as ȝe ;
 “And ȝyf ȝe nolle Englysse men Gode’s lawe teche,
 “And vorþ myd me among hem Cristendom preche,
 “ȝoure fon ssolle her poer ⁵ amorýg ȝou wýde reche,
 “And brýng ȝou to deþe monýon, & þat ssal be ȝoure wreche.

¹ *Malim, nere, ut in Ar.*
² Obedience to do *Ar.* ³ And
 go with hym to Englishsh
 men, Cristendom to mende,
 And helpe hym preche a-
 monges hem, as the pope hem
 sende. The bisshopes hym

answerede, *Ar.* ⁴ Hure lond
 hem hadde bynome With
 gile, and hure heritage with
 falsnesse and tresone. Wher-
 for hii wolde *Ar.* ⁵ Among
Ar.

After Seynt Austýne's daye to soþe com al þýs,
Ac þe wule he was alýue nozt, as ze nowe ýhure ýwýs.

KÝNG ¹ Aýlbryzt gret despýt adde in ýs þozt,
þat þe Brutons nolde Seynt Austýn abue nozt.
² Edelfred, þat was kýng of Norþhumberlond,
He entýced and oþer kýnges here of þýs lond,
þat hii wende to Walys, and þe Brutons ssende.
þe kýnges, þo hii preste were, myd poer þuder wende.
At þe cýtý of Cayrleon þe Brutons ost þer was.
þe Englysse anon þuderward drowe myd god pas.
A gret bataýle hii smýte þer in a lute stounde.
Ac Brocmayl, duc of Brutons, was þer ýbrozt to grounde.
Vor he fien and býleuede ys folc, þo he nuste oþer won,
Somme aslawe and somme ýwounded, and bý neþe echon.
Nou were þer ý come fram Bangor monekes monýon,
In vastyng and in orýsons, to ³ bydde agen her fon.
And ermýtes and monekes of oþer ⁴ studes býsyde
Bede God, þat þe Brutons þe majstrye moste býtyde.
þo such folc of þýs holymen kýng Elfred ýseý,
Sýtte and ⁵ býdde vor her folc, and crýe ⁶ on God an heý,
And me sede hým, þat hii ⁷ dede vor þe Brutons echon :
“zyf yt so ýs,” quaf þe kýng “þat hii ⁸ byddyþ vor vr fon,
“þanne výtteþ hii agen vs, as muche as ýs her mýzte,
“Mýd her armes to God, þey hii mýd ⁹ arme ne fýzte.

¹ Ethelbert	<i>Ar.</i>	² Elfrid,	for hure Brutones	<i>Ar.</i>	³ Pray-
<i>Ar.</i>	³ Praye	<i>Ar.</i>	⁴ Houses	eth for oure fon	<i>Ar.</i>
bisyde.	And prayed to God			<i>Ar. sed alibi</i>	wepne in eod.
the Brutones	<i>Ar.</i>	⁵ Praye	<i>Codice.</i>		
<i>Ar.</i>	⁶ To	<i>Ar.</i>	⁷ Prayed		

" Sleþ hem ¹ hastelyche anon, as oure pure fon.
 þat folc was ² prest þer to, & to grounde slowe anon.
 So þat tuelf hondred holymen hii martrede þere,
 And aboute an výtý of scapede alýue vor fere.
 þo was ýt to hem ýcome, þat Seynt Austyn hem seyde,
 And noȝt vor þan God dude wreche ³ of þe luþer dede.
 Vor þe kýng Edelfred wende toward Bangor þo,
 Vorto destrue þe Brutons ⁴ wat he founde mo.
 þe ⁵ louerdýnges, þat þer were, zarked hem anon,
 And ordeýnede her ost, to fygte agen her fon.
 Ac Bledder duc of Cornwayle, and Cadwan of Walýs,
 And Margad anoþer duc, and her poer al ý wýs,
 And oþer Brutons þat þer were, smýte hem out anon,
 And a batayle strong ýnou smýte mýd her fon.
 So þat mo þan ten þousend were of Englyss ybroȝt to deþe,
 And þe kyng ⁶ Adelfred was wounded, þat of scapede alýue
 vnneþe.
 Ac Bledder, duc of Cornwayle, aslawe was þo,
 And moný of þe Brutons, ⁷ & of þe Englysse wel mo.
 And þe Englysse flowe ouer Homber vaste.
 A parlement þe Brutons made ⁸ þo atte laste,
 To chese hem anywe kýng, & chose þe duc Cadwan,
 þat was among hem alle þe stalwordoste man.

¹ Boldely a non, *Ar.* | of the Brutones raide hem
² Redy *Ar.* ³ Of thulke luther dede. Forth went kyng | anon, *Ar.* *Sed alibi* zarkedede
 Elfrid of Northumberloude | *pro raide in eod. Cod.* ⁶ El-
 tho To Bangor, to destruye | frid *Ar.* ⁷ Ac of *Ar.* ⁸ Att
Ar. ⁴ That *Ar.* ⁵ Lordes | Chestre atte laste, *Ar.*

þo þys kyng ycrouned was, hii ¹ zarked hem anon,
 And into Homberlond sýwede ² vp her fon.
 þe kyng ³ Edelfred & ys alf myd þe poer of ys londe
 And of oþer londes ⁴ zare was agen hem vorto stonde.
 þo hii were to þys bataýle prest in eyþer syde,
 Some ⁵ frend hym byþogte bet, & býtuene hem gonne rýde,
 And made acord býtuene hem, þat þe kyng ⁶ adde al þat lond
⁷ Eldelfred bygonde Homber, alclene in ys hond,
 And kyng Cadwan bý Souþe Homber, & ys owe lond Walýs.
 þoru hard oþ & god ostage yconfermed was al þýs.
 Býtuene þys tueyð kynges anon so gret loue þer was,
 þat her noþer nadde no þýng, þat to oþere's wýlle nas.
 Býtuene þe kyng ⁸ Edelfred, and þe quene ys wýf,
 þer after, þoru ⁹ luþer wýlle, wax a gret strýf,
 þat þe kyng hýre drof awey, myd chýlde as heo was,
 And nom hym anoþer wýf, and þat was a deluol cas.
 To þe kyng Cadwan þe quene wende þo,
 And cryde on hym, þat he ¹⁰ ssolde helpe hýre in yr wo.
 þe kyng Cadwan was þo aboute, býtuene hýre & ¹¹ kyng
 To make acord bý ys poer, and ne mygte vor noþyng.
 So þat he hulde vorþ þe quene in ys owe house,
 Myd chýlde helples as heo was, myd þe quene ys owe spouse,
 þat myd chýlde was as wel as heo, and of one týme neý.
 And þo þe chýldren were ýbore, þat of ¹² kunne were so heý,

¹ Raide hem *Ar.* ² Up- | haue *Ar.* ⁷ Elfrid *Ar.* ⁸ El-
 pon *Ar.* ³ Elfrid in his side | frid, *Ar.* ⁹ Yuel will, *Ar.*
 with power of *Ar.* ⁴ Redy | ¹⁰ Wolde *Ar.* ¹¹ The kyng
Ar. ⁵ Men *Ar.* ⁶ Shold | *Ar.* ¹² Kynne *Ar.*

Hii clupede Edwýne þe þýnge's sone of Norþhumberlond,
 And Cadwal þe kýnges sone here of þýs Souþlond.
 þýs chýldren were wel zonge ýsend to Salomon, þe kyng
 Of þe lasse Brutayne, to gode norýsýnge.
 þe kyng hem norýsede wel, & wyþ hým priue ýnou,
 And þo hii to elde come, to armes hem drou.
 So þat stalward ¹ kýntes boþe hii býcome,
² And wel ýfounded in armes, & in batayles ý lome.

EYLBRYT kýng of Kent, þat þoru Seynt Austyn nom,
 As we abbýþ ýtol býuore, verst Cristendom,
 Deýde as in þe zer of grace sýx hondred & sýxtýne,
 And he was syxe and výfty zer kýng, as ých wene.
 ýs sone was kyng after hým, Edbald was ys name,
 þat spousede ³ suþþe ýs fader wýf, hým to grete ssame,
 And ne tolde nozt of ys Cristendom. And þe kyng Sebrygt
 also,

Crýstýne kýng of Essex, þo he was of lyue ýdo,
 Hýs þre sones he býleuede eýrs of ýs kýnedom,
 þat were panýs alle þre, and agen Cristýndom.
 So þat hii come at one týme, in her luþer rede,
 To seýnt Mellýt, býssop of þe lond, & at ýs masse hym seyde,
 " Syre býssop, ⁴ wy ne zýfst us of þýne wýte brede,
 " þat þou est þe sulf at þý masse, in þýne vajre wede,

¹ Knightes *Ar.* ² And a
 saied in armes ofte were and
 lome, Ethelbert kyng of Kent
Ar. ³ His owenè fader wif,

Ar. ⁴ Whi nelt þou yiue vs
 of thulke white brede, That
 thou etyst ech day in thyne
 white wede, *Ar.*

" þat þou geue our ¹ fader wyle, & ȝut ȝyfst þat folc al so ?
 " ȝyf ȝe ² wolde," quap þe byssop, " as ³ ȝoure fader dude, do,
 " And be yuolled in holy water, & myd Cristendom monge,
 " ȝe mowe sauflýche þet holý þýng, as he dude, auonge.
 " We nolleþ noȝt," quap þýs oþer, " þey þou vs bede,
 " Wyþýnne þulke water come, for we nabbeþ non nede,
 " Ac in alle manere we wolleþ ete of þulke brede.
 þe byssop yt nolde grante, ac ⁴ outlých yt wýþ seyde
 To ȝýue hym þulke holý þýng, bote hii ý uolled.
 Hii suore anon in wraþþe, ȝyf he ensentan nere,
 To ȝýue hym so lute þýng, & bote he yt hem ȝeue,
 þat he ne ssolde in her lond in non manere býleue,
 Hii dryue hym out of her lond, & ýs men echon.
 þýs holy man, seyn Mellýt, to Kent wende anon,
 To speke wýþ þe erchebyssop Laurence, and al so
 Wýþ ýuste, byssop of Rouchestre, wat were best to do.
⁵ Seynt Austýn nou al bý ýs daye to erchýbyssop nom
 Laurence, & made after hym to susteyne Cristendom."
 þýs þre byssopes býtueýne hem nom hem þus to rede,
 þat hii myȝte in her owe lond holýor lyf lede,
 And wýþoute ⁶ perýl sýkerore, þan to byleue þere
 Among mys býlyuede men, bote þer ený bote were.
 So þat seýnt Juste & seýnt Mellýt to France þo wende,
 And lete þe luther men ⁷ ýworþþe vorte God yt wolde amende.

¹ Faderes, & yit yiuest þe
 And peple also? *Ar.* ² Wol-
 leth, *Ar.* ³ Other haueth, do,
 Be fulled with colde water,
 and the feý a vonge, Then
 mowe ýe partý of that bred
 take oþer amonge, *Ar.* ⁴ Ot-

terly *Ar.* *Vide supra*, pag. 66.

⁵ *Bina hæc metra omittit Ar.*

⁶ Perile sikeror to be there
 Than a mong hethene men,
 fort hit a mended were *Ar.*

⁷ Worthe *Ar.*

¹ Ac nas noȝt long þer after, aþ God wreche of hem nome,
 þat, after her fader deþe, worrede Cristendom.
 For azen þat folc of Westsex hii nome an batayle,
 And þere hii were ýbroȝt to grounde, & ² ýssend wýþoute fayle.
 Vor her folc was muche aslawe, and ybroȝt to deþe,
 And hii, vor ³ her luþerhede, of scapede alýue vnneþe.
 Laurence, þe erchebýssop, al prest hým made also,
 Vorto wende out of þýs lond, as ýs felawes adde ýdo.
 þe nýȝt, þat he ⁴ adde in mud vort abbe ýwend amorwe,
 He laȝ muchedel of þe nýȝt in wo and in sorwe,
 To ⁵ býdde God vor holy chýrche and vor Cristendom.
 So þat aslep atte laste vor werýnýsse hým nome.
 Seynt Peter to hým come, as þe slep hým toke,
 And tormented hým sore ýnou, þat ⁶ hech lym hým oke.
 And ⁷ eþste of hým, wý he adde so vyllyche ýs ssep vorsake,
 Wýþoute warde, among þe wolues, þat in warde hým were
 býtake?
 And wý of God, ne of hým, ensample he ne nom,
 þat deýde boþe ⁸ in rode, to susteýný Cristendom?
 þýs erchebýssop was adrad welsore, þo he awok:
⁹ He hýede to þe kýng, vor ech lýme hým ok,
 And ssewed hým al þat cas, and ys wunden some,
 And bed hým ýs lýf amende, oþer vp hým sulf ýt ssolde come.

¹ But sone fel hit after-
 ward, that God wreche nom.
 For they after hure faderes
 dethes werrede Christendom
Ar. ² Shent *Ar.* ³ Hure
 luthernesse, skapede *Ar.*

⁴ Hadde mette to wende his
 wey a morwe, *Ar.* ⁵ Praye
Ar. ⁶ Every lyme *Ar.*
⁷ Axede *Ar.* ⁸ On rode, to
 saue *Ar.* ⁹ And blyue he
 hyed *Ar.*

¹ þe kȳng anon for drede ȳs false wȳf vor soke,
þat he huld in such hordom, and Cristendom toke.
And after Seyn Just & Seȳnt ² Mellȳt þe tueye bȳssopes
sende,

So þat aȳen to þȳs lond þȳs gode men boþe wende,
And hii of Rouchestre Seyn Just to her bȳssop ³ vȳre toke,
Ac þe Londres Seyn Mellȳt ⁴ ac clanlyche versoke,
⁵ Ac huld hem to her heþenese, & in þȳs manere com
Kȳng Edbald, after ȳs fader, vorst to Cristendom.
After Laurence's deþe, as God gef þat cas,
Erchebȳssop Seyn Mellȳt of Kanterburȳ was,
Erchebȳssop he was vȳf ȳer, and after hym me nom
Seyn Just to erchebȳssop, to sauȳ Crȳstendom.

CADWAL, ⁶ þe kyng's sone, þat was of þȳs lond,
As ȳch seȳde er, & Edwȳne of Norþhumberlond,
þat in Brutȳne were, ⁷ hem hii gonne wende,
After her ⁸ fader deþe, ⁹ eȳþer in ȳs ende,
And auonge her erȳtage, and ¹⁰ louede hem wel boþe
Atte bȳgȳnnȳnge wel ȳnou, & supþe somdel wroþe.
For þo hii adde antuo ȳer ȳbe lourdes in her ¹¹ londes,
Edwȳne sende to Cadwal, þat hȳm ssolde vnderstonde,

¹ The kyng of Kent Edbald his false wife tho forsok, *Ar.* ² Mellȳt in to Fraunce he sende, *Ar.* ³ A yen toke, *Ar.* ⁴ Al *Ar. Vide Bede Hist. Eccl. lib. II. cap. VI.* ⁵ And *Ar.* ⁶ The kyng's sone Cadewan of this londe, And Edwȳne kyng's sone

of Northhumberlonde, *Ar.* ⁷ Homward gonne, *Ar.* ⁸ Fardres *Ar.* ⁹ Aither to his ende *Ar.* & *è regione, ab ead. manu, i. contre.* ¹⁰ Louede to gedere y nogh, And afterward, as ye shul hure, hure loue clene a drogh *Ar.* ¹¹ Londe *Ar.*

And soffry hym in ys owe lond, þat he ycrouned were
 As ueruorþ as he in ys, and as rýzt was croune bere.
¹ Kyng Cadwal nom ys conseyl, & sende hym word so,
 þat ys conseyl ne gef hym nogt, ne ensentede þerto,
 þat in one kýnedom, þat of one croune were,
 þat yt were departed, & þat me tueýe crounen bere.
 Edwýne was wroþ vor þýs, and suor ys more oþ,
 To be ycrouned wyþoute hym, ² nere hym no so loþ.
 Cadwal suor ys oþ agen, ȝýf he croune bere,
 Vorto smýte of ys heued vnder ys croune þere.
 þus wax strýf býtuene hem, hii greýþed her host vaste,
 And bý Norþe Homber ³ mette hem atte laste.
 Moný þousend þer were ýbrozt of Cadwale's men to deþe,
 And he hym sulf wyþ vewe men of scapede alýue vnneþe,
 And fien hym vorþ in to þe see, al þoru Scotlond,
 And so vorþ euere in to þe see, vorte he com to ýrlond.
 Edwýne wende þo anon out of ys owe lond,
 And destrude wýde aboute þat Cadwal adde an honde,
 Alle ys stedes, ver and ner, and to grounde caste.
 Cadwal in ýrlonde is ost ȝarkedede vaste,
 And vorþ toward þýs lond þe veage nome.
 Ac euere wanne he myd ys ost to ený hauene com,

¹ And when þat Cadewall hurde þis, he send word þo To Edewyne, þat he nolde assente þer to, And þat in onlonde, o kyngdom þat were, Any partyng so were mad, þat me two crounes bere. And seide, hit was a yenst the

wone of his faderes olde. For thi assente ther to, he seide that he nolde. Edwyne was tho wroth y nogh, and swor his more oth *Ar.* ² Were hym neuere so loth *Ar.* ³ They mette atte laste *Ar.*

Edwýne was azen hým, and drof hym aze.
 So þat he ne mýgte arýue, ac huld hým in þe see.
 Ac anchanteor Edwýne adde of Spayne wýþ hým þo,
 þat couþe hým segge of ýs dedes al hou ýt ssolde go
 þoru ýs chantement, so þat Cadwal
 Ne dude noþýng, þat Edwýne þoru hým yt nuste al.
 Cadwal nuste þo oþer rede, bote mýd al ys mayne
 Wende to porchacy hým help to þe lasse Brutayne.
¹ Tempest hým drof in þe see here and þer vaste.
 So þat in þe ýle of Gerneseye hii arýued attle laste.
 þo Cadwal com to reste, þer so gret deol he nome,
 þat he adde so ýs folc vorlore, and ýs kýnedom,
 þat he laý syke in ýs bed vor deol and vor sore,
 þat he ne ete non mete ² þre dawes þer vore.
 þe ³ verþe day to veneson hým þogte ýs herte drou,
 Bryan, ⁴ ýs owe priue man, was þerof glad ýnou.
 Hys bowe he nom, & sogte a best aboute mony a mýle,
⁵ And he ne mýgte, ssolde he deye, výnde non in al þe ýle.
 Sory was þýs Bryan þo, ⁶ þat he non grace nadde,
 For he hopede ýt were ýs louerde's hele, vor þe wýlle þat he
 adde.
 He ne vnderstod of non oþer fless, þat þe kýng ýknowe ne couþ
 þat ýt nere non veneson, wanne ýt were in ýs mouþe.

¹ A tempest *Ar.* ² iiii. *Ar.* ³ v. *Ar.* ⁴ That priue
 with hym was, therof was
 glad ynogh *Ar.* ⁵ But *Ar.*
⁶ For he no grace hadde.
 For he hopede his lorde's

hele, yf he eny hadde. He vn-
 derstod of non other fless,
 that he knowe couthe, That
 hit nere veneson, whan hit
 were in his mouthe *Ar.*

He býþogte hým of harde ýnou, to abbe ys louerde's lýf.
 A gret pece of ýs owe þý he ' kerf out wýþ a knýf,
 And helde þe ² wounde, he mygte loke gýf he nas trewe.
 þe kýng he brogte yt wel ýrosted vor veneson newe.
 Newe and verss ýt was ýnou, þe kýng ete þerof anon.
 Hým þogte, þat so suete mete he ne ete neuere non,
 Ne so sauery in ýs mouþ, so þat he turnde to hele,
 And hol was þe þrydde day, vor þulke suete mele.
 Hým longede after veneson þer after longe sore,
 Ac ner gode of þulke beste ne com in ýs mouþ nanmore.
 To þe lasse Brutayne wýþ ýs folc þo he drou,
 And of þe kýng Salomon was ³ vnderuonge vayre ýnou.
 And byleuede wýþ hým alle wýnter, vorte after þe gere's
 ende,
⁴ And greýpede her poer hyder vorto wende.

KÝNG Edwýne adde ýwonne er alout the Brutons lond,
 More þan ený Englýss kýng euere er adde an hond,
 Al bygonde Seyn Dauid, & al Walys al out.
 Bý uore hým nas non Englýss kýng so rýche ne so prout,
 Heþen man he was ýwýs, and to Cristendom
 þoru erchebyssop of Euerwýk Seyn ⁵ Paulym he com.

¹ Kutt of *Ar.* ² Wounde, | *Ar.* ³ Undernom *Ar.* ⁴ And-
 whan he myghte loke wher | than homward a yen he cast
 hé nere trewe. To the kyng | hym to wende *Ar.* ⁵ *Sic.*

CADWAL kȳng þat aȝte be of Brutons londe,
 Mȳd poer, þat kȳng Salomon hȳm adde ȳtake an honde,
 (þat was ten þousend kȳngtes,) & myd ȳs owe poer,
 Aryuede bysyde Toteneȳs, and come somdel ner.
 In þe toun of Exestre mony Brutons were,
 And a luþer kȳng of þe Marche byseged hem þer,
 Penda, þat heþene was, vnder Edwȳne þe kȳng.
 Cadwal, þo he wuste þȳs, ne made no targȳng,
 Ac smot to hȳm mȳd ȳs ost, & þer wȳþoute faȳle
 At Eccestre strong ȳnou hii smyte an bataȳle.
 Penda þȳs heþene kȳng was sone ouercome,
 And ȳs folc muche aslawe, & he hȳm sulf ȳnome.
 þo he in prison was ȳdo, ¹ and oþer couþe ne ȳse,
 He byhet Cadwal mȳd hȳm mȳd al ȳs poer be,
 And þat he ssolde vor hȳm þe bet kȳng Edwȳne ouercome.
 Of þȳs was sȳkernesse ² ȳdo, and ostages ȳ nome.
 Penta ȝarked ȳs poer, and Cadwal ek ȳs route
 Of Brutons, þat vor defaute of help to sprad were wyde
 aboute.
 þo þȳs ost al ȝare was, vorþward vaste hii drowe,
 And in Norþhumberlond þat folc vaste hii slowe.
 Kȳng Edwȳne adde also in ȳs half gret poer
 Igadered of Englysse kȳnges, & of ȳs owe ver & ner.

¹ And other ne couthe by | Edwyne kyng sholde be ouer-
 se, He by het Cadewalle with | come *Ar.* ² Made *Ar.*
 hym for to be, And helpe that |

In to þe veld of ¹ Haduele ech of hem drow
 Mýd her ost, & smýte þer an bataýle strong ý nou.
 Kýng Edwýne was þer aslawe, and ² Osfrýd ýs sone also,
 And Godbold kýng of Orcadas, & her folc neý þerto.
 And Cadwal was al aboue, þe wule yt wolde ýlaste.
 þe Englysse and þe Saxons he slou þo wel vaste.
 He ne sparede olde ne zong, ne ³ womman, ne chyld,
 þat he ne slou, ⁴ wanne he vond. he nas noþýng myld.
 Anoper bataýle supþe he smot ⁴ azen Osryc strong ynou,
 þat kýng was after Edwýne, & þer ⁶ he hým slou,
 And ýs tueye neuuus, þat after hým kýnges ssolde be,
 And Cadan kýng of Scotlond, ýslawe hii were alle þre.
⁷ Eufryd, Edwýne's broþer, þo he sey ⁸ þýs wo aboute,
 To Cadwal he wende, & mercý crýde vor doute.
 Cadwal hým, & tuelf þousend þat mýd hým com, slou.
 þýs zer was among hem of feble grace ý nou.
 And þat was of hem lute harm. vor after her Cristendom
 And to heþenesse hii turnde azen. & þus such wreche hem
 nome.
 Kýng Cadwal and þe Brutons her wýlle adde also,
 And stured hem among her fon, þat hem adde er ssame ýdo.

¹ Hedefeld *Ar.* ² Ostryd
Ar. ³ Wommen with childe,
Ar. ⁴ Whan he hem fonde,
 & was no thyng mylde *Ar.*
⁵ With *Ar.* ⁶ He tho hym
Ar. ⁷ Confrid *Ar.* & in ora
Codicis, è regione hujus car-
minis, Confrid kyng of Bere-
wýciens, idque equidem ab ea-
dem manu. Infra autem in

hoc Codice Emfryde scribi-
tur. ⁸ This wogh, Forto haue
 mercy to Cadwal he drogh.
 And he of hym no mercy haue
 wolde tho, But hym xii. þou-
 send men he let to dethe so.
 Lýtel force hit was of hem.
 for after hure Cristendom To
 hethenesse hii tournde a ye.
 for thy God wrech nom *Ar.*

Seyn

SEYN Oswald, Eufrydys broþer, kȳng was ȳmad þo
 Of al Norþhumberlond, among al þȳs wo,
 þat holyman was & god, þe betere ȳs grace was.
 And kȳng Cadwal to hȳm to sturne vorst was.
 þȳs was in þe ȳer of grace sȳx hondred ȳer ȳwȳs,
 And aboute an foure & þrȳttȳ, þat ȳdo was al þȳs.

SEYN Bȳrȳn þe byssop an holy man was,
 þat in to þȳs lond þoru þe pope Honorȳ ȳsend was.
 To turne kȳng of Westsex Kȳngȳls to Cristendom,
 And þat lond of Westsex, in to þȳs lond he com.
 Seȳn Bȳrȳn hȳm to Cristendom turnde þoru Gode's grace,
 And, as God wolde, Seȳn Oswald was in þulke place,
 And of holȳ vantston þȳs grete kȳng nome,
 And ȳs godfader was in ȳs Cristendom.
 Seȳn Oswald and þȳs oþer kȳng, þoru vr Louerde's grace,
 Porueȳde Seȳn Bȳrȳn to ȳs wȳlle an place,
 ' þat Dorchester ȳs ȳcluped, þat bȳsyde Oxenford ȳs,
 As in þe Est Souþ, an sene mȳle ȳ wȳs.
 þer Seȳn Bȳrȳn bȳssop was, þe vorste þat was ȳwȳs.
 Vor þe sce was þer of bȳssop þo, þat at Lyncolne nou ȳs.
 þer he deȳde, & þer he laȳ vorte suþþe þerafter long
 þat he was to Wynchester ȳlad, as ² ȳs ȳut vayre auong.

' That Dorchestre me ele-
 peth by side Oxenford, That
 is Southward by the water
 of Themese vi. myle thenne
 y wis. Seynt Beryn bisshop
 ther was the furste that there
 come, And after othur bis-

shopes hure se at Lyncoln
 nome. Berin deide at Dor-
 chestre, & lay ther ful longe.
 To Wynchestre were his
 bones lad sutthe, & faire a
 vonge *Ar.* ² *Id est,* being
 honourably received in that
 place

place where he is yet. *At de Birino, pariter atque de Dorcestria, lectudignissimasunt hæc quæ sequuntur, è Ranulphi Higdeni Polychronico (à Joanne Trevisa Anglice verso) Londini edito A. D. M.D.XXVII. à nobis exscripta. Sic nimirum illic, l. v. c. XIII.* Saynte Biry- nus the confessour was sent of Honorius the pope for too preche too Englysshemen. And whyle Biry- nus sayled in the see of Brytaine | he bethoughte on his restellis [*pallulam intelligit (si- bi à papa Honorio donatum) super quam corpus Christicon- secrabat, corpusque Domini- cum in eadem involutum, quod collo suspensum semper secum portabat, inter sacrandum super sanctum altare ponere con- sueverat, ut ait Joannes Brom- ton, chron. col. 755.*] that he had foryete in the hauen | and yede vpon the see & fette his restellis. ¶ *Beda libro tertio: capitulo sexto.* This Byrinus conuerted Kyngilsus kyng of Westsaxons | and crystned hym at cyte Dortyk | that is Dor- chester. There was kyng Os- walde present and was Kyngil- sus godfader | and wedded his doughter afterwarde. And bothe the kynges gaue that cyte for too ordeyne there a bysshops see. And there Byrinus deyed

after the. xiiii. yere of his bys- shoprych and was beried there. But at last by Hedda bysshop of Whynchester Byrinus was tran- slated too Wynchester in to the chyrche of saynt Peter and Poul. ¶ R. But the chanons of Dor- cheter saye naye | and saye that it was another body than saynt Byrinus body that was so tran- slated. Therefore a byer of a wonder werke is yet seen [*scri- psit A. D. M.CCC.XLII. Ed- vardi tertii XVI.*] at Dorches- ter aboue the place of his fyrste graue. That Cyte Dortyk or Dortinga that nowe is called Dorchester is vii. myle bi south Oxenforde sette bytwene two ryuers of Tame and of Temse. Also it is founde in cronycles that kyng Kyngilsus assygned all the lond seuen myle for too make a bysshops see in Winches- ter | and for the sustenance of the mynysters. And for the kyng was lette by his dethe euyl that he myghte not fulfyll it. He swore that his sone Ken- walcus sholde fulfyll it after- warde. ¶ Willelmus de pon. li- bro secundo. The Cytee Dor- chester longed to the bisshops of Mercia fro that tyme vnto the comynge of the Normans. But in Willyam conquerours tyme the bysshops see was changed vnto Lyncolne.

Anno gra-
cie 636.
Heraclii
imp. 26.

Cadwal kȳng of Brutons worrede euere vaste
 And Penda vp Seyn Oswald, vorte suppe atte laste
 þat at þe toun of Mersued by Norþe baþe hii come
 Seyn Oswald and þe duc Penda, and batayle nome.
 Penda þer þe luþer duc in batayle slou
 And martrede Seyn Oswald, & al ȳs body to drou;
 And mony þousend of ȳs men aslawe ek þer were.
 þȳs was of þe ȳer of grace in sȳx hondred ȳere
 And four hondred. vor Seyn Oswald ¹ in the ȳer kȳng was,
 And of eȳgte & þrȳttȳ ȳer old, þo hȳm vel þȳs cas.

OSWY, Seynt ² Oswald broþer, kȳng ȳ mad was þo.
 He býþogte hȳm of pes, to lýbbe wȳþout wo.
 He acordede wȳþ kȳng Cadwal, & tresour hym ȳef ȳnou,
 Vorto be ȳs prȳue frend, wȳþout worre and wou.
 þe fourme of pes was vaste ȳmad bý tuene hem there,
 þat ne mȳgte nogt wel ȳbroke be, bote treuþe ȳlore were.
 Ac Penda ³ heþen duc adde euere god wȳlle
 To worre hȳm, and do hȳm ssame, ⁴ & þogte in ȳs herte stȳlle.
 Ac he ne dorste vor Cadwal, ⁵ ac naþeles atten ende
 To þe kȳng at ȳs parlement to London he gan wende,
 And alle dukes of Bruteȳne, & þe Englyss kynges echone,
⁶ Icome were to þȳs parlement, bote kȳng Oswȳ one.

¹ *Lege ex Ar.* ix. ȳer *pro*
 in þe ȳer. ² *Osewalde's Ar.*
³ *The hethene Ar.* ⁴ *Yf he*
hit myghte fulfille Ar. ⁵ *But*
so fel atten ende, The Cade-

wal to his Parlement to Lon-
don gan wende, And all the
dukes Ar. ⁶ *Saue the kyng*
Osewy of Northumberland
al one Ar.

Penda askede þe kȳng anon, wȳ kyng Oswȳ nere þer?
 þe kȳng seyde, he vnderstod, þat he syk were.
 "Syre," quap þe oþer, "to soþe, yt nȳs noþȳng so,
 "Ac he gadereþ vaste ys poer, vs ssame to do,
 "And he aþ ȳsend býzonde see after Saxons mo,
 "And wole awreke ȳs broþer deþ, he suerþ, on vs tuo.
 "¹ þeruore gȳf me mȳd poer leue þuder wende,
 "And brȳng hȳm to ssame & býneþe, er þan he vs ssende.
 To breke ȳs trewe couenant, þe kȳng was loþ þerto,
 And naþeles ȳs conseȳl hȳm gef, þat he moste yt nede do.
 þo Penda þȳs leue adde, he nome poer ȳ nou,
 And toward þis kȳng Oswȳ ouer Homber drou,
 An barnde vaste and robbede, and to grounde slou.
 þe kȳng Oswȳ hȳm let esse, wȳ he dude hȳm so wou,
 And bed hȳm, vor Gode's loue, habbe of hym reuþe,
 And of ȳs lond, & þenche bet on vorewarde & on treuþe.
 þo Penda nolde oþer, þe oþer aȳen hȳm sette,
 And dude hȳm al in Gode's grace, & mȳd ȳs ost hym mette,
 And an bataȳle smȳte strong ȳnou, & þoru Gode's grace
 ² Kȳng Oswȳ ² þe Cristȳn men býleuede þe place.
 Vor Penda, þe heþene duc, aslawe was þere
 And þrȳtty oþer dukus, þat mȳd hȳm also were.

¹ For thy let me haue leue thuder forto wende, And lette him of his purpos er he vs alle a shende *Ar.* ² Kȳng Osewy and his Cristene men that day hadde the place *Ar.* ³ *F.* þe hethen med, *ut sensus sit*, the heathen men left the

place to king Oswy, *nisi forsitan* and the Cristyn men *malis ex Ar. ut* byleuede *passive sumatur*, sc. to king Oswy and the Christian men the place was left. *Possem & alia notare, sed non est tantū.*

Syx hondred ȝer of grace yt was, & in þe ¹ vŷftýþe ȝere,
þer ² býȝet Penda lute Cristynmen vorto aferen.

þo Cadwal, kýng of Brutons, noblýche adde ýnou
ýbe kýng eyȝte and fourty ȝer, and to elde drou,
He deýde after Martýnmasse ³ rýȝt þen sýxte day.
þe Brutons made deol ý nou, þo he ded lay,

⁴ And made kýnge's fourme of bras al holu wýþinne,
Vpe an hors rýde of bras, & þat bodý dude þerýnne,
And vpe" þe West ȝate of Londone sette hýt ⁵ wel heýe
In sýgne of ýs nobleýe, þat men wel wýde ýseýe.
An þe syȝte þer of þe Saxons aferde.

An chýrche of Seyn Martýn þer bý neþe hii rerde,"
War ýnne me ssolde Gode's seruýse do,
And syngre vor ýs soule, and vor alle Cristýne al so.

⁶ CADWALLAD ýs sone was ⁷ þerafter ýmad kýng,
ȝong ⁸ bacheler and stalward atte ⁹ bý gynnýȝ,
And þoru out wel wuste ýs lond, & sauede þe Brutons
Stýflýche ¹⁰ al an tuelf ȝer aȝen ¹¹ Saxons.
Ac þo vel he in sýkness and sorwe vpen oþer,
þe Brutons foȝte her & þer ech aȝen oþer,

¹ xv. yere, *Ar.* ² By gate
Ar. ³ Euene the sixte day
Ar. ⁴ Hii made a kynge's
fourme, and hym al hol with
ynne Upon a hors rydyng of
bras putte al with gynne,
And vpon *Ar.* ⁵ Ful hegh
In tokne of his noblesse, that
me hitt fer segh, And that the
sight ther of the Saxones

sholde a fere, A church of
Seynt Martyn by nethe hii
lete rere, *Ar.* ⁶ Cadwalla-
dre *Ar.* & sic infra. ⁷ After
hym mad *Ar.* ⁸ Staleworth
bacheler & noble in alle thyng,
And &c. *Ar.* ⁹ L. býgýnnýȝ.
¹⁰ Fully xii. *Ar.* ¹¹ The
Saxones *Ar.*

And lore, as wo seyþ, grace of God, & þat he gan hem ssewe.
 Vor he sende hem so muche hunger & luþer ȝeres arewe,
¹ þat þys folc was ney meteles, bote wo so couþe mýd gyune,
 Oþer mýd bow and arwen, ený wýlde best wýnne.
 So gret qualm com ek among men, þat hii, þat were alyue,
 Ne mýzte noȝt al burýe þat folc, þat deýde so ryue.
 Vol of sýknesse, and of qualm, and sorwe þys lond was þo,
 Of hunger, and of vnele ȝeres, hou mýzte be more wo?
² þet folc gret compayne & oþer mýd wop & sorwe ý nou,
 Wanne hii myzte ssyppes abbe, in to oþer londes drou.
 þe kýng ³ hym^{ll} let ek in sorwe and in sýkenesse lede
 Toward þe lasse Brutayne, & þys deoluol playnte seyde:
 “⁴ Awey! awey! we sýnuol men, alas! oure wrecchede,
 “ þat we abbýþ þus God agult mýd moný sýnuol dede
 “ We and oure elderne ek, þe wreche ých vnderstonde
 “ þat þus wrecchedlyche nou vus dryfþ out of oure kundæ
 londe,
 “ þat Romeyns⁵ ne mýzte mýd batayle neuere do,
 “ Ne Scottes, ne ⁶ Pýcars, ne þe Saxons þerto.
 “ Nou we beþ, þoru wreche of God, vor oure sýnuol dede,
 “ Idryue out al clene, wyþ out hope, wyþ sorwe & ⁶ wreche,

¹ That the peple hadde no mete, but they with any gyne Wilde bestes, or fowell, or fissh myght wyne. Such pestilence cam also, that hii, that were a lyue, The dede myghte yanethe burye, they deide so blyue *Ar.* ² The folc with grete compayne in care and sorwe y nogh, *Ar.* ³ Hym self *Ar.* ⁴ A las! he seyde, and

welaway! whi couthe we nocht blynne, While that we tyme hadde, our lyff to lede in synne, Thurgh which we shal nogh al clene be dryue out of londe, And al hit is þorgh wreche of Gode's owene honde? That the Ro, maynes *Ar.* ⁵ Pictes, *Ar.* ⁶ *L.* wrechede.

" ¹ Vor vaȝt we abbeþ so ofte vp hem ýwonne þat lond,
 " Wanne God nel noȝt, þat ýt be lengore in oure hond.
 " Vor þe soþuast God, þo he ýse, þat we nolde, vor noþyng,
 " Fram oure sýnne vs wýþ drawe, ne þat non prince, ² ne,
 " Ne myȝte brýnge vs out of þe lond, he, þat myȝtuol ýs,
 " ³ Deþe after oure deserle, and ⁴ pulte vus out ýwýs.
 " Comeþ nou aȝen ȝe Rómeýns, and ȝe Scottes al so,
 " ⁵ Pýcars, and Saxons, and Englýsse þer to,"
 " þat so muche abbeþ desyred ⁶ þat lond, ȝe mowe yt fynde
 nouþe
 " Al bar wýþ out defense, býnorþe and eke býsouþe,
 " ⁷ And al þat þoru wreche of God, & noȝt ȝoure poer noȝt ý do,
 " (Vor al þe poer, þat ȝe alle adde, ne myȝte yt bringe þerto,)
 " Ac þoru þe myȝte of Jhesu Crist we beþ ýbroȝt to grounde,
 " þat we wrapþed euere mo, and nou we abbeþ ýfounde.
 " Alas ! þat by myne daye such wreche ssolde come,
 " þat ý nadde ýbe ded bore, bote God adde þe soule ý nome.
 þe deol ne maý non tonge telle, þat þe kýng to hym nome,
 So þat to þe lasse Brutayne mýd þýs sorwe he com,
 To, þe kynges' neuue Salomon, Aleyn, þat kyng was þo,
 And vaýre of hým was vnderfonge in ýs muchele wo."

¹ An ydel we haue so ofte
 recouered .of hem oure lond,
 When God nele, that we len-
 gor haue hit in our hond *Ar.*

² *Addes kyng cum Ar.* ³ Doth
Ar. ⁴ Putteth *Ar.* ⁵ Pictes,
 and Englissh, and Daues al-
 so. *Ar.* ⁶ This *Ar.* ⁷ And
 when ye haueth hit, seye ye
 ne may, ye haueth vs out pylt

Thurgh your strengthe, but
 hit is thurgh oure owene gylt.
 Deol he made gret y nogh,
 so that his wey he nom To-
 ward the lasse Brutayne, and
 thuder sone he com To kyng
 Salomone's sone Aleyn, that
 tho was, And faire of hym
 was vnderfonge, as fel in
 this cas *Ar.*

þo þe Brutons þerafter were al as out of munde,
 After folc þe Saxons sende of her kunde,
 To come & wonye in þys lond, þat noman agen hem nas,
 And þat þet lond to her wylle al bar agen hem was.
 þo þys strangemen hurde þys, ynou of folc hii nome,
 Of men and of wýmmen ek, and to þys lond come.
 Anon from Cornwayle to Norþhumberlond,
¹ Hote yt were of poueral, al bar hii founde þat lond.
 þe poueral ouer Seuerne flen þat þer was þo,
 And byleuede vorþ in Walys in sorwe and in wo.
² We longe her afterward þo yt com to amendement,
 And bote of hunger & of qualm vr Louerd adde ysend,
 Som help of þe kýng Aleyn kýng Cadwallad býsogte,
 And þat he in to ys kunde londe þoru ys help hým brogte.
 þe kýng hým grantede anon, and as hii were aboute,
 Eyþer in ys half, to gadery gret ost and gret route,
 To kýng Cadwallad an angel ³ auýsyon brogte
 Fram heuene, and bad hým wýþdrawe of þat he þogte.
 Vor yt nas Gode's wylle, þat of þe Brutons ⁴ kunne
 Regnede more in Engeland, and al uor her sunne,
 And namelyche ar þulke tyme þat ys in prophecye
 Merlyn seyde to Arture, þat nolde noþyng lye.

¹ *L. bote. Nam bute in Ar.*

² Afterwardes whan hit fel,
 as God gaf the grace, That
 alle these meschenes gonne
 ouerpace, And the peple in
 Walys strengthed sumwhat
 were, Cadewaldre hym by
 thoght in this ilke manere,
 That the synne of his peple

wassh was clene. To Aleyn
 kyng of Brutayne he gan his
 mone mene, And in alle ma-
 nere wise his help hym by
 soght, That thurgh hym in
 to his Reaume he myght be
 brought *Ar.* ⁴ Tydyng *Ar.*
⁴ Kýnne *Ar.*

Vor he seyde, þat þe Brutons me ssolde gūt ysey
 Wÿnne her rÿgte kÿnedom, ac yt ssolde arst long be.
 Wanne ye relykes of halewen yfounde were & ykud,
 þat vor drede of Saxons wÿde were yhud.
 To Sergy þe pope, þat þo was, to Rome he bed hÿm wende,
 And do þer ys penance, þat God hÿm wolde sende,
 And býleue al erþlych þogt, þen deuel vorto ssende,
 And he ssolde among holÿmen ¹ to heuene² atten ende.
 þe kÿng þÿs auÿsyon, þat þe angel hÿm seyde,
 þe oþer tolde priuelÿche, hÿm þerof to rede.
 þe kÿng Aleÿn let þo anon in ys bokes aspÿe,
 Boþe of Sÿbÿlc þe sage, and of Merlÿne's prophecÿe;
 Were hii to ys auÿsyon acorded in ech þÿnge?
 And þo he vond, þat býtuene hem was non dÿscordÿng,
 He radde þe kÿng Cadwallad, to þenche nanmore
 Of ² Engelond, ac do al out þe angele's lore,
 And wende to Rome, ³ holy lÿf to lede.
 þe kÿng Cadwallad dnde al out, þat þe angel he hÿm bede,
 And at Rome was of þe pope vaÿre ⁴ vnder vouge,
 And in penance and holy lÿf lyuede þere longe,
⁵ And in etteþe day of Aueryl out of þÿs worl he wende
 To þe joye of Heuene, as God after hÿm sende.
⁶ Hyt was sene hondred ȝer bote on ȝer lasse vnneþe,
 After þat God anerþe eom, þat þÿs kÿng com þus to deþe.

¹ Be nombred *Ar.* ² Bru-
 tayne, but do after the *Ar.*
³ Ther holy *Ar.* ⁴ A songe,
Ar. ⁵ The xix. day of A-
 pril *Ar.* ⁶ Six hundred yer

and foure skor, and ther to
 eyghtetene, Hit was þat our
 Lord bore was y wene. The
 Englissh *Ar.*

þe Englysse¹ and þe Saxons, þat alone þo were,
 Grete tounes and castles býgonne bulde and rere,
 þat hii adde er ýcast adoun, & louerdes weré al þo,
 And þe Brutons clene al out mýd sorwe & mýd wo,
 And lore þo boþe al clene, name and eke lond.
 Vor þat was Brutayne ýcluped er, me cluped nou Engelond.
 þo vewe were of hem býueued, as in Cornwayle & Walýs.
 Brutons nere nanmore ýcluped, ac Waleys ýwýs.
 After ¹ Walon, þat was her ² duc, hii adde vorst þe name,
 And ne mýzte neuer efter þýs lond keuere, at lýbeþ mýd alle
 ssame,

³ Bote hii þus mýd scolkýnge vp þe Englysse wende,
 And doþ ený skec feble ynou, and abbeþ þe worse ende.
 Ac, (as þe angel seyde er, and Merlýn ek bý uore,)
 Hii ssolleþ keuerý muche lond, þat hii abbeþ ýlore ;
 Al Walýs and al þe March, and al mýddel lond ýwýs,
 þat ýs, al þat býtuene Temese and Homber ýs,
 Al Est toward Londone, & þat me ssal gut ýsey.
 At vpe Gode's wýlle ýt ýs, wanne ýt ssal be.
 Here we Englysse men mowe ýse sone,
 Mýd wuche rýzte we beþ to þýs londe ýcome.
 Ac þe wrecche Englysse men beþ of þe olde ⁴ more ;
 In wuche manere, ze abbeþ ý hurd, hou hii ýt abbeþ ý lore.
 Ac þe feble ýs euere býneþe. vor hii, þat abbeþ mýzte,
 Mýd strengþe brýngeþ ofte þat wowe to þe rýzte.

¹ Gwalo, *Ar.* ² Prince,
Ar. ³ And ofte tyme in
 skolkyng on Engelond gon
 they wende, And made con-

tek and strif, and hadde the
 worse ende *Ar.* ⁴ *Subintelle-*
lige, Britain.

þo Brutayne was þus ylore, and þe londe's name
 To þe name of Engelond yturnd, to gret ssame,
 Sene kynges hii adde longe, as þe kyng of Estsex,
 Of Kent, of Homberlond, of Est Angle, of Souþsex,
 Of þe March, of Westsex, ¹ of alle þes echon
 Wule þes were kynges, þat nouþ ys bote one.
 Vor ech bygan to worry vp oþer, and oþeres londes bynome,
 And hii of Denemarch among hem, vorte alle to one come.
 þe kynges of Westsex adde þe ouer hond,
 So þat attelaste hii wonne alle þe oþeres lond.
 Ac Souþsex ne last noȝt longe, ne Estsex ² naþe mo.
 þe kyng of Westsex sone hem wan, bote vyue þer nere þo.
 þe kyndom of þe March ylaste long and wel ynou,
 Vorte þe kunde kyng seyn Kenelm in marterdom me slog.
 Kyng Kenulf ys fader godman was, þat þe hous of Wynche-
 cumbe
 Rerde vorst, and þer lyp hym sulf in a tombe.
 þo Seyn Kenelm ymartred was, ys vncler ³ Seowulf
 Kyng was after hym ymaked, þe kynges broþer Kenulf.
 He nas kyng bote on ȝer, ar on Bernulf com,
 And þoru strengþ hym caste out of ys kenedom.

EGBRYGT ⁴ was kyng y mad, as oþer byuore hym were,
 Of Westsex in þe ȝer of grace eyȝte hondred ȝer.

¹ Alle thes echon While were
 of kynges Ar. ² Ne the mo
 Ar. ³ Sive, Ceolulph. ⁴
 Perplura hic occurrunt in Cod.
 Ar. oratione soluta concepta,

*In quo tamen Codice desunt
 cuncta metra usque ad Ed-
 wardi, Ælfredi Magni filii,
 regnum.*

By ys daye Seyn Kenelm to deþe ybrogt was,
 þe kynedom was þerafter lute, vor wreche of þat cas.
 Vor Bernulf, of wan we tolde, nozt þre ger kýng nas
 Ar Egbrýgt, kýng of Westsex, made hým seke pas.
 Vor an bataýle at Elendone hii smýte mýd her ost,
 þe kýng Bernulf was þere býneþe, & býnome al ys bost,
 And ys folc muche aslawe, & he flen wýþ muche wo.
 In kýng Egbrýgte's poer ys kýnedom was þo.
 Eyzte hundred ger & tuentý, & sýxte þer to,
 As in þe ger of grace þýs bataýle was ýdo.
 þe kyng of Westsex her after adde al þe kýnedom
 Of þe March, oþer eche ger truage of hem nom.
 In Egbrýgte's kýnedom four and tuentý þe ger
 Hýt was, ar þýs bataýle at Elendone were.
 Bernulf supþe in Est Angle þoru men of lond,
 And þoru Egbrýgte's poer, was aslawe, ých vnderstonde.
 And þat folc of Est Angle vnderuonge þere
 Kýng Egbrýgt to her souerýn, & seruage hým bere.
 Kýng Egbrýgt was þo prout vor ys segnorýe.
 Adelwolf, ys sone, he sende mýd vayre bachelerye
 To wýnne Kent, & Estsex, & Soþereye, mýd maýstrye.
 To þe lond of Kent hii wende vorst mýd her chýualerye.
 Kent hii wende týmelyche, and Balred þe kýng
 Flen ouer Temese, and býleuede ys owe þýng.
 Estsex and Souþsex, and Soþereye al so
 Hii wonne, ar hii come agen; & þo al þýs was ýdo,
 Egbrýgt, kýng of Westsex, al þýs to hým nom,
 Al to be vnder hým, and vnder ys kýnedom.

Al þat lond bȳsouþe clene he adde al so
 Under hȳm, oþer in ȳs hond. wȳnne he þogte mo.
 Azen hem of Norþhumberlond mȳd ost he com at ¹ Doȳre,
 Hii dude hȳm a non her manhede, & ne conteked namore.
 þe kȳng Egbrȳgt adde ȳbe kȳng þre and þrȳttȳ ger,
 þet folc of Denemarch hȳder com, as yt adde ȳ do er.
 Ssepeȳe hii robbede vorst, and suþþe oþer mo.
 Ac þe kȳng Egbrȳgt hem drof azen, ar hii dude to muche wo.
 þo kȳng Egbrȳgt adde kȳng ȳbe seuene & þrȳttȳ ger,
 He deȳde as a noble man, ac ȳs londes he delde er.
 Adelwolf, ȳs eldeste sone, he gef þo al Westsex,
 þat was as ȳs erȳtage. and suþþe al Souþsex
 Hȳs zongore sone Aþelston he gef, and þe kȳnedom
 Of Kent and of Estsex, þat of ȳs porchas com.
 Hȳt was eȳgte hondred ger, and nyne þrȳttȳ þerto,
 As in þe ger of grace, þat he deȳde so.

¹ *Meminerunt etiam Annales Saxonici, sub anno dcccxxvii. And se Ecgbryht lædde fyrde to Dore pið Norðanhymbre. ȳ hȳ hȳm þær eaþmedo budon. ȳ zeþþærneȳre. Ejusdem quoque mentionem habemus apud Florentium Wigorniensem. Id quod item monuit doctissimus Gibsonus, qui porro innuit, locum hunc in agro fuisse Eboracensi, licet plane incertum sit quonam hodierno vocetur nomine. Quidni autem quis censeat, ipsum fuisse Durham? Quo minus ita putemus, nihil quidem obstat in Annali-*

bus Saxonici, è quibus discimus, Ecgbryhtum primùm subjugasse Merciorum regnum, & totum quod fuit ab Australi parte Humbri, deinde movisse ultra Humbri flumen, in ipsum, ut videtur, Deirorum agrum. Et tamen fateor, hanc sententiam minime convenire cum Florentio, locum longe minoris notæ quam Dunelmum fuisse aperte indicante, suoque itidem tempore Dore nomine venisse significante. Quomodocunque sit, in partibus ultra Humbrum fuisse sane existimarem.

OF þe bataÿles of Denemarch, þat hii dude in þys londe
þat worst were of alle oþere, we mote abbe an honde.
Worst hii were. vor oþere adde somwanne ýdo,
As Romeýns & Saxons, & wel wuste þat lond þerto.
Ac hii ne kepte ýt holde noȝt, bote robbý, and ssende,
And destrue, & berne, & sle, & ne couþe abbe non ende.
And bote lute ýt nas worþ, þey hii were ouercome ýlome.
Vor mýd ssýpes and gret poer as prest esone hii come.
Kýng Adelwolf of þis lond kýng was tuenty ġer.
þe Deneýs come bý hym rýuor þan hii dude er.
Vor in þe al our vorst ġer of ýs kýnedom
Mýd þre & þrýttý ssýpuol men her prince híder come.
And at Souþhamptone arýuede, an hauene bý Souþe.
Anoþer gret ost þulke týme arýuede at Portesmouþe.
þe kýng nuste weþer kepe, at delde ýs ost atuo.
þe Denes adde þe maýstre. þo al was ýdo,
And bý Estangle & Lýndeseýe hii wende vorþ atte laste,
And so hamward al bý Kent, & slowe & barnde vaste.
Agen wýnter hii wende hem. anoþer ġer est hii come,
And destrude Kent al out, and Londone nome.
þus al an ten ġer þat lond hii broȝte þer doune,
So þat in þe teþe ġer of þe kýnge's croune,
Al býsouþe hii come alond, and þet folc of Somersete
þoru þe býssop Alcston and þet folc of Dorsete
Hii come & smýte an bataýle, & þere, þoru Gode's grace,
þe Deneýs were al býneþe, & þe lond folc adde þe place,
And more prowesse dude þo, þan þe kýng myȝte býuore,
þeruore gode lond men ne beþ noȝt al verlore.

þe kȳng was þe boldore þo, & aȝen hem þe more drou,
 And ȳs foure godes sones woxe vaste ȳ nou,
 Edelbold and Adelbryȝt, Edelred and Alfred.
 Þȳs was a stalwarde tem, & of gret wȳsdom & red,
 And kȳnge's were al foure, & defendede wel þȳs lond,
 An Deneȳs dude ssame ȳnou, þat me volwel vond.
 In syxteþe zere of þe kȳnge's kȳnedom
 Is eldeste sone Adelbold gret ost to hȳm nome,
 And ȳs fader also god, and oþere heȳe men al so,
 And wende aȝen þȳs Deneȳs, þat mȳche wo adde ȳ do.
 Vor myd tuo hondred ssȳpes & an alf at Temse mouþ hii
 come,
 And Londone, and Kanterburȳ, and oþer tounes nome,
 And so vorþ in to Soþereȳe, & slowe & barnde vaste,
 þere þe kyng and ȳs sone hem mette atte laste.
 þere was bataȳle strong ȳnou ȳsmȳte in an þrowe.
 þe godes kȳngtes leȳe adoun as gras, wan medep mowe,
 Heueden, (þat were of ȳsmȳte,) & oþer lȳmes also,
 Flete in blode al fram þe grounde, ar þe bataȳle were ȳdo.
 Wanne þat blod stod al abrod, vas þer gret wo ȳ nou.
 Nys yt reuþe vorto hure, þat me so volc slou ?
 Ac our suete Louerd atte laste ssewede ȳs suete grace,
 And sende þe Cristȳne Englysse men þe maȳstrȳe in þe place,
 And þe heþene men of Denemarch bȳneþe were echon.
 Nou nas þer ȳut in Denemarch Cristendom non ;
 þe kȳng her after to holȳ chȳrche ȳs herte þe more drou,
 And teþezede wel & al ȳs lond, as hii aȝte, wel ȳ nou.
 Seȳn Swȳthȳn at Wȳnchestre bȳssop þo was,
 And Alcston at Sȳrebourne, þat amendede mȳche þȳs cas.

þe kȳng was wel þe betere man þoru her beȳre red,
 Tuenty wynter he was kȳng, ar he were ded.
 At Wȳnchestre he was ȳbured, as he ȳut lýþ þere.
 Hȳs tueye sones he gef ȳs lond, as he býȳet ham ere.
 Adelbold, þe eldore, þe kȳnedom of Estsex,
 And supþe Adelbrȳgt, Kent and Westsex.
 Eȳȳte hondred ȳer ȳt was and seuene and fȳfty al so,
 After þat God anerþe com, þat þȳs dede was ȳdo.
 Boþe hii wuste bý her tȳme wel her kȳnedom,
 At þe vyfte ȳer Adelbold out of þȳs lyue nome.
 At Ssȳrebourne he was ȳbured, & ȳs broþer Adelbrȳgt
 His kȳnedom adde after hym, as lawe was and rȳgt.
 Bȳ ȳs daye þe verde com of þe heþene men wel prout,
 ' And Hamtessyre and destrude Wȳnchestre al out.
 And þat lond folc of Hamtessyre her red þo nome
 And of Barcssyre, and fogte and þe ssrewen ouercome.
 Adelbrȳgt was kȳng of Kent ȳeres folle tene,
 And of Westsex bote vȳue, þo he deȳde ȳch wenc.

ADELRED was after hȳm kȳng ȳ mad in þe place,
 Eȳȳte hondred & seuene & sȳxtȳ as in þe ȳer of grace.
 þe vorste ȳer of ȳs kȳnedom þe Deneȳs þȳcke com,
 And robbede and destrude, and cȳtes vaste nome.
 Maȳstres hii adde of her ost, as ȳt were dukes, tueȳe,
 Hȳnguar and Hubba, þat ssrewen were beȳe.
 In Est Angle hii býlueede, to reste hem as ȳt were,
 Mȳd her ost al þe wynter, of þe vorst ȳere.

¹ *F. an sive on; nisi mox malis,* and Wynchestre destrude &c.

þe oþer ȝer hii dude hem vorþ, & ouer Homber come,
 And slowe to grounde & barnde, & Euerwýk nome.
 þer was bataýle strong ý nou, vor ýslawe was þere
 Osryc kýng of Homberlond, & monýe þat with hým were.
 þo Homberlond was þus ýssend, hii wende & tounes nome.
 So þat atte laste to Estangle agen hým come.
 þer hii barnde & robbede, & þat folc to grounde slowe,
 And, as wolues among ssep, reulých hem to drowe.
 Seynt Edmond was þo her kýng, & þo he sey þat deluol ȝas
 þat me morþrede so þat folc, & non amendement nas,
 He ches leuere to deýe hysulf, þat such sorwe to ýsey.
 He dude hým vorþ among ýs fon, nolde he ¹ noþýg fle.
 Hii nome hým & scourged hým, & supþe naked hým bounde
 To a tre, & to hým ssote, & made hým moný a wounde,
 þat þe arewe were on hým þo þýcce, þat no stede nas býleuede,
 Atte laste hii martred hým, & smýte of ýs heued.
 þe sýxte ȝer of þe crownement of Aldered þe kýng
 A nýwe ost com into þýs lond, gret þoru alle þýng,
 And anon to Redýnge robbede and slowe.
 þe kýng and Alfred ýs broþer nome men ýnowe,
 Mette hem, and a bataýle smýte vp Assesdoune.
 þer was moný moder chýld, þat sone lay þer doune.
 þe bataýle ýlaste vorte nýgt, and þer were aslawe
 Vyf dukes of Denemarch, ar hii wolde wyþ drawe,
 And mony þousend of oþer men, & þo gonne hii to fle;
 Ac hii adde alle ýbe assend, ² ȝýs þe nýgt nadde ý be.
 Tueye bataýles her after in þe sulf ȝere
 Hii smyte, and at boþe þe heþene maýstres were.

¹ L. noþýng. ² Sic.

þe kýng Aldered sone þo þen wey of deþ nome,
 As yt vel, þe výtý ger of ys kýnedom.
 At Wýmbourne he was ýbured, as God gef þat cas,
 þe gode Alfred, ys broþer, after hým kýng was.

ALFRED, þys noble man, as in þe ger of grace he nom
 Eygte hondred & sýxtý & tuelue þe kýnedom.
 Arst he adde at Rome ýbe, &, vor ys grete wýsdom,
 þe pope Leon hým blessedde, þo he þuder com,
 And þe kynge's croune of þys lond, þat in þys lond gut ys:
 And ¹ he led hým to be kýng, ar he kýng were ýwýs.
 And he was kýng of Engeland, of alle þat þer come,
 þat vorst þus ² ýlad was of þe pope of Rome,
 And supþe oþer after hým of þe erchebýssopes echon.
 So þat býuor hým pore kýng nas þer non.
 In þe Souþ syde of Temese nýne bataýles he nome
 Azen þe Deneýs þe vorst ger of ys kýnedom.
 Nýe ger he was þus in þys lond iu bataýle & in wo,
 An ofte sýþe aboue was, and býneþe oftor mo;
 So longe, þat hým nere bý leuede bote þre ssýren in ys hond,
 Hamtessyre, and Wýltessyre, and Somersete, of al ys lond.
 A day as he wery was, and asuoddrýnge hým nome
 And ys men were ýwend auýsseþ, Seyn Cutbert to hym com.
 "Ich ³ am," he seyde, "Cutbert, to þe ýcham ýwend
 "To brýnge þe gode týtýnges. Fram God ýcham ýsend.

¹ *Id est*, heled sive conse-
 crated, vel anointed. *Vide no-
 tas nostras ad Vitam Ælfredi
 Magni Spelmannianam*, p. 17.
² *Pro oyled*, sive anointed. *Nisi*

*forsitan tam híc, quam & jam
 supra, idem quod Anglo-Saxa-
 nicum zehalzod esse existimes.*
³ *Vide Willielmi Malmesbur. de
 gestis regum Angl. lib. II. c. IV.*

“ Vor þat folc of þys lond to sýnne her wýlle al geue,
 “ And gut nolle herto her sýnnes býleue
 “ þoru me & other halewen, þat in þys lond were ýbore;
 “ þan vor zou býddeþ God, wanne we beþ hým býuore,
 “ Hour Louerd mýd ys eýen of milce on þe lokeþ þeruore,
 “ And þý poer þe wole gýue azen, þat þou ast neý verlore.
 “ And þat þou þer of soþ ýse, þou ssalt abbe tokýnynge.
 “ Vor ¹ hým men, þat beþ ago to day auýssynge,
 “ In lepes & in coufles so muche vyss hii ssolde hým brynge,
 “ þat ech man wondrý ssal of so gret cacchýnge.
 “ And þe mor vor þe harde vorste, þat þe water ýfrore hýs,
 “ þat þe more azen þe kunde of vyssýnge ýt ýs.
 “ Of serue ýt wel azen God, and ýlef me ys messenger,
 “ And þou ssal þý wýlle abýde, as ýcham ýtold her.
 As þys kýng hereof awoc, and of þys sýgte þogte,
 Hys výssares come to hým, & so gret won of fyss hym brogte,
 þat wonder ýt was, & namelýche vor þe weder was so colde
 þo lýuede þe god man wel, þat Seyn Cutbert adde ýtold.
 In Deuenýssyre þer after þer arýuede of Deneýs
 þre and tuentý ssýpuol men, al azen þe peýs,
 þe kýnge's broþer of Denemarch duc of ost was.
 Oure kynge's men of Engeland mette hem bý cas,
 And smýte þer an bataýle, and her gret duc slowe,
 And eygte hondred & fourtý men, & her caronýes to drowe,
 þo kyng Alfred hurde þys, ýs herte gladede þo,
 þat lond folc to hým come so þýcke so ýt mýgte go,
 Of Somersete, of Wýltessýre, of Hamtessýre þerto,
 Euere as he wende, and of ýs owe folc al so.

¹ *Pro*, þýn.

So þat he adde poer ynou, and atte laste hii come,
 And a batayle at Edendone agen þe Deneys nome,
 And slowe to grounde, & wonne þe maystre of þe velde.
 þe kýng & ys grete duke býgonne hem to zelde
 To þe kýng Alfred to ys wýlle, and ostages toke,
 Vorto wende out of ys lond, zýf he yt wolde loke;
 And zut þerto, vor ys loue, to auonge Cristendom.
 Kýng Gurmund, þe hexte kýng, vorst þer to come.
 Kýng Alfred ys godfader was. & ýbaptýsed ek þer were
 þretty of her hexte dukes, and muche of þat folc þere
 Kýng Alfred hem huld wýþ hým tuelf dawes as he hende,
 And supþe he zef hem large zýftes, and let hým wende,
 Hii, þat nolde Cristyn be, of lond flowe þo,
 And byzonde see in France dude wel muche wo.
 zut þe ssrewen come agen, and muche wo here wrozte.
 Ac þe kýng Alfred atte laste to ssame hem euere brozte.
 Kýng Alfred was þe wýsost kýng, þat long was býuore.
 Vor þey me segge þe lawes beþ in worre tyme vorlore,
 Nas yt nozt so hiis daye. vor þey he in worre were,
 Lawes he made rýgtuollere, and strengore þan er were.
 Clerc he was god ynou, and zut, as me telleþ me,
 He was more þan ten zer old, ar he couþe ys abece.
 Ac ys gode moder ofte smale zýftes hým tok,
 Vor to byleue oþer ple, and loký on ys boke.
 So þat bý por clergýe ys rýgt lawes he wonde,
 þat neuere er nere ý mad, to gouerný ys lond.
 And vor þe worre was so muche of þe luþer Deneys,
 þe men of þýs şalue lond were of þe worse peýs.

And robbedé and slowe opere, þeruor he byuonde,
 þat þer were hondredes in eche contreye of ys lond,
 And in ech toune of þe hondred a teþynge were also,
 And þat ech man wyþoute gret lond in teþynge were ydo,
 And þat ech man knewe oper þat in teþynge were,
 And wuste somdel of her stat, gýf me ¹ þu vp hem bere.
 So streyt he was, þat þey me ledde amydde weyes heye
 Seluer, þat non man ne dorste yt nýme, þey he yt seye.
 Abbeys he rerde mony on, and mony studes ywys.
 Ac Wynchestrye he rerde on, þat nýwe munstre ycluped ys.
 Hys lýf eygte and tuenty ger in ys kýnedom ylaste.
 After ys deþ he was ybured at Wýnchestre atte laste.

EDWARD, ys gode sone, kýng was ymad þo
 In þe ger of grace nýne hondred ger & on & nanmo.
² Foure & tuenty ger he was kýng, & to more poer come
 þan euere ys fader dude, ac bogt to so gret wýsdom.
 He wan³ þe kýnedom of þe March myd ys dedes bolde,
 So þat of hým yt was afterward yholde.
 And þat lond of Estangle, and Norþhumberlond,
 And Walys he wan þoru batayle, al vnder ys hond.
 And he nas neuere in batayle býneþe in þys lond.
 He byuond vorst an queintýse agen þe Deneys to anstond.

¹ Sic, cum spatio, in Codice nostro Harleyano. At þef þe (i. e. ðeoþðe sive theft) in Codice Cottoniano, sicut me docuit amicus. Adeo ut þuf þe in Codice nostro Harleyano sit legen-

dum. ² Edward the veil, his sone, Ar. ³ Logher was he þenne his fader of clergie and wisdom, But more glorious thenne he in power that hým come. He wanne Ar.

Vor þe heye tounes in þe lond and þe castles þerto
 Mýd gode kýngtes he let astory, & mýd sustýnancē þerto.
 So þat ware þe kýng were, and þer come her fon,
 In eche contreye prest hii were mýd þe lond volc anon,
 And smýte moný bataýle, þat þe kýng ýt nuste,
 So þat mýd strengþe of heye tounes ech contreye hým sulf
 wuste.

Hýs soster he let spousý, þat ýhote was Elifed,
 To þe kýng, þat huld þe March of hým, þat ýhote was E-
 þelred.

¹ So þat heo mýd chýlde was, and þogte hýre so sor,
 Ar þat chýld were ýbore, þat heo ne wýlde ýt nanmor.
 Com more to þulke stoupe vor me ne mýgte ýre bringe,
 þat heo wolde euer eft in manne's bedde come vor non þýng,
 Ac euere seýde, wanne heo was of suche þýnge býsozt,
 " þat kýnge's dogter, as he was, ýt býcom nozt,
 " Such fol delýt vorto do, ne such dede naþemo,
 " þat were encheson afterward of such pýne and wo.
 " Ac zýf þe ² bygýnnýge were zut as strong, as ýs þe ende,
 " Ich wene zut moný womman þulke wey wolde wende.
 þe luþer Edwolf was þe kýnge's broþer Edward,
 And, vor pur hate agen ýs broþer, held as assreward.

¹ Tho that heo with childe
 was, and hadde hit i bore,
 And hadde i felte the woo ther
 of, she saide therfore, That
 come woulde sheo neuere in
 manne's bedde more, For sheo
 hadde had so mýche sorow &
 sore; And seide, sheo nulde
 neuer este suche dede do,

That shuld be encheson of
 suche sorow and wo. On A-
 thelwolde, Eme's son of this
 kyng Edwarde, For hate
 ganne to werry hym as a shere-
 warde. The Danes *Ar. E-*
thelwoldum etiam filium pa-
trui regis appellat Will. Mal-
mesb. f. 25. b. ² Sic.

þe Deneys' were in Humberlond, to hem he gan drawe.
 Hii auonge hym vayre ynou, & were wyþ him wel vawe,
 And made hym her kyng anon, ys broþer vorto ssende.
 Sone hii greyþed her ost þo, Souþward vorto wonde,
 And asayle Estsex, and nome þat lond anon.
 Vor þe maystres of þe lond golde to hem echon.
 þo wende hii in to þe March, & mucche sorwe made,
 And robbede and destrude vaste anon to ¹ Creskelade.
 So hii passede Temese, and dude wo y nou,
 Kyng Edward sone myd ys ost after hem drou,
 And drof hem in to Humberlond myd wel quyç pas.
 Ac kyng Edwolf þer after sone aslawe was.
 Vor þo kyng Edward & ys men hamward ywend were,
² þat folc of Kent, azen ys wylle, ³ byleuede by hynde þere.
 þo Edwolf and þe Deneys wuste hem so byleue,
⁴ To hem hii smyte anon, and batayle hem zeue.
 þe Kent ers stode vaste azen, & þe kyng Edwolf slowe.
 Heje & lowe þer were aslawe, in eyþer alf ynowe.
 Kyng Edward þe nyþe zer of ys kynedom
 þe castel made of Hereford, and to gode ende com.
 þe zer þerafter þe Deneys ⁵ wende fram Leycestre to Norþ-
 hamtone
 Toward Oxenford faste, and at ⁶ Hogenorte

¹ *Vulgo*, Crekelade. *Male autem* Brekkelade in *Ar.* ² The folke *Ar.* ³ Be hynde laste there *Ar.* ⁴ Towarde hem they turned a ze, and bataille them zeue. The men of Kente stode a ye, and this Edwolf slowe *Ar.* ⁵ Went fro Northampton Toward *Ar.* ⁶ *Lege*, Hogenortone, (*sive, ut in Ar.*) Hoggenor-tonne.

Slowe muche folc ¹ y nou, andⁿ in þe contreye aboute.

Atte laste þe contreye folc com myd gret route,

And to dryue hem al to nozte, & her preye hem bynom.

² Supþe, in þe endleste zer of þe kynge's kynedom,
þe Deneys come and robbede Norþ Walys vaste.

So þat to yrchenefeld hii come atte laste.

³ Out of castel of Hereforde þat folc vaste þo com,
And of þe contreye al aboute, & batayle wyþ hem nom,
And slou of hem her hexte duc, & oþere men mony on.
Hii, þat mygte of scapye alýue, of londe flowe echon.

⁴ Alfed, quene of þe March, strong ⁵ womwan was and
⁶ quenýte

⁷ In batayle, and ýholde as quene in eche ponyte.

¹ *Desunt Ar.* ² Sithen in the xi. yere *Ar.* ³ Oute of Herford the folke a yenst heme sone com, *Ar.* ⁴ Elfede, *Ar.* ⁵ *Pro*, womman sive woman. ⁶ *L.* queýnte, *cum Ar. uti etiam mox infra* poýnte. ⁷ Ind in bataile as a kyng i holde in eche poýnte. Al Wales sheo ouercome, and Yorke was hure also. Atte Camelworthe sheo deýde sethe, and buried atte Gloucestre thoo *Ar. Deinde desiderantur reliqua metra, ad Eawardum hunc spectantia, multaque eorundem loco oratione soluta inseruntur, in quibus & indicatur, cum Wigornia, non Ferenduni (nunc Faringdon, in agro Bercheriensi) obiise. Nam sic auctor:* This Edwarde veil

deýde atte Worcetre, and buried was at Wýnchestre, by side his fader. (*minus recte. Nam & alii Ferenduni hoc contigisse asserunt.*) *qui & hæc retulit de morte atque sepultura Ælfedæ, Elfedæ, sive Ethelfledæ: Ethelfede, lady of Mercheneriche, a boue saide deide to fore hure brother Edwarde veil. v. yere, and was buryed in Seynt Petre's churche atte Gloucestre, whiche heo, with hure husbonde [Ethelred] with grete diligence had i maked, be cause they hadde translated Seynt Oswalde's bonus fram Bardenay thunder, but þat by Danes destroyed, a nother abbey now in by Eldre erchbischof of York.*

Al Walys heo ouercom, and þe March þerto.

Stafford heo wan, and Leycestre, and Warewýk þerto,
And Bruges & Euerwýk, & þe contreye ¹ &" al so
Of Euerwýk to hýre com, hýre wýlle vorto do.

At Tamewur þe heo deýde supþe, & ýbured he was ý wýs
In Seýnt Petre's porche at Gloucestre, as þe abbeý gut ýs.
þe kýnedom þo of þe March kýng Edward to hým nome,
As in þe sýxe & tuentýe ger of ýs kýnedom.

Kýng Edward adde þre sones : þe eldoste Aþelston,
And Edmond and Eldred, þat kýnges were echon.
And supþe he deýde at Farndone, as God gef þat cas,
And in mustre at Wýnchestre bý ýs fader ýbured was.

AþELSTON was þo kýng, þat was Edward's sone,
And þoru þe heýe men of þe lond ýcrouned at Kýngestone.
Nýne hondred ger of grace & foure & tuentý ý crouned he was,
² And aboute an fourtýne ger kýng þer after he was.

Holý chýrche he louede wel, and rerde moný on.
þe vorste ger of ýs kýnedom ýbore was Seýn Dunstone.
Nýwe abbeýes he made ³ vaste þýs gode Aþelston,
And þer nas of olde house in þe lond non,
þat he ne amendede mýd som lond, oþer mýd býldýnge,
Oþer mýd boc, oþer rýche cloþ, oþer oþer rýche þýnge.

¹ *Abesse malim.* ² And but
an xvi. yere after kyng he
nas *Ar.* ³ Many ich vnder-
stande, Ne olde Abhey was
ther none thourgh oute al his

londe, That he ne amended
with summe lond, other with
summe buildýng, Other with
bokes other clothe, or summe
rýche thýng *Ar.*

Norþhombreland he wan, and Walys and Scotland,
 And þe kыnges & her lond held al in ys hond.
 Hým þogte yt was more nobleye, þo he adde an hond al þys,
 Vorto make kыnges, þan to be kыng y wys.
 Azen he made kыnges, þat kыnges er were,
 Bote þat hii were vnder hým, and truage hým bere.
 þo hii adde her lond azen, þe kыng of Scotland
 Constantyn, and Analaf kын of Hombreland,
 Up þys kыng Aþelston gaderede men y nowe,
 And here bysouþe Homber myd her ost drowe.
 Analaf was gode ¹ kыngt, & stalward & queynte.
 Menestral he was gode ynou, & harpare in eche poynthe.
 To Aþelston pauylon myd ys harpe he wende,
 And so wel wyþoute harpede, þat me after hým sende.
 þer he harpede so wel, þat he payde al þe route,
 Ac eue were ys eyen in eche hurne aboute.
 After mete, þo hii nolde nanmore of ys pley,
² Hii zeue hým seluer vor ys gle, & let hým go ys wey.
³ Of þe seluer he adde hoker, vor he ne com þuder vor non,
 Ac ys wylle he adde þo he sey þe stat of ys fon.
 On, þat adde y be wyþ hým, þe kыng tolde þere.
 þe kыng hým blamede þo, þat he nadde ytold hým er.
 “Syre he seyde, “ych was ysuore to hým ar to þe,
 “And gyf ych adde hým ⁴ bysuýke, þe wors þou wost ⁵ leue me.

¹ Knýght *Ar.* ² Me yaf | me. Ac remewe to a nother
 hým yiftes for *Ar.* ³ Of his | stede thýne tentes Ich the
 yftes he tolde scorne, *Ar.* rede, *Ar.*
⁴ Be trayed, *Ar.* ⁵ Truste to

" Ac remewe in to anoþer stude þy pauylon bý myn rede,
 " Oþer þou myzt gūt to nýzt of som treson drede.
 ' þe pauylon was remeued þo, and þe kýng and alle ys,
 Ac a býssop and ys men þer uorþ com ýwýs,
 And pýzte þer her pauylon, & býleuede al nýzt þere.
 And þýs luper men com anýzt, & wende þe kýng ýt were,
 And slou þe býssop and alle ys men, þat gult nadde non.
 And supþe hii wende vorþore mo, and sogte Aþelston.
 Of hem nas he nozt ² ýwar ³ ar þo atte laste.
 Ac sone he and ys men armede hem wel vāste,
 And Edmond ýs broþer myd hým, ⁴ & þo hii preste were echon,
 And wende to þýs batayle, and mette myd her fon,
 þe kýng to ýs suerde drou, and þo ne vond he non.
 Hýt was myd treson hým býuome, hard cas was þat on.
 On God^{ll} almygtý & Seýn Aldelm þe kýng cride vaste þo,
 And hii sende hým bý vayr myracle bote in ýs wo.
 To hýs scaubert he pulte ys hond, al preste asuerd he vond
 þer inne, þoru God ý sond, no betere in lond.

¹ Thenne to a nother stede
 the kyng remew gan. To
 that place the same nyght [a
 bischop] cam than, And wende
 to haue founde the kýng ther,
 so that he logged ther, But
 the Enmýs cam a nýght, and
 wende the kýng hit were,
Ar. ² *Tum ultra progrediens* [*Analaus*] *regem ipsum*
imparatum offendit, quippe
qui nihil tale hostem ausu-
rum timens, largæ quieti in-

dulserat Will. Malmesb. fol.
 26. b. ³ Fort atte *Ar.* ⁴ And
 dighte hem echechon Faste to
 the bataille, to mete with hure
 sone. The kyng trawe wolde
 his swerde, when he tyme I
 seye, And thenne founde he
 there non. for hit was a way
 Per aunter bý fallýng a way
 or bý summe other cas. The
 kýng was ther of sore abassh-
 ed, as no wonder was. On
 God *Ar.*

In þe kyng tresorje þat suerd ¹ ýwust ýs,
 As vor ² noble relyke, gut to þys daje ýwýs.
³ I egged ýt ýs in on alf, and in þe oþer nozt.
 þere ne mýzte neuere gold ne seluer þeron be ýbrozt.
 þys noble kýng Aþelston, þo þys gode suerd hým com,
 Nobýlýche & wel he fazt, & so god earnest to hým nom,
 þat fram þat þe sonne aros, vorte hýt derc nyzt was,
 þe bataýle ýlaste, and neuere werý he nas.
 Wat þoru ýs stalwarhede, wat þoru Gode's grace,
 Mony was ⁴ gode bodý, þat he slou in þe place.
 þe bataýle was at ⁵ Brymesburý, & þere were of Dencýs
 An of Scottes aslawe, and also of ýreýs,
 Vyf zonge ⁶ kýnges, prout þoru al þýng,
 And prout Constantýn, þat of Scotlond was kýng.
 And of oþere, þat were aslawe, me ne mýzte non ende ýse.
 Hii, þat of scapede alyne, býgonne vaste to fle.
 þus ⁷ þe kýng Aþelston agaste þo ýs fon.
⁸ Vor hii ne ssolde in þys lond abbe ⁹ recet non,
¹⁰ þe castel of Euerwyk to grounde he let caste.
 (Vor ýs fon were ofte þer inne, þe wule ¹¹ he ýlaste)

¹ ýut i kepte is, *Ar.* ² A noble *Ar.* ³ Egged in the on half, *Ar.* ⁴ The strong bodý, *Ar.* ⁵ Brunnesbury *Ar.* *Vide cl. Gibsoni nominum locorum Explicationem in Chronico Sax. uti etiam Additiones ad ejusd. Gibsoni Camdeni Britannię Versionem Anglicam, p.873. in comitatu Northumbr.*

⁶ Knýghtes. *Ar. non adeo recte.*

⁷ This *Ar.* ⁸ And for *Ar.*

⁹ Resceýte *Ar.* ¹⁰ A castell *Ar.* *Inde certe & in additionibus oratione soluta in eodem codice scriptum legimus,* In the mene while Athelston lette throw downe,

York

an olde Castell at Ebraýwik, that the Danes bý olde tyme hadde i maked, and that hit shulde

þat hii nadde non recet, vorto greuȳ ys lond.

¹ Al so of ech maner porchas, þat com in ys hond,

Oþer þat ȝyf̄ enȳ of ys as in porchas nome,

He verbed, þat neuere non among ys spence ne come,

Ac to hous of relyḡyon þat me yt̄ al clene bere,

And to poueremen aboute, ² þat meseyse were.

Alle þe k̄nynges of Walys he broḡte wel to lawe

To Hereford al vnder h̄ym, to ys ³ wille vawe,

þat tuenty pound of golde ech of hem hym bere,

An ⁴ þretty pound of seluer fram ȝere to ȝere,

And ⁵ tuenty þousend ⁶ oxen ek to þys golde,

An hauckes and hondes, as monȳ as he wolde.

To certeyn wonynḡe he hem broḡte boþe lowe & heye,

So þat ⁷ her wonynḡe were al by weste Weye,

And noþynḡ in þe Est alf. So þat Weye ȳ wys

ȝut to þys ⁸ daye to delþ̄ Engelond and Walys,

And þoru k̄nynḡ Aþelston þat was vorst̄ ydo.

Men ⁹ of Cornwayle he broḡte to certeyn stude also.

shulde be no more refute to Enmys, and myche good, ther inne I founde, he parted a monge his men *Ar. Sed videsis* Will. Malmesb. fol. 27. b. 11. Hit dude i laste) *Ar.*

¹ Also of eche purchas, that he gat to his honde, Othur that any of his men that any purchas nome, He for bede that neuere mo a mong his purchas come, *Ar.* ² That seke and mysaised were *Ar.* ³ Wille wel fawe, *Ar.* ⁴ Trecentas Will.

Malmesbur. ⁵ 25. millia Will. M. ⁶ Oxen a yere to this golde, *Ar.* ⁷ The Walesshmen he putte beyonde Weigh, *Ar.* ⁸ Daȳ deleth *Ar.* ⁹ *Inde digressus in Occidentales Brittones se convertit, qui Cornwallenses vocantur, quod in Occidente Britannia siti, cornu Gallia ex obliquo respiciunt. Illos quoque impigrè adorsus, ab Excestra, quam ad id temporis a quo cum Anglis jure inhabitant, cedere*

Vor bygonde þe water of Tamcr he adde hem alle ýbrogt.
 To wonýe þer, as in her owe, and a þýs alf nozt.
 Vor hii wonede þer bý uore anon to Excestre ryzt,
 And Welsse were in Engeland vorte ¹ he ýt adde dýzt.
 Kýng Aþelston louede muche Malmesburý ý wýs.
 He zef hem of þe holý croýs som, þat þere zut ýs.
 And he was at ýs ende ² day váýre ýbured þere.
 Kýng he adde arst ýbe aboute an výtene zer.

EDMOND, Aþelstone's broþer, after hým was kýng,
 Gode man & doutede God þoru alle þýng.
 In þe zer of grace nýne hondred ýt was & ³ forutý zer,
 þat he was kýng ý mad, and old he was er
 Eýgtene zer, and he was kýng sýx zer ⁴ and day.
 Foure & tuentý zer he was old, þo he aslawe lay.
 Saracens þer were, þe zut býleuede in Engeland,
 In Lýncolne & in Leycestre, & in Derby ých vnderstonde,
 In Stafford & in Nothyngham. he drof hem al to nozt,
 And Cristýnemen aboute in her stude brogt.
 þet hous of Glastýnburý he louede wel ýnou,
 And made Seyn Dunston abbed þere, & to ýs conseýl hým drou,
 And þoru ýs conseýl chýrchýn wýde he let rere,
 And abbeýs and priorýes aboute here and þere.
 In to hous of Glastýnburý gret þýng he zef þo,
 And grete franchýses hem grantede, þat lasteþ euermo.

*compulit, terminum provincie
 sue citra Tambram fluvium
 statuens, sicut Aquilonaribus
 Britannis amnem Waiam li-
 mitem posuerat* Will. Mal-

mesb. f. 27. b.

¹ Athelstone hit right *Ar.*
² At Gloucestre he deyde *Ar.*
in marg. ³ Sic. ⁴ And vii.
 monethes in *Ar.*

⁵ þat

* þat hý adde her franchýses as veruþ as þe kýng,
 And mýd gode chartre, þat ʒut is þer, made confermýng.
 Edwýne ýs sone was þat luþer was ýnou,
 And Edgar þe ʒongore þat to alle godnesse drou.
 Kýng Edmond atte laste mýd luþer deþe's wonde
 Pýtoslyche was aslawe, alas! þulke stounde!
 Vor a traytor of * ýs lond, Lof was ýs name,
 * ýflou was out of Engeland mýd wretchede & ssame."
 Suþþe adaj as þe kýng sat at ýs mete
 At Pokelchyrche býsyde Brýstowe, & somdel adde ýzete,
 Lof, þýs luþer traytor, mýd ýs cloþes ýchanged þere,
 Com in, & býuore hým et, anoþer man as ýt were.
 A Seyn Austýne's day ýt was, as it valþ in Maý,
 þe kýng býhuld aboute, and þýs traytor ý saý,
 And auýsed hým suþþe wel, wat man ýt were.
 And þo he sey þat þýs Lof, þýs traytor sat þere,
 He hupte hým vp fram þe bord, in gret wraþþe ýnou,
 And hente þýs Lof bý þe top, † fram þe borde hým drou,
 An defouled hým vnder hým mýd honde & myd fote.
 þe þef, þat laý býneþe hým, þogte on luþer bote,
 And smot þe kýng wýþ a knýf in þe breste depe ýnou,
 And, to gret harm to al þýs lond, þe gode kýng he slou.

* So that hii habbeth
 Fraunchise as hit were a
 kyng, As afterward me may
 I see, thourgh his conferm-
 ýng. Edwýne his furste sone
 lithere was i nowe, But Ed-
 gar the ýonger to all gode-

nesse drowe *Ar.* † This londe,
 Leof *Ar. in quo & Leof etiam
 infra.* † I flemed was oute
 of Engeland, where of cam
 ther grame *Ar.* † And a
 doune hym drowe, *Ar.*

þet folc to drou þen traýtor ech lýme pecemele.
 þe kýng býgan ¹ bý al ýs lyf ýs gode wel wýde dele,
 And þe toun of Pokelchýrche, and oþer þat ýs were
 He gef in to Glastýnburý, & let hým burýe þere.
 And þere he lýþ gut to þus daý, ac y not þoru * wuch dom
 þe toun supþe of Pokelchýrche fram Glastýnburý com.
 Seyn Dunston was at Glastynburý þo þe kýng ýwounded was,
 And ² gut þoru joye of Deuel he wuste of þat cas.
 Vor þe Deuel com by uore hým, ⁴ & hoppede & lou,
 And saylede and pleýde, & made joye ý nou.
 þys holý man wuste anon, wu ýs joye was,
 And þat vor som mescheance of þe kýng he made ³ so glad pas.
 Toward Pokelchýrche he wende hastelyche and blýue,
 An me tolde hým bý þe weý, þat he was out of lýue.

EDRED was þo kýng anon after Edmond ýs broþer,
 Vor ýs tueye sones so zonge were, þat me ne mýzte abbe
 non oþer.

God man Edred was y nou, & to godnesse drou anon,
 And mucche louede holý chýrche, & þe godman Seyn Dunston,
 Men of Norþhomberlond were azen hým vaste,
 And of Scotlond also, ac her pcer lute ýlaste.

¹ All bý his lyf his gode a
 boutte dele. At Pukelechurche
 was do this dede, for thý to
 Glastenburý He hit ýaf, and
 bade me shulde at Glastenbu-
 rý him burý *Ar.* ² What *Ar.*
³ ýut in the same stounde
 he wiste of this cas *Ar.*

⁴ Dauncyng and lowgh, And
 as hit were pleýng made
 game i nogh *Ar.* ⁵ Suche
 solas. Dunston toward Pu-
 kelchurche dight him self
 bliue, So that me tolde him
 bý the waý, the kyng was
 out of lýue *Ar.*

Vor wat wýþ loue, wat wýþ eýe, he brogte hem al to ýs wylle,
And her olde seruage made hem holde al stýlle.

¹ Vourtene zer he was kýng, and at ýs ende day,
Me tolde Seyn Dunston ² vore," þat he sýk lay.
To hým he wende hastelyche, and bý þe weý ýwýs
He hurde angles sýnge an heý bý the ³ lýste þýs :

" þe kýng Edred nou aslepe in oure Louerd ýs.
þo wuste Seyn Dunston, þat he was ýwend to Heuene blýs.
⁴ Suche gode kýnges me ssolde ⁵ nou výnde among,
þat angeles of her endýnge mýgte made song :

EDWÝNE, Edmonde's sone, after Edred kýng was
Fals & luþer, vor non worse in ýs kunde nas.

As a nýwe Herodes in such poer he com,

⁶ And vp ýs poer destrude and apeýrede Cristendom.
A fol womman in spousbreche he huld vnder ýs wýf.
Seyn Dunston hým seyde wel, þat ýt was a luþer lýf.
And, as Seyn Jon Baptýst, kalangede her mýs dede.

Wroþ was þe kýng and ýs hore, þat he her folýe ⁷ wýþ,

¹ The Latyn seiþ ix. yere and a half *Ar. in margine.*

² *Deest Ar.* ³ *Idem quod Angl. Sax. luyt sive desiderium vel fervor. Sed híc loci hilaritatem signabit. perinde ac si dicas,* he heard angels sing on high with mirth this *sive* thus. *Inde in Cod. Ar.* And as he wende to him warde, he hurde bý the way A mery song of

angeles thus seggýng heýe &c. ⁴ Suche dede kynges

now fewe bene vs amonge,
That angelus atte hure endýng maketh of eny songe *Ar.*

⁵ *Potius, uou, i. e. few, ut ex Ar. constat, nisi cum eod. Cod. few adjicias, retento nou.*

⁶ And with his vnell lýuýng apeýred Cristendom *Ar.* ⁷ *E. wýþ sede.*

And þe womman fondede, hým to deþe brýnge.
 So þat Seýn Dunston was, þoru hýre and þe kýng,
 I flou out of Engelond, and to Flaundres wende.
¹ þe gode man ne toc neuere gome, þat me hým so foule ssende.
 Abbeýs þýs luþer man brogte ek in alle wo.
 And þat hous of Malmesburý, þat an old hous was þo,
² Of" tuo hondred ȝer and seuentý ýrerd þer byuore,
 He made ýt stable to ýs hors, as ýt were alle vorlore.
 So luþer man was þe kýng, þat þe heýmen of þe londe
 Bygonne, as hil nede moste, agen hým vaste at stonde,
 And býnome hým muche of ýs lond, ³ & býtoke Edgar ýs
 broþer.
 Vor he drou to alle godenesse, and ⁴ betere was þan oþer.
 þýs Edwýne was þus kýng þre ȝer, and somdel more,
 And þat lond vor ýs deþe ne wep noȝt ouersore.
 And gut vor al ýs ssrewede, as ýt ýwryte ýs,
 þoru býddýnge of Seýn Dunston, ýs soule com to blýs.

EDGAR Edwýne's broþer, & Edmonde's sone þe kýng,
 Kýng was after Edwýne, gode man þoru alle þýng.
 Non lýckore ýs broþer hým nas, þan an wolf ýs a lombe,
 Of manere ne of dede, þey hii were in one wombe.
 Vor þulke týme þat Edgar of ýs moder was ýbore,
 Seýn Dunston was at Glastýnburý, & þerafter & býuore,
 þo hurde he þulke týme angles sýnge ýwýs
 Up in þe luste a murýe song, & þat song was þýs:

¹ The gode man was wel | toke hit Edgar his brother
 a paide of þat God hým sende | *Ar.* ⁴ Heigher *Ar.*
Ar. ² *Deest Ar.* ³ And

“ To holý chýrche & to þe lond peýs ýs ýbore and blýs

“ Bý þulke chýlde's týme, þat nou ýbore ýs.

¹ Supþe þo Seyn Dunston wuste, þat þe chyld was ýbore
rygt þo

He wuste, þat al Engelond he ssolde brynge of wo.

And so he dude. vor þo he was, after ýs broþer, kýng

He brogte al þat lond in pes, þat er was in strýuýng.

He vndude alle luþer lawes, þat me huld býuore,

And gode lawes brogte vorþ, þat er were as uorlore.

Scotlond and Norþhumberlond and Walýs al so

Wýþ out heste to hým come, ýs wýlle vorto do.

þe erþe geld bet, & þe weder was ² mergore bý ýs daýe,

And lasse tempest in þe see þan me er ýsaýe.

Me tolde hým of Seyn Dunston, þat ýs broþer drof of londe.

After hým he sende anon, & he com þoru ýs sonde,

And ýs abbeýe auong in pes, fram wan he was so longe,

And was þe kýnge's conseýler, & vaýre was vnder vonge.

Erchebýssop of Kanterbury þoru þýs gode kýnge

Sýen Dunston was supþe ýmad, þe more godnesse to bringe.

³ þýs kýng al so at Glastynbury, as he þeruorþ com,

Seynt Aþelwold, þat was þer monek, out of ýs house he nome,

And gef hým ⁴ an place in Barcessýre, þat muche ýs in mone,

Výf mýle bý Souþe Oxenford, þat me clupeþ Abendone.

þýs holý man Seyn Aþelwold bulde þere vaste,

And a uayre abbeý þer býgan, ⁵ þat euereft aþ ýlaste.

¹ There bý knewe Seynt Dunston, that he, that bore was tho, Shulde kepe Engelond in his týme fro woo *Ar.*

² Merýer *Ar.* ³ This kyng also fro Glastenburý as he

therforth come Seynt Ethelwold, that was ther monek, oute of the house nome, *Ar.*

⁴ A *Ar.* ⁵ That hider to doth last *Ar.*

Vorst abbod he was þere hýmsulf, & monekes to hým nome.
In þys manere Abendone vorst to abbeýe com.

¹ It byuelle, þat þe býssop of Wýnchester was ded,
þe kýng hým made býssop þere, þoru Seyn Dunstone's red,
Atte heýe chýrche of Wýnchester, þer ýs se was ýdo,
þat me clupede chýrche cathedral, & gut me deþ also.

Canons þer were Seculers, þo he vorst þuder come,
Ferce men and prout, þat muche were in herdom,
þe kýng and Seyn Aþelwold azen hem sette vaste,

² And out of þe hous & of her rentes ech after oþer caste,
And made an hous of monekes, to holde her ordre bet.
þe monekes out of Abendone vorst were þuder ýuet.

Of Seyn Swýþýn þat hous was, as ýt ýs gut also,

So þat out of Abendone ý was vorst ýdo.

In secunde ȝer þat he vorst býssop was

þys gode kýng and he dude þys gode cas,

And ek in þe výfte ȝer of þe kýnge's kýnedom

Seyn Aþelwold vorst býssop was, & þe byssopryche nome.

þys gode kýng Edgar ³ & he" Seyn Swýþýn atte fyne,

þat longe adde vnder erþe ýleýe, vorst brogte into ssryne.

Issryned he was nýne hondred ȝer, & on & seuentýþe ȝer,

After þat our Louerd alýȝte in ýs moder anerþe here.

Kýng ⁴ Edgar & Seynt Aþelwold in Wynchester arerde also

Anoþer hous of monekes, þat gut stondeþ boþe tuo.

¹ The kyng made him bys-
shop after thorgh Seynt Dun-
stoun's rede In the churche
of Wynchestre, & ther suth
he was dede. Ther were Cha-
nons Seculers tho he thuder

come, That lýued in pruýte
and lýther lýf, and mýche in
hordom *Ar.* ² And of hure
houses and hure rentes eche
after caste *Ar.* ³ *Desunt Ar.*

⁴ *Reliqua pene omnia carmina,*

And gut þe þrydde hii rerde al so þere of Seynte Marye
 Of wýnmen of relýgýon, and made a nonnerýe.
 þe priorýe of Hely, þere a býssoprýche ýs,
 And þe abbeý of Petresboru, hii arerde also ýwýs,
 And þorney and Rameseye, and oþere moný on.
 Vor eygte & fourty abbeýes hii rerde in þýs lond echon.
 As þýs kýng Edgar an hontþ ýwend was
 Alone he com fram ýs man, as God gef þat cas,
 So þat he alýgte adoun, and aslepe lay.
 þo þogte hým in ýs slepe, þat an heý tre he say
 Stonde þere býsýdes hým, as he býhuld an heý.
 Upe þe hexte bowe tueye applen he sey,
 And þe bowes of þe on appel smýte oþer vaste
 So harde, þat he vel adoun in þe water atte laste.
 A uoýs seyde, as hým þogte, þes wordes þoru soun,
 " Wel ýs þe, wel ýs þe," as he vel adoun.
 þo he awok, hým þogte wonder of þýs cas,
 Hýs gode moder Alfýfe he tolde al hou ýt was.
 " ge leue sone," quap moder, " þe toknýng herof ýs,
 " þe heye tre, þat þou ýseye, býtokneþ þe ýwýs.
 " þe tueye applen býtokneþ, gýf þou yt wolt ýwýte,
 " Tueye heye soncs of þe, þat þou ssalt býgýte,
 " þat þe one's bowe smýte þen oþer to grounde,
 " þat ýs, þat þe oþere's frende ssolle þe oþer sle mýd wounde.
 " þe voýs, þat seyde, " wel ýs þe," to tokný þat ýs,
 " þat hým worþ wel ýnou, vor to heuene he wende ýwýs.

ad Edgaram spectantia, desiderantur in Ar. in quo tamen plura, ad eundem pertinentia,

oratione prosaica concepta, habentur.

Al þys þyuel afterward. vor sones he adde tueye,
 Seyn Edward and Aeldred. þat kыnges were beye,
 And one's kunrede þen oþer suþþe slou,
 And he wende to heuene, and was wel ý nou.
 He adde Edward by ýs vorste wýf, as ých abbe y sed,
 And bý Alfrede, ýs oþer wýf, he adde Aeldred.
 And Alfýfe, ýs god moder, let rere ýwýs
 Vorst þat hous of Ssafteturý, as Seyn Edward's body ýs.
 Kыng Edgar adde vnder hým alle þe kыnges hereaboute.
 Vor þer nas non ýwýs, þat nadde of hým ¹ dounte.
 þeruor þe kыng of Walys, as in gret seygnorye,
 He het, þat he hým sende eche ger bý maystrye
 þre ² þousand of wolues, in name of truage.
 þe Welýsse kыng, vp ýs power, dude hým þe seruage,
 And sende hým þys wolues fram gere to gere.
 þre þousand at certeýn terme vor þat lond delýnered were.
 þre ger he huld ýs rente, ac þe verþe was bý hýnde.
 Vor he sende þe kыng word, þat he ne mýgte nanmo ýfýnde.
 And þat was lute wonder, vor to vale þer were bý vjue.
 Vor al þat lond were þe wors, adde hii býleued alýue.
 Boþe Walýs and Engeland þe betere ýs þeruore gut,
 And þeruore þe gode man ýt dude more þan vor prute.
 þys gode kыng Edgar, þat so stalworde kыng was,
 And wys & hardý þoru out al, bote lute of body nas.
 þeruore þe kыng of Scotlond enuýe adde þerto.
 And ³ as he sat at mete, & moný oþer kыngt al so,

¹ *L.* doute. ² Hundred | bý fel atte a fest, where ma-
alii. Et sic etiam scriptor | ny wordes communliche ben
prosaicus in Cod. Ar. ³ And so | spoke, Kynad, kыng of Scot-
tes,

He seyde a wel heȝ word among ȝs kȳngtȳs echon,
 þat he adde gret hoker, (& wonder nas ȳt non)
 Of a so lute halue man, as kȳng Edgar was,
 þat þer nas lond ne prince non, þat of hȳm adrad nas.
 þȳs word com to þe kȳng Edgar, þeruor he þoȝte hȳm teche,
 Wuch were þe halue man, ȝȳf he mȳȝte hȳm of reche.
 He com and mette hȳm in a wode, and bed hȳm abyde,
 And he adde vor þe nones tueȳe suerdes bȳ ȳs syde.
 He drou out boþe tuo, and bed hȳm nȳme an honde,
 And chese weþer he wolde. and þen halue man vonde,
 And loke wer þe halue man hȳm mȳȝte out at stonde.
 Vor dereȳnȳ hii wolde hem sulue tuo, & take Gode's sonde.
 þe oþer vel adoun akne anon rȳȝt vor drede,
 And cryde hȳm mercȳ vor Gode's loue of þat he mȳs seyde.
 Kȳng Edgar adde reuþe of hȳm, so reulȳch he gan crie.
 "Syre kȳng," he seyde, "ech god man ȳt ȳs vȳleȳnȳe
 "To be of bold word atte mete, & coward in þe velde.
 "Understonde þe bet efsone, and hold me þȳn helde
 þe godenesse al of kȳng Edgar none tonge telle ne maȳ.
 Monȳ was þe god abbeȳ þat he rerde bȳ ȳs daȳ.
 Seynt Edward þe marter, as ȳch seyde er, was ȳs sone
 Bȳ ȳs raþere wȳf, and Seynt ¹ Edȳþe of Wȳltonne.

tes, in his borde seide thus: "Me
 "wondreth," quath he, "that
 "suche an halfe man as Ed-
 "gar shulde wȳnne so manȳ
 "prouinces *Auctor prosaicus*
in Cod. Ar.

¹ *Atqui cave sis, ne pro*
filia legitima habeas. Spuria
etenim orat è Wlfritha sive

Wlfrida ab Edgardo suscepta,
Inde Will. Malmesb. (f. 33. b.)

"Nam de Egelsteda, cogno-
 "mento candida filia Ordmeri
 "ducis potentissimi Edwardum
 "genuit, & sanctam Editham
 "de Wlfritha, [*al.* Wlfrida]
 "quam certum est non tunc
 "sancti-

“sanctimoniam fuisse, sed ti-
“more Regis puellam laicam se
“velavisse, moxque eandem ar-
“repto velo lecto imperiali sub-
“actam: Unde offensum bea-
“tum Dunstanum, quod illam
“concupisset, quæ vel umbra-
“ticè sanctimontialis fuisset,
“vigorem Pontificalem in eum
“egisse.” Quæ verba & ipsum
etiam auctorem prosaicum in
Codice Ar. ob oculos habuisse
comperit habeo, quamvis
Sanctam Editham non nomi-
net. Sic nempe ille: To this
Ensample of cruwelte (jam an-
tea locutus fuerat de Ethel-
woldo, ab Edguro occiso, eo
quod minus honeste sese gessis-
set in negotio ad filiam ducis
Devoniæ, Venere quasi ipsa
formosiolem, pertinente) er
dude, his foos putteth a nother,
that is to saye, that Wulfride
monechyn i sacred he toke out
of hure abbey, & delt with her
holdyng his lemman. Which
Poynt whenne Seynt Dunstone
hurde, he blamed and vnder-
name the kyng hugeliche, so that
he sette vii. yeres penaunce vpon
him, the which he toke on hym,
that is to say of, and that vii.
yerre he bare no crowne. But
summe saith, that this Wulfride
was nat vereliche a nonne, bote
that for drede of the kyng a
Seculer woman i veyled, and a
none the veile so i doo a way, &

take to the kyng's bedde. but
 nat for than Dunstone dude the
 lawe a yēnst the kyng as for a
 nonne, suth that the kyng wolde
 coueyte any, whether she were
 verrelliche veiled or noo. But
 how so euer thes this [*sic*]
 thynge were, certeyne hit is,
 that fro the xvi. yere of his age,
 whiche yer he was ordeyned
 kyng, a nou to the xxx. yere
 him lakked his coronyng. And
 thenne was he crowned atte
 Bathe, and lynes after but iii.
 yere. *Neque hac in re magnt*
æstimandam esse censeo aucto-
ritatem rotulæ cujusdam mem-
braneæ, sermone Gallico, penes
Richardum Gravesium, ami-
cum illum eruditissimum, de
Mickleton in agro Gloucestri-
ensi, in qua rotula tanquam filia
legitima commemoratur Editha,
contra fidem scriptorum opti-
morum. Hæc enim verba ro-
tulæ: Iceti Edgar auoit. ii.
femmes, le vne apres lautre. De
la primer il engendra Edward,
ke puis fu martyr, e Seint
Edith. de la secunde Eamun e
Ethelred. Quam tamen rotu-
lam idcirco plurimi faciendam
esse duco, quod plerisque, quas
vidi, sit antiquior, picturasque
regum ac principum exhibeat,
minus equidem elegantes, sed
quæ antiquariis multis in
rebus usui esse possint. Sed
(quod dolendum) imperfecta
est

He deyde & wende to heuene nyn hondred zer ych wene
As in ¹ þe of grace, and sýxtý and fyftene.

SEYNT Edward þe marter, ys eldore sone,
After hým was kýng ýmad, as lawe was & wone.
þe godenesse of þýs zonge kýng ne maý no tonge telle.
Vor he was mek & mýlde ýnou, & vayr of fless & felle,
Debonere to speke wyþ, & wyþ pouere men mest.
Chast and wýs of conseyl, and prute he louede lest.
Wýlde men ne louede he nozt, þat rechýles were of þogte,
Ac wýse men he drou to hým, & after hem he wrogte.
Ech gret dede þat he dude, þe messtedel ssolde go
After þe erchebýssop Seyn Dunston, þat was þo.
Gode pes þer was in Engeland, & loue & joye ýnou,
And rýchesse bý ys daýe, vor elles ýt were wýþ wou.
To þe godnesse of þýs holýmon þe deuel adde enuýe,
And þe luþer quene ys stepmoder, þat vol was of tricherye.
Vor heo þogte nýzt & daý, zýf heo mýzte þoru ený þýng.
þat Seynt Edward were aslawe, & yre sone ýmad kýng,
þe zer þat he ýmartred was þe hexte men of þe loud
In þe toun of Calne were, as ých vnderstonde.

*est rotula, quippe quæ incipit
ab Athelstano rege, desinitque
cum Edwardo post conquæs-
tunã primo, priori parte, pa-
riter atque posteriori, abscis-
sa, & forsitan funditus deper-
dita. in cujus sane Athelstani
regiæ pictura illud plane ob-
servatu dignissimum esse vi-
deo, quod sceptrum sive insig-*

*ne regium in manu teneat si-
nistra, veterum ad amussim re-
ferens βακτηρίας. minime absur-
de, quum princeps esset belli-
cosissimus, clavaque Herculeæ
usum fuisse censerent hostes.
cujusmodi tamen βακτηρίας neu-
tiquam, quod sciam, videas in
nummis Athelstanianis.*

¹ Adde, zer,

As hii sete in an chambre an heȝ in counseȝl of speche
 þe flor to brac vnder hem, as yt were vor wreche,
 And hii velle and debrusede somme anon to deþe,
 And somme ýmaymed, & somme ýhurt, so þat enȝ vnneþe,
 Wýpoute gret harm, of scapede, bote Seȝn Dunston by cas,
 þat hente hȝm bý a bem, and ýsaued was.

Wat bý toknede þȝs, þat þe heȝme men velle so,
 Bote þat hii and al þat lond býneþe ssolde be ýdo,
 þoru folc of strange lond, and þat me ssolde ýse,
 Vor hii soffrede her kȝng so vȝllȝche ý morþred be ?
 Vor a daȝ as Seȝn Edward an hontey wende bý cas
 In an wode in Dorsete, þat býsȝde ¹ Warham was,
 þat vaȝr wode was þulke tȝme, a gret wȝlle hȝm com to,
 Vor to ýse ýs zonge broþer, (vor anon he þogte yt do.)
 Vor he was a lute þer býsȝde, as ýs stepmoder was,
 In an toun, þat me cluped Corf, þat bote þre mȝle þanne nas.
 A strong castel þer ýs nou, ac þo nas non þere.
 Longe þogte Seynt Edward at ýs broþer ar he were.
 An vewe men mȝd hȝm he nom, & þuder ward gan ryde.
 Hȝs men pleyde bý þe weȝ, & spradde aboute wȝde.
 So þat þȝs holȝ kȝng alone was sone,
 And alone wende vorþ, as he þogte to done.
 þo hys luþer stepmoder alone ýsey hȝm come,
 Heo þogte do ýre wȝlle of hȝm, as heo adde ýr red ý nome.
 þo þȝs holȝ man was neȝ ýcome, þe quene agen hȝm eode
 Wȝþ noble maȝne ýnou, & gret loue hȝm gan bede.
 þe feste þat heo wȝþ hym made non tonge telle ne maȝ.
 Heo suor, þat he ssolde alȝgte, & býleue mȝd ýre al day.

¹ Wharham *Ar.*

“ Certes, madame,” quap þys oþer, “ so ne may yt nogt be.
 “ Ac lat me speke mýd mý broþer, vor me longeþ hym to se.
 “ Vor ar ých hým abbe ýseye, ý ne worþe nogt blýþe ýwýs,
 “ Mýn herte ýs so muche on hým, & non wonder hýt nýs.
 “ A, syre,” quap þys luþer quene, “ wanne yt ne may oþer be,
 “ Vorst ých wolle to þe drýnke, & suþþe þou ssalt hým ýse.
 “ As me hým drýnke toc, on was prest ýnou,
 “ And þoru ýs wombe smot a knýf, and ýs gottes to drog.
 A long knýf yt was & smal ý nou, as me may gut ýse
 Atte chýrche of Kauersham, as he aþ zare ýbe.
 þys holýman sat vp rýgt, & ýsey ýs deþe's wounde.
 He ne rod bote lute weý, ar he vel to grounde,
 And let þer ýs suete lýf, and to heuene wende.
 Awey! lute wel þogte he, þo me ýs wombe rende.
 þo þys holý man ýmartred was, hii, þat hým þer brogte to,
 Býþogte hou hii mýgte best mýd þe holý body do.
 Hii porueýde an derne stude, & þer inne yt caste
 Výllýche & stýllelýche, & bured yt þer vaste.
 þo þys dede was ýdo, þe quene adde al hyre wýlle,
 (Vor me ¹ hal euere mýd þe quyke,) þe dede was sone stýlle.
 Seynt Edward þe ² výtfe zer of ýs kýnedom
 Agen eue aday aslawe was in such marterdom.

³ **AELDRED**, þe quene sone, þat kyng was ýmad þo,
 Nas bote of ten zer old, þo ýs moder dude þys wo.
 Ne of þys dede nuste he nogt, bote as God gef þat cas.
 In þe ⁴ luft he hurde anheý, as he alone was,

¹ Holt Ar. ² Ferst Ar. mi. | *híc, quam & in seqq.* ⁴ Welkne
nus recte. ³ Ethelred Ar. tam | he hurde Ar.

Hys broþer, þat was aslawe, þȳtoslyche grede.
 þet chýld cryde & sore wep, & ys moder þat cas sede
 Welle, þat þys luþer quene anguyssous was þo.
¹ þat chyld heo hente vaste anon, þat he ne moste on vot go.
 zerd ne vond heo prest non, þat chýld vorto bete,
 An honduoł heo hente of ² candlen longe and grete.
³ þat chýld heo bete ⁴ so stronge mýd þe condlen long & towe,
 Heo ne býlenede noȝt ar he lay at hyre vet yswowe.
⁵ Warþoru þys chýld afterward, such heȝ man as he was,
 Was þe worse wan he sey condlen vor þys cas.
 Wat halt yt to telle longe? þys chýld me made kýng,
 Ac Seyn Dunston ⁶ wel' vneþe wolde do þe sacring.
⁷ Vor god man spek ek þerof wel longe bý uore,
 þo he baptýsed þys Aeldred, sone so he was ý bore.
 Vor þe chýld fuled in hys hond þe water & þe vanston,
 Býuore býssopes þat þer were, and heȝe men monȝ on,
 And dude hys kunde fulþ hede. Seyn Dunston scýde anon,
 þat he ssolde of sunne encheson be, & of wrechhede monȝ on.
 And þo he ssolde ⁸ kýng be, þys god man Seyn Dunston
 Hatede mucche to crounȝ hým, gýf he yt mýȝte ver gon.
⁹ Ac þo he moste nede yt do, þoru pur londe's lawe,
 "Syre kýng," he seyde, "vor þou art mýd vnryȝt herto
 ýdrawe,

¹ The childe *Ar.* ² Wax-
chandellen *Ar.* ³ The *Ar.*

⁴ So sore bette with *Ar.*

⁵ Wherfor euer afterward,
for this ilke cas, Whenne he
suche candelen seigh, the
worse him thought he was *Ar.*

⁶ *Deest Ar.* ⁷ Of him pro-

phecied Dunston long bý fore,
Tho that he christened him
whenne he was ibore *Ar.*

⁸ I crowned be, the godeman
Dunston Wel loth he was to
croune *Ar.* ⁹ But whenne
he most nedes hit doo, by the
londe's lawe, *Ar.*

“ Up þy nowe heued yt ssal come þy moder luþer plawe
 “ þoru ssedýnge of þy broþer blod, þat þus ys brogt of dawe,
 “ And vor Englysse men were wel ýpaýd
 “ In ssedýnge of þy broþer blod, þat so was býtraýd,
 “ þer vor her poer ssal al clene hem be býnome,
 “ And þou al so. Vor strange folc of strange londe ssal come,
 “ And þy lond vor þyn seruage & to grounde ýbrogt.
 “ And al þat ssal come bý þýne day, & bý myne nocht.
 “ Atte laste our Louerd wolle of hem vnderstonde.
 And al þys word to soþe com supþe to Engeland.
 gut Elfred, þe luþer quene, þat Seynt Edward slou,
 Of yr trepas býuore ýre deþ repentant was ýnou,
 And rerde tuo nonnerýes, Worwel þat one was,
 And Ambresbury þet oþer, to bete ýre trespas,
 An adde grace, 3yf God wolle, ýre sýnne vor to bete,
 And come to gode amendement, ar heo þat lýf lete.
 þe þrydde ger, as yt wolde be, of Aýldrede's kýnedom,
 þe býgýnnýnge of þis sorwe to Engeland vorst come.
 Vor of þe volc of Denemarch þer ariuede þo,
 Atte hauene of Souþ hamtone, sene ssýp vol & ² nanmon,
 An robbede þe tonn vaste, at her poer noþýng nas.
 þys was as a tokne þat to comýng was,
 As bý Seynt Dunstone's day nanmore þer ne com.
 Vor he deyde þe teþe ger of þe kýnge's kýnedom,

¹ On the also strange folke
 of other londe shall come.
 This londe worth in seruage,
 and be to grounde i brought
Ar. Igitur pro vor þyn repo-
nerem worþ yn, i. e. shall be to.

² Nomo, And gonne to robbe.
 faste a boue, but lite here
 power nas. This was the
 furst tokene of woo to come
 that was, But by Dunstone's
Ar.

And nyne hondred ȝer & eȝtē & eȝtety after þat God was
yboꝛe.

And þe byssop Seynt Athelwold was ded þer byuore,

And Seynt Oswald þe byssop after þre ȝer,

As in þe ¹ þretteþe ȝer þat þe kyng croune ber.

² þer betere peys yt was vor hem þe wule hii were alȝue.

³ Ac after her daȝe sone, þe sorwes spronge blȝue.

¹ xiii. yere *Ar.* ² The better
Ar. ³ But after her daȝes sone
sorwes sprong rȝue. This kyng,
er he hadde a wȝf, he gat ane
sone Bi a symple woman, that
worth euer in mone, That, for
his strength, called was Ed-
munde Irenside. For so orped
knȝght me ne knewe wide *Ar.*
minus quidem recte, & contra
fidem eximii probique nostri
historici Roberti, qui plane
docuit, Edmundi matrem ux-
orem re vera fuisse Ethelredi.
id quod etiam fecerunt alii op-
timæ notæ scriptores, (inter
quos jure optimo censendus
eruditissimus Bradius) secus
atque illi, qui, partibus addicti,
nothum Edmundum (è concu-
bina nimirum genitum) fuisse
produnt, in quibus & ipse erat
Jacobus Tyrrellus, qui tamen,
paullo antequam fatis conces-
sisset, me monente in Lelando
nostro, (Coll. Vol. VI. p. 75.)
sententiam mutavit, ut è nota
quadam liquet in Bibliotheca
Bodleiana ab ipso Jacobo pro-

pria manu in Historia sua An-
gliæ generali scripta, quam si-
mul atque commodum fuerit
consulas velim. Ceterum & il-
lud notandum est, per symple
woman in Cod. Ar. non aliud
quam ignobilem feminam esse
intelligendum, de qua re nos
etiam breviter egimus in Le-
lando. id quod etiam viderat
auctor prosaicus in Cod. Ar.
ubi de Edmundo sic scribit:
This kynges [Ethelred] sone
was not of Emme quene, but of
a nother woman unknow to the
commune peple. Natheles he
was a faire, jolyf yong man, a
strong man and hardy, and for
thi of Englysshmen was he
cleped Edmunde Irenside. He
muche a leide þe cowardyse of
his fader, and þe loughnesse
of his moder in him self thorgh
his vertue noblelich. *At-*
que hæc chartis mandave-
ram priusquam rotulam (cujus
supra, p. 286. mentionem feci)
Gravesianam vidissem, quæ
tamen nec ipsa illis favet, qui
Ed.

þe kȳng adde bȳ hȳs vorste wȳf one stalwarde sone,
þat, vor hȳs stalwardhed, longe worþ in mone.

Vor me ne vond non so gode kȳngt ware so he wende wȳde.

Me cleped hȳm, vor hȳs strengþe, Edmond ȳrensyde."

þe sorwes, as ȳch chabbe ȳtold, spronge aboute ȳlome.

Vor þat folc of Denemarch sone to londe come,

*Edmundum nothum fuisse ve-
lint. Contra, picturæ tanquam
primogenitum heredemque E-
thelredi exhibent, verbaque ip-
sa filium ex uxore non è con-
cubina fuisse innuunt. hæc
nempe, pro interpunctione
rotulæ. Icesti Ethelred engendra
Eamun ȳreneside de vne
femme aliene ke fu la soer au
duc de Normandie. si engendra
alured ke fu trai par Goud-
wȳn count de kent. E Edward
le confessour ke gist a Westmo-
ster. E quibus verbis non est
quod colligas, Edmundi ma-
trem fuisse ducis Normanniæ
sororem, quæ tamen (utpote
Ethelredi uxor secunda) Alu-
redi atque Edwardi mater re-
vera erat. Id quod satis erit
manifestum, si hoc modo ver-
barotulæ distinguantur. Icesti
Ethelred engendra Eamun ȳre-
neside. De une femme aliene,
ke fu la soer au duc de Nor-
mandie, si engendra Alured,
ke fu trai par Goudwyn count
de Kent, e Edward le Confes-*

sour, ke gist a Westmo-
ster. Hæc distinctio si probetur, id
utique liquebit, rotulæ aucto-
rem Edmundi matrem igno-
bilem itidem fuisse censuisse,
nihilque proinde de eadem à
seipso fuisse dicendum. Cete-
rum non diffiteor, ulibi etiam
de Irenside matre locutum fu-
isse scriptorem prosaicum in
codice Ar. eamque pro concu-
bina habuisse. After the deth
(inquit ille) of Knut, Harol-
de & Hardeknut, kynges of
Engelonde, regned Seynt Ed-
warde Confessour, Edmund
Irenside's brother in his fader's
half, that is to seye of Ethel-
red kyng, but nat in the mo-
der. for this Edmund
Irenside was gete of vnlawfulle bed-
de, though he were noble and
stronge in bataÿle. Atque hæc
sub Henrico II^o. tradit, ubi de
Henrici II^o. stemmate agit,
verba dicta interim innuens è
Chronicis Gallicis se produx-
isse.

And

And anour alf þys lond þe hauenes hii adde ýsozt.
 So þat Norþhumberlond was al to grounde ýbrozt.
 Kent hii destrude also god, & þe Est contreye wýde.
¹ Exetre hii barnde al adoun, & in þe West syde,
 Vr kyng worrede ofte agen, as he myzte do.
 Ac wreche of ýs broþer deþ wel harde hym com to.
 Vor hys poer was lute worþ. vor he gef hem atten ende
 Four þousend pound of sterlynges, hem agen to wende.
 So þat hys quene deyde, and of sorwe and sore
 Hym com in eche half, euere þe leng þe more.
 Vor þe Deneys come agen, and in eueryche ende
 Hym worrede her & þer, þat he nuste wuder wende.
 He býþozte hym wel narwe, gýf þer myzte be ený red
 þoru wýuýnge, oþer þoru ený þýng, ² vor hys wýf was ded,³
 He vnder stod, þat Rýchard, duc of Normandýe,
 Was man of gret poer, and of gret seýgnorye,
 Vor Emme, hys ⁴ gode dogter, he sende ofte ýs sonde,
 To spouse hyre and to make hyr quene of Engelond,

¹ The West contre also they
 wonne Deuenshire, And the
 Toune of Excestre sette thay a
 fuyr. Our kyng wered *Ar.* ²
Tam híc quam & alibi mire
omnia permutantur in Ar. ita
scilicet, ut hæc verba plane o-
mittat, ne Edmundi Irenside
matrem Ethelredi uxorem fu-
isse agnosceret. ³ Good sus-
 ter, *Ar.* ⁴ *Sed discrepantia inde*
orta, quia Richardus & Em-

ma filii erant Richardi primi,
ducis Normanniæ. Hinc cer-
te scriptor prosaicus in eod.
Codice Ar. Thes [Emme]
 was Richarde's doughter, duc
 of Normandie, which. L. wýn-
 ter after William his fader
 góuerned thulke Duchie, which
 the xviii. yere this kyng dey-
 de. And after him came Ri-
 charde the II. whas suster was
 thees Emme.

þat he mygte, þoru alyance, eny help vndergo,
To wyte hym fram hem of Denemarch, þat dude þys lond so
wo.

So þat þo hii were aton, þe spousynge was ydo,
As in þe zer of grace a þousend and tuo,
And of þe kynge's crounyng in four & tuenty þe zere.
¹ þo þogte þe kynge, þat he adde of ys fon þe lasse fere.
² And here sprong, lo! þe vorste more as of hem of Normandie,
Ware þoru hii come in to þys lond, & ³ abbeþ þe maystre.
Vor þe kynge adde by ⁴ þys. M. tueye sones ywys,
Alfred, & Seynt Edward þat at Westymustre yssryned ys.
And of þulke blode supþe Wyllam bastard com,
As ze ssole her after yhure, and wan þys kynedom.
þat poer muche of Denemarch in pes wytoute stryf
Was hem ywend to Denemarch, ar þe kynge weddede wyf.
þe kynge, vor ys grete poer, as of ys ⁵ wynnyge,
Alle þe Deneys, þat were byleued, he let to deþe bringe
In a Seynt Bryce day, and in one day echon,
þat non nere of opere ywar, ne þat þer ne of scapede non.
Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, þo he hurde of þys cas,
Made hym wroþ & wod ynou, & eche þat wyþ hym was.
Hii greyþed hem myd gret poer, and to Engelond come
As in þe uyue & tuentyþe zer of þe kynge's kynedome,
⁶ Hud in þe zer of grace a þousend and þre.
Hii slowe & sorwe dude ynou, nomore ne mygte be.

¹ Thenne *pro* þo in *Ar.*

² Ther sprong vppe tho the
ferst more of hem of Nor-
mandye, *Ar.* ³ Hadde the
seignourie *Ar.* ⁴ This que.

ii. sones I wys *Ar. rectius.*
nisi forsitan M. pro Mistress
vel Maistress *sive* domina *ac-*
cipias. ⁵ *L.* wyninge. ⁶ *L.*
and *cum Ar.*

So þycke hii come, þat þe lond ouer al hii gonne fulle,
 As þycke as ameten crepeþ in an amete hulle.
 By Norþe and by Souþe, in þe Est and in þe West,
 So þycke hii come, þat me nuste in wuch half kepe best.
 Hii ne sparede prest ne clerc, þat hii ne slowe to grounde,
 Ne men of relygyon, ware so hii eny founde.
 Ne wommane, ne soukyng chylde, ne dogter, ne sone.
 Hii verbarnde Norwych, and þe toun of Wyltone.
 þat a reulych lond was Engelond, & fol of sorwe ynou.
 Hii mygte acorsy þe ¹ foleⁿ queene, þat Seynt Edward slou.
² Vor Suan, þe luþer duc, adde euere ys yuere
 þre felawes, þat next hym were, in echt manere
 Byreynynge and robberye, and quellynge atte laste.
 þys were hys þre felawes, þat he huld euere vaste.
 Wanne at an god manne's house ys men were at inne,
 Vorst hii wolde ete & drynke þat hii found þer inne,
 And suppe þe louerd of þe hous quelle and alle hys,
 And suppe brenne al ys hous, as vor her scot ywys.
 Suche were þo þe gyftes þat hyder come þo.
 Muche aþ Engelond ydryue sorwe and wo.
 Mest wo hii dude in Barcssyre, and vp Assesdoune,
 And so aboute Quychelmesley, and so in mony toun.
 Atte laste kyng Aylfred, þo he was to grounde ybrogt,
 And muche of þe lond aslawe and destruyd al to noht,

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² With this | myche folke of him sore a gast.
 Swan, the luþer duke, iii. | Most sorow they dude in
 felwes were, Euere folwýng | Berke shire aboute Asshe-
 hym, of luther manere, Rob- | doune, And a boutte Quichol-
 byng and brennyng, & quel- | mes they stroyed many a
 lýng the last. These made | toune *Ar.*

Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, he zef atte nende
 Folle þrýttý þousend pound, to Denemarch to wende,
 And býleue þýs lond in pes, so þat þýs was ýdo.
 Ac lute ýt was ar þer com wel more wo þerto.
 Vor þe kýng Aýldred, ýsey ýs lond al bare
 Of þe folc of Denemarch, he nolde nozt gut be ýwar,
 Ac let gaderý anewe host, þoru al Engeland wel wýde,
 Of heýe men and of lowe eke, ýgadered bý þe hýde,
 þat euere eýzte hýde lond an man hým ssolde fýnde
 Wýþ helm & haubert, & þe atýl, þat non nere býhýnde;
 And greýþed hem ssyppes in þe see, ac al nas worþ afýlle.
¹ Vor þo ýs coust was al ýdo, he mýzte let abbe ýbe stýlle.
 To Suan, duc of Denemarch, þe týtynge sone com.
 Hýs ost and hýs poer wýþ hým sone he nome.
 And in þe þousend zer of grace, & þe teþe zer al so,
 And of vr kýnge's crounement þrýttý zer & tuo,
 In an holy þores day, to þýs lond he come,
 And þen toun of Gýpeswých mýd strengþe sone nome,
 And robbede aboute in þe lond, and tounes adoun caste.
 Ac þe contreye of Grantbrugge azen hem stod vaste,
 And fogte al þe stalwarde men, þe wule her poer ýlaste,
 Ac hii were, as hii nede moste, býneþe atte laste.
 And þere was þe kýnge's suster sone ýslawe Aþelston,
 And barons and knýztes, and heýe men monýon.
 Aboute heruest ² þýs Deneýs as roters arnde
 Bý Chýlterne to Oxenford, and ³ þen toun barnde.

¹ Tho all the cost was i | ther more wende *Ar.* ² Thane
 made, hii myght as well a be | toun brende *Ar.*
 stille *Ar.* ³ The Danes fur-

þo wende hii vorþ of Denemarch, & robbed al Estsex,
 And ¹ gute bruggessyre & Estangle, & also Mýddel sex.
 Bokýnghamssyre & Oxenfordssyre, & Hertfordssyre al so,
 Bedeuordssyre and haluendel Hontýndonessyre þerto.
 Norþhamtessyre, and bý Souþe Temese Barcessyre,
 And Soþereye and Souþsex, and Souþhamtessyre.
 An mucheldel of Wýltessyre, and þo al þýs was ýdo,
 Hii drowe hem toward Canterburý, to robbý þere al so.
 In þe þousend ȝer of grace, and endleuene þerto,
 þýs folc com to Kanterburý, robberye to do.
 Bý tuene hour leuede daý þe latere, & Mýelmassé daý,
 þýs folc býsette Kanterburý, and vaste býlaý,
 And gret raymson of hem wiþinne esste to be out of wo.
 Ac þe erchebýssop of þe toun, Seynt ² Alfe þat was þo,
 Was vaste þer agen to ȝýue ený raymson.
 þe Deneys vor wrappe þo asaýlede vast þe toun,
 And wonne hým, & vaste slowe, & þo hii wýþ inne com,
 Heý men, þat þer inne were, and Seynt Alfe hii nome,
 And monekes, & þe toun barnde & adoun caste.
 þe erchebýssop Seynt Alfe hii heolde & bounde vaste,
 And ladde hým býsýde Londoñ to þe toun of Greneswých,
 And helde hým þer in prison, þat he nas nan man ýlýche,
 Half ȝer and somdel more, and suþþe in þe ȝer of grace
 A þousend and tuelf ȝer, hii ladde hým ³ in an place
 Wypoute þe toun Greneswýke, & stenede hým wyþ stones
 As me stenede Seynt Steuene, ⁴ & debrusede ýs bones.

¹ L. Grantbruggesyre. ² I. e. Elphege. ³ To a place Ar.

⁴ And all to bruýsed his bones Ar.

Atte laste myd a denchax me smot hym to grounde
 In þe heuede, þat he lay, and deýde in astounde.
¹ þe Saterday, in þe Ester wouke, þys holý man hii slowe.
 Ac vewe þat were atte dede þe beuerege býlowe.
 Vor somme bý come cancrefrete, & somme býnde oþer wode,
 And somme deýde verlych as hii vp rýgt stode.
 So þat vor drede of þys wreche þe Deneýs were agaste,
 And wýpdrou hem of her luþer hede þe wule ýt wolde ý laste,
² And þer was þe betere pes azer, and vnneþe.
 Vor in þe zer of grace a þousend and þretteþe
 Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, bý gan to turne ýs hond.
 And after þat he adde destrud þe Souþ alf of þys lond,
 He wende and robbede al þys lond al þe Norþ syde,
 Norþhomber and Lyndeseýe, and destrude wýde
 Enere fram Watelyngestret, and so by Oxenford.
 Hii come and nome Wýnchestre, and so Walýnford.
 Fram Walyngford hii wende, & þe toun of Baþe nome.
 So þat Suan was kýng ýholde, ware so he euer come.
 Ac þe kýng of Engeland, in such sor & mournýnge,
 Carede of ýs zonge sones mest of alle þýnge,
 Laste hii were defoulde ozt. vor hii ne couþe of fýztinge.
 þer vor into Normandy he let hem sone býnge,

¹ This was doo the Ester
 [I. Ester] wouke in the Sa-
 terday, As more plenuer in
 his lýf se ther of me may.
 Maný, that was atte his
 deth, bý com býnde & wode,
 And summe deide sodeýnlich
 vp rýgt as they stode Ar.

² *Desunt omnia metra sequen-
 tia in Cod. Ar. usque ad
 hoc signum marginale (B)*
*in historia Edmundi Yrene-
 syde, quorum tamen loco per-
 quam multa occurrunt, ora-
 tione soluta scripta.*

Boþe Alfred & Seynt Edward, & þe quene her moder also,
 Wýþ þe duc Rýcharð, þe quene broþer, vorte such wo were ýdo.
 Ac hýs eldoste sone Edmond ýrenesýde,
 Vor he was hardý, & gode knýgt, atome he let abýde.
 þat luþer folc of Denemarch robbede and slowe vaste,
 And chýrchýn and abbeýs barnde and adoun caste.
 Men ley vn bured to drawe, þat reuþe ýt was ýnou.
 þat feble folc to wýldernesse and to wodes vaste drou.
 Aýldred kýng of Engelond, þo he sey al þýs wo,
 Hou me destruyde ýs lond, and ýs folc slou,
 To mydewýnter he wende anon, þo he ne sey oþer red,
 To Normandye, & huld hým þere vorte þe duc Suan was ded.
 Suan deyde in þe zer of grace a þousend and fourteþe.
 Hýs folc made euere vaste worre gut after ýs deþe,
 And made hýs sone kýng after hým, Knout was hýs name,
 þat dude, aswel as hýs fader, Engelond gret ssame.
 An false knýztes of Engelond huld myd hým vaste,
 Ac hii, þat trewe & gode were, azen hým her herte caste,
 And sende after kýng Aýldred into Normandye stýlle,
 And he come sone to Engelond, and wende abbe ýs wýlle,
 Ac þe kýng Knout ýt vnder zet, he was fol of rage.
¹ He wende anon to Sandwých, & men þere in ostage,

¹—but sodeyneliche he kutte of hure noses and eres
 turned his sayles to ward and somme a blende. And
 Sandewýche, and wente a whenne he had so I doo, he
 londe. And puttýng a way tolde hit as for a grete joye,
 bothe Godde's drede and and glorie, that he hadde so
 mane's, the hostages, whiche and defouled the Englyssh hosta-
 he adde faire children of ges *inquit auctor prosaicus in*
 gret noblete, he let take and *Cod. Ar.*

þat were býtake hys fader, vor heye men of þe londe,
 He nom and let hym smýte of boþe vet and honde.
 Nou adde heye men of þe lond ýtake þere býuore
 Hys fader ostage god ýnou, and dep of ýsuore,
 Wýþ hym to holde trewelyche, and breke þo her of.
 þeruore þe kýng Knout wýþ hem was þo so wod wroþ,
 And vor wrapþe let býlyme her ostages þat were.
 Subþe he wende into Westsex, and robbede þere,
 And in Dorsete dude & Wýltessýre & Somerssete gret wo.
 Kýng Aýldred lay syk in þe toun of Cosham þo,
 In Westende of Wýltessýre, vor he was feble and old,
 And wýþ care and sorwe ouercome, as me aþ ýtold.
 An fram Cosham to Londone he of scapede vneþe,
 Vorto wýte hym fram ýs fon, þat hii ne brogte hym to deþe,
 þere he huld hym in þe toun mýd mucho sorwe and sore,
 þat of al hys lond of Engeland he nadde an fot more.
 þe gates he made vaste, and wuste hym wýþ inne.
 His fon asaýlede þen toun wýþoute mýd al her gýnne.
 Atte laste þys kýng Aýldred, as in al þys strýue,
 In an Seyn Gregorýe's day, wende out of þys lýue,
 As in þe ger of grace a þousend & sýxteþe.
 Feblýche he lýuede al hys lýue, & deyde in feble deþe.
 In suche sorwe he was kýng seuene & þrýttý ger.
 He adde moný an sorý day, & muchel angúysse er,
 An, vor wreche of hys broþer deþ, al such sorwe to hym come,
 þat lute joye he adde al ýs lýf of ýs kenedom.

EDMOND yrenesyde, kȳng Aȳldrede's sone,
 So gode knȳgt of body was, þat longe worþ in mone,
 Me nuste so gode in none londe, an atte bygȳnnyngē,
 After hȳs fader deþe, me ches hȳm to kȳngē,
 þe heye men of þe lond, þat fals ne luþer nere.
 Ac monȳe hulde mȳd kȳng Knout, þat false an trȳsthors were.
 Edmond, vor ȳs strengē, was ȳcluped Yrenesyde.
 Dreduol he was to ȳs fon, þat hym durste vewe abyde.
 Debonere and mylde he was to alle þat gode were,
 Queynte & suȳþe hardȳ mon, as man wyþoute fere.
 Vorst he wende to Westsex, and þere ech contreye
 Aboute al to ȳs wille boþe vor loue and eȳe.
 As leon hardȳ ȳnou he wende aboute wyde,
 An wan contreye and oþer aboute in eche syde.
 þat Knout nadde poer non agen hȳm vor to stonde,
 zȳf false traytors nadde ȳbe here of Engelonde,
 þat hulde mȳd þe kȳng Knout, traytors as hii were.
 So þat noþer of þȳs kȳnges abouȳnde to oþere nere,
 Ac eȳþer gaderede gret ost, and of oþere's men slowe.
 Atte laste mȳd her ost to gadere ward hii drowe,
 And mette hem after mȳdsomer, þe feste of Seȳn Jon,
 And a gret bataȳle smȳte bȳsyde þe toun of Sserton,
 And slowe to grounde mucche folc, & þo al was ȳdo
 þe kȳnges & mucche of her folc alȳue partede atuo.
 þo wende kȳng Edmond to Londone myd ȳs route,
 And al þat folc of Denemarch destrude þer aboute,
 And drof hem out of þȳs lond, & zut nolde he noȳt bȳnne,
 Ac wende in to Westsex þulke contreye to wȳnne.

þo he was fram bý Este ýwend, þe Deneys myd al here gýnne
 Býsegede Londone, ac hii ne mýzge nozt come wýþýnne.
 So wel he was wýþýnne ýwust, þoru men þat þer were,
 þe Deneys hem wýþ drowe, þo hem ne spedde nozt þere,
 And wende Estward in to Kent, & robbede þere vaste,
 And her preýe at Medeweýe in to ssýppes caste.
 Kýng Edmond hem sýwede, þo he hurde þýs,
 And passede Temese and Breýnford ýwýs,
 And slou aboute vaste ýnou monýe þat he vond,
 And monýe flowe her and þere aboute in þe lond.
 Bataýles hii smýte moný one, as we býgonne to telle er.
 Vor eýzge bataýles hii dude neý wat wýþýnne half 3er.
 As at Sserston and ellesware, and þe sýxte bataýle was
 Uppe þe hulle of Assesdonne, ýchýlle telle þat cas.
 Þýs tueýe noble kýnges mýd her poer hem mette,
 And smýte þere a bataýle, and vaste to gadere sette.
 ýordeýned hii adde her ost wel in eýþer sýde,
 And Edmond ýdýzge hýs standard, were he ssolde hým sulf
 abyde,
 And hýs dragon vp ýset, and þýs bataýle ysmýte.
 Hii slowe to grounde in eýþer alf, þat deol it was to wýte.
 In ys standard Edmond was, as rýzge was vor to abyde.
 He seý, þat me slou ýs folc aboute in eche sýde.
 Hys herte hým nolde soffrý nozt abyde vorte týme were,
 Ac to þe bataýle smot anon, as man wyþoute fere,
 And býleuede dragon & standard, & stured vaste ys honde,
 And slou to grounde, as noþýng hým ne ssolde at stonde.
 Sone adde ýs gode bodý ýperced þe ost þoru out.
 He made ýs weý roume ýnou, vorte he come to kýng Knout.

þere were dundes arýzt ýsmýte býtuene hem tueye
 Of þe helmes, þat fur sprong out, vor hii were strong beye.
 A duc, þat was mýd kýng Edmond, Edryc was ys name,
 þat was traytor and louerd suyke, our Louerd gýue hym
 ssame.

Vor he fondede hym býtraie, vor kýng Knoute's loue,
 þo he dradde þat Edmond was, as he sey, al aboue,
 And kýng Knout neý ouercome, vp an hul an hey
 He wende wyþ ýs suerde adrawe, þat þet folc hym al ýsey.
 He adrou ýs blodý suerd, and loude býgan to grede :
 “ Englysse men, Englysse men, fleþ anon, ých rede.
 “ Vor Edmond, vre kýng, to deþe he ýs ýdo.
 Hym sulf he gan vorst to fle. vor oþere ssolde al so.
 Englysse men hym leuede wel, & flowe after bliue,
 And al ýt was to býtraie ýs louerd, þat was alýne.
 þo kýng Edmond þýs ýsey, þat ýs folc vnder stod,
 þat he was to deþe ýbrogt, and þeruor flowe vor wod,
 He arnde vp a lute hul, and gradde in þe place
 Hys folc, and dude of ýs helm, and ssewede hys face,
 And seyde, “ turneþ vaste azen, ýcham alýue ywys.
 Hys folc turnede anon azen, þo hii hurde þýs,
 And smýte vorþ þýs bataýle, gretter ne myzte non be,
 And fogte vorte yt was nýgt, þat hii mýgte noleng ýse.
 Ac ye Englysse adde ybe above, gýf ýt nadde ýbe vor nýgt.
 Ac hii departede, as hii nede moste, vor defaute of sýgte.
 Hii greýped hem þerafter, anoþer bataýle to do,
 And ef sone come to gadere vp Assesdoun al so,
 And bataýle smýte strong ynou, ac Knoute's poer vaste
 Wexýnge was, þat he wan þe maystrie atte laste.

Sorý was Edmond þo, to Gloucestrye he wende,
 To porueye hym more help, ȝyf God hym grace sende.
¹ Kýng Knout sýwed after mýd an long taýle.
 So þat aboute Gloucestrye þe eýgteþe bataýle
² Up Seuerne hii smýte, and astede, & so vaste me slou
 þe gode bodýes in eyþer alf, þat ýt was deol ýnou.
 Mýd blod þe erþe was ýheled, þat pyte ýt was to wýte.
 Ac noþer partýe ne mýgte þe maýstrýe.
 Ne hii ne mygte ýse vor þe nýgte þe bataýle to do non ende.
 Hii departede mýd sorw ýnou amorwe agen to wende.
 And kýng Edmond ouer Seuerne was in West syde,
 And kýng Knout býgan mýd ýs ost in Estalf abyde.
 And Seuerne was bytuene hem, & Knoute's poer
 Of volc of býgonde see wax euere ver & ner.
 As Edmond sat mýd ýs ost anygt in ³ such solas,
 As folc mýgte, þat ver wounded & sor & werý was,
 And speke of þýs bataýle, hou ýt mygte be god :
 An old kýngt þer ros vp, & býuore þýs folc stode.
 "Icham," he seyde, " mest fol. þeruore, as foles wolle,
 " Mý fole red, ȝyf ȝe wolle ýhure, vorst ssewe ichýlle.

¹ Knut suýd euer after hym euer atte taille *Ar.* ² Up-on Seuerne in a place they smyte stronge i now. Maný was the goode body in eyther half me slow. But yutte neyther partie the mastrye haue mýght, By cause that they were lette bý comýng of the nýght. Kyng Edmunde

was of Seuerne in the West syde, And Knut in the Est half a ýenst him ganne bide, So that the water was bý twene her bothes power, And the folke of Denemarch wax euer fer and ner *Ar.* ³ This cas, Wher maný a woud-n edman and werý ifougt was, *Ar.*

- " Muche þyng we abbeþ ýseýe, & vre elderne vs ek seýde,
 " Angusse & sorwe we abbeþ ýnou, of wel more we mowe drede,
 " We fygteþ & beþ ouercome, & non maystrie we ne ýseþ.
 " Hou mýgte we bote be ouercome, þat þus defoulede beþ?
 " ¹ Despoýled & verwounded, & vre strengþe le seþ vaste,
 " Vre felawes & vre owe lýf we dredeþ ek atte laste.
 " Wanne ssal vre reste come, & endyng of vre wo,
 " And among vus sykerness & paýs? ých drede neuere mo.
 " Edmond ne may be ouercome vor hýs strengþe ýwýs,
 " Ne þe kýng Knout oure fo, vor he so queýnte ýs.
 " Wat may þanne oure ende be, bote, wanne þýs knýgtes
 echon
 " In eyþer syde beþ aslawe, & oure maystres byleued one,
 " Oþer hii mote þanne acordý, oþer fygte hem sulue tuo?
 " ² Wat reson ýs, þat hii ne mowe as wel nouþe so,
 " þe wole hii abbeþ ený alýue, þat hem mowe serue & drede?
 " Nere hem nogt boþe vayror so? wu wat ýs gýdy hede?
 " þere were wule in Engeland at otýme kýnges fyue,
 " And alle hii were rýche ýnou, & of noble lýue.
 " And nou to lute to hem tueýe al Engeland ýs.
 " And ofte wo so coueyteþ al, al leseþ ýwýs.
 " ȝýf eyþer kýng so muche wýlneþ to be louerd her,
 " þat her noþer nele abbe felawe, ³ ne pere,

¹ Dispoiled & foiled both
 oure frendes, oure strenthes
 leseth we faste, And also of
 our awne lýf we dredeth atte
 laste *Ar.* ² What reson is
 hit, that hii ne mowe as-

well do now soo, While any
 knýghtes both leste a lýue,
 that hem mowe serue & drede?
 Nere hem nought fairer so,
 where is hure Gidehede? *Ar.*
³ Ne non pere, *Ar.*

" Fygt

“ Fyȝte hem sulue tueye, þat ¹ louerd wolde be one.

“ Wu nere hem noȝt betere nou so, þat wanne her knyȝtes
echone,

“ And her folc were al aslawe, & hii býlcued al bare,

“ And ne founde who hem seruede in anguysse ne in care,

“ Ne who myd hem in neode þat lond defendy myȝte?

“ ² Her of þat soþe seggeȝe, as bý ȝoure in syȝte.

Nadde þys knyȝt fulleche hys reson ysed,

þat ys felawes nadde sone ynome her red,

And seyde alle myd one mouþe, “ we ³ ensentep þerto,

“ þat þys tueye kynges acordy, oþer batayle hem sulue do.

Kyng Edmond, þo he hurde þys, vol was of joye & blýs.

þe batayle, he seyde, he wolde ⁴ nýme myd god herte ýwýs.

þat worde he sende amorwe to Knout among ýs son,

And grantede ýs owe body, þe batayle to do anon.

⁵ Hii lete hem armý beye, in to an yle myd gode pas

Al mydde Seuerne hii wende, þat Olenege y cluped was.

þer inne hii were hem sulue tuo, & þe water al aboute.

Her ost was eyþer in ýs syde alonde býlcued bý þoute.

⁶ Myd god earnest & god ynou her suerdes adrowe boþe,

þys kýnges to gadere come, & made hem boþe wroþe.

¹ Woll be lordes all on.
And so were hem fairer now,
that whan hure knyȝtes
echon, And al hure folke both
a slawe, and hii bý lafte all
bare, *Ar.* ² Her of seggeth
youre avise, as bý youre in-
syȝht *Ar.* ³ Assenteth *Ar.*
⁴ Take *Ar.* ⁵ They armed
hem self beithe, and dight

hem with goude pas Into
an Ile in Seuerne, that Ol-
neye cluped was *Ar.* ⁶ The
kýnges thenne in earnest grete
her swerdus drough bothe,
And smýte to gedre fast ý
now a men that were wrothe.
Kyng Edmunde assailed kýng
Knut so fast, that he was
Negh ouer come, and sore he

was

To grounde hii smyte & harde myd stalwarde honde,
 þat wonder was, hou oþer mygte oþere's dunt at stonde.
 þo kyng Edmond ywraþþed was, & wyþinne hot,
 He ssoc ys suerde & grunte, & myd such earnest smot,
 þat þe sprong out myd ech dunt of helme so þere,
 þat yt þogte myd ech dunt, as þat heued afure were.
 As þondre þat soun was, þe lygt as lygtynge,
 So þat ech dunt þogte leygt as yt were & þondrynge.
 Me speç of mony stalward knygt, ac me vond on þere.
 yblessed be þe moder wombe þat hym to monne bere.
 þe kyng Knout was so debrused, þat he stod vnneþe.
 He dradde wanne he lore þat lyf, & were ybrogt to deþe.
 He adde leuer þan eny þyng, þat hii acorded were.
 Ac he ne dorste ys feblesse telle Edmond, vor fere
 Laste, gýf he vnder gete, þat he were so ouercome,
 þat he nolde fýne ar he adde ys lýf hým bý nome.
 þo he adde a wule ýrest, ys armes he gan to caste,
 And wýþ gret earnest step ver, & asayled Edmond vaste,
 Myd al þe strengþe þat he mygte, & ssewe more þerto
 Al vor he ne ssolde wene, þat he were ouercome so.
 þys Knout býgan to resté, þo ys assaut was ýdo,
 And bet Edmond, as in pes, aword hure oþer tuo.
 Kyng Edmond hým grantede, & somdel hým wýþ drou,
 And lende vp hys sseld, & herkned hým ýnou.

was a gast. He hadde lýuer
 thanne eny thýng accorded
 haue be there. But he nulde
 his febleness ynt telle in no
 maner, Lest Edmunde hit

vndergete that he were ouer-
 come, And that he nolde fýny
 til his lyf were bý nome
Ar.

“Ich

"Ich abbe, quap Knout, " ywylned þy kynedom ar þys,
 " And nou, wel more þan þy lond, þy sulf ych wylny ywys.
 " Vor þou nart nozt worþ one be of Engelond kyng her,
 " Ac ¹ to prince of al þe world. vor in þe world nys þy per.
 " Ich abbe al ² þat lond of Norþweye & of Denemarch an
 honde.
 " I ne wende nozt þat eny man my dunt ssolde atstonde.
 " Ac þou ne at stonst yt nozt one, ac art al clene aboue.
 " War vore ych desyrý mest þyn grace & þyn loue,
 " ³ þat þou of alle myn londes me be felawe & per,
 " An ych mot ek of Engelond be þy partýner.
 " Vor gýf we to gadere beþ, & al clene of one rede,
 " France & ech oþer lond, & ech prince vs wole drede.
 " þer vor ych byseche þe, haue half my lond myd me,
 " An ⁴ ych, as þy partýner, half Engelond myd þe.
 Edmond, þo he hurde þys, ys grete herte wyþ drou,
 And ⁵ ensentede to ys rede, & býcom ⁶ mylde ynou,
 And ⁷ býude to ys mylde word, þat myd suerd was aboue.
 Hii caste away sseld & suerd, & turnde al to loue,
 An býclupte hem & custe, & her folc in eyþer syde,
 þo hii seye hem acorded, vor joye loude hii cryde,
 An songe, *te Deum laudamus*, eyþer in ys route,
 And to gadere wende, & custe hem ech oþer aboute.
 Bytuene þys tueye kynges was a certeyn fourme ydo,
 An forewarde ⁸ among al her folc, ar hii ⁹ departed atuo,

¹ To be kyng of	<i>Ar.</i>	⁴ Ich wole, as	<i>Ar.</i>
² The	<i>Ar.</i>	⁵ Assented	<i>Ar.</i>
³ And that thow		⁶ Meok	<i>Ar.</i>
of all my londes my felawe		⁷ A bowede	<i>Ar.</i>
be and peer, And that ich of		⁸ By twene	
Engelond be thy partiner		⁹ Parted a two, That	<i>Ar.</i>
		eyther hadde his dele of lond	
		and	

Wat eyþer adde to ys del of lond & oþer þynges,
 And departede wþ loue atuo, & byleuede boþe kynges,
 An gýf hii adde in gode loue longe ýlyued beye,
 Me adde þoru al Cristendom ýspoke of hem tueye,
 An eche prince & eche londe douted hem tuo.
 Ac Edmond was al to raþe, alas! to deþe ý do.
 Vor þe luþer duc Edryc þogte euere to býtraye
 Kýng Edmond, ys owe louerd, Knout vor to paye.
 A luþer gadelyng was ys sone, boþe at one rede.
 Hii fondede mýd alle gýle to do þýs luþer dede.
 þo hii ne mýgte in oþer wyse þýs dede bringe to ende,
 In to a chambre forene þe gadelyng gan wende,
 þat kyng Edmond com ofte to, & in þe dunge þar
 Hudde hym þere longe, þat none man nas ý war.
 An þo þe kýng þerto com, ys nede vor to do,
 þe luþer þef gare was mýd ys arme þerto,
 And smot ¹ im þoru þe foundement, & þoru þe gottes rygþt,
 Edmond þe noble kýng, þat was so noble knygt.
 Wýþ a long ýponyted knýf, yegged in eyþer syde,
 þus ² ssenduollyche he hym slou, aboute Seynt Andreu tyde.
³ An Oxenford he was aslawe, þoru þýs luþer lore,
 Mýd treson & gýle ýnou, ýnot hou mýgte be more,
 þe beste body & noblest, þat in eny lond þo was,
 ýslawe was þoru a gadelyng, so vyllyche, alas!

and other thýnges, And part-
 ed with loue a two, and bý-
 laste bothe kynges *Ar.*

¹ Him into the founde-
 ment into the guttes rygþt,

There thourgh he deyde that
 hastelich, þat was so noble
 a knyght *Ar.* ² Shenful-
 lyche *Ar.* ³ Atte Oxenford
Ar.

Ar men myȝte aboute come, þen þef to seche þare,
 Of scaped he was & yfrowe, non man nuste ware.
 Me greyþede þys gode kyng, ¹ wanne non oþer nas,
 An broȝte hym vayre anerþe, as he wel ² wurþe was,
 In þe abbeye of Glástýnburý, byuore ³ þe heý wened anheý.
 Vor he wyllnede vor to lýgge ys gransyre neý
 þe kyng Edgar þe gode kyng, þat þere ýbured ys.
 þere hii lyggeþ vayre ynou boþe ȝut ýwýs.
 Ac þys luper gadelyng, þat þys gode kyng so slou,
 To kyng Knout wende anon glad ynou.
 He grette hym anon," & seýde, " hayl ⁴ þou be kyng one.
 " So nýs ýt noȝt," quap þe kyng, " vor my kýnedom ýs
 ýmone.
 " Vor an felawe ých abbe þerto, þat ých loue ynou.
 " ⁵ Ver, gode syre kyng," quap þys þef, " vor þy loue ých
 hym slou.
 " Here ýs þat knýf al blodý, þat ých broȝte hym wyþ of dawe,
 " An smot hym þoru þe foundement, & so vp to þe mawe.
 " þy loue ých abbe wel dere aboȝt, & my lyue anaunter ý do.
 " þer nys non alyue nou, þat þe abbe yserued so.
 " þeruore vnderstond þe wel, & ȝeld my mede blýue.
 " Vor ých abbe ýdo þe more gode, þan alle þe men alyne.
 " þou seýst soþ," quap þe kyng, " þou ast mucche ydo vor me,
 " An ýchýlle wel þy mede ȝelde by þe treuþe ých on to þe.

¹ Tho other bote nas, <i>Ar.</i>	<i>Ar.</i>	⁴ Be thow kyng al on.
² Worthý <i>Ar.</i>	³ The heigh	So is hit not, quod he a ȝe,
auter. For he wilned to lýgge	neigh his graunt sire there	hit is myne but in mone <i>Ar.</i>
		⁵ For, <i>Ar.</i>

“ ýchýlle

" ȳchylle make þe heymon, ¹ bȳ tȳme ȳchabbe ȳhogte,

" þat þou ne ssalt vor þȳ lýflode neuere carȳe nogt.

Edrȳc, þe luþer suȳke, ȳs fader, com al so :

" Syre," he seȳde, " ȳch abbe mucche loue þe ȳdo,

" ² Versake Edmond ³ mȳ nowe louerd, & bȳtraȳd vor þe,

" An let hȳm sle vor þȳ loue, hou wolton ȳt gelde me ?

" þo seȳde kȳng Knout age, traȳtor þou art ȳwȳs,

" An mucche age God & agen me þou ast ȳdo amys,

" Wanne þou ast ⁴ þȳ nowe louerd, as þou ⁵ tellest vore,

" To so vȳle deþe ȳbrot, þat was mȳ broþer ȳ suore.

" Hȳs blod, þat þou madest ssede, ssal arde com on þe.

" Vor ⁶ þȳ nowe mouþ þe aþ ȳdemed bȳ þat þou seȳst ⁷ me.

He let caste þȳs traȳtor in þe euenȳnge late

At fenestre in Temese, nouse vor to abate.

An let hȳm stȳllecȳche adrenche, vor manne speche þerc.

And þat was, lo ! ȳs noble mede, to lute þeȳ ȳt were.

þe luþer traȳtor hȳs sone auanced was ȳut bet,

⁸ Vor hȳs robe & hȳs dȳgnȳte was al wel bȳset.

He ȳef hȳm such auancement, as he wolde, he suor ȳs oþ,

þat he ne dorste neueref carȳe ⁹ of mete ne ¹⁰ of " cloþ.

¹ Right some ich haue I
thought *Ar.* ² For sake ich
haue mȳne awne lorde, and
him by trayed for the. For
thi, sir kyng, a benefeat ich
aske in help to me *Ar.* ³ *Pro*,
myn owe. ⁴ *L.* þȳn owe.
Nam thȳne awne *in Ar.* ⁵
Me tellest fore *Ar.* ⁶ *L.* þȳn
owe. *Sed* thȳ nawne *in Ar.*
⁷ To me. So that thesne tray-

tour he let take an hast, And
prȳuȳliche with oute noȳse in
to Themese him cast, And let
him stilliche a drenche, that no
noȳse were. And this was,
loo ! his good rewarde, thogh
hit i nogh nere *Ar.* ⁸ In
robe of roiall dignite, that
was well bȳ sette *Ar.* ⁹ For
Ar. ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.*

An robe he let hym ssape verste of blod rede scarlet þere.
 þe ssarpe stones ¹ by þe strete hys taylors were.
 Vor he let hym myd hors ² to³ drawe fram strete to strete,
 þat þe peces ffelle of ys fless aboute monye & grete.
³ þe taylors corue so monge peces, vor ys robe ne ssolde powe.
 He ne dorste þo carye nogt of þe wynter couwe.
 Suþþe he let smyte of ys hede by þe ssoldren, as me sey, ⁴
 And let yt sette vpon tour of Londone an hey.
 And so he was hey man ymad, as he byhet hym to ys mede.
 Alle traytors & ⁴ louerd suyken God late hem so spede.

KNOUT was þo alone kyng, as wo seyþ, of ⁵ Engelon,
 Of Norþweye, ⁶ of Denemarch, & gret poer adde anhon-
 de,

Ac Edmond þe gode kyng, þat so vyllyche me slou þo,
 Adde tueye zonge sones, ar he were to deþe ydo,
 Edward & ⁷ Edmond, & breþeren al so tueye
 Seynt Edward & Alfred, þat in Normandye were beye.
 Vor þes were kyng Edmond next, & ys eyrs also.
 Kyng Knout þogte hou he mygte best herof do,
⁸ To bynyme hem her erytage, & myd wuch wrong he mygte,
 And myd wuch treson, bote he adde som colour of rygte.

¹ In the *Ar.* ² *Deest Ar.*

³ His taillours corue him suche
 a robe, that none coueyte
 wolde, Ne that he ne durst
 after neuer carie for the colde
Ar. ⁴ Lord swykes *Ar.* ⁵

Engelond, *Ar.* ⁶ And of *Ar.*

⁷ Edmunde, half bretherne

twey *Ar.* ⁸ To byneme hem
 her heritage how that he myght,
 As hit were by coloure of
 summe maner ryght. For thogh
 many may do atte his lust
 some thyng, Of wrong he
 wolle make a ryght as by co-
 louryng *Ar.*

Vor wanne man may do wat he wole & vnryzt ynou,
 Ofte he bryngþ vor coueytýse to rýzte pur wou.
 He made a gret parlement, & brogte heye men þerto.
 Ac wo seyþ, ýncle nobýng wyþoute lokýng do.
 þo bed he þe court segge soþ, & rýzt vnderstonde,
 Wat forewarde þer were ymad ¹ in fourme of Engelonde,
 Býtuenè hým & kýng Edmond, þe wule he was alýue,
 And wam Edmond made ² hys eyr of ýs londe wyþoute
 striuc,
 And wam of ýs zonges soncs wardeýn ek ýdo,
 And wat þyng he adde assýgned ýs tueye breþeren al so.
 Herof he bed hem segge soþ, as ýt were glosýng.
 Vor he ne kepte, he seyde, mýd vnryzt of no monne's þýnge.
 þo stode þer somme vp, þat adde ýnome her red,
 Vorto paye kyng Knout, & nogt Edmond þat was ded,
 And seyde býuore al court, þat kýng Edmond býqueþ
 Hys kynedom & al ýs lond kýng Knout byuore ýs deþ,
 And þe warde of ýs tuo soncs, vorte hii of elde were.
 Alas! alas! þe trecherýe, þat me myzte ýse þere!
 Vor þe dede was verzyte anon, & þe quike vorto paye,
³ Hii býtoke þe qued her soule, þe kúnde eyrs to býtraye.
 þýs word was ýholde stable, & ýloked vor dome.
 Kýng Knout of Edmonde's londcs anon seýsyne nome,
⁴ And huld hým þo al clene kýng of al Engelond,
 Of Norþweye, of Denemarch, gret poer he adde an honde.

¹ And fourme *Ar.* ² His
 heire with oute any stryue,
 And to whom his ýong soncs
 in warde shulde be do, *Ar.*
³ Hure soules by toke they
 to the fende, the rýght heire

to be tray *Ar.* ⁴ And helde
 him self a lone kyng of all
 Engelond, And Norway and
 Denemarch, and grete power
 hadde in hond *Ar.*

Ech þogte he was Gode next, þat mýzte abbe ys grace,
 Of so gret poer þer býuore me ne kneu non in non place.
 þo he was of al Engelond kýng, wýpoute ¹ mone,
 He býgan to cuþe anon, þat he was kýng ² one.
 Alle þat were ozt ³ ysýb Edmond þe kýnge,
⁴ Oþer in alýance of ený loue, to deþe he let bringe,
 Oþer fíemd hem out of Engelond, non byleued nere,
 Bote ys tueye zonge sones, þat so feble & tendre were.
 He ne mýzte, vor þe worlde's ssame, hem to deþe bringe.
⁵ He sende hem out of Engelond, to ⁶ & heye kýng
⁷ Býsyde Denemarch, þat he hem to deþe brozte,
 So ver ⁸ in onekeþelond, þer non man of hem ne rozte.
 Awey! sely zonge þýnges, frendeles were hii þere,
 þat so ver, as mýlde lomb, to deþe ýlad were.
 þo hii to þe kýnge come, ⁹ þat he hem to deþe brozte,,
 Vor þe heye blod, ¹⁰ of wam hii come, þe kýng hym býfozte,
 An adde reuþe of hem gret, & ys wille gan wyþ drawe,
 An ne mýzte, vor reuþe, vor non þýng bring hým of lýfdawe.
¹¹ To þe kýng of Hongari þýs sely chýldren tueye
 He sende hem vor to norýsy, þat he warded hem wel beýe.

¹ Any mone, *Ar.* ² A lond
Ar. ³ Sibbe sir Edmunde
Ar. ⁴ Or of Aliaunce in any
 wey, to dethe *Ar.* ⁵ But
 sente *Ar.* ⁶ An *Ar.* ⁷ A
 lyte bý side *Ar.* ⁸ In couthe
 lande, wher no man of hem
 rought. Alas! the sely *Ar.*
⁹ To dethe that hem shulde
 haue brought, *Ar.* ¹⁰ They
 of come, he him sone by

thought *Ar.* ¹¹ To the kýng
 of Hungary the sely children
 tweýe. The kýng hem faire
 vnderfeng for hure heigh no-
 bleý, So long fort Edmunde,
 that was the quene brothe
 [*sic*], Spoused his daughter,
 and seth made the other,
 That higt Edward, spousy
 the emperoure's newew *Ar.*

þe kyng hem vayne vnderuon, & honoured in ech wyse,
 An gret deuýte tolde of hem, vor her gentryse,
 So longe, þat he let Edmond, þat was þat on broþer,
 Spousy ys owe dogter, & supþe he let þe oþer,
 þat het Edward, spousy þe emperoure's ¹ mowe.
 þo adde hii boþe ýwýued wel, & noxt tolowe.
² Ac² Edmond leuede lute wule, & no chýld ³ nadde alýue.
 Ac Edward þe oþer adde þre chýldren by ýs wýue,
 A sone, þat ⁴ het Edward, & dogtren also tueye,
 Margarete & Cristýne, þat gode wommen were beye.
 þýs gode chýldren ahte be euermo in ⁵ munde.
 Vor Éngelond, gýf hii nere, were gut out of kunde,
 As ge mowe ⁶ hure her afterward, in kýng Henrye's lýf,
 Hou Engeland com to kunde azen þoru þe god Mold ýs wýf,
⁷ þat þes Margarete dogter was, Mold þe gode quene.
 Vor þýs lond were gut out of kunde, gýf hii nadde ýbe, ých
 wene.

¹ *Non tantum cognata, sed filia re vera erat Henrici II. Imperatoris, nomenque ejus erat Agatha.* ² *Deest Ar.* ³ *Hadde Ar.* ⁴ Height Edgar, and also doughtren twey, *Ar. Et quidem recte Edgar.* ⁵ Mýnde. For Engeland, ýf they nad i be, hadde be oute of kynde *Ar.* ⁶ Here afterwarde, in Harry the furste's lýf, I hure, how *Ar.* ⁷ That doughter was of Mergarete, as ich vnderstande, By twene hure and Macolýn kyng of

Scotland. Knut of all Engeland was thoo kyng thorough oute. Hit is no nede to eeshe, ýf he were kene and proute. Tho he was of Edmunde's sonnes, and al that with him were, Delyuered, he was proute i nough, and yet he was infere O kyng Ethelrede's ii. sonnes, that were in Normandýe, Aluered and Seynt Edward, lest hii wolde a stýge, Thorough Richard, duc of Normandýe, *Ar.*

Kyng Knout of al Engelond was þo kyng alout.
 Me ne dar noȝt esse, wer he were kone þo & prout.
 þo he was of Edmonde's sones, & of al, þat myȝd hym were,
 Delyuered, he was fers ynou, ac somdel he was in fere
 Of Edmonde's tueye breþeren, þat wonede in Normandye,
 Alfred & Seynt Edward, laste hii gonne astye
 þoru þe duc of Normandye, þat her vnclē was.
 Hym þoȝte were he syker of hem, hym ne doutede of no cas.
 Seynt Edward's moder þeruore he of sende,
 Emme þe quene of Engelond, þat ¹ he hyder wende,
² þoru conseyl of her broþer, þat was þe duc Rycharde,
 An þoru ensent of hȝr tueye sones, Alfred & Seyn Edward,
 An were yspoused hym to wyf, & oure quene were al so.
 Wat halt yt to telle longe? þys dede was ydo.
 Vor kyng Edmond was aslawe a Seynt Androwe's tyd, ych
 wene,
 As in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and syxtene.
 And to þe ³ lammasse afterward he spousede þe quene,
 As in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and seuentene.

¹ She *Ar.* ² And the on
 of hure bretherne, that was
 duc Richarde, And thourgh
 assent of hure sones, Aluered
 and Edewarde, and spoused
 hym to wyue *Ar.* ³ And þa
 to-ƿoran κΓ. Aug. het þe
 cȝng ꝑeccan him Æðelpeder
 lape þer oðþer cȝnȝer him
 to cƿene. Ricardeȝ dohtor.
 Chron. Sax. sub an. m̄xvii.
Male proinde in Cod. Ar.
significatur, hasce nuptias

celebratus fuisse A. D. m̄vii.
 (As in the yer of grace Ml.
 and senene) *Edmundumque*
occisum A. D. m̄vi. (For as in
 the yer of oure lorde Ml. and
 sixe yere Edmundē Irenside,
 her sone in lawe, slayne was
 ere.) *Et tamen in hoc ipso Co-*
dice Parliamentum (sive potius
magnum vel commune conci-
lium) Oxoniense A. D. m̄xviii.
tentum fuisse rectissime etiam
asseritur.

gut to be þe sykerores, after þys spousynge,
 He let ys barons of Engeland to Oxenford bringe
 A þousend as in þe zer of grace and eyzteþe zer,
 An a parlement vor hys stat of hem made þere.
 So þat zyf þer eny was, þat azen hym herte bere,
 Hym þogte hys poer non þyng nas, ac ¹ as vor nozt yt were.
² As was to hym al clene ysuoere, þer nas non byhynde.
 þo was he al clene louered, to bynde and vnbynde.
 A wyf, þat het ³ Aylýne, he adde er of gret fame.
 By hyre he adde an sone, Harald was hys name,
 þat of þe kunde was of Denemarch, in eyþer alf al out.
 By Emme he adde anoþer sone, þat het Hardeknout,
 þat beye were kynges after hym, as me ssal sone rede,
 þys kyng was þo þoruout al man of noble dede.
 þo he was alone kyng of grete londes þre,
 Hym þogte al þe world ne mygte azen ys poer be.
 And napeles he bygan ys herte in bocsumnesse amende,
 An þogte on þe vayre grace, þat houere Louerd hym sende,

¹ All *Ar.* ² All were clene
 to hym i swore, ther was none
 be hynde *Ar.* ³ Helene *Ar.*
quam Ælfgifam, sive Æl-
givam, appellant alii. Quin-
etiam & hoc notandum, pleros-
que scriptores eandem concubi-
nam, non uxorem, Cnuti fuis-
se asserere. Unde sane doctis-
simus Bradus in textu histo-
riæ suæ (p. 129.) Cnute not
 long before he died, appointed
 his eldest son *Swane*, by his

first Wife * *Elgiva*, to be king
 of *Norway*, and his second Son
Harold, by the same Woman
 to be king of *England*, and
Harde.Cnute his Son by *Em-*
me, king of *Danemarke*; *ex*
Hovedeno nimirum 251. a. at
in notis, * By most Writers
 reported to have been a Con-
 cubine, she was Daughter to
 a *Mercian* Noble-man, who is
 said to have been Earl of
Northampton.

An louede Englysse men, and Engelond þerto,
 An muche louede holý chýrche & susteynde also,
 An restorede abbeys, þat destrud were byuore,
 An chyrchen let vp arere, þat were arst as verlore,
 An let arere monye nýwe, & in stedes mest þere
¹ As he adde men aslawe, & batayles ydo er,
² An vp Assedone & þer aboute mest chýrchen he let rere,
 As vor her soulen, þat yslawe were þere.
 Vor he & þe kýng Edmond mest armes þere bere,
 An mest man slagt þoru hem & batayles þer were.
 Seynt Alfen's body," þat y martred was
 At Greneswuch þoru hys fader, as we tolde þat cas,
 At Seyn Poule's of Londone, as yt was anerþe ydo,
 Hys owe honde nome yt vp, & as yt býuel þerto,
 Het let yt fayre honourý, & sende yt atte fyne
 To þe munstre of Canterburý, ³ as he lýþ gut in ssryne.
 þe þrydde ȝer ých vnderstonde, þat he was alone kýng,
 Fram hys lond of Denemarch me brogte hym týthyng,
 þat he was þere ýworred vaste of hys fon.
 He nome wýþ hym of Engelond god knýgt monýon,
 An mýd gret poer & muche folc þuderward vende anon.
 So þat he sone come býsyde hys fon echon,
 An býleuede hym þer al nýgt, & al hys ost al so,
 An þogte anon amorwe strong batayle do.
 A gret erl of þys lond, Godwýne was hys name,
 Mýd hys poer mýd hym was, þat monýon dude ssame.

¹ Where he *Ar.* ² As
 vpon Asshedoune and a boutte
 there, As for the sowles of
 hem that slayne there were.

Seynt Alphe Erchebýsshop-
 pe's body *Ar.* ³ And ther
 hit was in shryne *Ar.*

Vor þys lond, as me ssal hure, ofte he dude býtraye.
 He þogte þo hou he mygte þe kyng Knout best paye.
 Bý nýgte ¹ hým & hys poer he let armý þere,
 Aud wende so anonywar, ² as þe kýnge's fon were,
³ An fond hem, as wo seyþ, aslepe. he leyde on hem to grounde,
 An slou and to drof hem alle in a lutel stunde.
 Amorweⁿ þo þe kyng wolde wende vp hys fon,
 An myste Godwýne & hys men, of gýle he dradde anon,
 þat þe Englysse hým býtraye wolde, he þogte of luper won
 Vor to sle þys Godwýne, and þe Englysse echon.
 An napeles he wende toward hys fon myd al hys poer vaste,
 Vor to smýte an bataýle, & þo ne wond he atte laste
 Nogt of hem bote caroyne, & þe bodyes dede al so,
 þo he vond, þat Godwýne such andede adde ý do,
 An delyuered hým of hys fon, & ybrogt hym so aboue,
 Euereft he louede hým þe more, & al Englysse vor hys loue.
 þo he sey, þat Englysse men so gode in nede were,
 An hys fon were ouercome, nobýng he nas in fere.
⁴ þo he adde one þe kýnedom of grete londes þre,
 Hym þogte ⁵ al þe world ne mygte agen hys poer be.

¹ Hým self and *Ar.*
² Wher the *Ar.* ³ And founde
 hem muche del a slepe, so
 that in a stonde This En-
 mys of Swethe londe hii
 brought all to grounde. Ulf
 and eke Ergall of Swethe
 lond kýngus Fust [*sic*] to
 kyng Knutus host, at his
 comýngus, Muche harme
 had i dóo, but in this case

wýse Godewýn with his men
 gate of hem the pryse. A
 morwe *Ar.* ⁴ Tho hadde he
 al on the kýngdomes of *Ar.*
⁵ That in all the worlde ne
 myght his pere be. Of all
 his proude dedis ne can iche
 telle nought, Bute of on tale
 ich wole, as hit cometh in
 thought *Ar.*

Of al hys proute dedes I ne may verbere noȝt,
 þat I ne mot ȝou telle of on, nou yt comþ in my þoȝt.
 A þousend as in þe ȝer of grace, & on & tumenty þerto,
 As in þe vyfte ȝer þat kyng Knout in such poer was ydo,
 He ¹ wende, as noble syre, fram londe to londe,
 þat ² hym þoȝte al world ne ssolde agen hym stonde.
 As he wende aboute by þe see, & such poer adde an honde,
 Up achaere he sat adoun, al vp þe see sonde,
 An ³ enresonede hys men, as hii byuore hym stode,
 So þat þe tyme com of þe see flode,
 þat yt bygan to wexe vaste, at yt deþ atte tye.
 þe kyng byheld þe wexynge an loker al asyde,
 So þat þe water vaste waxe ⁴ vppard heȝ & wyde.
⁵ þoȝte þys grete louerd, ȝut ychelle abyde.
 þo yt was neȝ to hym ycome, baldelyche ⁶ spac
 An sturnelyche to þys water, þo yt alles out brac.
 "Water," he seyde, "⁷ wat þencst on? ych rede ne com
 no ver.
 "Under stond, þat þou art al clene in my poer.
 "Vor þat lond, vp wan þou vrnst, & vp wan ych sytte her,
 "Is clene myn al aboute. vor þou wost ynabbe no per.
 "þeruore ych ⁸ ote þe þyne wexyng anon lete,
 "þat þou ne be so hardy noȝt, þyn louerde's cloþes to wete,

¹ Wende a bonte as *Ar.* | ⁵ yut thought this grete lorde
² He thought in all the | he wolde a byde ther *Ar.*
 worlde none shulde him with- | ⁶ He spac *Ar.* ⁷ What
 stonde *Ar.* ³ Spak to his | thenkest thou? I rede come
Ar. ⁴ *Potius*, uppard (*idem* | no ner *Ar.* ⁸ Hote *Ar.*
quod Anglo-Sax. uppearð.)

" Ne hys lymes, ac vp ¹ mynowe let me in pes sytte,
 " ² Oþer, bý þe feý þat ých ou to þe, ýchelle rekený mytte,
 þe water dude vorþ hys kunde, & wax euere vaste,
 So þat to þys grete louerd hýt com atte laste,
³ An watte hys ssone & hys vet. so longe ýt wax an heý,
 þat ýt watte hys brych al aboute, & euere vþard ýt steý,
 So þat hys lupes smourte, & of cold were neý.
 þys grete louerd sturte hým vp, þo he oþer ne sey,
 An wed hým vp to londe, hým þogte er late ynou.
 He býheld toward þe water, & hys grete herte wyþ drow."
 " Wyte," he seýde, " al men, þat anerþe wonýeþ her,
 " ⁴ þat ýt nýs bote þe pure masse ený kynge's poer.
 " Ne þat no man ýs wurþe to be ýcluped kýng,
 " Bote þe heýe kýng of heuene, þat wrogte al þýng,
 " þat haþ heste of water, and of erþe al so.
 " Heuene & helle & ech þýng mot nede hys heste do,
 " An habbe hým as louerd, vor ýnam non ý wýs,
 " þeruor me to clupye kýng, myd vnrygt ýt ýs.
 " þeruor ých býhote God, þat yne ssal kýnge's croune
 " Neuere bere anerþe, vor my poer ýs þer doune.
 He wende hým vorþ to chýrche, & bynore þe rode com,
 An wyþ meke herte pyteslýche hys kýnge's croune nom,

¹ My nawne *Ar.* ² Or
 elles, by the feý that is me,
 ich wolle fyght mytte *Ar.*
³ Hit wette his hosen and his
 shone, and ýut for pruýt he
 nolde Rýse fort he nedes
 moste, or elles drenche he

shulde. And thenne he sturte
 vpe of the water he thought
 late i now, And be hilde to-
 warde the water, & his grete
 hert with drow *Ar.* ⁴ That
 hit is bute the mase aný
 kynge's power *Ar.*

An sette vpon the rode heued, & seyde þat he alone
 Was wurþe to crowne bere, & oþer kynges none.
 He býleuede þe crowne þere, sýkýnde wel sore,
 An þerafter vp hys heued ne com he namore.
 An me seyþ, þat he ne bar neuere þe crowne of Engeland,
 Ac ne bar þulke ne non oþer þerafter, ých vnder stonde.
 Sýnþe god man he becom & aforced hym ýnou,
 An býhet God euereft afterward to býleue wou,
 An God & holy chýrche to louye mýd al hys mýzge,
 An make godes lawes, & susteyne ech rýzge.
 þes byheste he held vol wel, & gode lawes ý nou
 He made þe beste þat mýzge be, & to ech godenesse drou.
 Vor þe manslagt þat he adde ýdo, & þe vnrýzt ý lome,
 And vor þe monye gode cas þat hým ofte come,
 He byhet God to wende þe holy wey to Rome,
 So þat he & hys knýztes wyþ gode herte þen wey nome.
 An aþ he toward Rome wende bý moný alond,
 Wanne he ený lúþer lawes in ený stude vond,
 þe prince, oþer louerd of stude, sone he out sogte,
 And bote he granted hým amendement, mýd tresour he ýt bogte,
 An vor he was man of such poer, vewe azen hým wrozte,
 So þat euere ware he come gode lawes he brozte.
¹ Gengyl men þat he vond in prison ek ydo,
 Oþer in warde mýd vnrýzt, he bogte hem out also.
 At Rome he was auonge uayre, and asoyled also.
 Azen he wende to Engeland, þo al þys was ý do.
 þo he com azen, at Glastýnburý hým longede ar he were,
 Vor loue of kýng Edmond, þat ýbured was þere,

¹ Goude men *Ar.*

þat he cluped hys broþer, vor þe treuþe þat bytuene hem was
her.

þat bodi he honourede y nou þo he com þere,
And al þe stude vor hys loue, & dude vayr offrynge,
An amendede þat hous myd mony a ryche þyng,
An gef hem londe and rentes, and conformede al so
þe geftes, þat oþer kynges hadde er ygyue þerto,
Of rentes and of londes, as þe kyng Cupred,
An kyng Centwyne & Ine, & supþe kyng Alfred,
Edward and Aþelston, Edmond and Edgar.
Her geftes he confermede, & to make ech man ywar,
To holde þys geftes stable, amansy he let al so
Alle þat aboute were her geftes euere vn do.

He confermede her londes, as frelyche to holde y wys,
By gode chartre & her rentes, as þe kyng huld hys.
þys kyng Knout was tenty ger kyng of Engeland,
An in a þousend ger of grace & þrytty, ych vnderstonde,
An syxe he deyde at Ssaftteburý, & at Wynchestre myd gret
prute
At Seyn Swyþynes he was ybured, þere as he lýþ gut.

HARALD, ¹þe kynges sone Knout, after hym was kyng.
ycrowned he was at Oxenford, a ssrewe þoru alle þyng.
Of þe kunde he was of Denemarch, of þe eror ²wyf y bore.
þe lasse he louede Englysse men, & Engeland þer uor.

¹ *Desunt omnia metra, ad* | *multa scripsit auctor prosaicus.*
Haraldum hunc spectantia, in | ² *Hinc ait scriptor prosaicus*
Cod. Ar. in quo tamen de eodem | *in Ar. In the yere of oure*
lorde

þe vorste ȝer þat he was kȳng, Emme, þe gode quene,
 He drof out of Engelond, (& hȳs ssrewede made ȳsene)
 His stepmoder, hȳs fader wȳf, þat quene adde ȳbe tuȳe
 Of Engelond, & þat hȳs fader let vette in Normandye.
 þo þȳs quene was of londe ȳdryue, þoru hyre wyþerwȳne,
 Heo wende to þe erl of Flaundes, þat het Baldewȳne.
 þȳs erl hyre vaȳre vnderuonȳ, þat was hende & fre,
 And tok hyre þe castel of Bruges, inne vorto be.
 þere was þȳs gode quene, wyþoute enȳ striuȳnge,
 Vorto hyre stepsonne was dede, Harald þe luþer kȳnge.
 Vor he nas kȳng bote four ȝer, & sȳx monþes vnnēþe,
 Ar he laȳ at Oxenforde, & drou toward þe deþe,
 And deyde þer in pȳne ȳnou, & suþþe hys bodȳ me ber
 To þe abbey of Westminster, & bured yt vaȳre þere.
 In þe ȝer of grace a þousend, & on & fourtyþe ȝere,
 þȳs kȳng deyde in Aueryl, monȳ glad man was þere.

HARDEKNOUT hȳs broþer þo þen weȳ sone nome
 Fram Denemarch in to Engelond, & to Sandwȳch com.
 þoru þe baronȳe of Engelond & of Denemarch al so
 Ichose he was to be kȳng, vor hii ensentede þerto.
 Vor he hadde somdel to Engelond more kunde þan þe oþer,
 Vor he was, in hȳs moder alf, Seȳnt Edward's broþer.
 ' Sone so he was kȳng ȳ mad, after hȳs moder he sende
 þe quene Emme to Flaundes, & byȳgan hȳre stat amende,

lorde m. xxxvi. Knutus sone | daughter toke the regne.
 Harolde of Erle Elfelmus | ' As non as he was *Ar.*

An huld hÿr vayre, as rÿgt was, hÿs moder & quene al so.
 Ac þÿs Hardeknout nas kÿng nogt follÿche zeres tuo.
 Vor þer faylede ¹ of" ten dawes, þat he ne deÿde ² of" ywÿs.
 At ³ Lamhupe he was ded, & ÿbured he was & ÿs
 At Seyn Swÿthÿne's at Wÿnchestre ⁴ bÿ hÿs fader þat lÿth þere.
 Kÿnges of Denemarch in þÿs manere were
 Kÿnges here of þÿs lond, ech after oþer.
 þe sone vorst after þe fader, þe broþer after þe broþer.
 And Engelond was out of kunde sÿxe & tuentÿ zer,
 In worre & pÿne & sorwe ÿnou, as Seyn Dunston ⁵ bÿ het her.
 Ac þo þÿs þre kÿnges were ded of Denemarch, þere nere
⁶ Byleuede namon in Engelond, þat of þe kunde were.
 þo moste ÿt nede come azen to þe rÿgt eÿr of kunde,
 þe holÿ man Seyn Edward, þat euere worþ in munde.
 Vor ⁷ Aldred, hÿs eldore broþer, was arst aslawe here
 Wÿþ treson in Engelond, ÿchÿlle telle in wuch manere.
 Atyme, to speke mÿd hÿs moder, to Engelond he com,
⁸ An gret folc of Normandÿe mÿd hÿm hÿder he nome.
⁹ An" þe false erl of Engelond, Godwÿne was ÿs name,
 (þat ¹⁰ euere" adde wÿþ treson þÿs lond y do ssame,)
¹¹ And dorte he adde god, he þogte he wolde fonde
 Make hÿre gut, zÿf he mÿgte, quene of Engelond.
 þat ¹² Aldred nolde spousy nogt hÿs dorte he was in fere,
 Vor prute & hÿs heÿnÿsse, zÿf þat he kÿng were.

¹ Deest Ar.	² Deest Ar.	no Ar.	⁷ Aluered Ar.
³ L. Lamhupe.	Nam Lam-	⁸ And	muche peple Ar.
heth in Ar.	⁴ Be for his	⁹ Deest Ar.	¹⁰ Ofte tÿme Ar.
fadre three [l. there] Ar.	⁵ Seide er Ar.	¹¹ A doughter Ar.	¹² Alue-
⁶ Bÿlafte. no		red Ar.	

To þe zongore broþer Seýnt Edward hys hope was more
ýnome,

Vor he was sýmple & myldore, & ¹ eþ to ouercome.

þeruore þo he seý Alfred so gret heynesse drawe,

He þogte hou he mygte do, þat he were of lýf dawe.

To þe heýe men of Engelond vaste he wende aboute,

And seýde, Engelond mýzte be of Alfred in gret doute.

² Vor he þogte, zýf he were kyng, þat folc of Normandýe

Al maýstres make in Engelond, þoru^{ll} strengþe & tricherýe,

An deseryth hem also þoru Normannes he þogte,

þeruore mýd hým of Normandýe so muche folc he brogte :

So þat ³ hey men of þe lond he brogte al to hys wýlle,

⁴ þat hii nome Aldred, & al hys folc, mýd trycherye stille,

An ladde hem vaste ýbounde to Guldeforde al so.

Aweý ! sely gultelese men, lute adde hii mýs do.

þo hii come to Guldeforde, þýs erl Godwýne þe ssrewe

Lete þýs gultelese man sette al arewe,

An telle out euere þe teþe man, & þe nyne þoru out he nome,

And let smýte of her alre heuedýs, & made a reufol dom.

þo þe teþe was alýue, he þogte of more wou.

Hým þogte þer were to monye alyue of ýnou.

Alle þat were alyue býleued, a rewe ef sone he drou,

An tolde of hem þe teþe out, & þe nyþe slou.

So þat ⁵ þer byleuede alyue vewe þo,

And þulke out of Engelond he drof mýd muche wo.

¹ Lithyche to *Ar.* ² He | thourgh *Ar.* ³ Certeyne men
saide, yf he were kyng, folke | *Ar.* ⁴ So that they toke A-
of Normandýe All mastres in | luered in a tyme all stýlle *Ar.*
this londe shulde be an hýe, | ⁵ He ne last but fewe a lýue
And dissherite Englyssh men | thoo, *Ar.*

Alfred hii ladde to Elý, & ¹ pulte out boþe hys eýe,
 An hulde hym þere in prison, ² vorte selý mon gan deýe.
 Vas þys of þys Godwýne a ssrewe & luþer dom,
 gut owre Lorde, ar he deýde, gret wreche þere of nom.
 Vor, as ze ssolle her after hure, he deýde in pyne ýnou,
 An ssrewede þat he dude lute he býlou.

SEYNT Edward in Normandye was þo byleuede alone
 As bar, as wo seþ, of þe kunde, as he sprong of þe
 stone.

He dradde vor he was alone of þe tem býleuede þere,
 An vor þe traytors of Engeland so false & luþer were,
 Leste he were of hys fon þoru treson ýbozt,
 An, vor loue of hys erýtage, so to deþe ybrozt.
 To God he made hys pleýnte, ofte wepynd wel býue,
 An namelyche þe wule hys fon of Denemarch were alyue.
 "Help me," he seyde, "in þys wo, Lord, bydde ých þe.
 " ³ Vor my frend & my nexte neý stondeþ azen me.
 " My fader, þat leuede here in worre & in strýf,
 " In worre & sorwe & sor ýnou he endede hys lýf.
 " My breþeren beþ boþe aslawe þoru treson al so,
 " ⁴ My neucus beþ ýfloýnd, & out of Engeland ýdo,"

¹ Putte *Ar.* ² Fort that he ganne deýe. Me seith, that his nauell gutte oute I take was, A knyht to a post, and afterward a pas He was i made by the poste ever goo a bouthe, Fort he hadde i drawe hym

selfe his guttes al oute. Nas this of this Godewýne a full luther dome? *Ar.* ³ For thulke that shulde my frendes be stondesth a ýest me *Ar.* ⁴ And my Cosýns i flemed of londe both twoo, *Ar.*

" An my moder ¹ ywedded to my meste fo,
 " An ych alone byleued, woder ssal ych, Louerd, go?
 " Hii þat of my crytage al louerdes beþ
 " Wylneþ alle þyng most my deþ, as men yseþ.
 " ² And al pouere, Louerd, ycham to þe byleued ywys,
 " An þou wolt, Louerd, help be to hym þat faderles ys.
 " Al to soþe yt ys ycome, þat Seynt Dunston gan telle.
 " þe wreche of my ³ vncler deþ, þat hys stepmoder let quelle,
 " My fader abogte yt dere ynou, & my breþeren bo.
 " So þat þer nys non byleued, bote ych, Louerd, & nanmo.
 " Nys yt vyue & syxtý zer, Louerd, non mon ago,
 " þat to Engeland, vor þulke deþ, vorst com such wo.
 " Hou longe ssal yt ylaste? Louerd, wyþ drau þyn honde.
 " Of þý wreche sende som ende, & reu on Engeland.
 þo þýs kýnges of Denemarch alle þre were dede,
 An Alfred al so aslawe, þe barons nome to rede,
 An oþer heye men al so, as God gef þat cas,
 An chose Seynt Edward to her kýng, þat kunde eyr þo was,
 As he was þerto ychose, er þan he were y bore.
 þo was yt to soþe y come, þat yseyd was byuore,
 þat Seynt Peter at Glastýnburý to býssop Bryxtwold seyde.
 þo com vorst pes to Engeland, after ⁴ þe" wrecchede.
 Me sende after hym to Normandye, to Engeland ⁵ þat" he com,
⁶ An lute folc of Normandye myd hym hyder nome,

¹ I wedded was to *Ar.* | stepmoder *Ar.* ⁴ *Deest Ar.*
² Alon 'pouer bilafte icham | ⁵ *Deest Ar.* ⁶ A fewe folke of
 to the, Lorde, I wys. Lorde, | Normandye heder with him
 as the luste, helpe the childe | he nome. So that with litell
 that faderles is *Ar.* ³ Un- | vncouthe *Ar.*
 cle's deth, that my [*l. hys*]

So þat myð lute onekeþ folc to Engeland he drou.
 þe heymen come agen hym myð joye & prute ynou,
 An vnderuonge hym as her louerd vayre þoru all þynge,
 An anester day at Wynchestre crowned hym to kyng.
 I sacred he was þo to kyng of erchebyssopes tuo,
 Of Canterbury & Euerwyk, & other byssopes al so.
 It was in a þousend zer, & fourty & tuo,
 After þat God anerþe com, þat he was crowned so.
 þo was joye in Engeland al oute in eche syde.
 Hys godenesse & hys gode los aboute sprong wel wyde,
 þat þer nas non god prince, ne kyng in noné londe;
 þat ne wylnde enqueyntance of hym, ych vnderstonde.
 þe emperour of Rome to hym in gode loue ywys
 Oblaged by hys messagers al þyng þat was hys.
 Vor Edmonde's sone yreneside, þat hys on broþer was,
 Hadde ywedded hys cosyne, he was glad of þat cas.
 An Seyn Edward ney kun was þe kyng of France al so,
 þat eche þyng clene þat hys was he obleged hym to.
 So þat þer nas prince nour, þat at hys wylle nas,
 Bote he one of Denemarch, þat euere hys fo was.
 Seynt Edward, vor al hys god, debonere was y nou,
 An namelyche to pouere men, to non prute he ne drou.
 Reufol he was to neody men, of hys almesse large & fre.
 Of more deuocyon non man in chyrche ne mygt be.
 He was selde yseye worþ, ne in glotonye, ne in prute.
 þey hys tresour were ylore, þer of he tolde lute.
 So holý lyf he ladde & god, so chast and so clene,
 þat heymen of þe lond wolde hem alday mene,

¹ That the hegh men of the londe wolde hit al day be
mene,

þat hii nadde non eyr býtuene hem, & þat gret peryl yt was,
 Vor þer mýgte come to al þe lond muche wo vor such cas.
 Vor gýf he adde an kund eyr býgýte bý hýs wýf,
 The sykeror were þat lond, wuþ oute worre & strýf.
¹ þe erl Godwýne, þe false man, þat þe kýnge's broþer slou
 Aldred, as ých tolde er, an dogter god ýnou
 Of holý lýf & clene adde, Edýþe was hýre name,
 þat, as yt ýs of hyre ýwryte, & of hýre holy fame,
 þat as þe rose sprýng of þe brer, þat ssarp & kene ýs,
 Al so com þe clene mayde of þe luþer man y wýs.
 þýs luþer man was vaste aboute to heý men ýlome,
 To brynge yt þerto, gef he mýgte, þat þe kyng hýs dogter
 nome.

Me seyde þe kýng, þat he moste nede weddý wýf,
 An þat þet mayde was hým best, vor hýr clene lýf.
 þe kýng hým býþogte pryuelýche & stýlle,
 þat in such cas gýt was, to do þe wýlle.
 An vor heo was so clene mayde, & of so holý lýue,
 þe betere hym were in holýnesse to nýme hýr to wýue,[#]
 þan an heýe kýnge's dogter, of ² verre londe ý brogt,
 þat to hýs holý lýue nolde acordý nozt.

mene, And that he ne hadde
 non heire gret perille hit
 was, *Ar.*

¹ Godewyne erle a dough-
 ter he hadde, that was of
 grete fame, And of clene lyf
 also, Edithe was hure name.
 And as the Roos of a brere
 spryngeth that kene is, Also

spronge this holy mayde of
 luther kynd i wys. And suth
 that the kyng nede muste
 wedde a wyf, Me saide the
 mayde was to him good for
 hure clene lyf, That hit was
 better to him to haue hure to
 wyf *Ar.* ² Ferne *Ar.*

1 An weddede þys mayde," þat so holy & clene was,
 More vorto paye 2 þat lond, þan vor eny oþer cas.
 Longe hii were to gadere, þys gode kyng & quene,
 Ac of ogt bote of holynesse lute yt was ysene.
 Vor God, as hii seyde ofte, hii toke to wýtnesse,
 þat bytuene hem neuere nas bote clannesse.
 Boþe hii were at one 3 worde, to lýbbe in clene lýue.
 4 So þat hii were wyþoute eyr, me þýncþ, vor al hys wýue.
 þe kyng of Denemarch & hys men þretned hým wel vaste.
 So þat hii 5 greýþed hým hýderward atte laste.
 A Wytesoneday, as Seynt Edward at hys masse stod,
 6 An bed vor þe pes of þe lond, þat God yt sende god,
 Rygt atte sacryng he stod as he lowe,
 In þe chýrche of Westmýnster, as men 7 býhelde ýnowe,
 Hii þat hým were mest priue, asked wu ýt were
 þe kyng þo he hem come, & wy he made such chere?
 " Certes, sýres," quaf þe kyng, " ýhered be Gode's sonde,
 " þe luþer men of Denemarch, mýd her kyng of þe londe,
 " To her olde luþerhede yturnd adde her þogt,
 " To 8 worry owr suete pays, þat owr Louerd vs aþ ybrogt.
 " An to day, in þys god týme, her poer clene hii nome,
 " 9 An þe wýnd hem payde wel, & to þe see hii come,
 " Vorto destrue Engelond, as hii abbeþ ofte ýdo.
 " An þulke týme, þat ze ýseye þat ých somdel lou so,

1 So that he this maide	him and to his londe God
wedded, <i>Ar.</i>	shulde sende pees gode, Atte
2 The <i>Ar.</i>	sacryng he stod, right as
3 Accorde, <i>Ar.</i>	thogh he lowgh, <i>Ar.</i>
4 So that	7 Hit
heirles was the kyng, for	seigh i nowgh <i>Ar.</i>
all the quene his wyf <i>Ar.</i>	8 De-
5 Dight <i>Ar.</i>	stourbe <i>Ar.</i>
6 And bade to	9 For the <i>Ar.</i>

“ þe

“ þe kȳng bý an laddre ¹ to þe ssȳp clam an heȳ,
 “ An þreu vp to doun in þe see, & adreñctþe, as ȳch ȳseȳ,
 “ An hȳs men, as in wanhope, wende hem agen blyue,
 “ ² So þat ȳch hopȳe to God paȳs, þe wule ȳcham alȳue.
 Messagers to Denemarch sone ȳsend were,
 And, as þe kȳng adde ȳsed, ³ to soþe hii founde þere.
 Neuer eft hii of Denemarch hȳder nolde come.
 Vor god prince al alond varþ þe bet ȳlome.
 Vor þe lond was fȳue & syxtȳ ȳer in worre & in sore,
 As ⁴ he haddeþ ȳhurd býuore, & afterward ȳut more,
 As ȳe ssole hure her afterward. ac þe wule he was kȳng,
 þat lond was in god loue & pes, wȳþoute eche strȳuynge.

SEYNT Edward brogte to Engeland out of Normandȳe
 Men, ⁵ þat adde hȳm fleme ȳdo god & corteȳsye.

And Roberd a clerç he louede mest, vor he ȳef hym þe bys-
 soprȳche

Of London, & supþe of Canterbury þe erchebȳssoprȳche.

þo he was erchebȳssop, luþer he was and prout.
 þe kȳng hȳm ⁶ louede, & alle hȳs dedes þoru hȳm dude al out.
 þer was vp þe quene Emme, þe kȳnge's moder, ȳ do
 A luþer sclaudre, & vp þe bȳssop of Wȳnchestre al so,
 þat ⁷ hii in contenance to folȳche hem bere.
 þe erchebȳssop tolde þe kȳng more ⁸ þan þer were,

¹ To shipward clam an
 heigh, And fell doune in the
 see, and a dreȳnte neigh, *Ar.*
² So that as for the Danes
 may ich be withoute strȳue.
 Messagers *Ar.* ³ The sothe
 they *Ar.* ⁴ ȳe *Ar.* ⁵ That,

while he flemed was, hadde
 do hȳm courteseye *Ar.* ⁶ Lou-
 ed euer most, and dude bý
 hȳm al oute *Ar.* ⁷ Hii to
 gedere in contenance *Ar.*
⁸ Than sothe were, *Ar.*

þat þer was foul lecherýe býtuene hem ý do,
¹ And þat þoru þe quene hýr sone was Alfred to deþe ýdo,
 And þat he ne mýgte nozt býleue, bote he amendement toke
 Of so vyl dede, wanne he adde her soules to loke.
 þe kýng leuede hym wel ýnou, & suer he nolde abyde,
 þat he nolde verst nýme vengeance in hýs sýde.
 þe býssop he býnome verst al hýs laý fe,
² And suþþe hým in prison, & býnome hým hýs se.
 Hýs moder he dude in warde, & scars lýf lede her fonde
 In þe abbeýe of Worwell, & býnome hyre hýr londe.
 þýs quene made deol ý nou, & hýr lettres wyde sende,
³ To býssopes, þat heo truste to, ýre stat vorto amende,
⁴ And þat heo wolde þoru furý ýre, ȝyf me wolde þat heo bere,
 Oþer trede, ssewý, þet heo gulteles were.
 þe kýng was meok & mýlde ýnou, an, as þe byssopes bade,
 Wolde hýs moder do alout, bote as þe oþer yt made.
 And napeles hii were aton," as hii wolde desyre,
 þat hýs moder ⁵ hýre skere ssolde mýd furý ýre.

¹ And that Aluered her
 sone thorgh her was dede al-
 so, Be cause that Knut and
 Hardeknut sheo loued thorgh
 al thing More that Ethelred,
 and other of his Ospring.
 As the commune fame was
 thorgh oute all the lond, That
 sheo loued Knut in hert, me
 wrong dude vnderstande.
 The Erchebisshop seide, he
 ne mýght let hit be so nought,
 And that to amendement hit
 moste nedes be brought. The
 kyng hym leued of this thing,

and seide he nolde a bide, *Ar.*
² And brought him in pri-
 son, and him by name his see
Ar. ³To heghe men, that
 heo truste to, *Ar.* ⁴And
 seide, that sheo wolde thorgh
 fuyr ire, if that me hure
 bede, Preue, that heo was
 gultless of that ilke dede. The
 kyng was meoke and mylde i
 nowe after summe's rede,
 Wolde haue lette his moder
 goo, but summe hit with sede.
 Atte laste hii were atte on *Ar.*
⁵ Skere her self shulde *Ar.*

þe erchebýssop Roberd hurde of þýs dome,
 An, þey he nere ¹ noȝt ýbe, to þýs conseyl he com.
 þe byssopes ² he ladde a conseyl, "Louerdýnges," he seyde,
 " ³ Ich wene vor hýs moder mý louerd þe kýng zebede,
 " þat nýs as no woman, ac as þe deuel ých doute,
 " þat, vorto ssende hyre owe sone þe kýng, heo ýs aboute,
 " þat seyþ he ýs ⁴ amansed, vor hýre copýnere
 " þe býssop ⁵ he deþ in warde, of wan heo wole hýr skere.
 " zýf heo skerý hýre of hým, hou wole heo vorþore mo
 " ⁶ Skere of þat heo aþ ýdo, hýre sone's zret wo,
 " Of þat ⁷ heo Alfred hýre sone radde to deþe brýnge,
 " And þat heo porueýde poýson to hýre sone þe kýnge?
 " Ac zýf heo hýre ⁸ skere wole of eche of þýs þýnge,
 " And heo hýre skerýnge do after mý lokýnge,
 " And heo of scapýe harmýles þe gultes echon,
 " ⁹ Icholle, vor me & vor þe kýng, þat gult nabbeþ non,
 " And grante, þat mý dýgnýte me be al býnome,
 " And þat heo & þe býssop ek to hýre ¹⁰ sta azen come.
 " Let nýme four ýrene ssares vor hýr sulue al afure,
 " An fyue vor þe byssop, & zýf heo ýt maý ¹¹ dure,

¹ Nat i bede, to *Ar.* ² He
 spake to thus, Lordynges,
Ar. ³ The kýng for the
 quene his moder heder vs
 hath i bede. She fareth nat
 as a woman, but as a deuell,
 ich doute, And for to shende
Ar. ⁴ A cursed *Ar.* ⁵ That
 he dude in warde, of wham
 she thenketh hure skere. ýf

sheo clenseth hure self of him,
Ar. ⁶ Skere hure of *Ar.*
⁷ She Aluered hure sone let
 to deþ *Ar.* ⁸ Purge *Ar.*
⁹ Ich graunte, for me and
 for the kyng, that gultles
 mote she goon, And graunte,
 that all mý dignyte me be all
 bý nome, *Ar.* ¹⁰ Stat *Ar.*
¹¹ Endure *Ar.*

“ Wanne hii lÿggeþ in þe flor to steppe vp echon
 “ After oþer bareuot, and heo býleue non,
 “ þat heo ne steppe wÿþ folle fot wyþoute quakÿnge,
 “ And ¹ zÿf vet bet þanne sauf, woute enÿ wemmÿnge,
 “ Graunteþ hem al quÿt. ac zÿf heo quakeþ ² out,
 “ Oþer stepþ býsyde, oþer hyre vet in enÿ wemme be ýbrogt,
 “ Holdeþ hem gultÿ of þe dede, & lateþ hem also
 “ Al her lýf, as wÿckemen, in strong prison be ýdo.
 þys fourme was ygranted þo, & certeyn daÿ al so
 At Scÿn Swythÿne's at Wÿnchestre, wanne yt ssolde be ýdo.
 þo me tolde þe ³ quene vore, heo was glad ýnou.
 So þat þoru al Engeland ⁴ þys word sone drou,
 þat, þo þe daÿ was ýcome, so mucche fole þer com,
 þat me nuste ware hem innÿ, vorto se þÿs dom.
 þe heÿe men neÿ of Engeland were þere echone,
⁵ To se Gode's graace of þe quene, bote erchebÿssop one.
 Ac he feÿnede hÿm sômdel sÿk, &, neÿ þe see to be,
 He býleuede at Douere, zÿf neod were, to fle.
 þe quene, þoru þe kynges's heste, ⁶ ýbrogt was also
 Fram Worwelle to Wÿnchestre, ⁷ þÿs jugement to do.
 To Seyn Swythÿne's ssrÿne þen weÿ heo nom ⁸ wel rÿgt,
 Gladlýche þo heo þuder com, & býleued al nÿgt
 In wop & in orÿsons, þat reuþe yt was to se,
 And euere bed þe holyman hyre help vorto be.

¹ ýf her feet be thanne saf with oute <i>Ar.</i> ² Ought, <i>Ar.</i> ³ Quene her of, heo <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ The tythÿng here of drou. And thoo the daÿ <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ To see	this purgyng of the quene, saf the Erchebisshop a lone <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ I brought forth was tho <i>Ar.</i> ⁷ Hure purgacion to doo <i>Ar.</i> ⁸ Full <i>Ar.</i>
---	--

As heo vel in a lute slep, Seyn Swýthyn to hýre com.
 “ Dozter,” he seyde, “ be studeuast to vnderuonge þý dom.
 “ Icham Swýthyn, wam þou ¹ býst, & verzyf þý sone þys dede,
 “ An to passý þe furý ýre, ² nane þou non drede.
 þe quene heo was glad, þo heo awok, of þat þýs godemon seyde,
³ þet folc com þýcke a morwe, to se þys wonder dede,
 An þe heymen come echon, þen dom to hure sone.
 An þe kyng, þen dom vorto zýue, an heý sat on hýs trone.
 Býuore hým, vorto auonge hýr dom, þe quene me brozte al so.
 þe kýng hýr esste sturnelyche, wer heo wolde þe dom do ?
⁴ þe quene wepude wel sore, þe kýng ansuerede þýs :
 “ Sýre kýng, þou art mý louerd & mý sone ýwýs.
 “ Ich emme þat þe bcre, & vor þe gronede ylome,
 “ þe wule þou in mý wombe were, & ar þou fram me come.
 “ A sclandre ýs vp me ybrozt of mý chýldren tueye,
 “ Of þe and Alfred þý broþer, þat mý sones were beýe,
 “ þat ých ssolde atte rede be, þý broþer to deþe brýnge,
 “ And þe vorto apoýsoný. & zut of þrydde þýnge,
 “ þat ých sunne of lecherýe mýd Aýlwýne al so,
 “ þat ýs býssop of Wýnchestre, ssolde abbe ýdo.
 “ Ich ⁵ clupýe God to wýtnesse, þat ⁶ me to daý ýhure,
 “ þat, gýf ých ⁷ of ený” gultý am, ⁸ þat” ých mote þoru þýs
 fure
 “ Brenne býneþe & perýsý, þat me mowe ýse þe wreche.
 “ An zýf ých gulteles am þer of, þat God þet soþe teche.

¹ Biddest, <i>Ar.</i>	² Haue	kýng seide thus: <i>Ar.</i>	⁵ Take	
thow no drede <i>Ar.</i>	³ The		<i>Ar.</i>	⁶ He this daý hit hure,
peple <i>Ar.</i>	⁴ The quene		<i>Ar.</i>	⁷ <i>Desunt Ar.</i>
thenne wepýng sore, to the			<i>Ar.</i>	⁸ <i>Deest</i>

þe quene was þo' vorþ ylad ¹ mýd moný a wepynde eye
 Of býssopes and of heýmen, & of oþere þat yt yseýe.
 Hýre rýche cloþes were of ýdo, bote þat ² heo was bý weued
³ Hýre body wýþ a mantel, a wýmpel aboute her heued.
 þe legges bare býneþe þe kne, þat me mýgte eche stape ýse.
 Aweý! vnele býcome yt quene so bar vorto be.
 Me brogte vorþ ⁴ þýs fury ssaes, & leyde ⁵ ýs al arewe,
⁶ In þe bare erþe ýsuoþe, Gode's grace to ssewe.
 þe býssopes ⁷ blessede þe ssaes, & þe quene al so,
 An ladde hýre vorþ in eýþer half, ⁸ þýs jugement to do.
 þe quene þogte al on God, & to heuene caste hyre eye,
 And ne lokede no þýng donward, &, as hii alle ýseýe,
⁹ Heo stap vp þýs fury ýre, euerých stap al clene.
 Nuste heo býr sulf waune yt was, ne blenýte noxt ene.
 þer was joye & blýsse y nou, & ¹⁰ mony a wepynde eye,
 Vorst vor fere, & supþe vor joye, þo hii þýs ýseýe.
 þe byssopes, þat hyre ladde, vor joye ¹¹ wepe al so,
 And ¹² herede God & Seyn Swythýn, þo þýs ¹³ myracle' was
 ido,

¹ With many a wepyng
 tere Of lordes and barons,
 and other that were there *Ar.*

² She *Ar.* ³ With a light
 mantell, and a veile a bout
 hur hefed. Hure legges bare
 bý nethe kne, me myght see
 her shappe. Selcouth thing
 hit was to see a quene so bar-
 fote stappe *Ar.* ⁴ Thes *Ar.*

⁵ Hem *Ar.*

⁶ Upon the

playne erthe ther, Godde's

Ar. ⁷ Blessed tho the quene,
 an prayde for hure also, *Ar.*

⁸ Her *pro þýs in Ar.* ⁹ Heo
 stapped vppon the fury
 shares, harmeles al clene.

Herself he nust whanne hit
 was, ne blenched heo na ene
Ar. ¹⁰ Many a weping eye,

Ar. ¹¹ Wepte *Ar.* ¹² He-

ried *Ar.* ¹³ *Deest Ar.*

An ladde hýre outward of þe chýrche, þe quene býgan to crie :

“ Vor þe loue of Jhesu Crist, ne doþ nozt ¹ þe vylenýe,

“ To do mý penance wýþoute, ac in alle manere,

“ ² As ýt me ýloked war, in holý chýrche here.

“ Madame,” ³ quaf þe byssopes, “ þou ⁴ ast ydo ýwýs.

“ So helpe me God,” quaf þe quene, ⁵ “ ýnuste nozt er þýs.

“ No fur ýne velde, nene seý in þýsse place.

“ Bote nou ych ýt verst ýse, ⁶ ýrede be Gode's grace.

“ Ledef me þanne to mý sone, ýat he mowe ýse

“ Mý vet aboue, & eke býneþe, were hii ýwemmed be.

þo hii brogte hýre to þe kýng, þe kýng lýggýnge hii wonde,

Wepýnde & open heued, to sprad al to þe grounde.

Hýt was longe ar he mýgte speke, vor deol þat he made.

Atte laste he ros vp, as þe bissopes hým bade,

And vel to ýs moder vet, adoun anon akne.

“ Moder,” he seýde, “ ych abbe mýs ýdo agen God & agen þe,

“ ⁷ þat Inam nozt wurþe to be þý sone, ac per Seynt charýte,

“ Vor þe pýte þat of þe Magdaleýn God adde, vorzýf ýt me.

“ Sone,” quaf hýs moder þo, “ as al ⁸ þýs men ýseþ,

“ God aþ vayre ýsseed, þat we gultelese b:þ.

“ Atte býgunnynge þeruore agen þe býssop ych rede

“ ⁹ Amendement do, þat ys gultelese of þe dede.

¹ This *Ar.* ² As hit ordeýned to me was, in holy *Ar.* ³ Seide *Ar.* ⁴ Hast it do er this *Ar.* ⁵ I nust hit nat I wýs. No fuýre Ich felte, ne saý in this ilke place *Ar.* ⁶ Heried *Ar.* ⁷ I ne am not worthý be thi sone, For muche the gilte Ich haue.

For thy of God and of the mercý now ich craue *Ar.* ⁸ Thes folk I seeth *Ar.* ⁹ Amendement let be do, that gilteles is of that dede. Sithen thow maiste a yenste me, for ich mote be mýlde, As kendeliche the moder ought to the childe *Ar.*

“ And

“ And supþe azen me þou myȝt, vor ich mot nede be mylde,
 “ As kunde of moder wole & blod azen my chylde.
 þo þe byssop was ycome ¹ wepynde wel sore,
 þe kyng vel doun to hys vet, & cryde hym mylce and ore.
 þe byssop ² wepynde al so ver gaf yt hym anon.
 So þat þoru þe kynges bone, þe byssopes echon,
³ Ech after oþer, asoylede þen kyng of þys trespas
 Myd gerden in hys naked rug, & þat gret pyte was:
 þre strokes þe moder ek, ⁴ wepynde wel sore,
 gef hym ⁵ to asoyly, & ne myȝte vor reuþe more.
 þo custe þe kyng ⁶ hys moder, & þe byssop supþe also,
 And herede ȝerne Seyn Swythyn, þat such myracle adde ydo.
 þe kyng þo ⁷ myd gode herte delyuery het anon,
 Boþe quene and byssop, her maners echon.
 Nyne tounes þe quene anon of þat hyr owene was
 gef þe house of Seyn Swythyn, vor þys holy cas.
 And þe byssop oþer nyne of hys erytage ywys.
 Vor he nyne fury ssaes yȝeue was al þys.
 þe kyng ⁸ confermed her maners, & hym sulf gef al so
 Tueye God gode maners Seyn Swythyn þerto,

¹ Weþyng full *Ar.* ² We-
 pyng also for gaf him a non
Ar. ³ Assoilled him right
 there of his trespas With
 yerdes on his naked rigge,
 þat grete pite was *Ar.* ⁴ We-
 pyng full *Ar.* ⁵ For ab-
 solution, for rewthe sheo ne
 myȝt no more *Ar.* ⁶ And
 his moder, and the bisshoppes
 also, And hered God and

Seynt Swethyne of this mi-
 racle i do *Ar.* ⁷ With goude
 hert let deliuere a non, Bothe
 the quene and bisshop, her
 londes every chon *Ar.* ⁸ Con-
 fermed al this, and him self
 yaf there to II. good Tounes
 for that he hadde mysdoo, That
 wolde be xx. in all, hit was
 nat lite there. Hit wolde
 fynde the Couent wortes i
 nowe

þat wolde be tuenty vnder al, & þat nas noȝt lute þere.
 Vor yt wolde fynde hem lek worten y nowe by þe gere.
 Vor gode þe nexte kyng Edward, þat after hym come,
 Ne gef hem noȝt follýche so muche wyþynne hys kynedom.
 þo abbeý of Seyn Denys Seynt Edward gef also
 þe priorýe of Derheste, & londes þat þer beþ þerto.
 þe erchebýssop of Canterburý sorý ynou was þo,
 þo he hurde of þe quene al hou yt was ýgo.
 Hým þoȝte wel longe, ar he were ouer see,
¹ And byleuede al hys byssoprýche, & necome neuere eft age.
 þe quene & eke þe býssop, þe wule hii alýue were,
 Muche honourede Seyn Swýthyn fram gere to gere.
 Hys moder wende out of þys lýf, Emme þe god quene,
 In þe a þousend ger of grace & tuo & fýfty ých wene.
 Seynt Edward huld at ² Wýndelsore a uayr feste wyþalle,
 And as a zong man býuore ³ hým seruede in þe halle
 He spurnde mýd hys on vot, þat he vel almost abrod,
⁴ Ac he hente mýd hys oþer, so þat he abode.
 þe erl Godwýne, þe false man, seyde þo, “ ⁵ þat þe on broþer,
 “ As ze seþ, in nede helpþ þere þat oþer.
 þo ansuerede þe ⁶ kyng & seyde, “ so mýȝte me
 “ Mý broþer helpe, Godwýne, zýf he moste vor þe.

nowe euery yere. To the abbeý of Seynt Denys Seynt Edwarde, ýaf also The Priourý of Derhurst, *Ar.*

¹ He bilafte his býssopriche, and neuer cam a ýee *Ar.* ² Wýnchestre a fest grete with alle *Ar.* ³ Hem

Ar. ⁴ But þe other fote him halpe, so that *Ar.* ⁵ Ther the on brother, Ase ye seith, in nede ofte helpeth the other *Ar.* ⁶ Kyng, so myght my brother me Ofte haue holpe, and he most for the *Ar.*

þo was þys luþer Godwyne ¹ of ssamed suyþe sore,
 “ Syre,” he seyde, “ ȝut me þýneþ, ² þat yuortrou þou art more
 “ To me of þý broþer deþ, & leuest hem ých ýse,
 “ þat in falsnesse þe tolde, þat ých ssolde þý traýtor be.
 “ ³ As wys deme God þat soþe, þat of ech þýng wot ende,
 “ And also late þys mossel bred þoru mý þrote wende,
 “ Wýþ out harm of me, as I nadde neuere in non cas
 “ Gult of þý broþer deþ, ne þý traýtor neuere I nas.
 Mossel he dude in to hys mouþ, ac the kýng ýt blessed er.
 Hyt byleuede amýdde hys þrote, astrangled he was ryȝt þere,
 And deýde atte borde al stýf, wýþ ssendnesse inou.
 Out al byneþe þe borde ⁴ Haral hys sone hým drou.
⁵ A þousend ȝer in þe ȝer of grace & þre & fýfty þys was.
 Lute harm, þey ech traýtor ended in such cas.
 Of al hýs kun in Engelond Seynt Edward nadde noȝt on.
 Vor hýs broþeren were aslawe, oþer ⁶ ýfleynd echon.
 þeruore þo þys holý man ⁷ as” in to elde wende,
 To þe emperour of Rome after hýs ⁸ neuue he sende
 Edward, ⁹ Edmonde’s sone þat was Yrene syde,
 þat hýs eyr were after hým, ȝýf he myȝte alýue abýde.

¹ Ashamed *Ar.* ² Thow
 mýstrowest me more, And put-
 test vpon me thi brother, and
 nelt I leue me, For all that
 ich a quyt was bý men of
 Noblete: And also wys ne-
 uer this morsell thourgh my
 throte passe, As ich of thi bro-
 ther deth never gulty nas.
 The morsell to hiþ mothe he
 putte, but blessed was hit
 er Of a bisshop, So that ther

with a strangeled he was
 ther. He deýde stýff atte borde
 in shamefull deth i now *Ar.*
³ *F. ac.* ⁴ Harold *Ar.* ⁵ A
 Ml. as in the ýere of grace
 and. liii. this was *Ar.* ⁶ I
 flemed *Ar.* ⁷ *Deest Ar.* ⁸ Co-
 sýns [*l. cosyn*] *Ar.* ⁹ That
 was the sone of Edmunde
 Ireuside, That he his heýre
 were *Ar.*

þys emperour hým sende, myd gode loue & fre,
Edward & Agace hys wýf, & her chýldren þre
þe zonge ¹ Edward Adelyng, & also Margarete,
And ² Cristýne her soster, þat god were & suete.
þo hii come to Engeland, glad was þe kýng þo,
Vor he nadde in hýs fader alf kunnesmen nanmo.

þys was in a þousend zer & seuene & fýftý þerto
As in zer of grace, þat þys dede was ýdo.

Ac Edward deýde sone, & ýbured was wýþ gret prute

At Seyn Poule's at Londone, as hýs bones beþ zute :

And hýs sone ³ Edward bote zong & tendre nas,

þeruore þe kýng vor hys deþ þe sorrore was.

⁴ Vor þat chýld was wel zong, eýr & kýng to be,

And he wuste wel, þat in þe lond ⁵ muche wo me ssolde y se.

And vor hýs vncler in Normandýe hým adde ⁶ ýusteýned er,

þo he was ⁷ fleýne & frendeles, ⁸ mo þan þrutty" zer,

He wolde, þat hýs sone sone after hým kyng were

Wýllam duc of Normandie, rýgt lawe þey ýt nere.

⁹ Vor he was in hýs moder alf next of hys blod,

And þer nas non in hýs fader alf þat þer to was so god.

þer uore þys Wýllam bastard Engeland he býhet,

And byqueþ in hýs deþ vnel, ar he þat lýf let.

¹ *Lege*, Edgar Athelyng, *cum Ar.* ² *Christiene Ar.*

³ *Repone*, Edgar, *cum Ar.*

⁴ For his sone Edgar to
ýonge was kýng to be *Ar.*

⁵ Muche stryf shulde be *Ar.*

⁶ *Susteýned Ar.* ⁷ *Fleme*

Ar. ⁸ *Negh xxx. Ar.* ⁹ For

in his moder half quene Em-
me he was the nexte bloode,

And as for the londe's prough
him thought none so goode *Ar.*

And

And þat muche vor þe londe's prou, vor hys neuen so zong
was.

Hou ¹ Wyllam bastard was býztye, Icholle telle þat cas.
Rychard duc of Normandye, Emme broþer þe quene,
Adde a sone, þat het Roberd, þat duc was supþe, Ich wene.
Roberd, þys noble duc, as he wende ouer lond,
A wel vayr mayde, as hým þogte, matresche he vond.
þys mayde hým payde suyþe wel, myd god wille he hýr nom,
And huld hýre as hys lefmon, as wo seyþ in hordom,
And byget on hýre þys Wýllam, &, vor he was so ýbore
Out of spoushod, me cluped hým Wyllam bastard þeruore.

¹ *Metra hac de re desunt in Ar. in quo tamen sequentia, eo pertinentia, narravit scriptor prosaicus, quibus similia itidem videas tam in Polychronico, quam & in Lelandi nostri Collect. Vol. VI. p. 296.*

Afterhim[Richard the III^{de}.] Robert his sone [was duc of Normandye,] a man of grete worthinesse. After him William Bastard, of wham this geste folweth. Robert duc of Normandye in a tyme as he dwelled in a toune of Normandie, i cleped Faleys, he caste his chere to a mayde in the toune, that me cleped Herlote. And, when sheo was broughte to the duke's bedde, and shulde go therto, she toke her smok a boue atte coler hem, and rent hit doune to the foot, and leide it a wey

fram hure. And whenne sheo was esshet, why she dude soo? she answered and seide, hit was nat curtasye ne reson that thinges, that touched her feet & hure lowe thynges, shuld touche her lorde's mouthe ne visage, & so thulke same nyght the duc gat on her William Bastard. And after hure slepe sheo a woke, and made a grete gronyng and syghyng. So that the duc hurýng that, esshet of hure, why sheo sighed so? And sheo answered, "Lord ich haue "worderliche [f. wonderliche] "i mette. Me thought," quod sheo, "that a grete tree growe "oute atte my wombe, and "by shadowed alle Norman- "dye." And after, whenne hit came to the tyme, when the childe was i bore, a non, þourgh

Ar þat chýld were ýbore, a wel wonder cas
 þe moder mette bý hýre chýld, þat in hýr wombe was,
 þat hýs gottes were to drawe aboute al Normandyé,
 And eke aboute al Engeland, þat was to sýgnýffe,
 þat he ssolde be duc of Normandyé, & kýng of Engeland,
 And bothe, as ýt supþe vel, holde in hýs honde.
 þe chýld ek þo ýt was ýbore, & to grounde com,
 Out of hýs moder wombe verst, boþe hýs honden he nom
 Vol of þe poudre & of þe erþe sturnelyche ýnou,
 And closedes to gader & hýs fustes boþe adrou.
 þo was yt jugged, þat he ssolde be, wýþ oute fayle,
 Hardý kýng & stalwarde, & muche do of bataýle.
 Al yt bycom to soþe supþe. he bygan zong ynou,
 To cuþe wat he wolde be, þat so zong hýs fustes adrou.

þourgh negligence of women
 attendýng a boutte his moder
 forýetýng hým, he was wal-
 wed into the strawe that was
 bý, and had caught his. ii.
 hondes so fulle ther of, that
 ynnethe, with oute grete
 harme, me mýght delýuere
 hit oute of his hondes. Wher-
 for, muche folke demed, he
 shulde wexe to summe grete
 auoíre of worlde's richesse.
 And as this childe was after
 in norýsshýng in Valeýs, a
 grete man [*sic hæc concipiun-
 tur*] of the contre, I hote
 William Tallmage. So that
 a burgeýs, where as this
 childe was in norýsshýng,

prayde this William to come
 to his house, and visite his
 lorde's sone. This William
 Tallenage & alle his kýnne
 hadde euer i hated this
 childe's fader and his kynne,
 and ýt not withstondýng
 that he cam to the hous,
 wher this childe was inne.
 And as non as this childe,
 that vnnethe coude speke,
 saugh him, sodeýneliche hit
 gan chide towardes this
 man, and so ferde towardes
 him, that me toke grete hede
 there of, supposýng hit myght
 nat be withoute grete ordi-
 nauce of God.

þat

þat chýld wax so wel & ýþen, as seyde fremde & sýbbe,
 þat he wolde be a noble mon, ȝýf he moste lybbe.
 Hýs fader adde of hym eke gret joye & prýs,
 þat so gode sýgne adde so ȝong, to be stalwarde & wýs.
 Ar he were of sene ȝer old. þoru out moný a lond
 þe pope sende creýserý toward þe holýlond.
 Roberd duc of Normandýe þe croýs nom atten ende,
 And ȝarked hým wýþ oþere to þe holylonde to wende.
 At Festamp, ar he wende vorþ, he made al Normandýe
 Suerýe, holde hýs ȝong sone, as to seýgnorýe.
 ȝong duc he was on of sene ȝer vnneþe.
 Vor þe fader ne com neuere agen, ar he were broȝt to deþe.
 And þýs ȝong chýld byleued duc, & gret þýng adde an honde.
 þýs was ar Seynt Edward were kýng of Engeland.
 And Seynt Edward byleuede vorþ mýd hým, as he adde er
 ýdo
 Myd hys fader in hys nede, & mýd vjs grantsyre al so.
 þeruore þo he was kýng, gret loue he gan bede
 þýs Wyllam, vor hii susteyned hým so in hys nede.
 So þat supþe in hýs elde, þo hýs lýf was neý ydo,
 As in þe ȝer of hys kýnedom tuentý & tuo,
 Of þe crowne of Engeland he nuste wat best do,
 Vor Edgar, hys neuen sone, wel ȝong was þerto
 To be kýng of Engeland, & hýs owe lyf ssoȝt was,
 And he dradde of gret contek alonde vor þat cas.
 Hym þoȝte to ȝýue Wyllam þýs lond, hyt was best to do.
 Vor he was wurþe, & of hýs blod, & best ýt couþe wyte also.
 þeruor he ȝaf ýt hým, as he byhet hým byuore,
 And sende to hým mýd þe ȝýfte to Normandýe þeruor

þe erl Harald þe quene broþer, as me wende, & oþer mo.
 Ac soþ yt ys, þat þe erl Harald passede þe see þo,
 Wyþ gret poer & folc ynou, so þat, as God yt wolde,
 Wyþ wynd he was in strange londe ydryue, þer he nolde.
 þere hii were, as strange men, ¹ grýmýlyche vndervonge,
 And ynome to albe of here, & ybrogt in bendes stronge.
 Syr Gwý of Pountyn was hys name, þat hym adde in bende,
 And askede hem gret ramson, in prison vorto wende.
 Harald was of heye herte, & suor raþer he wolde
 gýue þe duc of Normandye of hys tresor & of hys golde,
 þat so noble duc was & god, ² þan a such alue man as he was.
 To þe duc he sende sone, to helpe hym in þat cas.
 þe duc sende to Syr Gwý, so ³ þat Syr Gwý anon
 And adde Harald to þe duc, & hys felawes echon.
 þe duc vayre hym vnderuoug, & honoured hym y nou,
 So þat, as rygt was, gret loue bytuene ⁴ hym drou.
 Harald, vor to paye hym wel, sende hym sone hys sonde,
 Hou þe kyng hym ⁵ made after hym hys eyr of hys londe.

¹ Greuýliche vnderfonge
 In Sir Guy de Pounsoun's
 lond, and i prisoned wonder
 strong. And whenne they
 hadde ther a while thus i
 dwelte in bende, Sir Guy as-
 ked hem Raunson grete, of
 prison for to wende *Ar.* ²
 Than suche half man *Ar.* ³
 That he a non Ladde Harolde
 tho to him, and his felawes
 echon *Ar.* ⁴ Hem drowgh.
 Harold than, to queme the duc,
 seide sone his sonde, *Ar.* ⁵

Maked after his day heire of
 Engelond. And Harold swor
 to the duc, and to him fast
 bonde, That to his bý houe al
 on he wolde kepe the londe,
 And that the duke's daughter,
 whenne that tyme come, That
 yong was thoo, in foreward to
 wýf Harolde nome. And thus
 Harolde was i swor to do thes
 thinges twoo With also gret
 oþe and bonde, as men myght
 doo *Ar.*

And þat he wolde take hym to wyte hys lond he vnderstode
 To hys byefþe, & þat he wolde wardeyn be hym god.
 As strong vorewarde as hii mygte hii made & as hard,
 And vp holy relykes Harald suor to Wyllam bastard,
 Treulyche to wyte Engelond to hym, vorte he come,
 And þat he hys one dogter to wyue also nome,
 þat zond was at þulke tyme, so þat þys þynges tuo
 Wyþ as gret oþ he suor hym, as man mygte do.
 þo þys vorewarde was ymad hard & strong y nou,
 Harald toward Engelond wyþ gode loue drou.
 þe kyng he tolde al þat cas, þat bytuene hem was ydo,
 Hou he wolde to Wyllam trywe be, an hys dogter spousy al so.
 þo was þe kyng glad ynou, þat he wel to hym truste,
¹ And bytot hym þat lond, þat he wel to þys Wyllam yt wuste.
 Seynt Edward wuste of hys deþ, ar he henne wende,
 Vor Seynt Jon euangelyst byuore longe word sende,
 And sende hym tokne by a ryng, þat at Westmynstre gut ys,
 þat Seynt Edward þer byuore Seyn Jon gef ywys.
 þe kyng þo þet word hym com, & þen ryng ysey,
 He þonkede God þat he wuste, þat hys deþ was so ney.
 Hys gode he delde pouere men, & made hys bernes bare,
 And hys tresorye al so god, & to God hym made al zare.
 Glad he was of Westmynstre þat he ² let hym sulf rere,
 þat byuore hym was ybrozt to grounde, þoru luþer kynges
 þat were.

¹ And by toke him all the | wyzt Ar. ² Lette vppe a rere
 londe, to the duc that he | Ar.

Ac ¹ vorþ chýrche vnhalwed was, þeruor hým was wø.
 He þogte ² lete hýs halwý to mýdewýnter anon þo.
 þey Seyn Peter hýmsulf ³ ýhalwed adde er,
 gút he moste efsone vor þe nýwe worke þere.
 He sende after hýs ⁴ baronýe, at mýdewýnter ⁵ mýd hým to be.
 þo þe feste ýgadered was, deol me mýgte ýse.
 Vor þo ýt ssolde murgost be, þe kyng vnelede anon.
 And napeles glad he was hým sulf, ⁶ vor he wuste gon.
 And vor joye of hýs deþe, & vor þe heýe feste also,
 þe trauaýl he nome to hým al, þat hem wolde vane to do.
 He ber þe croune, & huld þe deýs mýd oþer atýl al so,
 And mýd gret semblant þe feste huld vorte þre dawes were
 ýdo.

A Seyn Jone's day he sey þat al com to god endynge,
 He made ac conferment to Westmynstre of eche þýnge,
 þat þoru hým hem ýgyue was, oþer þoru eny oþer kýnge,
 So þat no kýng after hým ne dude no destour brynge.
 þe chýrche' he let halwý as a Chýldery masse daý.
 Wel feble he was þere hým sulf, as al ⁷ þat folc ý saý.
 In a þousend ȝer of grace, & sýxe & sýxtý þerto,
 Hýt was þat þýs holýman þys dede let do.

¹ For the church *Ar.*
² To hadde halwed hur atte
 midwýuter thoo *Ar.* ³ Her
 hadde halwed er *Ar.* ⁴ Ba-
 rons, *Ar.* ⁵ Negh *pro* mýd
 in *Ar.* ⁶ For he wiste hoder
 gon. ýt bare he the crowne,
 & helde the deýs with other
 a týre also, And with gret
 chere ^{iii.} dayes helde his

feste so. A Seynt Johen's day,
 of all to make good endýng,
 He confermed bý his chartre
 in all maner thýng To West-
 mýnstre the fredomes i vsed
 ýt huder to, And ho that a
 ýenst hem ought dude, let
 sentence ther on doo. The
 church he lette halwe a Chil-
 dermasse daý *Ar.* ⁷ The *Ar.*

þo hýt was al wel ýdo, & ýbrogt to god ende,
 þe kýng feble & sýk ynou to hýs bed gan wende.
 þo was þer deol & sorwe ynou of men þat wuste þat cas,
 Vor hii wuste, þat to Engelond muche wo to come was.
 Worre & slagt, and oþer wo, & hongre & gret wou.
 þe quene vel bý hým adoun, & byclupte hým vaste ýnoz
 Vorto hete hýs colde lymes, þat non hete ne come to,
 þoru hete of hýre owe body, & of hýre cloþes al so.
 þe kyng lay as he were ysuowe alмест dawes tuo.
 He gan, as he awoke of slepe, hýs eyen þo vn do.
 He sat ¹ vpard vp hýs bed, hýs honden held vp anheý.
 “Louerd,” he seyde, “þat ech þýng madest queynte & sleý,
 “And changest ² poer & kýnedoms alat þý nowe rede,
 “And monne’s sonnes wreche senst of her fader mýs dede,
 “gýf þýng, þat ých nou ýsey, ³ come of þý soþnesse,
 “get me poer yt to telle in al my feblesse,
 “Vorto ssewe þý poer, þat hii þat yt ýseþ
 “Douty þe, & of þe sýnne, þat hii in beþ,
 “Repentý mowe, & þer of hem amendý so,
 “⁴ þat hii ssulde hem fram þe harm, þat þou þencst hem do.
 Anon as þýs holymon ⁵ adde hýs oryson ý do þere,
 Stalward man of speche he was, holy man as he were,
 þo gan he to ⁶ tellen þus: “þulke týme þat ych was
 “⁷ As man fleýne in Normandye, me com moný god cas.

¹ Upwardes on his bedde,
Ar. ² Power and kyngdom
 atte thýne awne wille, And
 mannes sonns sendest wreche
 of his fader’s ille *Ar.* ³ Come
 shall of thý Rightwesnesse, *Ar.*
⁴ And pray the shilde hem

fro the harme, that thow hem
 thenkest doo *Ar.* ⁵ Hadde doo
 his prayere, Strong i now
 his speche was *Ar.* ⁶ Segge
Ar. ⁷ Flemed man in Nor-
 mandýe, me cam *Ar.*

" Men of relygyon ych louede wel y nou,
 " An to me hem, þat best were, ¹ at vore alle oþer ych drou.
 " ² An tuene holy men at vore alle oþer mest yc louede þere.
 " Nou wot ych wel, þat ³ mony day in heuene boþe hii were.
 " Hii tolde me, þat" to Engelond after me ssolde come.
 " Hii seyde me of þe wrecchede, ⁴ þat alonde aþ zare ybe.
 " þe wreche hieþ & sone comeþ. & þat ssal me yse.
 " Vor prestes, myd vnclene honde & myd lechor's mode
 " Al soyled, sacryeþ Gode's fless & hys blod.
 " Ssepurdes hii ⁵ bet luþer, vor hii ne ⁶ w yteþ nozt
 " Her ssep fram þe ⁷ wolues. vor be hem ybrozt
 " þe melke & þe wolle clene. of oþer ⁸ þyng hii nolle telle.
 " þe ssepurdes and þe ssep ⁹ al so ssulle to pyne of helle.
 " As god heymen of þe lond robbeors felawes beþ.
 " Pouere men, þat hii mowe ouer, hii huldeþ as ge yseþ.
 " Nou wole vr Louerd ssake hys suerd, hys bowe ys ybend,
 " And ¹⁰ prest aþ ymade, vorto snyte men þat bet myswende.
 " þo seyde ych myd drery mode, zyf hii wolleþ turne her þozt,
 " An sorý be, & ¹¹ bete her synne, wolle vr Louerd vorzýue
 hem ozt?

¹ By fore *Ar.* ² Ac ii.
 holy men be fore *Ar.* ³ Ma-
 ny a day bothe in heuen they
 were. And now ryght bothe
 hii come to me, and the an-
 gwysses some Hii tolde me,
 that *Ar. adeo ut in Cod.*
nostro Harleyano metrum in-
tegrum omittatur. ⁴ That
 longe in londe hath be, Of
 whiche the wreche hiegh faste,
 as me shall i see. For Prestes
 with vnclene hondes, and with

lecherous mode, All i foyled,
 vseth to sacre Godde's flesh &
 blode *Ar.* ⁵ Beth *Ar.* ⁶ Ke-
 peth *Ar.* ⁷ Wolues, to hem
 that buthe by taught *Ar.*
⁸ Thýnges nele I tell *Ar.*
⁹ Also bothe shulleth to Hell.
 And also Robbers of the londe
 high mennes felewes beth.
 Power men, that hii mowe,
 hii buyldeth as ye seeth *Ar.*
¹⁰ Redy *Ar.* ¹¹ Let *Ar.*

" þat ys vor nozt," þe oþer seýde, " vor þe folke's herte ys
 " So ýharded, þat hii beþ blynde & deue ywýs,
 " þat hii nolleþ non god þýng ýhure ne ýse.
 " þo seýde ých, ¹ wer vr Louerd wole euere wroþ be,
 " ² Wer he nolle grace do, & be of mýlce more?
 " Wanne þat loud, after so gret joye, so vol worþ of sore,
 " Wat ende ssal þerof be, & wanne ený blýs,
 " Oþer comfort, after such sor?" þo seýde þe oþer þýs:
 " A grene wexýng tre, þat ys fram hýs more
 " Ismyte adoun, & þe brede of þe þre londes þerfram ybore,
 " Wanne ýt ys eft bý hým sulue, wýþout ech monne's rede,
 " Iturnd agen to hýs rýgte more, þat er was as dede,
 " And býgýnþ to blowe, & subþe to bere frut,
 " þanne me maý, wo ýt ³ ýsueþ, to bote hopye gut.
 þo þe quene, & hýre broþer Harald, hurde þýs,
 And Roberd, þat wardeyn was of þe palays ýwýs,
 Hii wepe, & made deol ý nou, vor hii seýe þe soþnesse,
⁴ In wuche lecherýe & oþer sýnne þe prestes songe her masse;
 And hou þe heýe men of þe lond þe pouere to grounde brogte,
 þe wreche, þat God wolde do, nas nozt vor nozt hii þogte.
 þe sýzte bytokneþ þus, as ýt was vnderstonde:
 þýs tre þe noble kynedom bytokneþ of Englonde.
 þe more bytokneþ þe rýgte kunde, þat ech of oþer come,
 Fram kýng Alfred ⁵ þe kunde more, þat furst was ýheled at
 Rome,

¹ Whether oure *Ar.* ² Whe- | in lecherie *Ar.* ⁵ The mo-
 ther he woll yet grace *Ar.* | narke, tha anoynted was atte
³ Sceth, for bote *Ar.* ⁴ ow | Rome, *Ar.*

To Seynt Edward's fader, & to hym sulue al so.
 Ac þo he deyde wýþoute ryzt eýr, þe wexýnge was ýdo,
 And þat tre ýsmýte fram þe more ouer þre londes brede.
 Vor þe kýnges were of Engelond of vn kunde sede.
 Verst Harald þe quene broþer, & Wýllam bastard also,
 And supþe hýs sone Wýllam, þe rede kýng, þerto.
 Ac after þat Wýllam, þe rede kýng, ýssote was bý cas,
 And þe gode Henry hýs broþer after hym kýng was,
 Seynt Edward's nece, þat of hýs fader kunde come,
 And of þe rýzte kunde of Engelond, kýng Henry to wyue nome,
 þat was Mold þe gode quene, þat in gode týme was ýbore ;
 þo smot verst þýs tre azen to hýs kunde more,
 And Normandy þoru þe kyng, & þoru þe quene Engelond
 Joýned were þo kundelyche in one monne's honde.
¹ In a þosend zer of grace & sýxe & sýxty rýzt,
 After vr suete Louerd in hýs moder was alýzt.
 Kyng he was þre & tuenty zer, & sýx monþes þerto,
 And þre woke & sýx dawes, ar hýs lýf were ýdo
 þo Seynt Edward adde þýs ýtold, he closede hoþe hýs eye;
 And þe verþe day of Janýuere in þýs manere gan deye.
 Al þe franchýse of Engelond, & al joye & blýsse,
 Mýd hym was vaste ýbured, þo me bured hym ýwýs.
 And þat me vond sone afterward mýd moný deluol cas.
 At Westmýnstre a tuelfþe day þýs gode man ýbured was.

¹ Whenne Seynt Edward
 thus tolde, he ganne to close
 his eyghe, The iiii. day of
 Januare thenne ganne he
 deye, In the yere of oure
 Lorde. Ml. lxxvi. right After

that onre swete Lorde in his
 moder a light. Kyng he was.
 xxiii. yere and vi. moneths
 ther too, And iii. wokes and
 vi. dayes er his lýf was i doo.
 Al the franchise *Ar.*

HARALD þys false erl, þo Seynt Edward dede lay,
 Hým sulue he let crouny kýng þulke sulue day
 Falslyche. vor Seynt Edward so wel to hým truste,
¹ þat he býtot hým Engeland, þat he ýt wel wuste
 To ² Wyllamme's byoffe bastard, duc of Normandye.
 Ac hým sulf he made kýng ³ myd such trecherýe.
 Ac þe gode tryw men of þe lond wolde ⁴ abbe ýmade kýng
 þe kunde eyr, þe zonge chyld, Edgar Aþelyng.
⁵ Wo so were next kýng býkunde, me clupeþ hým Aþelyng.
 þeruor me clupede hým so, vor býkunde he was next kýng.
 Ac Harald made hys wey býuore, ⁶ as myd suykedom,
 Myd zýftýs & myd vayre byheste, & auong þe kýnedom.
 So þat somme hým chose alout, & somme hem hulde stýlle,
⁷ And soffrede as hii nozt ne myzte al opere's wýlle.
 So þat Harald was kýng, to wom þe hele þe kýnedom.
 And Seynt Edward's sýzte bý hým to soþe come.
 Vor þo býgan þe wow vorst, as me myzte ýse,
 þat ssolde, as Seynt Edward seyde, bý þre kýnges day be.
 Vor ⁸ Coste, Harald broþer, þat he drof er in to Flaundre
 Bý kýnge's day Edward hym sulue to gret sclaundre,

¹ Thenne he by toke him
Ar. ² Willīame's bý houe *Ar.*
³ With fals trechourie *Ar.*
⁴ Haue maked *Ar.* ⁵ He that
 were nexte kyng by kynde,
 Ethelýng he was, And there
 fore me cleped hym so, for
 nexte heire he was *Ar.* ⁶ All
 with swikeldom, With yeftes
 and with faire bý hestes, to
 vonge the kyngdom *Ar.*

⁷ And suffred thulke týme as
 men that myght not haue her
 wille. So that Harolde to
 wrothur hele helde the kyng-
 dome, And sone, as Seynt Ed-
 warde seide, after ward hit
 come. And thoo by ganne the
 wrake ferste, as all men
 myght i see *Ar.* ⁸ *Pro Toste.*
At in Ar. Tostyn, Harolde's.

He

He com anon þo vppen hym myd gret poer & eye,
 Myd Harald ¹ Darfagor kyng of Norþwey,
 And myd gret poer of Norþomber to Euerwýk hii com,
 And muche ² folc in þe Souþ syde boþe slowe & nome.
 Kyng Harald com agen hym myd poer strong ynou.
³ Býsyde Euerwýk hys ost agen hym he drou,
 In a stude, þat me clupede ⁴ Stamford brugge þo,
 And nou me clupeþ yt Batayle brugge, vor þe batayle þat
 was þo.

þer hii smýte to gadere, & made a sorý pleý.
 Vor þere was Tost aslawe, & þe kyng of Norþwey,
 And her syde ⁵ al byneþe; to ende yt com so
 þat Seynt Edward byuore seyde of þelke breþeren tuo,
 þat hii ssolde to gadere fýgte, & Harald aboue be.
⁶ þer me mygte of þulke word þat soþnesse ýse.
 Fram anon amorwe vorte myd ouer none,
 þo^o batayle laste strong, ar ⁷ he were ydon,
 þe Englysse ouer þe brugg droue þe oþer at laste.
 Ac þo þat water was býtuene, hii stode agen vaste.
⁸ On body þer was of Norþwey, betere nas þer non.
 Vor he at stode vp þe brugg myd anax al on,
 And drof the Englysse men agen, ⁹ hym ne mygte non atstonde.
 And slou mo þan fourty of hem myd hys owe honde,

¹ *Lege*, Harfager. ² Folke,
 that hem with stode, bothe
 slawe *Ar.* ³ A lite bý side
 Euerwik the hostes ge-
 der drough, *Ar.* ⁴ Stayne-
 forde *Ar.* ⁵ Was all by ne-
 the; to ende cam hit thoo

Ar. ⁶ Ther of me myght
 atte thulke tyme all the sothe
 i see. Fram ernemorwe fort
 hit was myddeouer none,
 The *Ar.* ⁷ Hit *Ar.* ⁸ A
 man ther was *Ar.* ⁹ That
 nou myght him withstande.
 And

And wuste hem so vorte after none vorte on myd gyle nome
 A ssyp, & ar he were ywar vnder þe brugg com,
 And smot hym ar he were ywar vnder foundement lowe
 Myd a sper, & so an hey, þat he deýde in a þrowe.
 A stalwarde pece þat was, nou God cuþe hys soule loue.
 þo þogte þe Englysse vor hys deþ þat hii were al aboue,
 And passede þe brugge anon, and slowe to grounde,
 So þat þe oþer partye býneþe was in astounde.
 þo' Harald ýsey hys broþer aslawe, ¹ & þe kyng Arfager
 Of Norþwey & her folc, he ne huld nour hys pere.
 He ne geld nozt wel her mede, þat wýþ hym hys fon slowe,
 þeruore hys men þe lasse her herte to hym drowe.
 And þat hii kudde hym afterwarde, azen William bastard,
² As ze ssole sone ýhure, vor he was euere assreward.

MUCHE aþ he sorwe ýbe ofte in Engeland;
³ As ze mowe here & er yhure & vnderstonde;
 Of moný bataýle þat aþ ybe, & þat men þat lond nome,
 Verst, as ze abbeþ ýhurd, þe emperours of Rome.

And slough him self fourty
 with a sparthe in hande. So
 atte laste vnder him pruyý-
 liche on came lowe, And in
 the foundement him smote,
 that he deide in a throwe.
 Then were the Englysshmen
 a boue in lýtell stounde, And
 passed the brugge, and slowe
 downe to grounde. Tho *Ar.*

¹ And Harolde Herfager,
 He toke gret pruyte ther of,
 and helde non his pere, And
 ýelde not well *Ar.* ² As ýe

mowe ther of hure he after
 [*f.* here after] warde *Ar.*
³ As ýe mowe i hure bý wrýt,
 as Ich vnderstande, Of ma-
 ny batailles that hath i be of
 men this londe that nome,
 Of Giauntes ferste & Bru-
 tonus, and suth of men of
 Rome. Of Saxons suth and
 Danes thenne, and Norman-
 nus atte laste. And yut there
 wolle be more wrake, Icham
 fulle sore a gaste *Ar.*

Suppe Saxons & Englysse myd batayles stronge.
 Atte laste heȝ of Normandyȝe, þat maystrus bet ȝut here,
 Wonne yt & holdeþ ȝut, y cholle telle in wuche manere.
 1 þo Willam bastard hurde telle of Haralde's suykedhede,
 Hou he hadde ymad hym kyng, & myd wuch fals hede.
 Vor þat lond hym was bytake, as hȝt welle wuste,
 To wyte yt to hym wel, & he wel to hym truste.
 As þe hende he dude verste, & messagers hym sende,
 " þat he vnderstode hym bet hys dede vorto amende,
 " And þogte on þe grete oþ, þat he hym adde her ydo,
 " To wyte hym wel Engelond, & to spouse hys dogter also,
 " And hulde hym þerof vorewarde, as he by het ek þe kyng,
 " And bote he dude bytyme, he wolde sende hym oþer tyþyng,
 " And seche hym out ar tuelf monþe, & hys ryȝtys wynne,
 " þat he ne ssolde abbe in to al Engelond, & erne to wyte hym.
 Harald hym sende word, " þat folȝe yt was to truste
 " To such oþ, þat was ydo myd strengþe, as he wel wuste.
 " Vor ȝyf a mayde treuþe plyȝte, to do a fole dede
 " Al one priuylȝche, wyþ out hyre frendes rede,
 " þulke vorewarde ys vor noȝt. & wat loker yt aȝte her,
 " þat ych suor anoþ, þat was þo al in þȝ poer,
 " Wyþoute consel of al þe londe, of þȝyng þat myn noȝt nas?
 " þeruor ned oþ ysuore, nede ybroke was.
 " And ȝyf þou me wolt seche in Engelond, ne be þou no so-
 sturne
 " Syker þou ne ssalt me fynde in none hurne.

*1 Hic perplura prosaice ha- | nimirum metris in eodem
 bentur in Ar. haud paucis | prætermisiss.*

þo Willam hurde, þat he wolde susteny hys trecherye,
 He let of sende hys knyghtes of al Normandye,
 To conseyly hym in þys cas, & to helpe hym in suche nede,
 And he gan of her purchas largelyche hem bede,
 As hii founde subbe in Engelond, þo yt ywonne was,
 þe betere was toward hym her herte vor þys cas.
 þe duc Wýllam hys wýlle among hem alle seyde,
 þat four þynges hym made mest bygynne þulke dede.
 Vor Godewyne, Haralde's fader, to deþe let do
 So vyllyche Alfred, hys cosyn, & hys felawes also.
 And vor Harald adde hys op ybroke, þat he suor myd hys
 rygt honde,
 þat he wolde to hys byofþe wytýe Engelond.
 And vor Seynt Edward hym gef Engelond al so.
 And vor he was next of hys blod, & best wurþe þerto,
 And vor Harald nadde non rygt bote in falshede.
 þes þynges hym made mest bygynne þys dede.
 And vor he wolde, þat all men yseye hys trywede,
 To þe pope Alysander he sende in such cas hym to rede.
 Haralde's falshede þo þe pope ysey þere,
 And perauentere me hym tolde more þat soþ were,
 þe pope asoyled & blessed Wýllam & al hys,
 þat into þys bataýle myd hym ssolde ýwýs,
 And halewede hys baner, þat men at vore hym bere.
 þo was he & al hys gladdore þan hii er were.
 So þat þys duc adde azen heruest al gare
 Hys barons & hys knyghtes, myd hym vorto fare.
 To þe hauene of Seyn Walrý þe duc wende þo
 Myd þe men þat he hadde, & abyde mo.

After heruest þo her ssýppes & al hii preste were,
 And wýnd hem com after wýlle, her seýles hii gon rere,
 And hyderwarde in þe se wel glad þen wey nome.
 So þat býsyde Hastýnges to Engeland hii come,
 Hem þogte, þo hii come alond, þat al was in her honde.
 At see sone as þe duc Wýllam hys fot sette alonde,
 On of hys knýgtes gradde, " holde vaste Wýllam nou
 " Engeland, vor þer nys non kýng bote þou.
 " Vor syker þou be, Engeland ys nou þyn ýwys.
 þe duc Wýllam anon verbed al hys,
 þat none nere so wod, to robbý, ne no manere harm do þere
 Vpe þe lond, þat hys was, bote hem þat agen hým were,
 And an fourtý nýgt hý býleuede þere aboute,
 And conseýlede of bataýle, & ordeýnd her route,
 Kýng Harald sat glad ýnou at Euerwyke atte metc,
 So þat þer come a messenger, ar he adde ý zete,
 And seýde, þat duc Wýllam to Hastýnges was ýcome,
 And hys baner adde ýrerd, & þe contreye al ýnome.
 Harald, a man wýþ gret herte corageus ý nou,
 As he of non man ne tolde, þuderwarde vaste drou.
 He ne let nogt clupýe al hys folc, so wyllefol he was,
 And al vor in þe oþer bataýle hým vel so vajr cas.
 þo þe duc Wýllam wuste, þat he was ýcome neý,
 A monek he sende hým in message, & dude as þe sleý,
 þat lond, þat hým was ýgýue, þat he ssolde ýt vp zelde,
 Oþer come, & dere em þe rýgt myd suerd in þe velde.
 gýf he seýde, þat he nadde non rýgt þerto,
 þat vp þe pope lokýnge of Rome he ssolde ýt do,

And he wolde þerto stonde, al elene wyþoute fýzte,
 Wer Seynt Edward ýt hym gef, & wer he adde þerto rýzt.
 Harald sende hym word agen, þat he nolde hym take non lond,
 Ne non lokýnge of Rome, bote suord & rýzt honde.
 þo ýt oþer ne mýzte be, eýþer in hýs syde
 Conseýlede and garked hem, bataýle vorto abyde.
 þe Englýsse al þe nýzt byuore vaste býgon to sýnge,
 And spende al þe nýzt in glotonýe & in dryngynge.
 þe Normans ne dude nozt so, ac hii crýde on God vaste,
 And ssrýue hem ech after oþer, þe wule þe nýzt ýlaste,
 And amorwe hem lete asely wyþ mýlde herte ýnou.
 And suþþe þe duc wyþ hýs ost toward þe bataýle drou,
 An stounde he gan abyde, & hýs knýztes rede.
 “ge knýztes,” he seyde, “þat bet of so noble dede
 “ þat nere neuere ouercome, ne zoure elderne naþemo,
 “ Understondeþ of þe kýng of France þat zoure elderne dude
 wo,
 “ Hou mý fader in Parus amýdde hýs kýnedom,
 “ Myd prowessse of zoure faderes mýd strengþe hym ouercome,
 “ Vnderstondeþ hou zoure elderne þe kyng nome al so,
 “ And helde hym vorte he adde amended þat he adde mýs do,
 “ And Rýchard, þat was þo a chyld, hii zelde Normandye,
 “ þat was duc her býuore, & to suche maystrie,
 “ þat at eche parlement, þat he in France were,
 “ þat he were ýgurd wyþ a suerd, þe wule þat he leucde þere,
 “ þat þe kýng of France ne hýs so hardy were,
 “ þat atte parlement knýf ne suerd bere.
 “ Vnderstoundeþ eke þe dedes, þat þulke Rýchard dude al so,
 “ þat he ne ouercome nozt kynges alone, ac gut more þerto.

" Ac he ouercom þe deuel, & adoun hým caste
 " To gadere as hii wrastled, & bond hys honden vaste
 " Bý hynde at hys rugge. of such prowesse ze þenche,
 " Nessame ze nozt þat Harald, þat euere was of luþer wrenche,
 " An býuore zou was versuore, þat he wole mýd hys tayle
 " Turne hys wombe toward vs, & hys face in batayle.
 " Vnderstondeþ þe suýkedom, þat hys fader and he wrozte,
 " And hii þat mýd hým beþ, þo hii to deþe brozte
 " So vyllyche Alfred mý cosýn, & zoure kunes men also.
 " Hou myzte in ený wýse móre ssame be do?
 " Monýe, þat dude þulke dede, ze mowe here to day ýsey.
 " Hou longe ssolle her luþer heued aboue her ssoldren be?
 " Adraweþ zoure suerdes, & lokeþ wo may do best,
 " þat me se zoure prowesse fram þe Est to þe West.
 " Wote awrete þat gentýl blod, þat so vyllyche was ýnome
 " Of houre kunes men. vor we mowe wel. vr týme ýs nou
 ýcome.

þe duc nadde nozt al ýsed, þat mýd ernest gret
 As ys folc wel atyled to þe batayle sscet.
 A sueýn, þat het Taylefer, smot vorþ byuore þere,
 And slou anon a Englysse man, þat a baner bere,
 And efsone anoþer baneur, & þe þrydde almest al so,
 Ac hým sulf he was aslawe, ar þe dede were ydo.
 þe furst ende of hys ost býuore Harald mýd such gýnne
 So þýcke sette, þat non man ne myzte come wýþynne,
 Wýþ stronge targes hem býuore, þat archers ne dude hem nozt,
 So þat Normans were ney to grounde ýbrogt.
 Wyllam byþogte an queintyse, & bygan to fle vaste,
 And hys folc vorþ wyþ hým, as hii were agaste,

And

And flowe ouer a longe dale, & so vp an heȝ.
 þe Englysse ost was prout ynou, þo hii þȝs ysey,
 An bygonne hem to sprede, & after þen weȝ nome.
 þe Normans were aboue þe doune, þe oþere vpard come,
 And byturnde hem aboue al heselyche, as yt wold be adon-
 ward.

And oþer byuore ne myȝte nogt so quiclyche vpard.
 And hii were byuore al to sprad, þat ne myȝte bytuene hem
 wende.

þe Normans were so wel porueȝd aboute in ech ende,
 And stones adonward slonge vp hem y nowe,
 And myd speres & myd flon vaste of hem slowe,
 And myd suerd & myd ax. vor hii, þat vpard nome,
 Ne myȝte non wylle abbe of dunt, as hii þat donward come,
 And her vantwarde was to broke, þat ne myȝte wyþynne
 hem wende,

So þat þe Normans vaste slowe in eche ende.

Of Englysse al vor nogt þat valeȝe was neȝ

As heȝe yfuld myd dedemen, as þe doune an heȝ.

þe ssetares donward al uor nogt vaste slowe to grounde,

So þat Harald þoru þe neȝe yssotte was deþe's wounde.

And a knyȝt þat ysey, þat he was to grounde ybroȝte,

And smot, as he laȝ byneþe, & slou as vor nogt.

Fram þat yt was amorwe þe bataȝle ylaste strong

Vorte yt was neȝ myd ouernon, & þat was samdel long.

Monȝ was þe gode dunt, þat duc Wȝllam ȝef aday.

Vor þre stedes he slou vnder hȝm, as mucche folc ysay

Ver pryked, & ver arnd about, & ver wounded also,

And debrysed aȝen dedemen, ar þe bataȝle were ydo.

And gut was Wyllam's grace þulke day so gode,
 þat he hadde no wounde, war þoru he sshedde an drop blod.
 þus, lo! þe Englysse volc vor naȝt to grounde come
 Vor a fals kȳng, þat hadde non ryȝt to þe kȳnedom,
 And come to a nywe louerd, þat more in ryȝte was.
 Ac her noþer, as me may ysey, in pur ryȝt nas.
 And þus was in Normannes hond þat lond ýbroȝt ýwȳs,
 þat anaunter ȝýf euermo keuerynge þereof ýs.
 Of þe Normannes beþ þȳs hey men, þat beþ of þȳs lond,
 And þe lowe men of Saxons, as ých vnderstonde.
 So þat ȝe seþ in eyþer syde wat ryȝte ȝe abbeþ þerto,
 As ých vnderstonde, þat yt was þoru Gode's wȳlle ýdo.
 Vor þe wule þe men of þȳs lond pur heþene were,
 Non lond, ne nō folc agen hem in armys nere.
 Ac nou suþþe þat þet folc auong Cristendom,
 And wel lute wule hii hulde þe býheste, þat hii nome,
 And turnede to sleuþe, & to prute, & to lecherýe,
 To glotonýe, & heýe men muche to robberýe,
 As þe gostes in a uȳsýon to Seynt Edward seyde,
 Wu þer ssolde in Engeland come such wrecchede,
 Vor robberye of heý men, vor clerken hordom,
 Hou God wolde sorwe sende in þȳs kȳnedom.
 Bytuene Mýhelfmasse & Seynt Luc, a Seyn Calyxte's day,
 As vel in þulke ȝere in a Sater day,
 In þe ȝere of Grace, as yt vel al so,
 A þousend & syxe & syxtý, þȳs batayle was y do.
 And duc Wyllam was þo old nȳne & þrytty ȝer.
 And on & þryttý ȝer he was of Normandye duc er.

þo þys batayle was ydo, duc Wýllam let brýnge
 Vayre hys folc, þat was aslawe, anerþe þoru alle þýnge.
 Alle þat wolde leue he gaf, þat hys fon anerþe brogte.
 Haralde's moder vor hýr sone wel zerne hým býsozte
 By messagers, & largelýche hym bed of hýr þýnge,
 To grante hýre sone body anerþe vorto brynge.
 Wýllam yt sende hýr vayre ynou, wyþoute eny þýnge waruore:
 So þat ýt was þoru hýre wyþ gret honour ýbore
 To þe hous of Waltam, & ybrogt anerþe þere,
 In þe holý rode chýrche, þat he let hým sulf rere,
 An hous of relygyon, of canons ywys.
 It was vayre anerþe ýbrogt, as ýt gut ýs.
 Wýllam, þys noble duc, þo he adde ydo al þys,
 þen wey he nome to Londone he & al hys,
 As kýng & prince of lond, wyþ nobleýe ynou.
 Azen hým wyþ vayre processyon þat folc of toun drou
 And vnderuðnge hym vayre y nou, as kýng of þys lond.
 þus come, lo! Engeland into Normannes honde.
 And þe Normans ne couþe speke þo bote her owe speche,
 And speke French as dude atom, & here chýldren dude al so
 teche.
 So þat heymen of þys lond, þat of her blod come,
 Holdeþ alle þulke speche, þat hii of hem nome.
 Vor bote a man couþe French, me tolþ of hým wel lute.
 Ac lowe men holdeþ to Englyss, & to her kunde speche gute.
 Ich wene þer ne be man in world contreyes none,
 þat ne holdeþ to her kunde speche, bote Engeland one.
 Ac wel me wot vorto conne bothe wel ýt ýs,
 Vor þe more þat a man con, þe more worþ he ýs.

RO-

SOUTHERN BRANCH,
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA,
LIBRARY,
LOS ANGELES, CALIF.

BRANCH
CALIFORNIA



University of California
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
Return this material to the library
from which it was borrowed.

OL

REC'D LD-URL
SEP 6 1988

AUG 11 1988

[REDACTED]

3 1153 00331 6421

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



A 000 006 308 1

